

COPYRIGHT 1895. BY THE WOOLFALL COMPANY

THE PEOPLE'S STANDARD HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES

FLAGS, UNIFORMS, CURRENCY & ARMS OF THE REVOLUTION

THE STANDARD HISTORY

OF ALL

NATIONS AND RACES

Containing a Record of all the Peoples of the World from the Earliest Historical Times, with a Description of their Homes, Customs, and Religions; their Temples, Monuments, Literature, and Art

IN
TEN
VOLUMES

... BY ...

EDWARD S. ELLIS, A. M.

Author of "The Eclectic Primary History of the United States," etc.; Editor of "A Dictionary of Mythology," "A Classical Dictionary," "Plutarch's Lives," etc.

L. W. YAGGY, M. S.

Author of "Museum of Antiquity," "Royal Path of Life," Yaggy's "Geographical Study," "Little Gems," etc.

H. G. CUTLER

Author of "The Grimms," and Contributor to the "Magazine of American History," etc.

L. BRENT VAUGHAN, PH. B.

Editor of "Hill's Practical Encyclopedia," etc.

ILLUSTRATORS

W. H. LIPPINCOTT, H. A. OGDEN, A. B. DOGGETT,
DE COST SMITH, R. M. HYNES, W. P. SNYDER,
C. KENDRICK, C. M. RELYEA, J. STEEPLE DAVIS,
JOSEPH GLEESON, W. H. DRAKE, WARREN SHEPPARD,
W. C. FITLER, GILBERT GAUL, and other artists

VOL. VI—UNITED STATES

CHICAGO

LANDIS BROTHERS, PUBLISHERS

1899

C

SECOND COPY.

THE LIBRARY
OF CONGRESS
—
WASHINGTON

50926

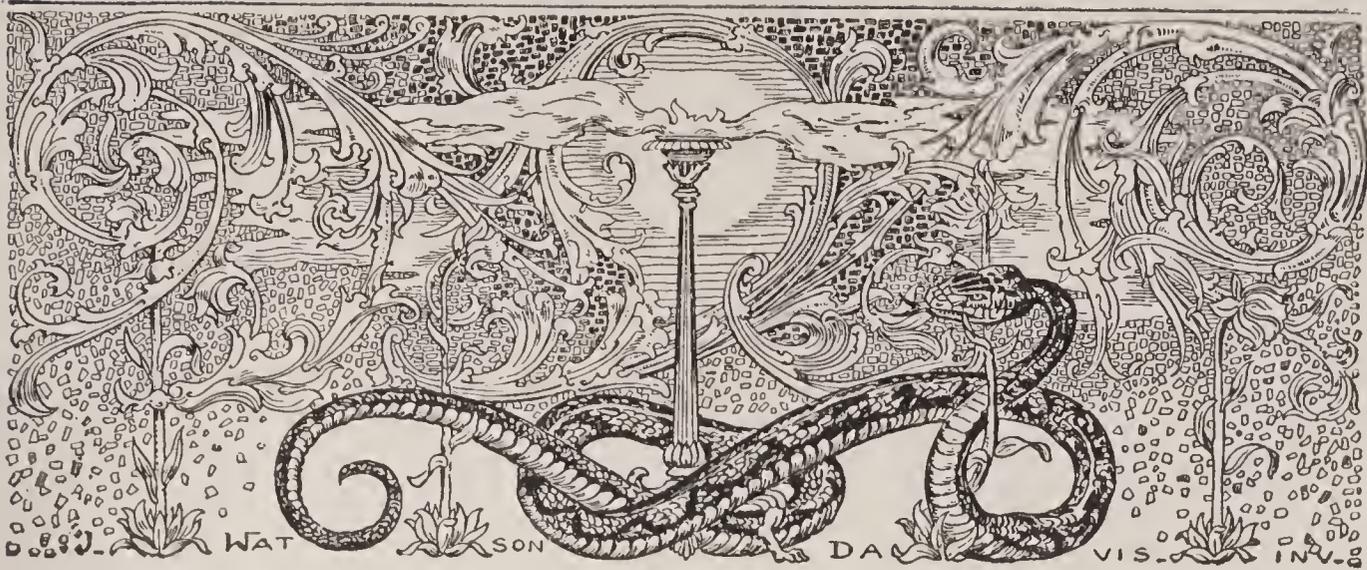
COPYRIGHT, 1899,

GEO. M. HILL CO., CHICAGO

TWO COPIES RECEIVED.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
OFFICE OF
JUN - 2 1899
Register of Copyrights.

720
7647



CONTENTS

CHAPTER XXVII (CONCLUDED)

	PAGE
Pontiac's War (Concluded),	385

CHAPTER XXVIII

The Colonies and Resisted Taxation in 1770,	393
---	-----

CHAPTER XXIX

The Mutterings of War,	404
----------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXX

Events of 1775 (Lexington and Concord),	420
---	-----

CHAPTER XXXI

Events of 1775 (Concluded).—Bunker Hill, etc.,	434
--	-----

CHAPTER XXXII

Events of 1776 (Declaration of Independence),	458
---	-----

CHAPTER XXXIII

Events of 1777 (Burgoyne's Campaign),	479
---	-----

CHAPTER XXXIV

Events of 1778 (Wyoming and Cherry Valley),	504
---	-----

CHAPTER XXXV

Events of 1779 (On Land and Sea),	522
---	-----

CHAPTER XXXVI

Events of 1780 (Campaign in the South),	548
---	-----

	PAGE
CHAPTER XXXVII	
Events of 1781, and Close of the War,	557
Period IV—The Republic and the Constitution	
CHAPTER XXXVIII	
Formation of the Constitution,	578
CHAPTER XXXIX	
Washington's Administration—First Term, 1789–1793,	590
CHAPTER XL	
Washington's Administration—Second Term, 1793–1797,	607
CHAPTER XLI	
John Adams' Administration—1797–1801,	619
CHAPTER XLII	
Jefferson's Administration—First Term, 1801–1805,	629
CHAPTER XLIII	
Jefferson's Administration—Second Term, 1805–1809,	647
CHAPTER XLIV	
Madison's Administration—First Term, 1809–1813,	656
CHAPTER XLIV (CONTINUED)	
Madison's Administration—First Term (Continued)—The War of 1812,	665
CHAPTER XLV	
Madison's Administration—Second Term, 1813–1817—The War of 1812 (Continued)—Events of 1813,	679
CHAPTER XLVI	
Madison's Administration—Second Term, 1813–1817 (Contin- ued)—Events of 1814–1815,	691

CONTENTS

v

CHAPTER XLVII

	PAGE
Monroe's Administration—1817-1825,	719

CHAPTER XLVIII

J. Q. Adams' Administration—1825-1829,	729
--	-----

Period V—Consolidation and Expansion

CHAPTER XLIX

Jackson's Administration—1829-1837,	734
---	-----

CHAPTER L

Van Buren's Administration—1837-1841,	760
---	-----



ILLUSTRATIONS

	ARTIST	PAGE
Flags, Uniforms, etc., of the Revolution, <i>H. A. Ogden</i> (<i>Frontispiece</i>)		
Indian Strategy.—The Game of Lacrosse,	<i>C. Kendrick</i>	387
A Remarkable Escape,	<i>C. Kendrick</i>	389
Colonel Bouquet Writing His Despatch,	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	391
Indian Bow and Arrows (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	392
Colonial Architecture, 1700,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	393
Quakers, Catholics, and Puritans,	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	395
Paul Revere's Ride,	<i>J. Steeple Davis</i>	401
William Pitt,	<i>Portrait</i>	401
The Colonial Stamp (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	403
The Stamp Act (<i>Headpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	404
Faneuil Hall,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	404
Otis and the Commissioner,	<i>J. Steeple Davis</i>	405
The Boston Massacre,	<i>J. Steeple Davis</i>	407
Daniel Boone,	<i>Portrait</i>	409
The Old South Church, Boston,		411
Alamance, the First Battle of the Revolution, <i>Steeple Davis</i>		413
Delegates Leaving Carpenter's Hall After a Session, <i>Ogden</i>		415
Colonial Flags (<i>Headpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	420
Old North Church,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	420
"Disperse, you scoundrels!"	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	425
The British Retreat to Boston,	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	429
"Give me liberty or give me death!"	<i>W. P. Snyder</i>	430
The Demand upon Governor Dunmore,	<i>W. P. Snyder</i>	432
Independence Hall, Philadelphia,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	434

ILLUSTRATIONS

vii

	ARTIST	PAGE
"I order you to surrender at once!"	<i>J. Turcas</i>	437
Nomination of Washington as Commander-in-Chief,	<i>Ogden</i>	439
Israel Putnam,	<i>Portrait</i>	441
The Battle of Bunker Hill,	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	443
Washington Taking Command of the Army,	<i>C. Kendrick</i>	445
Capture of Ethan Allen,	<i>C. Kendrick</i>	447
Signing of the Declaration of Independence,	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	449
Invasion of Canada,	<i>J. Turcas</i>	448
Firing on the Flag of Truce,	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	451
Wolfe's Cove (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	456
The Death of Montgomery,	<i>W. P. Snyder</i>	457
Liberty Bell (<i>Headpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	458
Where the First Congress Met,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	458
The New Flag,	<i>W. P. Snyder</i>	462
Exploit of Sergeant Jasper,	<i>C. Kendrick</i>	464
Independence Hall Restored as in 1776,		467
"See the old Continentals," etc.,	<i>J. Turcas</i>	469
The Victory at Trenton,	<i>C. Kendrick</i>	471
The Battle of Princeton,	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	473
Nathan Hale as a Spy,	<i>W. P. Snyder</i>	474
The Capture of Nathan Hale,	<i>W. P. Snyder</i>	475
The Hale Statue in City Hall Park, New York,		477
Old Glory (<i>Headpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	479
Where the First Stars and Stripes Was Made,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	479
Unlocking the Door,	<i>Edward Potthast</i>	485
Death of Jane McCrea,	<i>J. Turcas</i>	489
General Horatio Gates,	<i>Portrait</i>	493
General John Burgoyne,	<i>Portrait</i>	497
At Valley Forge,		501
General Washington (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	503
Washington, Lafayette Coats of Arms,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	504
Old South Church,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	504
Washington and Lee at Monmouth,		506
Gilbert Mottier, Marquis de Lafayette,	<i>Portrait</i>	507

	ARTIST	PAGE
"Molly Pitcher" at Monmouth,	<i>C. Kendrick</i>	508
The Wyoming Massacre,	<i>J. Steeple Davis</i>	510
The Surrender at Yorktown,	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	513
Saved by a Spider's Web,	<i>C. Kendrick</i>	515
Joseph Brant,	<i>Portrait</i>	517
Indian Relics (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	521
General Marion,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	522
Capture of Stony Point,	525
First Naval Battle of the United States,	<i>Warren Sheppard</i>	527
Battle of Lake Champlain,	<i>Warren Sheppard</i>	529
The Bon Homme Richard and the Serapis,	<i>Warren Sheppard</i>	537
The Bomb that Won the Battle,	<i>Warren Sheppard</i>	541
Paul Jones,	<i>Portrait</i>	545
On the March,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	548
Marion in Ambush,	<i>P. Frensen</i>	549
André's Disappointment,	<i>H. Sandham</i>	551
André,	<i>Portrait</i>	552
Capture of André,	<i>J. Steeple Davis</i>	553
The Royal Savage (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	556
Prison Ships,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	557
Revolt of the Pennsylvania Line,	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	559
Capture of a Redoubt at Yorktown,	<i>W. Farny</i>	561
General Nathaniel Greene,	<i>Portrait</i>	563
Lord Cornwallis,	<i>Portrait</i>	565
"Cornwallis is taken,"	<i>W. Farny</i>	567
The Hyder Ally and the General Monk,	<i>Warren Sheppard</i>	572
Washington's Patriotism,	<i>C. Kendrick</i>	575
The Constitution and the Guerrière,	<i>Sheppard</i>	577
Continental Currency (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	577
Federal Hall, New York City,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	578
Shays' Insurrection,	<i>C. Kendrick</i>	581
Upper Wall Street, New York, in 1783,	<i>J. Steeple Davis</i>	583
A Colonial School-Room,	<i>W. Farny</i>	587
The Stage Coach (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	589

ILLUSTRATIONS

ix

	ARTIST	PAGE
President Washington (<i>Headpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	590
Site of Washington's Birthplace,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	590
General George Washington,	591
Washington at Trenton,	<i>J. Steeple Davis</i>	594
Inauguration of Washington,	<i>J. Steeple Davis</i>	595
Alexander Hamilton,	<i>Portrait</i>	598
General Knox,	<i>Portrait</i>	601
Eli Whitney,	<i>Portrait</i>	602
The Cotton-Gin,	<i>J. Steeple Davis</i>	605
District of Columbia (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	606
Algerines,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	607
Martha Washington,	<i>Portrait</i>	608
George Washington,	<i>Portrait</i>	609
The Battle of Fallen Timbers,	<i>J. Steeple Davis</i>	611
President Adams (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	618
Naval Engagement,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	619
John Adams,	<i>Portrait</i>	621
"I am ready for any service," etc.,	<i>C. Kendrick</i>	623
Mount Vernon,	626
The Washington Vault (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	628
"The Constitution,"	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	629
Thomas Jefferson,	<i>Portrait</i>	631
Aaron Burr,	<i>Portrait</i>	633
Humiliation of Captain Bainbridge,	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	637
Stephen Decatur,	<i>Portrait</i>	638
Capture of the Philadelphia,	<i>Warren Sheppard</i>	639
The Wasp and The Frolic,	<i>Warren Sheppard</i>	641
Blowing Up of the Ketch,	<i>W. P. Snyder</i>	643
Duel between Burr and Hamilton,	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	644
Cincinnati in 1787 (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	646
Robert Fulton (<i>Headpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	647
The First Ocean Steamer,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	647
Robert Fulton,	<i>Portrait</i>	649
Chesapeake and Leopard,	<i>W. Sheppard</i>	654

	ARTIST	PAGE
Slave Chain (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	655
Sea Fight,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	656
James Madison,	<i>Portrait</i>	657
Battle of Tippecanoe,	<i>W. P. Snyder</i>	662
Strengthening the President,	<i>W. P. Snyder</i>	663
A Ship of the American Navy (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	664
Indian Settlement,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	665
Surrender of Detroit,	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	667
The Little Fellow Kept His Eyes Closed,	<i>W. P. Snyder</i>	672
The Surrender of Capt. Dacres,	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	677
The Eagle and Shield (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	678
The Battle of Lake Erie,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	679
Commodore Perry,	<i>Portrait</i>	681
"Don't give up the ship,"	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	685
Death of Tecumseh,	<i>W. P. Snyder</i>	689
Indian Implements of War (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	690
Ruins of the Capitol, etc. (<i>Headpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	691
Tecumseh,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	691
Sam Houston,	<i>Portrait</i>	693
Before the Battle,	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	697
"Thro' the long September night",	<i>Sheppard</i>	705
The United States and Macedonian,	<i>Warren Sheppard</i>	707
Captain Samuel C. Reid (<i>Portrait</i>),	<i>J. Steeple Davis</i>	711
A "Long Tom,"	<i>J. Steeple Davis</i>	713
Capture of the Cyane and Levant,	<i>Warren Sheppard</i>	717
William and Mary College,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	719
James Monroe,	<i>Portrait</i>	721
"Monroe Doctrine" Emblem (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	728
Harvard College in 1836,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	729
John Quincy Adams,	<i>Portrait</i>	731
President Jackson (<i>Headpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	734
The First Locomotive in America,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	734
A Young Rebel,	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	736
Andrew Jackson,	<i>Portrait</i>	737

ILLUSTRATIONS

xi

	ARTIST	PAGE
The First Locomotive Explosion,	<i>J. Steeple Davis</i>	740
General Winfield Scott,	<i>Portrait</i>	745
The Flint and Steel,	<i>J. Steeple Davis</i>	747
The Attack on the Friendship by Natives,	<i>Warren Sheppard</i>	749
Quallah Battoo,	<i>J. Carter Beard</i>	751
Osceola's Indignation,	<i>H. A. Ogden</i>	755
The Ballot Box (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	759
The Caroline,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	760
Martin Van Buren,	<i>Portrait</i>	762
Hard Cider Campaign (<i>Tailpiece</i>),	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	768

DECORATIONS AND STATE SEALS

Seal of the State of Wyoming,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	385
Seal of the State of Virginia,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	393
Seal of the Board of War,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	522
Seal of the State of Rhode Island,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	578
Seal of the State of Mississippi,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	719
Seal of the State of New York,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	729
Seal of the State of Massachusetts,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	760

DECORATIONS AND COLONIAL MEDALS

George III Medal,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	419
The Washington Medal,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	434
The André Captors' Medal,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	478
The Gates Medal,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	548
The Paul Jones Medal,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	557
The Preble Medal,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	607
The Stewart Medal,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	619
The Bainbridge Medal,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	629
The Lawrence Medal,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	656
The Hull Medal,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	665
The Perry Medal,	<i>W. H. Drake</i>	679

MAPS

	ARTIST	PAGE
Boston with Its Environs in 1775-1776,	459
Map of the Carolinas,	550

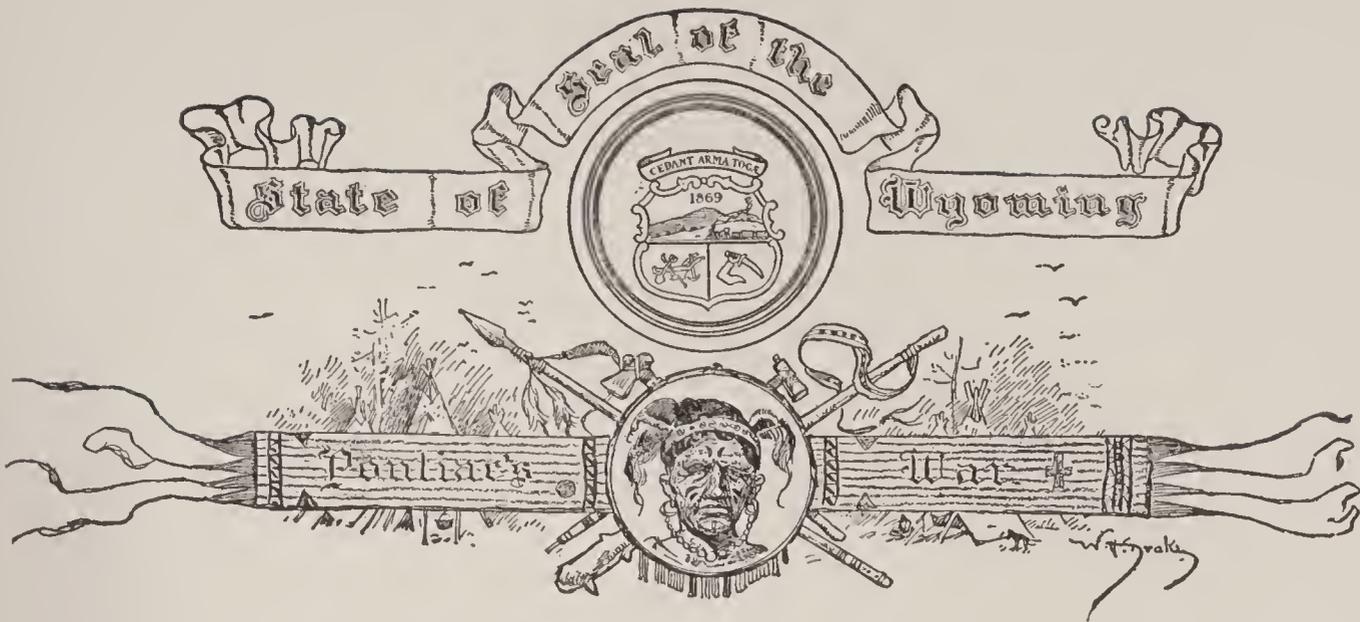


**UNITED STATES
EAST.**

GULF OF MEXICO

Longitude West from 90° Greenwich

Key West



CHAPTER XXVII (CONCLUDED)

PONTIAC'S WAR (Concluded)

[*Authorities*: It is impossible not to feel a certain admiration for the Ottawa chief-tain in his desperate but hopeless stand against the spoliation of his race by the white men. Pontiac fought bravely, but, from the nature of the circumstances, his struggle was as hopeless as that of King Philip a century before. The hour was at hand when even the Ottawa leader was compelled to bow before the resistless smiting of the hand of fate; and there is something grimly suggestive in the fact that Philip and Pontiac were each killed by one of his own race. The authorities have already been named.]



It has been shown that although Pontiac's main operations were directed against Detroit, his aim was to capture all the forts in the West. In more than one instance his allies were successful.

The garrison at Fort Michilimackinac (*naw*) were watching a game of lacrosse, played by the Indians, June 4, in front of the post, when by a previous understanding the ball was knocked within the fort. While the officers and English were viewing the struggle, they were assailed by the warriors with such fierceness that no resistance could be offered. Seventeen of the garrison were killed and the remainder made prisoners.

At daylight, June 15, Fort Presque Isle, standing near the present site of Erie, Pennsylvania, was attacked by two hundred Indians. Ensign Christie and his men retreated into the blockhouse, whose roof was repeatedly fired by the assailants and extinguished by the defenders. When the water gave out, the men began digging a well within the blockhouse. The weather was intensely hot, and but for frequent reliefs the toilers would have been overcome.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

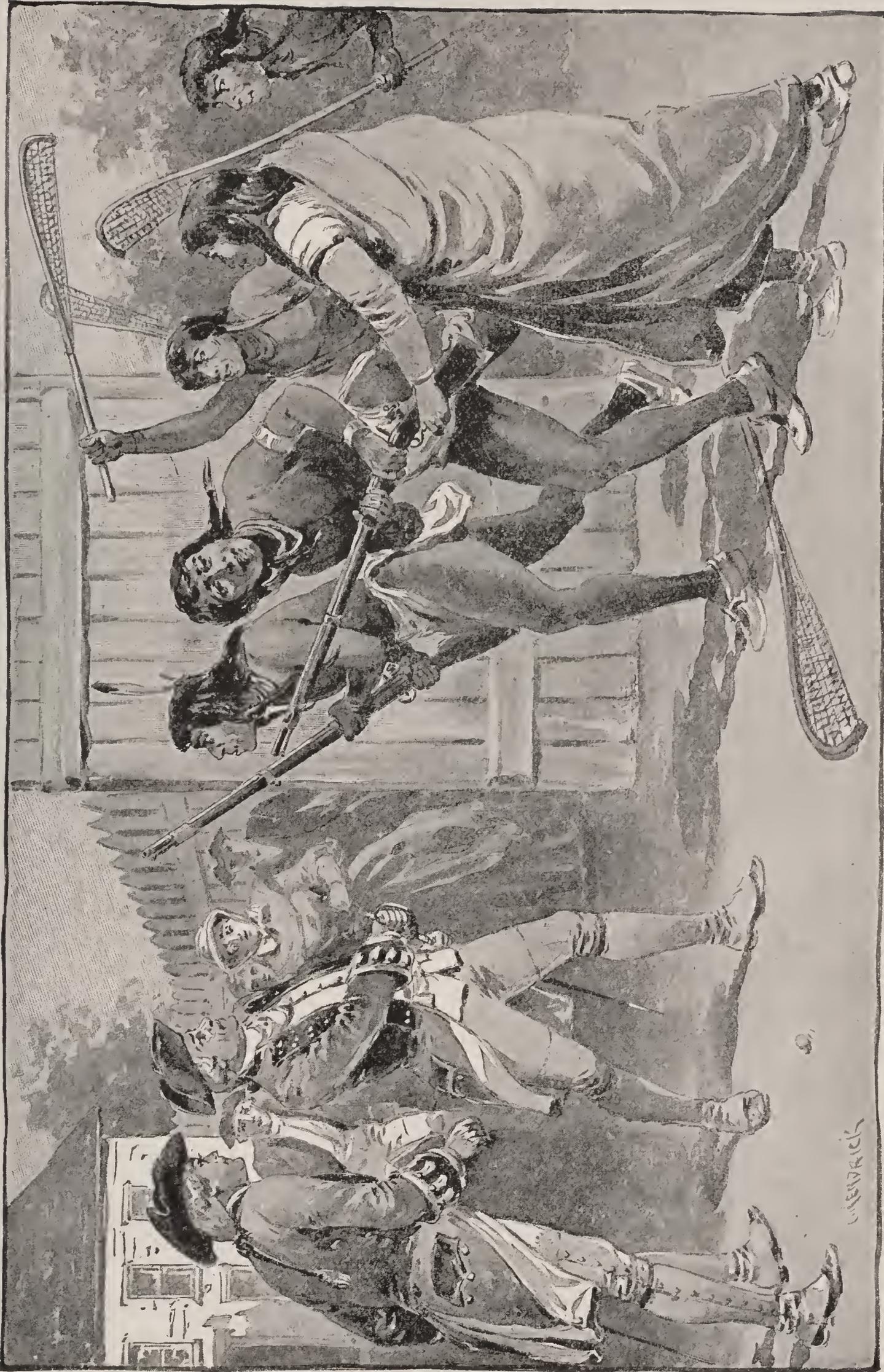
By the most vigorous work, water was reached in time to extinguish the flames on the roof. The Indians showed a determined bravery almost equal to that of the defenders. They threw up a breastwork, on a ridge near the fort, and pressed the fighting for more than two days. They repeatedly tried to run from behind this breastwork to a point nearer the block-house, but, in every instance, the vigilant garrison shot down the daring warriors. Then the besiegers began mining, and there was no way of stopping them. The house of the commanding officer was reached and fired, and the smoke and heat nearly overcame the garrison; but they kept up the unequal contest and shot every redskin who exposed himself to the unerring marksmanship of the defenders. The assailants pushed their mining until the garrison could hear the click of their implements under the block-house itself. This was the end of all hope of successful defence, but Ensign Christie refused to surrender until his enemies gave a solemn pledge that he and his worn-out men should be allowed to retire unharmed. The pledge, as a matter of course, was broken; the garrison were bound and taken prisoners to Pontiac's camp, though Christie succeeded in making his escape and reached Detroit.

A Singular
 Escape

A still more singular history attaches to Fort Le Bœuf, which was attacked in the same week that saw the fall of Presque Isle. A strong force of Indians surrounded the structure, which was defended by Ensign Price and thirteen men. The assault was pressed, and during the darkness the savages succeeded in setting the block-house on fire. It was impossible to extinguish the flames from within, and the Indians danced with glee in the belief that all the white men were undergoing one of the most cruel forms of death. But they were mistaken. The garrison, when the flames were crackling over their heads, cut a hole through the logs at the rear of the block-house, and every man reached the shelter of the woods undiscovered. Some succeeded in getting to Fort Pitt, but most of them perished of hunger on the way.

Fort Venango, lower down on the Alleghany, was captured by treachery, and Lieutenant Gordon and all the garrison were massacred. Fort Ligonier was also attacked, but it fortunately held out until relief came.

It will be recalled that Fort Du Quesne had been rebuilt and its name changed to Fort Pitt. It was a post of importance and was in



FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY CHARLES KENDRICK

INDIAN STRATEGY—THE GAME OF LACROSSE

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783
 Fort
 Pitt

charge of Captain Ecuyer (*ā-quee'-ā*), who had a force of more than three hundred soldiers, tradesmen, and woodsmen under him. He learned of the disasters that had overtaken some of the other posts, and knowing that his trial would soon come, made preparation for it. Early in the summer, a delegation of Delawares asked for an interview with Ecuyer, saying that they had important news for him. They assured the officer that a mighty confederation of tribes had captured all the frontier posts, and that the only way he and his garrison and their families could save their lives was by hurrying to the English settlements. Evil Indians were in the vicinity, but the Delawares promised to protect their white friends from harm. The captain thanked them for their kindness in bringing him such important news, and then gravely informed them that he would return their favor by giving them, in confidence, some startling tidings in which they were interested. Six thousand English soldiers, he said, were marching through the wilderness at that hour and were due at Fort Pitt within a few days. Another army, almost as large, Ecuyer added, was hurrying to crush the Ottawas and Ojibwas; and a third had already reached the Virginia frontier, where they would be joined by the Creeks and Catawbas, who would never give up the task upon which they had entered, so long as a Delaware chief, warrior, squaw, or pappoose remained above ground.

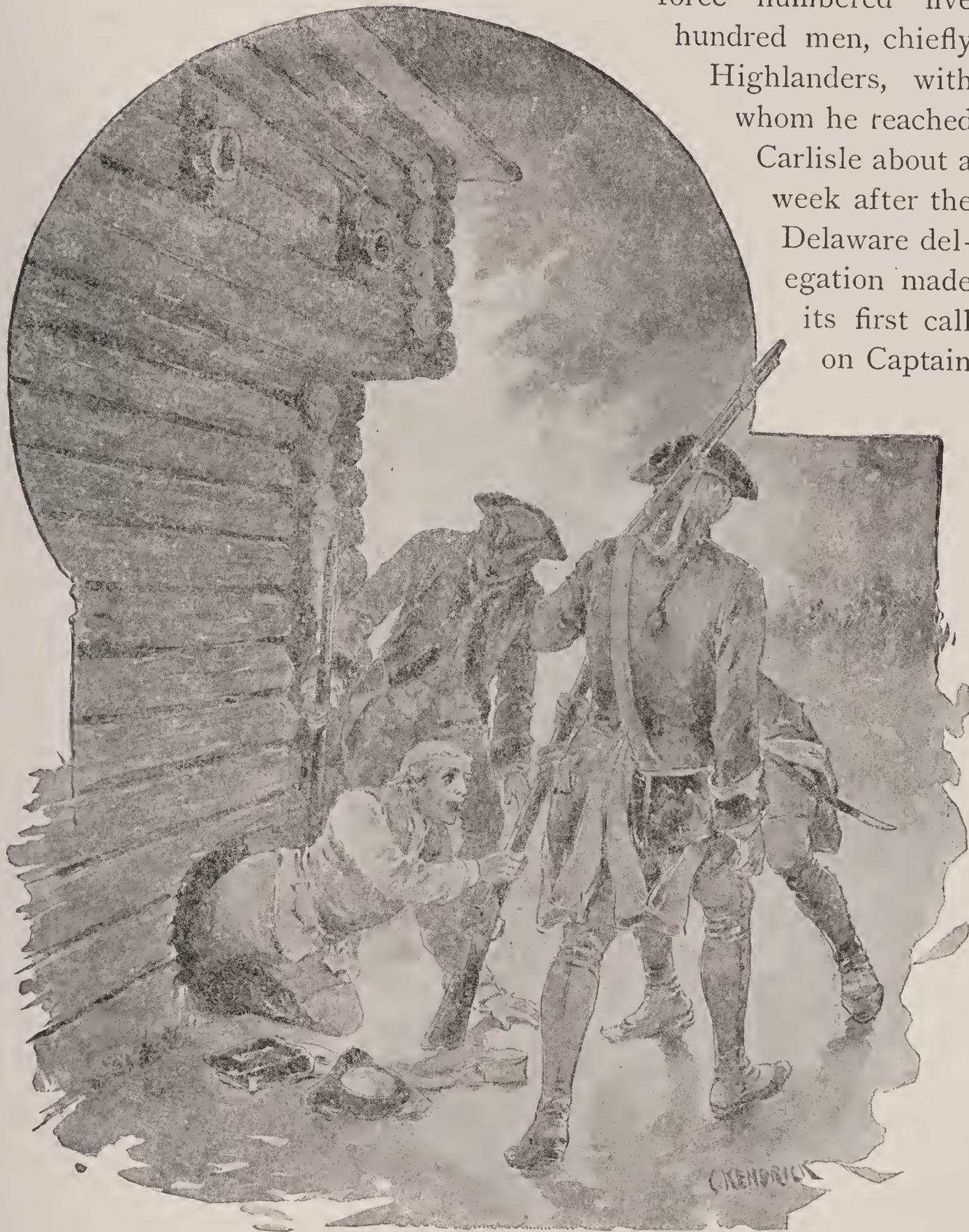
An Indian can tell a tremendous untruth when he sets about it; but it may be doubted whether any Indian ever surpassed this achievement. The delegation was frightened and left, but they must have known that they had been deceived when a month went by without any signs of the three destroying armies, for they returned to Captain Ecuyer and repeated their falsehood. He told them they were uttering lies and snapped his fingers at them. If they thought they could harm Fort Pitt, they might begin as soon as they chose. The angry Delawares accepted the challenge and attacked the fort that night. Securing such screens as they could, they kept up the fire until daylight, but did little damage.

Colonel
 Henry
 Bouquet

Fort Pitt, however, was in serious peril, for like the other posts, it stood alone, and was threatened by a force of Indians not only much stronger than the garrison, but which daily increased in numbers. Unless reinforced it must succumb. Its danger became widely known, and Colonel Henry Bouquet, commanding the English troops in Philadelphia, was ordered to march with all haste to its relief.

Colonel Bouquet was an experienced Swiss officer and one of the most brilliant leaders who ever undertook so difficult a task. His force numbered five hundred men, chiefly Highlanders, with whom he reached Carlisle about a week after the Delaware delegation made its first call on Captain

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



A REMARKABLE ESCAPE

Ecuyer. Bouquet found the town overrun with fugitives, for the border was in a state of panic, and many did not feel safe, even though so far east as that point. The suffering of these people was so great that Bouquet delayed his march in order to help them. He

**Bouquet
 at Car-
 lisle**

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

resumed his advance about the middle of July, sending forward thirty picked men to Fort Ligonier, and then, following with the main body of his men, scattered the Indians besieging that post and Fort Bedford. He then pressed forward over the same ground traversed by Braddock on his fatal march eight years before. No fear of Bouquet repeating that frightful blunder. His vigilance was never relaxed, and it was certain that whatever fate overtook him, no censure could be laid at his door. His troops had full confidence in him, and, justly so, for he was brave and skilful.

**Attack
 by the
 Indians**

Early on the sultry afternoon of August 5th, Bouquet approached a small stream and stopped to allow his tired men to rest. He had hardly halted when his advance guard was furiously assailed. He immediately sent forward a support, and inclosed his horses, cattle, and wagons with the reserve guard. The fighting in front, however, quickly became so fierce that he placed himself at the head of the reserve, delivered several deadly volleys, and by a brilliant bayonet charge dispersed the savages. The Indians were in large numbers, and assaulted both flanks of the troops and assailed the convoy at the rear. Bouquet coolly withdrew, and, inspired by his example, his men fought with desperate valor. Wherever a group of Indians showed themselves, the soldiers charged them with the bayonet, often chasing them to cover or spitting them among the rocks and trees. The white men fought as did their enemies, and had the forces been more nearly equal, the Indians could not have held their ground for an hour. The fighting continued of the most furious character all the afternoon, ceasing only when night closed over the scene. Then Bouquet sat down on a rock, and by the light of a lantern pencilled a despatch to General Amherst. He gave an account of all that had taken place, and said that he and his men would fight to the end, but intimated that not one of them was likely to see the set of the morrow's sun.

**Peril of
 Bouquet**

The little force was surrounded by a merciless horde, and by daylight there would be hundreds of additional Indians on the ground. No relief could reach the soldiers for several days, and their fate must be decided within a few hours. Sixty had been killed and many wounded. They could not obtain a drop of water, and the suffering from thirst, especially among the wounded, drove them almost frantic. At dawn, the Indians furiously renewed the fighting. The troops were completely hemmed in, and their assailants were so

well concealed that it was almost impossible for the soldiers to fire an effective shot. They frequently charged the points where they saw the flashes, but the dusky foes skurried to other cover before they could be pricked by the bayonet.

Two companies of light infantry, by Bouquet's direction, now fell back into the circle which was the main point of defence. The troops on the right and left parted to receive them, and then closed

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



COLONEL BOUQUET WRITING HIS DESPATCH

up in the rear. Then two other companies quickly formed, apparently to aid in the withdrawal. Fearful that the soldiers after all would elude them, the Indians rushed tumultuously out of the woods and streamed after them. This was precisely what Bouquet had sought to bring about. His purpose was to draw his assailants into a position where he could deliver a blow, and he now did it with terrible effect. He continued his brilliant fighting, feinting, and manœuvring until, before the savages understood their peril, they themselves were surrounded. We need hardly describe what followed; it will suffice to say that only the superior agility of a few

**Brilliant
 General-
 ship of
 Bouquet**

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

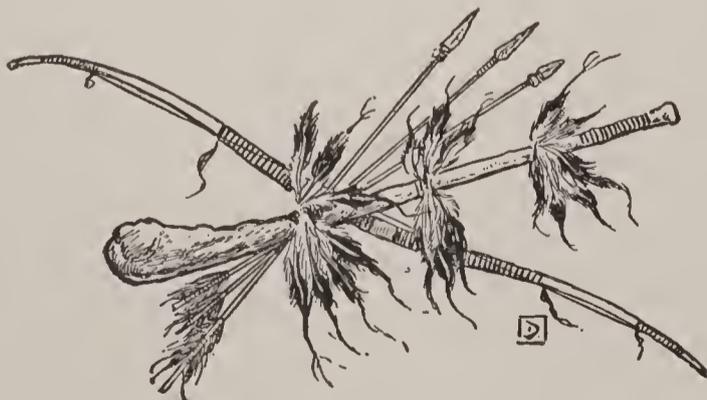
of the Indians enabled them to escape. Colonel Bouquet reached Fort Pitt on the 15th of August and relieved the post of all danger.

M. Neyon, the French commandant at Fort Chartres, did not rest with a message to Pontiac, warning him that he must cease hostilities against the English. He sent wampum belts and calumets to many other tribes between the Ohio and the Lakes, urging them to peace, and assuring them that any other course was highly displeasing to their great father in France.

Peace

Peace came at last, in the summer of 1766, when the representatives of the leading tribes met Sir William Johnson at Oswego, and signed a treaty of friendship. There were many noted chiefs at that gathering, but the one who towered above all others was the mighty Pontiac, sachem of the Ottawas. He was the greatest of his race during the eighteenth century, as Philip was during the seventeenth. Each was killed by one of his own people, Pontiac meeting his end in 1769, on the site of East St. Louis, by a Kaskaskia Indian, who had been hired to do the deed by an English trader.*

* The death of Pontiac, following upon the conquest of Quebec and the downfall of French power in America, brought about, for a time, a cessation of Indian feuds. By the conquest, England had made large additions to her territory rather than added to the number of her subjects. The population of the whole of New France, on the Fall of Quebec, did not exceed sixty-five thousand, while that of the English colonists on the Atlantic was close upon two millions. This inequality is accounted for by the widely differing modes of French and English colonization. French colonization was feudal and semi-religious; England's was characterized, in the main, by the escape from these Old World bonds, and from many things that impeded the exercise of civil and religious rights. A momentous change was now, however, to come about in the English colonies on the seaboard, in their efforts to shake off the commercial yoke of the Mother Country and assert the freedom of their own institutions and the legislative control of their own affairs.





CHAPTER XXVIII

THE COLONIES, AND RESISTED TAXATION IN 1770

[*Authorities:* The morrow of independence was fast approaching. Before estrangement comes, it has been deemed well in the present chapter to give some account of the conditions and characteristics of the Thirteen Colonies and the action of their congresses in resisting the aggressions of the Crown. These colonies were now growing into commonwealths, to be soon knit into a nation, and we shall presently see through what troubles they had to pass ere the colonial system fell, under which they had hitherto existed, multiplied and thriven. The authorities are numerous for this era, including besides the standard histories, English and American, the biographies of the chief actors of the time, enumerated at the head of the next chapter, together with the works that depict the social life and character of the period, such as Frothingham's "Rise of the Republic," Fiske's "American Revolution," Weedon's "Social and Economic History of New England," Hutchinson's "Diary and Letters," Morse Earle's "Colonial Dames and Good Wives," and Maud W. Goodwin's "The Colonial Cavalier."]



Colonial Architecture.

THE "original thirteen colonies" were Virginia, New York, Massachusetts, Maryland, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, New Hampshire, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia. Of these, Virginia, with nearly half a million inhabitants, was the most populous. Massachusetts came next with more than three hundred thousand, and Pennsylvania was only a few thousand behind; Connecticut had nearly two hundred thousand; Maryland about two hundred thousand, while New York, now the great Empire State, had twenty thousand less. Georgia was the weakest of all the colonies, the total population, including negroes, being some twenty-five thousand. Benjamin Franklin, in 1766, estimated the

The
Original
Thirteen
Colonies

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Strength
 of the
 Colo-
 nies

entire white population in this country, between the ages of sixteen and sixty years, to be three hundred thousand.

The colonies were strong, rugged, and growing. At one period, during the French and Indian War, they had twenty-five thousand militia and volunteers under arms. When Massachusetts was asked for twenty-three hundred soldiers, she furnished seven thousand, and kept them in the field until the close of hostilities. Nor will it be forgotten that the colonies equipped and maintained all their soldiers that served with the royal army. In addition to the large number of volunteers furnished by Massachusetts, she manned the forts, equipped a twenty-gun war-ship and an armed sloop, and gave three hundred seamen to the royal navy. She was the most powerful of all the colonies. At the close of the French and Indian War our country had a debt of £2,500,000, of which England repaid a little more than one-fourth.

We have learned that many sects and several European nations were drawn upon in the original settlement of the colonies, and that they stamped their peculiarities upon the different peoples. To Virginia went the Churchmen, to New England Churchmen and Dissenters, to Maryland Roman Catholics, and to Pennsylvania the Friends or Quakers. Although in some cases no little bigotry was shown, all were drawn towards one another by an intense love of liberty and an aspiration for the common weal.

Social
 Differ-
 ences

The diverse origin of the first settlers caused many interesting differences in their social condition. In Virginia, the people were noted for their hospitality, their frankness and refinement, but they were fond of sports and amusements that were not permitted in Puritanical Massachusetts. Virginia, previous to the Revolution, was the real South, and that she possessed a magnificent stock of ability, brains, and genius has been proven many a time by the achievements of her sons in war and statesmanship. It seems strange, in these later days, that the people of New England could ever be brought to submit to such strict censorship, social and religious, as prevailed for many years. Among the things forbidden by the General Court of Massachusetts were the wearing of funeral badges, the drinking of healths, either in public or private, and celebrating the Church festivals of Easter and Christmas. In Hartford, the freeman who refused to vote was fined. The tendency in these times is towards the other extreme. All persons under twenty years of age were forbidden to

use tobacco without the certificate of a physician. Those who used it were permitted to do so only once a day, and not within ten miles of a house. This law, which sent the people off into the woods to

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



QUAKERS
 OF PENNSYLVANIA



CATHOLICS
 OF MARYLAND

Use of
 the
 "Weed"

indulge in the "weed," was certainly discouraging to the bad habit.*

* Fifteen months after the Pilgrims sailed from Holland, they held a harvest-festival lasting a week. This is generally alluded to as the first thanksgiving in New England, but it was not a thanksgiving in the sense of a day set apart by the church, being appointed by the governor, and no religious service is referred to. A year later when drought prevailed, a day of fasting and prayer was observed. The sky was overcast during service, and there was a plentiful rainfall the next day. The same thing occurred some years later. After the rain just referred to, a day of thanksgiving was appointed, July 30, 1623, and on the following day a relief ship arrived. This was the first thanksgiving, unless the following record from an old Bible supplants it: "Sonne born to Susanna Whie (White) December 19th, 1620 yt six o'clock morning. Next day we meet for prayer and thanksgiving."

A few years later both fast days and thanksgiving days came at irregular intervals. There were fasts for Anne Hutchinson's heresies and feasts for getting rid of her; fasts and feasts on the occasion of plagues, pests, and prodigies; fasts and feasts for King



PURITANS
 OF NEW-ENGLAND

H. S. G. 1875

PERIOD III

ENGLAND
AND FRANCE
IN
AMERICA
1758
TO
1783

One of the cherished privileges of an American citizen, who can afford to do so, is to lie abed as long as he wishes, yet, as has been stated, there was a time in Hartford when every well person was compelled to get up and to retire at nightfall at the ringing of the watchman's bell. In short, New England strove to make all people good and to fashion their lives by the enactment of rigid laws.

"Penn-
sylvania
Dutch-
men"

Over the border in New York, the contrast was striking. There, and in portions of New Jersey and Pennsylvania, the Dutch stamped their characteristics so strongly upon the people that they are perceptible to this day. It is not an unfrequent thing to-day to meet "Pennsylvania Dutchmen" who, like their parents, were born in that State and yet cannot speak a word of English. They were industrious, frugal, clean, and lovers of good order and personal comfort. The Dutchman was fond of his pipe and beer, frowned upon all manner of disturbance, worshipped the God of his fathers, and taught his children to do the same. The Swedes and Finns on the Delaware resembled the Dutch in many respects.

The
Friends

The Friends showed a marked contrast to the Puritans, the Churchmen, and the Dutchmen. They left their imprint deep and distinct in Pennsylvania and West Jersey. William Penn was one of the greatest philanthropists that ever set foot on American soil, and, so long as Pennsylvania was under his direct rule, it was a model commonwealth. No other province equalled it in growth and prosperity or in freedom from disturbance. Every one is familiar with the characteristics of the Friends, or Quakers. Although they do not

Philip's War, which was called, "Jacob's Trouble in the Wilderness;" and fasts and feasts for the witches.

Christmas and New Year were the great festivals among the Dutch in New Netherland. The celebrations lasted for three weeks, during which the courts did not sit and the public offices were closed. All entered into the favorite sports—bowling, dancing, ball playing—and the tap-houses were crowded with the jolly burghers. At the beginning, May Day was kept with great spirit; beside which they observed the Passover season and Whitsuntide. The first public fast-day of the Dutch was March 4th, 1643, N. S., during Governor Kieft's stormy administration. Having crushed the Indians by massacre, August 30th, 1645, N. S., was appointed the first thanksgiving for the deliverance of the heathen into their hands. A fast day among the Dutch meant a fast in the early part and a feast towards evening. It so happened that on the same day the Connecticut Puritans and the New Netherland Dutchman were holding a fast and praying against each other in anticipation of a conflict. Tidings of peace coming across the ocean, each party proclaimed a thanksgiving. The order at New Haven was striking: "Praise, English Jerusalem;" "Thank the Lord of Zion" at Netherland.

remove their hats in salutation, one feels like uncovering to those plain, unostentatious, honest, and God-fearing people.

Down to the Revolution, agriculture was the main pursuit of the colonists, and little was seen in a household which was not the product of the soil. The spinning-wheel was in every home, and the deft fingers of the wife and elder daughters plied the knitting needles during the long winter evenings by the fireside. The furniture was of the simplest character; stoves were unknown; candles or the roaring fire gave illumination, though lamps were employed on occasion; gas, sewing-machines, the use of steam, and hundreds of modern conveniences, had not been dreamed of. Travelling was done on horseback or in lumbering vehicles, visits from point to point along the coast being made by sloop or other vessel.

Early attention was given to the education of the young. Schools were established in Virginia as early as 1621, but the institutions languished, and the money provided for their support was turned over to the trustees of William and Mary College, founded at Williamsburg, Virginia, in 1692. Common schools flourished in New England from the first, but compared with those of to-day they were indifferently equipped. The benches and desks were as uncomfortable as they could be, and the teacher did not spoil the child by sparing the rod. In some places, the teacher, besides instructing the youth, had to ring the bell for public worship, lead the choir on Sundays, serve summonses, dig graves, and perform other occasional duties.

Mention has been made of the founding of Harvard and Yale colleges, the former being the oldest in the country. In addition to these institutions others were Princeton College, which was established in New Jersey in 1746; King's (now Columbia), in New York in 1754; Brown in Rhode Island, in 1764, while the first medical college was founded in Philadelphia in the latter year.

In another place something has been said concerning the first newspapers in the colonies. At the close of the French and Indian War there were only ten journals published in the country, although more than twenty had been started at various times. The first permanent journal was *The Boston News Letter*, which made its appearance in the spring of 1704. The other pioneer papers which were successful were, in Pennsylvania, *The American* (Philadelphia), 1719; in New York, *The New York Gazette*, 1725; in Maryland, *The Maryland Gazette* (Annapolis), 1728; in South Carolina, *The*

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Early
 Educa-
 tion

The
 First
 News-
 papers

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

South Carolina Gazette (Charleston), 1732; in Rhode Island, *The Rhode Island Gazette* (Newport), 1732; in Virginia, *The Virginia Gazette* (Williamsburg), 1736; in Connecticut, *The Connecticut Gazette* (New Haven), 1755; in North Carolina, *The North Carolina Gazette* (New Berne), 1755; in New Hampshire, *The New Hampshire Gazette* (Portsmouth), 1756. Thus the only colonies which had no newspapers, during the French and Indian War, were New Jersey, Delaware, and Georgia. All the papers specified, excepting two, were "*Gazettes*," which was a favorite name, but they were, in the main, only official local organs.* At a later era, unhappily, they many of them all too soon became the organs of personal vituperation and bitter party strife.

Colonial
 Confed-
 eration

We have seen that as early as 1643 the New England colonies formed a confederation, as a matter of safety. It did not last long and was without any national idea. William Penn proposed a more

* The colonial records contain many creditable instances of the business aptitude and ability of our maternal ancestors. Numerous accounts are given in Alice Morse Earle's "Colonial Dames and Good Wives." Thus in 1638, Margaret and Mary Brent came from England to the province of Maryland, where they took up land and built manor houses, besides which they were active in business matters. Margaret Brent was the executrix for Governor Leonard Calvert (Lord Baltimore) and quelled an insurrection by paying off the mutinous troops. Elizabeth Haddon founded Haddonfield, New Jersey. She came alone to this country in 1701, when only nineteen years old, and was a most successful business-woman throughout her long life. John Clayton, writing in 1688, speaks of a number of "acute, ingenious gentlewomen" in Virginia who carried on thriving tobacco plantations, drained swamps, grazed cattle, and bought slaves. The founder of Taunton, Mass., was Elizabeth Poole. Among the Salem list of traders who banded together during the Stamp Act agitation, to oppose taxation, were five women merchants. When Mrs. Sarah Goddard became a widow, she took up printing as a business with her son and published *The Providence Gazette and Country Journal*, the only newspaper issued in Providence before 1775. Her son removing to New York, she conducted the business alone for years. Her daughter published, from 1775 to 1784, *The Maryland Journal and Baltimore Advertiser*, being the third newspaper published in Maryland. Anna Katherine Green carried on another Baltimore journal, *The Maryland Gazette*, from 1767 to 1775. Clementina Rind published *The Virginia Gazette* at Williamsburg previous to the Revolution. Much earlier (1738-1740), Elizabeth Timothy carried on *The South Carolina Gazette*. Then her son took it, and his widow, Anne Timothy, published it for ten years (1780-1790). On the death, in 1735, of James Franklin, the elder brother of Benjamin, his widow and two daughters carried on a printing house for a number of years, besides publishing *The Newport Mercury*. *The Massachusetts Gazette and Boston News Letter*, the only paper printed in Boston during the siege, was published by Widow Margaret Draper. Another widow publisher was the relict of Andrew Bradford, who founded the first newspaper in Pennsylvania (*The American Weekly Mercury*, 1719), and who issued the paper from 1742 to 1746. *The Connecticut Courant* and *The Sentinel* were published for years by the widows of their founders, the last instance being *The New York Weekly Journal*, from 1746 to 1748.

comprehensive plan, and it was discussed on both sides of the Atlantic, but at the time with no thought, in either country, of the independence of the colonies. It was at Albany, in 1684, that a congress met, composed of the officers of the governments of Massachusetts, New York, Maryland, and Virginia, and the sachems of the Six Nations. Ten years later a similar convention was held in the same town which prevented the Iroquois from making peace with the French of Canada, and in 1722, still another sought to strengthen the alliance with the same powerful Indian confederacy.

Gradually the tendency towards a national union grew among the several colonies. In the summer of 1748, a congress met in Albany, the inciting cause being the disputation between the royal governors and the people. The crown officers in America wished to secure a colonial revenue, with the aid of British interference, and independent of the action of colonial assemblies. Another object was to weld the bonds of friendship between the Six Nations and their western neighbors and the English. The latter purpose was attained, but the royal governors failed to gain anything for themselves.

The question of national independence which was taking shape and growing among the colonies disappeared for a time with the breaking out of the French and Indian War. The provinces ardently united with Great Britain in the supreme struggle for mastery in the New World. They rendered splendid service and rejoiced when England was triumphant at all points and the French no longer held a foothold in the country. That the American colonies were destined in time to become independent of Great Britain was "written in the book of fate." None can conceive our being the subjects of that country at any period during the nineteenth century. The separation was certain to come, sooner or later, but had England pursued a generous, statesmanlike policy towards her American colonies, their independence would have been deferred, and when it did come, it probably would have been a peaceful separation. But the mother was jealous of her lusty child on this side of the ocean; and, alarmed at her growing strength and her yearning for democratic ideas, she sought to crush the sentiment by repressive and tyrannous laws. She made the fatal mistake of believing that she could stamp out disaffection and compel the colonies to feel their dependence to that extent that they would not strike a blow for freedom.

The Navigation Act, which was passed about the middle of the

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Tend-
 ency
 Toward
 National
 Union

Destiny
 of the
 Colo-
 nies

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The
 Naviga-
 tion and
 Importa-
 tion
 Acts

seventeenth century, was a serious blow to the prosperity of the colonies. It caused much dissatisfaction, and was often evaded; but protests were of no avail and it remained in force. In 1733, the Importation Act became law. This laid outrageous duties on sugar, molasses, and rum brought into the provinces. That, too, was often evaded and finally disregarded altogether. Then England forbade the manufacture of steel, or the cutting of pine-trees outside of inclosures. All that these oppressive acts effected was to deepen the resentment of the people.

Resolved to enforce the Importation Act, the English ministry, in 1761, caused the issuance of "writs of assistance," which empowered petty constables to search any house or place, and to seize such goods as they believed had not paid duty. This proceeding roused the anger of the colonies, and in Salem and also in Boston, the courts resisted the application of the writs. The eloquent James Otis, Jr., advocate-general, resigned his office rather than appear in behalf of the crown to sustain the law; in fact, he did not hesitate to denounce the act as unconstitutional. John Adams, speaking of Otis's action on that occasion, observed: "Otis was a flame of fire. With a promptitude of classical allusions, a depth of research, a rapid summary of historical events and dates, a profusion of legal authorities, a prophetic glance into futurity, and a rapid torrent of impetuous eloquence, he carried away all before him. American independence was then and there born." The determined efforts by England, in 1763, to enforce the Importation Act ruined the colonial trade with the West Indies. An immense town meeting was held in Boston, in which the most prominent citizens took part, and protested against the tyranny, but not the slightest heed was paid to them.

Other
 Grounds
 of Dis-
 pute

We need hardly tell the reader of these pages and certainly not the student of history, that Parliament is the governing body of England, and that the House of Commons decides what taxes and customs are necessary for the annual expenses of the kingdom. Our forefathers asserted that the various provincial assemblies constituted their Houses of Commons, and that, so far as they were concerned, they alone should pass upon the question of taxation. England would not agree to this, but insisted on the vested right of taxation by the imperial parliament. At the same time, she refused to allow the Americans to have a representation in that body. This



PAUL REVERE'S RIDE

gave rise to the exasperating grievance: "taxation without representation."*

The first decisive steps towards taxing the American colonies was taken by England in 1764. In March of that year, the House of Commons, by resolution, declared it proper to impose certain stamp duties in the provinces, and gave notice that a bill of that nature would be offered at the next session of parliament. The feeling of irritation in America was fanned into flame by the high-handed course. Public meetings were held in all parts of the country, and fervid protests made against the measure. The newspapers had a theme which overflowed their columns. Not only were remonstrances forwarded to the king and the two houses of Parliament, but agents were sent to England to endeavor to prevent the passage and enforcement of the law.

All was in vain. The great and wise Pitt had ceased to be prime minister, and Parliament scornfully refused the prayer of the American colonies. On the 22d of March, 1765, both houses passed the detested Stamp Act, which proved to be the firebrand of strife in the Revolution. Every member of the House of Lords voted for it, and in the House of Commons it had a majority of five to one. The stubborn monarch, George III., was suffering from a mental malady at the time and could not sign the bill, but the royal assent was given by a board of commissioners acting for him. The provisions of the Stamp Act were that every bond, mortgage, note, deed, license, or legal document of whatever kind, used in the American colonies should be executed on paper bearing an English stamp, and furnished

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



WILLIAM PITT

Passage
 of the
 Stamp
 Act

Provi-
 sions of
 the
 Stamp
 Act

* For several years, as we have seen, the relations between England and her American colonies had been strained to the point of rupture by trade restrictions imposed by the mother country and by the attempt to levy taxes to help her to defray the expenses of the French War and maintain her increased civil and military establishments in this country. This untoward policy arose from the mistake of considering the settlements of the New World as colonial possessions, to be held solely for the financial benefit of England rather than for their own advancement and material well-being. The colonies properly objected to be taxed without their consent, and without representation in the British Parliament, and declared that they were sufficiently oppressed by the burden of customs duties already imposed upon them, and by the share they had borne in the maintenance of their local assemblies.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

by that government. The cost varied according to the nature of the document from three pence to six pounds sterling, or thirty dollars. Every newspaper, pamphlet, or almanac in the colonies had to be printed on stamped paper, costing from a halfpenny to four pence. A tax of two shillings was imposed on every advertisement. No document was legal unless written on paper bearing the hated stamp; the act was to take effect November 1st, 1765.

Anger
 of the
 Colo-
 nies

Never had the colonies been so wrought up as they were by the news of the passage of this law. In Boston the bells were solemnly tolled, and in Philadelphia they were muffled. A multitude, numbering thousands, marched through the streets of New York, holding aloft a copy of the Stamp Act, with a death's-head nailed to it, and with an immense placard displaying the words: "THE FOLLY OF ENGLAND AND THE RUIN OF AMERICA!"

Rioting occurred in the other colonies, and the stamp officers were forced to resign. At the invitation of Massachusetts, the various colonial representatives met in New York, October 7th. At this conference twenty-seven delegates appeared from nine colonies, viz: Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, and South Carolina, while communications were received from the assemblies of Virginia, New Hampshire, North Carolina, and Georgia pledging themselves to agree to whatever was done by the "Stamp Act Congress." That body, during the fourteen days it was in session, fully discussed the rights and grievances of the colonies. John Cruger, of New York, wrote a "Declaration of Rights;" Robert R. Livingston, of the same colony, prepared a "Petition to the King;" and James Otis, of Massachusetts, formulated a "Memorial to both Houses of Parliament," all of which were adopted.

Repeal
 of the
 Stamp
 Act

The sturdy resistance of the Americans produced its effect in England. The Stamp Act was repealed on the 18th of March, 1766. The news caused great rejoicing in America. Congratulatory speeches, cannon peals, bonfires, and illuminations marked the passage of the glad tidings from colony to colony. The delighted Americans in many ways gave expression to the joy of the hour. John Hancock opened a pipe of wine in front of his mansion on Beacon Street, Boston, and invited all to partake. The citizens quickly raised a fund and released every citizen confined in jail for debt. In New York all the bells jangled merrily, cannon boomed,

and a royal salute of twenty-one guns was fired. The Sons of Liberty raised a tall pole in front of Warren Street, upon which was placed the inscription,—“His Most Gracious Majesty, George the Third, Mr. Pitt, and Liberty.” It was decided to erect a statue of Pitt and an equestrian statue of the king. Both were set up in 1770. The former was of marble, and the latter of lead! Six years later, the statue of the king was melted into bullets with which to fight his invading soldiers.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



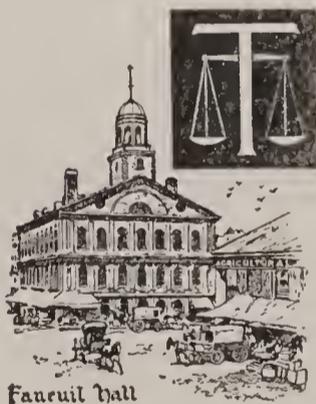


CHAPTER XXIX

THE MUTTERINGS OF WAR

[*Authorities* : The spirit of resistance, as will be seen from the present chapter, was soon now to take a determined form ; for, on the one hand, the king and his ministers stubbornly insisted on England's right to derive some benefit from her colonies ; while, on the other hand, the colonists as persistently held to the principle of no taxation without representation, and upheld the rights of their own Assemblies. The results of the pending conflict will now be traced in the text as they successively developed themselves. The authorities, English and American, for the period are both historical and biographical. They include Green's "History of the English People ;" Lecky's "England in the 18th Century ;" Lodge's "Short History of the American Colonies ;" Bryant and Gay's, Bancroft's, and Hildreth's United States Histories ; Fiske's "American Revolution ;" Sparks's "Washington ;" Morse's, McMaster's, and Parton's Lives of Benjamin Franklin ; Tudor's "Life of Otis ;" Coit Tyler's "Patrick Henry ;" Hosmer's "Samuel Adams ;" and Morse's "John Adams."]]

More
Oppres-
sive
Meas-
ures



Faneuil Hall

HE rejoicing throughout the colonies over the repeal of the Stamp Act was not allowed to continue long. The repeal was simply an act of expediency. England was as insistent as ever upon her right to tax the Americans, without allowing them a voice in the matter ; and even in the midst of the general jubilation there were many thoughtful patriots who saw that the grave trouble was postponed only for a short time. England passed more oppressive measures, and the royal governors and her agents were ordered to enforce them. Since Boston was the hot-bed of the revolt, two regiments of British soldiers were brought thither from Halifax, by order of General Gage, the military governor of Massachusetts. Against the indignant remonstrances of the citizens, they were landed on the first day of October, 1768.

Governor Bernard had gone into the country to escape the resentful wrath of the people. The citizens had been ordered to provide quarters for the troops, and their officers now demanded them. They refused, at which the officers blustered and made ominous threats. Then by force one regiment encamped in tents on the Common,

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



OTIS AND THE COMMISSIONER

while the other bivouacked as best they could. The night was cold, and the soldiers suffered so much that the people were touched with pity and Faneuil Hall was thrown open to them. Their presence, however, was a source of constant irritation. They were overbearing to the citizens, while the latter taunted them on the streets. Affrays were numerous and only a spark was needed to produce an explosion.

British
 Soldiers
 in Bos-
 ton

Opposition to taxation without representation nerved all the col-

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The Bos-
 ton Mas-
 sacre

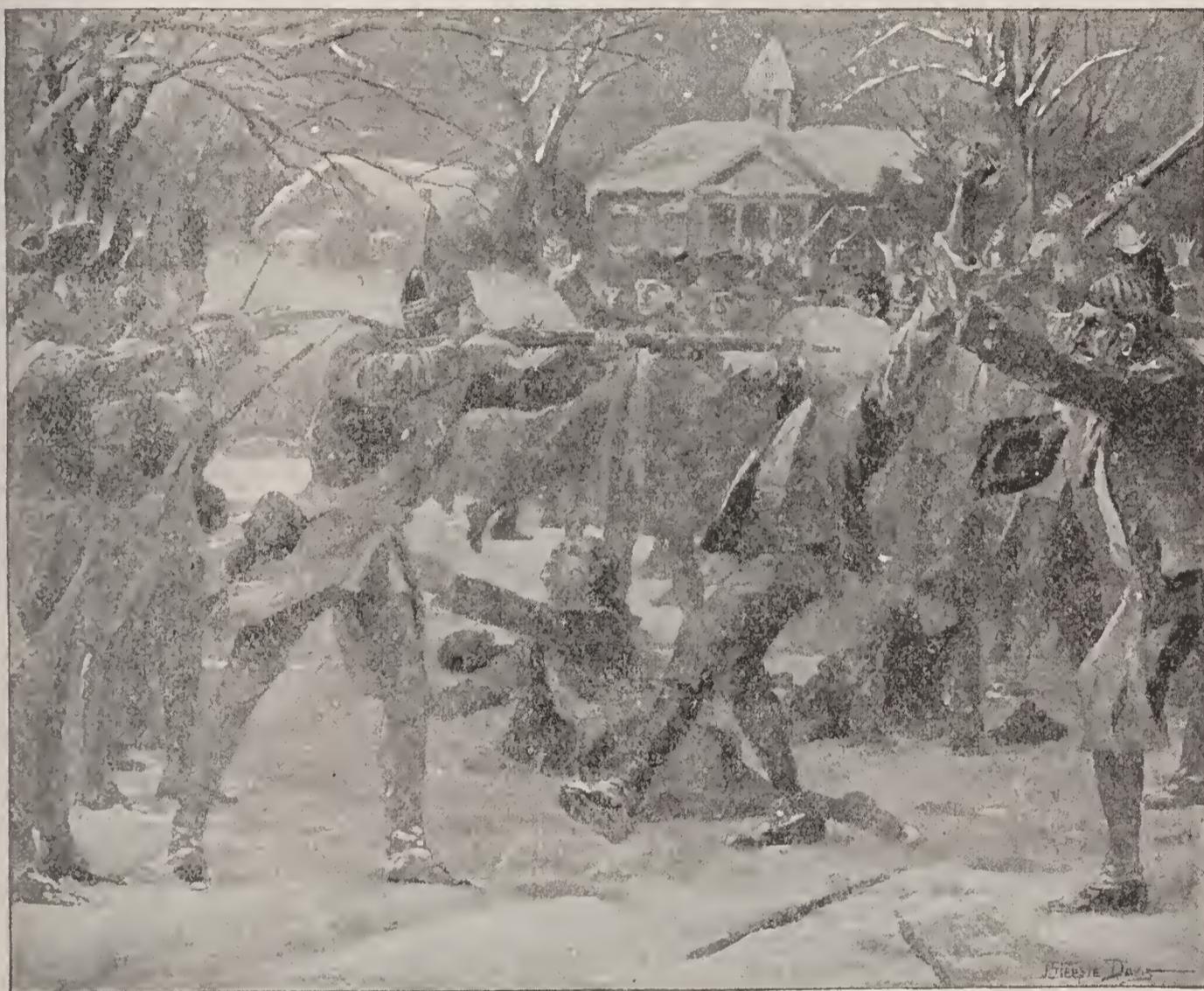
onies to the point of open resistance. Affairs in Boston grew more threatening. The eloquent Otis had been slandered in England by a commissioner, whom he took to task in a Boston newspaper. The two met in a coffee-house and the commissioner attempted to pull Otis's nose. A fierce bout followed, during which Otis received so vicious a blow on the head from a heavy cane that it permanently affected his brain and destroyed his usefulness for the remainder of his life. Yet he lived to the close of the Revolution, pitied by all, and, in the spring of 1782, met death in a manner for which he had often expressed a longing: he was killed by a stroke of lightning.*

The first serious affray between the citizens of Boston and the soldiers occurred on March 5th, 1770. There had been a number of collisions, and the town was in a feverish state. An officer was sauntering along the street, when a boy, pointing at him, called out that he was too mean to pay his barber for dressing his hair. A sentinel standing near the Custom House, overhearing the insult, ran out and knocked the boy down with the butt of his musket. The boy was not so badly hurt as to be unable to use his voice, and he emitted a series of yells which quickly brought a crowd to the spot. An alarm bell was rung and the excitement spread. The boy pointed out the soldier who had struck him, and the crowd began pelting him with snowballs and lumps of ice. He raised his musket and pulled the trigger, but the weapon missed fire. The crowd rushed at him and he ran to the Custom House, near by. Captain Preston, the officer of the day, sent out eight soldiers with unloaded muskets, but provided with ball cartridges. He himself accompanied them, ner-

* James Otis [1725-1783], the eloquent and impetuous leader of the patriotic party in the War of the Revolution, was born at West Barnstable, Mass., and graduated at Harvard College in his eighteenth year. In 1746, he began the practice of law at Plymouth, and four years afterwards removed to Boston, where he became a law-officer of the crown, and ultimately Advocate-General of the Admiralty. In 1760, the British authorities put in force in the colonies what were termed "Writs of Assistance," giving power to customs officers to enter any man's house suspected of concealing smuggled goods. The legality of the measure was challenged, and Otis, as shown, rather than defend the enforcement of the writs, resigned his office and appeared for the people against their issuance and operation. Soon afterwards he was elected a member of the State Legislature, and he at once made his mark as an influential speaker on the side of liberty, and eloquently denounced British aggression on the rights of the people. In 1765, his own State (Massachusetts) sent him as a delegate to the first Continental Congress, where he became conspicuous as a leader and an impassioned orator, denouncing with telling effect the imposition of the Stamp Act and other oppressions of the Crown. We have seen, in the text, what unhappy circumstance brought on mental derangement, and how sad and calamitous was the patriot's end.

vous, but self-possessed, and it must be admitted that he showed commendable restraint. As the detachment approached, the citizens hurled snow and ice at them and shouted insulting epithets. Crispus Attucks, a muscular Nantucket Indian sailor, uttered a war-whoop and called on his companions to attack the soldiers, who, seeing that a collision was certain, began loading their guns. The crowd pressed upon them from all sides, struck their muskets with clubs,

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



THE BOSTON MASSACRE

and called them cowards for bringing arms against men who had no weapons. "Come on!" shouted Attucks to his friends; "they darsen't fire! Knock 'em down! Let's kill 'em all!"

Captain Preston begged the mob to refrain, but his appeal was vain. Attucks aimed a blow at Preston's head with his club, but the officer parried it by throwing up his arm. It struck a musket, knocked it from the grasp of the soldier, who stooped at the same instant with Attucks, both seizing it together and wrestling violently for it. "Why don't you fire? Will you wait till we are

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

killed?" shouted several persons behind Preston. The soldier just then, by a fierce wrench, twisted the weapon from the hands of Attucks and shot him dead. Captain Preston, who had lost his patience, neither ordered his men to fire nor to refrain. A half-dozen discharged their guns into the crowd, for their lives were in danger. As the frightened mob scattered, eight forms were seen stretched on the ground, while three others were slightly hurt. Three were dead, and of the five remaining, two were mortally wounded. The soldiers were now thoroughly roused and would have fired upon the citizens, who ran forward to carry away the bodies, had not Captain Preston forbidden them.

Trial of
 the Sol-
 diers

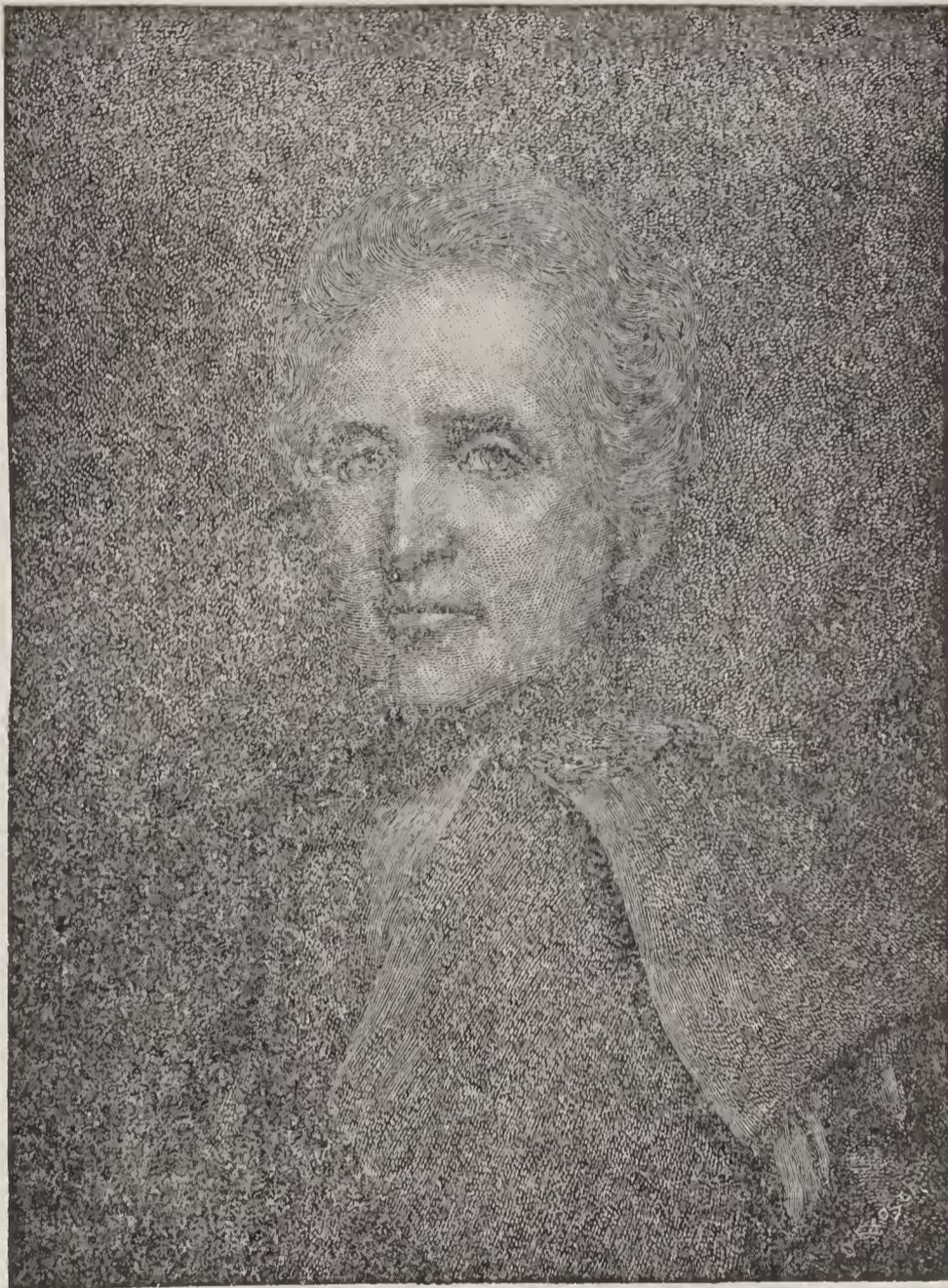
It seemed but a few minutes until news of the tragedy had spread from one end of Boston to the other. Although it was late at night, lights twinkled from every house, the alarm bells were rung, drums beaten, and men swarmed to the scene of the affray. Colonel Dalrymple promised the citizens that justice should be done in the morning, and gradually they returned to their homes. Meanwhile, Captain Preston and the eight soldiers were arrested, and the next day were charged with the crime of murder. It was not until autumn, when the excitement had considerably subsided, that the accused were brought to trial before a court in Boston. The prisoners were defended by Josiah Quincy, Jr., and John Adams, both of whom were inspired by the highest of motives, though many of their countrymen censured them for their course. Robert Treat Paine, afterwards a signer of the Declaration of Independence, was counsel for the crown. Captain Preston and six of the soldiers were declared not guilty. The others were convicted of manslaughter, branded with a hot iron on the hand in open court, and discharged.

Settle-
 ment of
 the
 South-
 west

Something like a lull in the obnoxious legislation of parliament followed the Boston Massacre and lasted for two years. During that period, the restless spirit of adventure led many Americans to cross the Alleghanies and explore the valleys of the Ohio, Cumberland, and Tennessee rivers, while others penetrated the wilderness in the more southern portions of the Mississippi valley. Daniel Boone and his brother pioneers were traversing the Kentucky forests and opening the way for settlements, while James Robertson went to that part of Tennessee called Wautaga in 1770. He rode over the mountains from North Carolina to the Great Smokies, where he found that a few settlers had preceded him. He was so pleased with the

country that he returned to North Carolina, and in the following spring came back with fifteen families, besides his own. He was an enterprising man and formed a creditable government, which, six years later, was organized into Washington county, as a part of North Carolina. The colony thrived and was the first distinct body to move

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



DANIEL BOONE

into the wilderness and build dwellings for themselves and their families.

The Indians resented this intrusion upon their lands, and what is known as Lord Dunmore's War soon broke out. The decisive battle was fought at Point Pleasant on the Great Kanawha, October 10th, 1774. The Shawanoes, the fiercest of the western tribes, were led by the famous chief Cornstalk, who brought more than a thousand warriors a long distance through the forest with such stealth that none of

Lord
 Dun-
 more's
 War

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

the whites knew that he was approaching the Great Kanawha until he had arrived there. The Indians' line of battle was a mile long. The forces of the settlers were in number about the same as those of their enemies, and they fought for hours with only a few rods separating the lines. Cornstalk showed more skill than did Colonel Lewis, the commander of the whites, but the battle was a drawn one. In the night, however, the Shawanoes fled across the Ohio. Their loss was over two hundred, while that of the whites was one hundred and thirty men and half the commissioned officers. Some time later, a conference was held with the Indians and a satisfactory peace arranged.

Battle of
 Alama-
 nance,
 N. C.

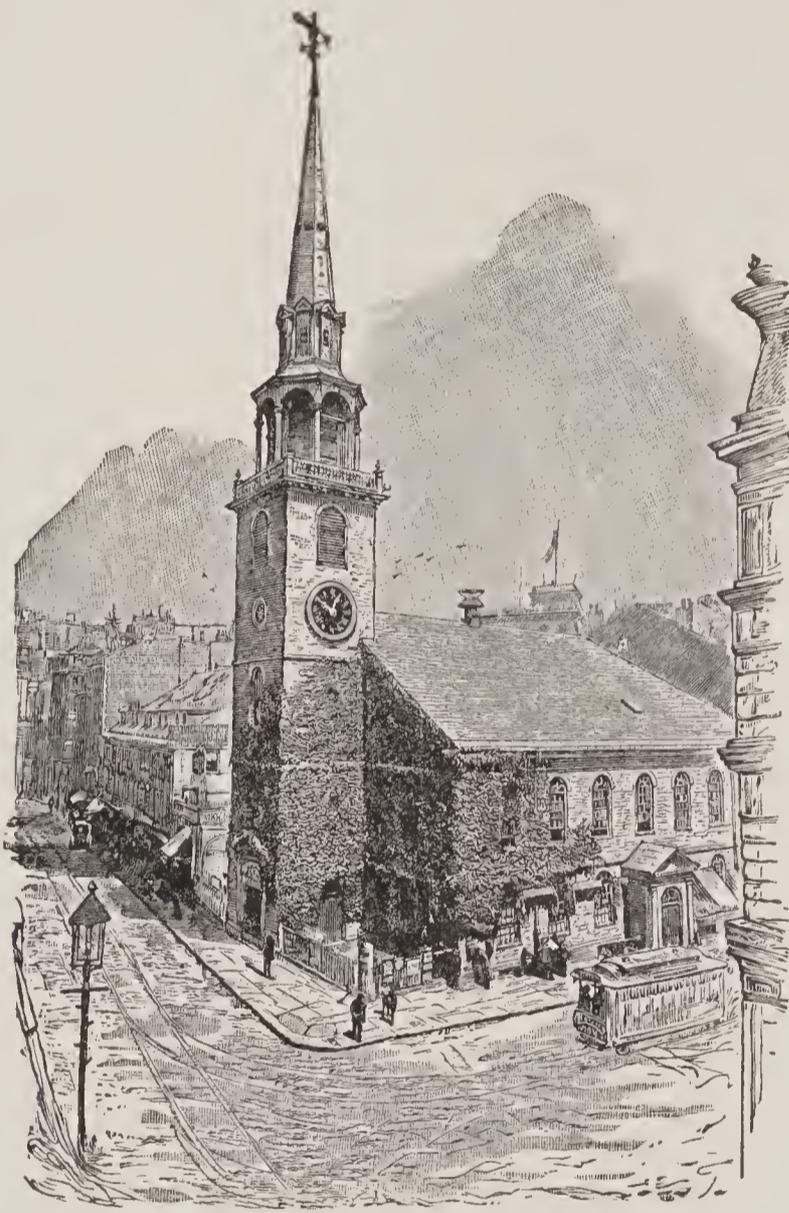
Governor Tryon ruled in North Carolina. He was a bitter royalist, passionate and revengeful, wholly lacking in tact and generosity. Legislation in that colony became so oppressive that bands of Regulators* were formed and anarchy prevailed. A man named Husband was imprisoned at New Berne and was released by these bands. Governor Tryon, with three hundred militia and several pieces of artillery, set out to punish the Regulators, and while encamped on the Eno received reinforcements. He also learned that other troops on their way to join him with ammunition had been routed by Regulators and the powder taken from them. Tryon pushed on to Alama-nance Creek, where he encountered those who defied the law. In the parley which followed, Tryon became angered at one of the Regulators, an old man, who came forward to meet him under a flag of truce. Snatching a musket from one of the soldiers, he shot the messenger dead. The Regulator bearing the flag of truce by a sharp dash reached his own lines without injury, although repeatedly fired upon. In the fight which followed, in May, 1771, nine of the militia and twenty of those who sought to have the laws honestly executed were killed. This, in reality, was the first battle in our War for Independence.

The commissioners of customs at Boston, in the summer of 1772, despatched the *Gaspé*, an armed British schooner, into Narragansett Bay to enforce the revenue laws. Governor Wanton, of Rhode Island, sent the high-sheriff on board the *Gaspé* with a demand upon

* An organized rising of the people in North Carolina, who resisted the payment of taxes, and other extortionate levies, except those authorized and justly imposed by their own laws.

Lieutenant Dudingston to show his commission. That officer refused and was insolent and threatening. He ordered ships in passing the *Gaspé* to lower their colors by way of salute, and when they failed to do so, he fired upon them. On the 9th of June, 1772, the packet *Hannah* refused to pay homage and the *Gaspé* gave chase. In the pursuit, the *Gaspé* ran aground and remained fast. Learning of her predicament, John Brown, a well-known merchant of Providence, organized an expedition to destroy her. Eight boats, with

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



THE OLD SOUTH CHURCH, BOSTON

four men in each, under charge of Captain Whipple, were collected at night, and as many more joined the expedition and were rowed with muffled oars to the stranded vessel. Seeing them approach, Lieutenant Dudingston ordered them to keep off, and, when they continued to approach, he fired his pistol among them. Instantly a musket replied, wounding the Lieutenant, who was carried below. The Americans boarded the vessel, and the crew were sent ashore

Destruction
 of
 the
Gaspé

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

with their property. Then the *Gaspé* was set on fire and some hours later blew up.

This, it is true, was a high-handed act, and large rewards were offered both by the governor and by the English government for the apprehension of the perpetrators; but though the participants were well known to scores of people, no one betrayed them. In 1775, after the war with Great Britain had begun, there was no longer any need of keeping the secret, which became the property of all. Sir James Wallace was blockading Narragansett Bay, while Whipple was in command of a small provincial naval force intended for its protection. One day he received the following note:

“You, Abraham Whipple, on the 10th of June, 1772, burned his Majesty’s vessel, the *Gaspé*, and I will hang you at the yard-arm.
 JAMES WALLACE.”

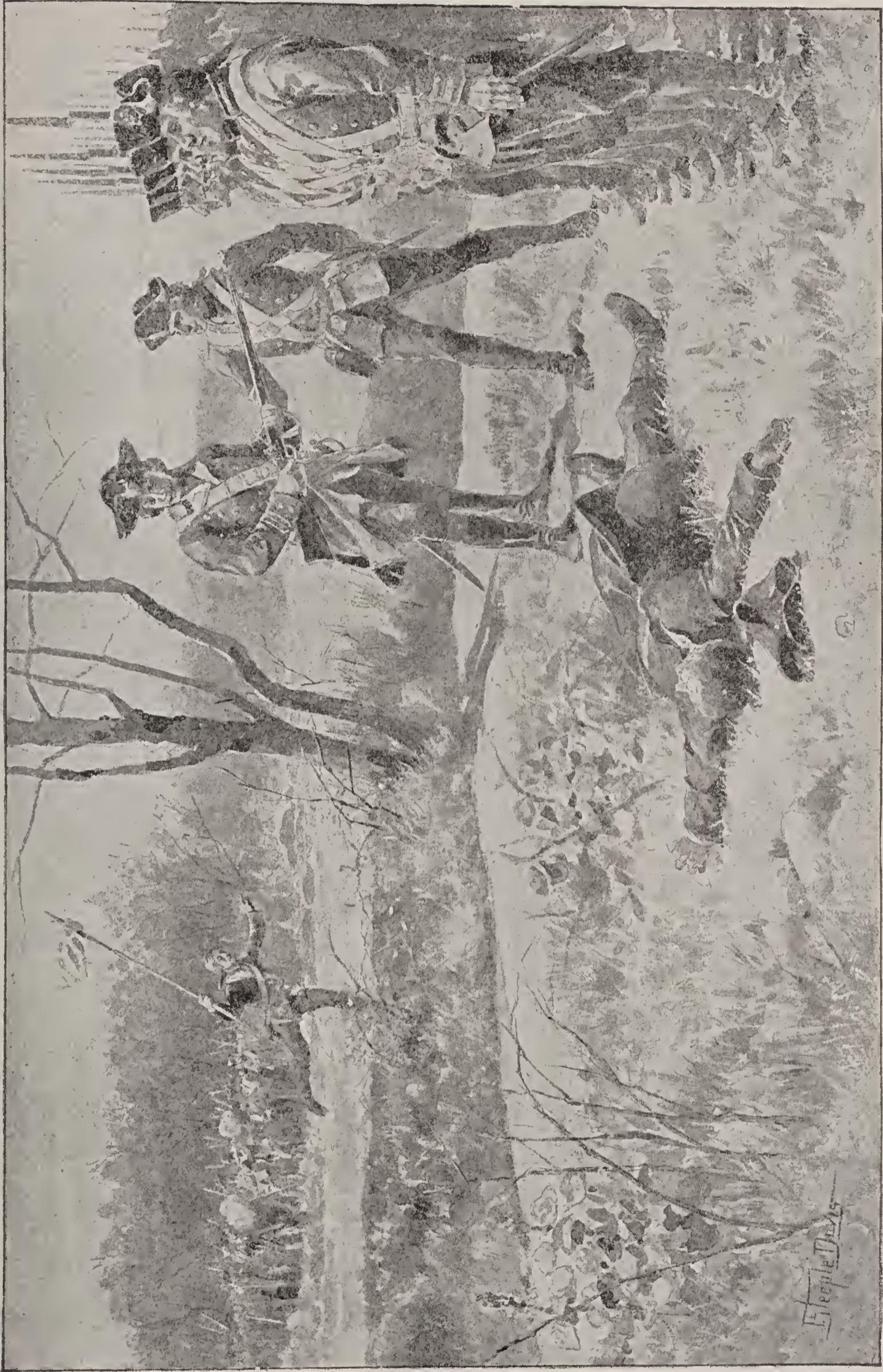
Promptly the following answer went back:

“SIR,—Always catch a man before you hang him!
 ABRAHAM WHIPPLE.”

Resist-
 ance to
 the Tax
 on Tea

Since the Americans were striving for a principle, England was equally determined to enforce its asserted right to levy a share of the imperial burdens upon the colonies. Taxes were removed from all articles except tea, and the tax upon that was made so light that it could be bought cheaper in America with the tax than in England without it. Confident that the luxury would be purchased upon these terms, the East India Company filled several of their ships with cargoes of tea, and, in August, 1773, despatched them to America,—one to Charleston, one to Philadelphia, one to New York, and the others to Boston. All these places received notice of what was coming, and resolved that the cargoes should not be allowed to land. The first public meeting to consider the matter was held in New York, October 15th, 1773. The “Mohawks,” as the anti-tax citizens were called, organized and were soon ready for action. The vessel on her way to the city, however, was driven out of its course by a storm and put into Antigua for repairs. It did not arrive until April, 1774. When the *Nancy* appeared she was detained in the lower bay by pilots, and a vigilance committee took possession, until the captain agreed to return to England without breaking the packages. The same course was taken in Philadelphia, while the cargo which reached Charleston was purposely stored in damp cellars where it soon rotted and became worthless.

Boston was seething with excitement for days before the *Dart-*



FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY J. STEEPLE DAVIS

ALAMANCE THE FIRST BATTLE OF THE REVOLUTION

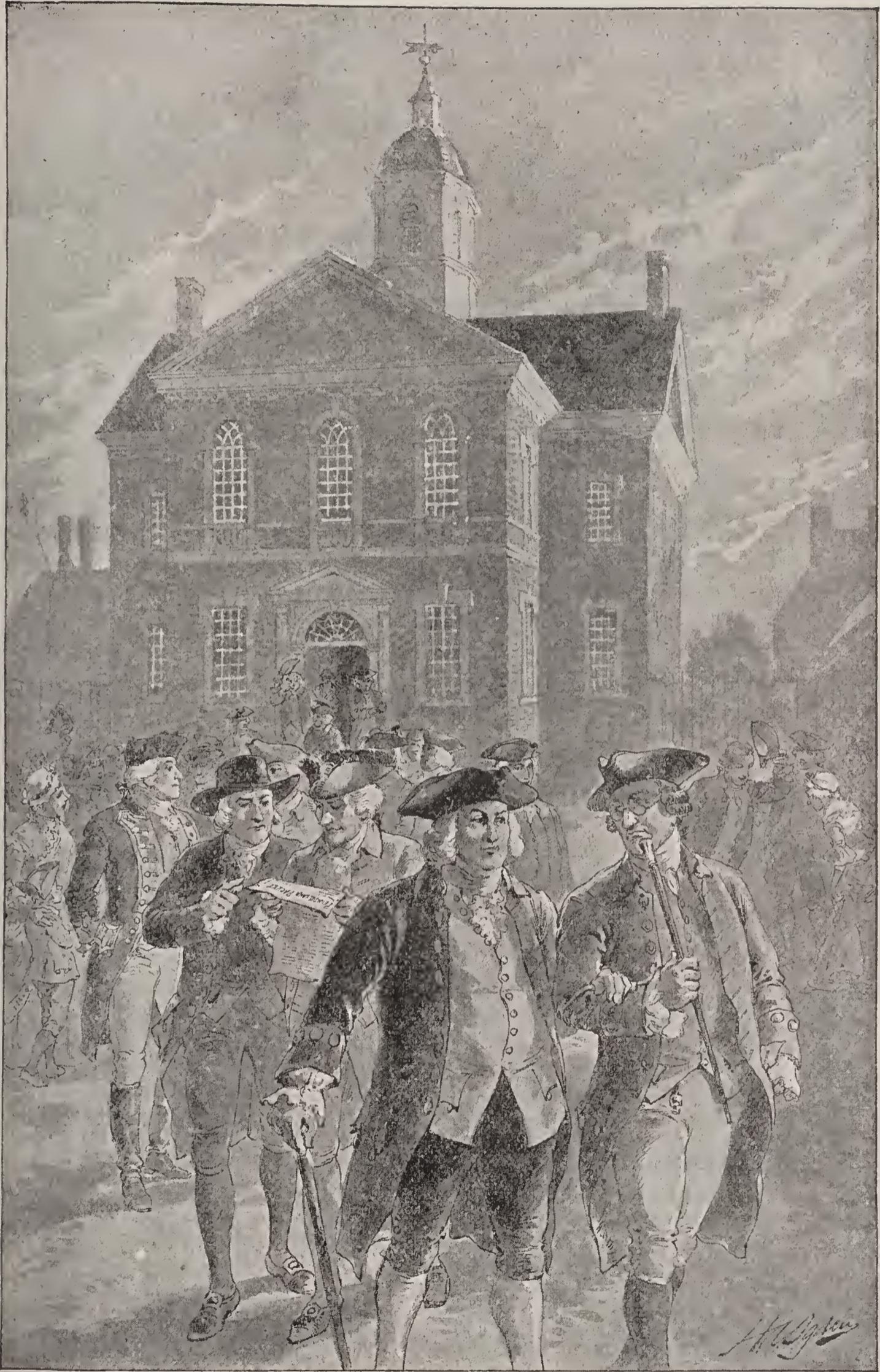
PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

mouth with her cargo of tea reached that port. The town was placarded with calls to the citizens to rise against tyranny, and numerous public meetings were held at which fiery resolutions were adopted amid wild cheering. Two other tea-ships soon arrived and were moored alongside the *Dartmouth* at Griffin's Wharf. An immense assemblage gathered in and around the Old South Meeting House early in the evening of December 16th, 1773. Stirring addresses were made by Josiah Quincy and Samuel Adams. While the latter was speaking word was received that the governor, who had been asked to give his consent to return the obnoxious tea to England, would not allow any of the tea vessels to leave the port until their cargoes were landed. "Then," said Adams, "this meeting can do no more to save the country!"—implying that it could not now be saved to England.

The Bos-
 ton Tea
 Party

These words it had been agreed should be a signal for the action that had been previously discussed. A man in the gallery, painted and dressed like an Indian, gave a war-whoop, which was answered by others, and instantly a rush was made for Griffin's Wharf. The "Mohawks" seemed to spring from the ground, and running to the pier swarmed aboard the ships. In the space of three hours 342 chests of tea were burst open and their contents emptied into the bay. Sixty men were engaged in the work, many of whom were not disguised. There was no disorder or shouting, and when the "Boston Tea Party" had concluded their operations the multitude separated to their homes.* The news of this daring act reached England in the following January. As may be supposed, it caused much indignation, and Parliament retaliated by passing the Boston Port Bill, which closed the port of Boston to all outside trade until the people had paid for the tea destroyed. It also passed a bill to regulate the government of Massachusetts, which took the right of

* The determination to prevent the bringing of tea into the country was not confined to the ships sent by England. The *Peggy Stewart*, owned by a merchant of Annapolis, Md., sailed into that harbor, October 19th, 1774. The citizens notified the owner that the tea must be sent back to England. He refused, whereupon a party took possession, and placing a torch in the hand of the owner, compelled him to set fire to his own vessel and its cargo. The act was done openly and the ship and cargo were burned to ashes. The obdurate owner was never able to obtain redress. In 1890, the Maryland Society selected "Peggy Stewart Day" as the date of its annual meeting. The destruction of the ship and tea was celebrated with considerable ceremony so late as 1894—a hundred and twenty years afterwards.



FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY H. A. OGDEN

DELEGATES LEAVING CARPENTER'S HALL AFTER A SESSION

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The Boston
 Port
 Bill

Prepara-
 tions for
 War

nomination to certain important offices from the people and gave it to the governor, and forbade the assembling of citizens to discuss public questions; a bill to transport offenders to other provinces or to Great Britain for trial, which gave to any one charged with murder, committed in aid of the magistrates, the right to be tried in England and not in the colonies (virtually a pledge of acquittal); and what is called the Quebec bill, which annexed all the territory north of the Ohio River and east of the Mississippi to Canada.

The Boston Port Bill reached Massachusetts May 10th, 1774, a few days after General Gage had been appointed governor of the colony. It had been received in New York at an earlier date. There was a large Tory element in the city, but the patriots resolved to stand by Massachusetts in the fight she had begun. New York proposed, as the first important step, a general congress of the colonies. Each colony accepted the suggestion, joining also in the pledge to support Massachusetts, which had sent a circular letter to them asking for their countenance and co-operation. The port of Boston was closed at noon, June 1st, 1774. In Philadelphia and other towns the bells tolled a funeral-knell, while in many other places the day was observed by fasting and prayer for the safety of the country. The law was rigorously enforced and soon caused widespread suffering in Boston, but her sister colonies promptly responded, shipping provisions to the half-starving people. Even the city of London, in its corporate capacity, sent three-quarters of a million of dollars for the relief of the poor in Boston. Marblehead and Salem offered the free use of their wharves and stores to their afflicted neighbor.

Meanwhile, the mutterings of war grew louder throughout the land. Men from all stations in life joined military companies which practised tactics day and night. Many had not forgotten the lessons learned in the French and Indian War, a dozen years before. Boys trained with sticks for muskets, and the anvils of the blacksmiths rang as they forged guns, swords, and bayonets, while others made gunpowder, and the women assisted in heating the bullet moulds and melting lead. After the close of Congress at Philadelphia, the Provincial Congress of Massachusetts voted to enroll 12,000 of her patriots, under the general name of "Minute-Men," who were volunteers that would be ready at a minute's notice to take the field with weapons in hand. Connecticut and Rhode Island did the same: other colonies caught the contagion of patriotism, and in

Virginia the minute-men formed an important part of her military force.

The instructions which reached General Gage in the summer of 1774 annulled the government of Massachusetts and made him autocrat of the province. He formed a council of thirty-six members, but the indignation of their fellow-citizens quickly forced twenty of them to resign, and the others cowered under the protection of the troops in Boston. A convention of delegates, representing the towns in the county to which Boston belonged, met on the 6th of September, 1774, and boldly declared that the acts of Parliament were not entitled to obedience; recommended the seizure as hostages of such crown-officers as fell in their way, after any patriot should be arrested for a political offence, and protested against the fortifications begun by the soldiers of General Gage on Boston Neck as an act of hostility. They declared that they would not begin war, but would act, at first at least, on the defensive; and they further notified the general that they would never submit to the late acts of Parliament affecting Americans.

On the 5th of September, 1774, the first Continental Congress met in Carpenter's Hall, Philadelphia. There were present forty-four delegates, ten fewer than the number elected. Georgia, the youngest of all the colonies, was unrepresented. Among the Virginia delegates were George Washington and Patrick Henry. All were able and patriotic men, who had only the good of their country at heart. Peyton Randolph, an eminent lawyer of Virginia, was made president. The discussions were worthy of the great minds that took part in them, and who fully comprehended the tremendous crisis that was at hand. The feeling was general that the hour had not yet come for a formal separation from the mother country, and it was hoped that the stubborn king and Parliament would comprehend the danger in time to do justice to the Americans and win them back to their allegiance,—at this period an easy thing to do. On the 8th of October, however, the following resolution was passed:

“ That this Congress approve the opposition of the inhabitants of Massachusetts Bay to the execution of the late acts of Parliament; and if the same shall be attempted to be carried into execution by force, in such case all America ought to support them in their opposition.”

This peremptory promise of action was the reply to the letter

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

General
 Gage
 made
 Military
 Governor
 of
 Massa-
 chusetts

The
 First
 Contin-
 ental
 Con-
 gress

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Acts of
 the Con-
 gress

written on the 29th of September by the Boston Committee of Correspondence, reciting the wrongs suffered by the inhabitants of that town, and asking whether they should abandon their homes and leave Boston, or suffer a little longer. A letter was also sent to General Gage warning him that the steps he was taking in erecting fortifications was likely to involve the colonies in civil war.

On October 14th, the congress adopted a "Declaration of Colonial Rights," which pronounced the several obnoxious acts of Parliament, including the Quebec act, an infringement of the rights of the colonies. Six days later, the American Association was adopted, which was a non-importation, non-consumption, and non-exportation agreement applied to Great Britain, Ireland, the West Indies, and Madeira. A week later, an "Address to the People of Great Britain," written by John Jay, was adopted, including a "Memorial to the Inhabitants of the Several British-American Colonies," prepared by William Livingston. The 26th of October was the last day of Congress, and it was then that it agreed to the "Petition to the King," from the pen of John Dickinson, setting forth in mild, conciliatory terms the final decision of the colonies, including also an "Address to the Inhabitants of the Province of Quebec," written by the same delegate. Then the First Continental Congress, having recommended another assembling of the body on the 10th of the following May, if their grievances were not redressed, adjourned, having been in actual session thirty-one days of the eight weeks.

The Re-
 volt in
 Massa-
 chusetts

King George stubbornly turned a deaf ear to the prayers of his American children. General Gage was instructed to do his duty, without fear or favor, and he obeyed commands. He had summoned the Assembly of Massachusetts to meet at Salem, on the 5th of October, to consider the acts of Parliament; but the patriots had become so bold, because of the course of the Continental Congress, that he countermanded the order. Ninety of the members, however, denying his right to recall the order, met on the day named, waited two days for the governor, who did not show himself, and then organized by resolving themselves into a provincial congress, with John Hancock president, and Benjamin Lincoln secretary. Then they adjourned to Concord, where two hundred and sixty members took their seats on the 11th instant, after which an adjournment was had to Cambridge. A message was sent to Gage notifying him that for want of a legal Assembly they had organized a convention. They

protested against the recent acts of the king, affirmed their loyalty to the Crown, but complained of the fortifying of Boston Neck. Gage replied that the fortifications were for the purpose of defence, denounced the convention as an illegal body, and warned the members to refrain from further action. But he might as well have striven to dam the Mississippi as to stem the tide of patriotism which was rising every hour and would soon break all barriers.

PERIOD III
 ———
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783
 ———





CHAPTER XXX

EVENTS OF 1775 (LEXINGTON AND CONCORD)

[*Authorities:* The estrangement was now complete, and revolution, it will be seen, takes the place of protest against the untoward policy of the king and his ministers. It is doubtless easy now to say that constitutional means of redress had not been exhausted and that there was, as yet, no reason to despair of obtaining a repeal of the Tea Duty as there had been a repeal of the Stamp Tax. But a self-respecting people were, aside from the obnoxious levying, not apt to submit tamely to such irritations as the Quarterings Act, or to the violence of a stubborn king and his ministers and the autocracy of his haughty generals. Continued "fidelity to the Crown now became treason to the Commonwealth." For the authorities of the period, in addition to the works quoted at the head of the previous chapter, see May's "Constitutional History of England;" Trevelyan's "Life of Charles James Fox;" Payne's "European Colonies;" Doyle's "United States" (in Freeman's Historical Course); Hart's "Formation of the Union;" Irving's "Life of Washington;" Lossing's "Field-Book of the Revolution," and Ludlow's "War of American Independence." The student of literature as well as of history will not fail to be attracted by Longfellow's spirited poem, "Paul Revere's Ride," in reading of that patriotic episode.]

Eve of
the Rev-
olution



THE air of Boston was full of defiance. The first sparks of the mighty conflagration were aglow and needed but to be fanned by some slight incident to burst into a flame that would spread like a prairie fire. Gage* had about four thousand well-disciplined soldiers in the town and was anxious to crush the rebellion before it broke into open action; but he hesitated as to the best course to take. Soon, however, he formed a plan. John Hancock and Samuel Adams were the leaders who were fearless in their utterances and who had roused

* General Thomas Gage [1721-1787] served, in 1755, under Braddock in his ill-fated expedition against Fort Du Quesne. Five years later, he was appointed Governor of

the Americans by their patriotic appeals. Their voices rang out like trumpet-blasts, and Gage believed that if they could be quieted, the rising storm would subside. He determined to arrest both and send them to England for trial, on the charge of treason. Whether hanged or not, they would be beyond the possibility of doing the infinite harm they were now causing to the crown. Gage had learned, too, that the patriots were collecting powder and ball at Concord and other places, so an opportunity was presented for "killing two birds with one stone:" he would arrest Hancock and Adams and seize the munitions of war at the same time. He fixed upon the night of April 18th for striking these blows.

To insure success, it was necessary that his scheme should be kept secret, but it leaked out in a singular way. A letter to London was intercepted, in which the whole thing was revealed. Adams and Hancock were attending the Lexington Provincial Congress, when they received warning of their personal peril. Congress adjourned on the 15th of April, and Adams and Hancock lingered behind at the house of their friend, Rev. Mr. Clarke, their watchful followers promising to give them due notice of the approach of danger. At the same time, the "minute-men"* were on the alert, ready to fly to arms the moment the English troops set out from Boston, while wagons were waiting to remove the ammunition to a place of safety.

Lexington, where Adams and Hancock were awaiting events, was ten miles from Boston, and Gage was more anxious to secure the two than he was to destroy the military supplies. He arranged to send out his troops secretly late at night, march them hastily to Lexington, and arrest the patriots while in bed. That done, the troops would hurry to Concord, six miles further, destroy the cannon and stores and then return to Boston, before the "rebels" could rally and offer serious resistance. It was a well-formed scheme and might have worked perfectly had not the patriots learned everything before the first step was taken. Gage had posted officers at all the roads

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

**General
 Gage**

**Design
 to Cap-
 ture
 Adams
 and Han-
 cock**

Montreal, and on the departure of General Sir Jeffery Amherst from Canada succeeded him as commander-in-chief of the British forces in America. In 1774, he was appointed Governor of Massachusetts and became the last crown governor of that colony. His stern character and impolitic bearing hastened the outbreak of the Revolutionary War, and after the battle of Bunker Hill he was recalled to England. Sir William Howe relieved him of his command.

* Bands of enrolled patriots, who had pledged themselves to respond *at a minute's notice* to a call for their services. Hence they were called "minute-men."

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

March
 of the
 British

leading out of Boston, to prevent persons leaving and alarming the minute-men. These guards sauntered to their stations at different times, so as to divert suspicion, but their real purpose was suspected, and a squad of minute-men guarded the house in Lexington where Adams and Hancock were lodging. Nothing was done by Gage that evening; but, on the afternoon of the 18th of April, the movement of the troops left no doubt that the crisis was at hand. Everybody was on the watch, and the excitement was intense.

It was about ten o'clock that evening that eight hundred troops marched as silently as shadows to the foot of the Common, where they entered boats and passed over to Cambridge. They were under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn. Up to this time Gage was confident that his purpose was unsuspected; but a remark by one of the Americans watching the movements of the soldiers showed that it was known that they were on their way to Concord. Gage instantly issued orders that no person should be allowed to leave Boston that night.

The order was just too late. William Dawes had ridden at full speed over the Neck on his way to warn Hancock and Adams, and Dr. Warren and Paul Revere were at Charlestown awaiting events. The two men hardly removed their eyes from the belfry of the old North Church, looming up in the dim moonlight like some grim sentinel. They were expecting a signal to be displayed there, and were not disappointed.

Paul Re-
 vere's
 Ride

The night was well advanced when two starlike points of light gleamed from the belfry. They were made by a couple of lanterns which the sexton suspended, as he had agreed to do, in case the British soldiers left the town by water, while a single lantern was to be the signal if they marched by land. Revere leaped at once into the saddle of his swift horse and dashed across Charlestown Neck. Two British soldiers heard the clatter of hoofs and saw the horseman coming straight towards them on a dead run. They stepped out into the highway to check him, and he wheeled, dashed back towards Charlestown, turned into the Medford road, and sped out into the country with arrowy swiftness. It was about midnight when he drew rein in front of Mr. Clarke's house at Lexington, where a number of guards were on watch.

"Where is Mr. Hancock?" asked Revere; "I must see him at once."

“The family have retired,” replied the sergeant, “and I have been ordered to prevent their disturbance.”

“They will soon be disturbed, for ‘the regulars’ are on their way to Lexington,” was the startling reply of Revere, as he dismounted and knocked at the door. Mr. Clarke raised an upper window and looked out.

“Who’s there, and what is wanted?” he asked.

“I wish to see Mr. Hancock at once.”

“It is so late that I do not care to admit strangers,” said Mr. Clarke.

Hancock in an adjoining room was awake, and recognized Revere’s voice. He called to him from the window to enter, and the messenger was quickly admitted and his alarming story told. While they were discussing the matter, Dawes, the other horseman, who had come by another route, arrived, and he also entered the house, where the whole family were astir. Refreshments were set out for the messengers, who, bidding the folks good-by, remounted their horses and galloped towards Concord, rousing the people as they passed over the road.

While thus engaged, the clatter of hoofs was heard behind them, and, looking back, they saw a horseman approaching. He proved to be Dr. Samuel Prescott, who had been spending the evening with a young lady in Lexington. He was as an equally ardent patriot, and readily joined them in their work of rousing the people between the two towns. Revere was riding in advance, when suddenly he was surrounded by several British officers, who made him and Dawes prisoners. They attempted to take Prescott also, but he was well mounted, and wheeling his horse leaped him over a stone wall and escaped. Speeding straight away for Concord, he reached the little village at about two o’clock in the morning, and at once spread the alarm. Meanwhile, Revere and Dawes were sharply questioned about Adams and Hancock, but would not give satisfactory answers. The indignant captors threatened to shoot them, and just then the church bells of Lexington began ringing out on the still air. “That means that the people are rising,” cried Revere, with well-feigned excitement; “you will soon be surrounded—you will not be spared—you will be killed!” The clamor of the bells increased, and the British abandoned their prisoners and made all haste back to Boston. Revere and Dawes thereupon resumed their ride towards Concord, where they soon arrived.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The
 Patriots
 Warned

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783
 Affairs
 at Con-
 cord

It was hardly light, when Captain John Parker, standing in front of Lexington meeting-house, called the company roll and ordered his men to load with powder and ball. Although the day which followed was one of the warmest of the season, it was chilly at that early hour, and since the soldiers were not within hearing, Captain Parker directed his men to take shelter in their own houses until the invaders arrived. Meanwhile, Colonel Smith, advancing with his eight hundred troops, saw from the excitement on every hand that the country was aroused and that there would be sharp fighting before they could complete their work and return to Boston. He sent to General Gage for reinforcements and ordered Pitcairn to hurry through Lexington and take possession of the bridges at Concord. Before Pitcairn was in sight of Lexington, the alarm had reached there, the bells were set clanging again, and the minute-men, guns in hand, gathered from all quarters to the village green, where Captain Parker placed himself at the head of seventy ardent patriots. Adams and Hancock were loath to leave the house of Mr. Clarke, but suffered themselves to be persuaded to do so, and took refuge in more obscure quarters. It was just beginning to grow light when the British regulars, in their brilliant red coats were seen approaching. They marched towards the minute-men on the common, and halting in front of them, loaded their muskets.

Battle of
 Lexington

Each side was determined that the other should fire first, for this was deemed all important in fixing the responsibility for the consequences. The patriots had been ordered not to discharge a gun until attacked, while Pitcairn was equally resolved that his men should not fire until compelled to do so in self-defence. Pitcairn and his officers rode towards the minute-men, the troops following on the "double quick." The commander swung his sword above his head and shouted:

"Disperse, you scoundrels! Lay down your arms! I command you to disperse!"

"This is our own land," was the reply; "we have a right here, and we'll *not* disperse."

"Surround the rascals!" commanded Pitcairn, and his soldiers set out to do as they were ordered. There was much confusion at this moment, and several shots were fired, but it will never be known with certainty whether the first overt act originated with the patriots or with the invaders. Pitcairn always insisted that the Americans

fired first. He was so well known for his truthfulness that many of the disputants asserted that, if he would say this upon his own knowledge, they would accept it as a fact. Pitcairn, however, would not do this, for he admitted that he did not see the first shot fired, but at the opening of the fight, his horse was wounded, and he was positive that it was done by a bullet intended for him. His own soldiers were as excited as the patriots, and several fired before the

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



“DISPERSE, YOU SCOUNDRELS!”

order was given. It is more than likely that it was these shots that caused the Americans to attack their enemies.

Pitcairn was a man of quick temper, and, drawing his pistol, he discharged it at the Americans and shouted to his men to “fire!” Instantly a sheet of flame burst from the front platoon, and several patriots dropped to the ground. The shrill notes of a fife penetrated the air, while the young drummer began furiously beating his drum. There was no longer any restraint on the part of the patriots. The volley had been fired that “was heard round the world,” and the Americans returned it, but as yet without fatal effect. Captain

The
 “Shot
 Heard
 Round
 the
 World”

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

A
 Glorious
 Morn-
 ing

Parker, seeing his men about to be surrounded, shouted at them to disperse, and they obeyed. They scattered behind stone walls and buildings, and began a fusillade upon the invaders. Eight of the patriots were killed and ten wounded during the firing, while three of the British were wounded, besides Pitcairn's horse. The British drew up in line on the common, fired a salute, cheered, and then continued their march towards Concord. When the first volley rang out on the morning air, Samuel Adams, a short distance away, exclaimed: "What a glorious morning for America is this!" Not he alone, but others, piercing the future, saw the momentous meaning of the great drama that had opened, and which was not to close until the sun of American liberty should rise, never to set again over this broad land.

The news had reached Concord hours before, where the excitement was fully as intense as at Lexington. Men and boys rushed from their houses, some of them loading their muskets as they ran; wives helped their husbands in their hasty preparations, and, pausing only long enough to kiss the dear ones good-by, the fathers and sons dashed out of the doors, crowding one another in their eagerness to reach the point of danger. The first man who appeared, gun in hand, was the Rev. William Emerson, but others of the patriots were only a few minutes behind him.

Gather-
 ing of the
 Militia

While preparations were made to repel the invaders, others hastened to remove the cannon and ammunition to a place of safety. Minute-men flocked in from the surrounding country and were drawn up on the Common, under the command of Col. James Barrett, a veteran of the French and Indian War. All the bridges spanning the sluggish Concord were guarded. This was hardly done, when messengers came running towards the Common, with tidings that the regulars, to more than double the numbers of the minute-men, would soon be in sight. Colonel Barrett fell back towards a hill in the farther part of the village, and there formed his men into two battalions. Then a consultation was held. Some wished to fight, but the cooler-headed saw that such a conflict meant the massacre of all the patriots; so it was decided to post themselves beyond North Bridge, a mile distant from the Common. It was known that the militia were hurrying in from all directions and there would soon be a force gathered strong enough to offer hopeful resistance to the invaders.

One division of the British entered Concord by the main road and the other over the highway from which the Americans had withdrawn. Troops were sent to secure the bridges, so as to prevent the militia from crossing them, and at the same time to find the secreted ammunition. Tories told the soldiers where these had been hidden, and a large quantity was found and destroyed. Meanwhile, swift horsemen had carried the news through the surrounding country, and the minute-men flocked towards Concord, to the number of several hundreds. Colonel Barrett placed them under the immediate command of Major Buttrick, and ordered him to march to the North Bridge to drive away the British. As Buttrick drew near, he saw the enemy engaged in destroying the bridge. They fired upon the patriots, killing a couple of men, one of whom was Captain Isaac Davis, of Acton. Buttrick now shouted to his company to fire, and three of the British were killed and several wounded. After a few scattering shots, the invaders retreated, and the minute-men took possession of the bridge. By this time, Colonel Smith saw that the country was aroused, and that to delay longer would bring destruction. Accordingly, the eight hundred began retreating in the direction of Lexington. Then it was as if minute-men sprang from the ground by magic. There seemed no spot where they did not appear. Over stone walls, from behind barns and houses, from bushes, trees, fences, and every object that afforded the least shelter, and from the open fields and highways came the jets of flame and the flash of the deadly rifles, while the red-coated soldiers toppled over like ten-pins.

It was a fearful retreat for the British. The weather was as sultry as if it were midsummer, and the dust was suffocating. The fleeing soldiers were worn to the last stage of exhaustion. Scores dropped panting by the roadside, and were made prisoners, while wagons were filled with the killed and wounded. The time came when the troops would have been forced to surrender to the patriots, but for the arrival of Lord Percy, with reinforcements, a thousand strong. These came in response to the request of Smith, sent early in the morning, and they immediately opened fire upon the militia with cannon. Then a hollow square was formed, into which the exhausted fugitives tottered and for the time were safe. A brief halt was made, in order to give the soldiers a little rest, after which the retreat to Boston was resumed. The Americans harassed them all the way, and there was considerable hard fighting and skirmishing at different points. At

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

**Retreat
 of the
 British**

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Patriot-
 ism
 Else-
 where

Charlestown, the soldiers were under the protection of the guns of their frigates, and there the pursuit ended. On that eventful day for America, the patriots lost one hundred and three killed and wounded, and the British two hundred and seventy-three.

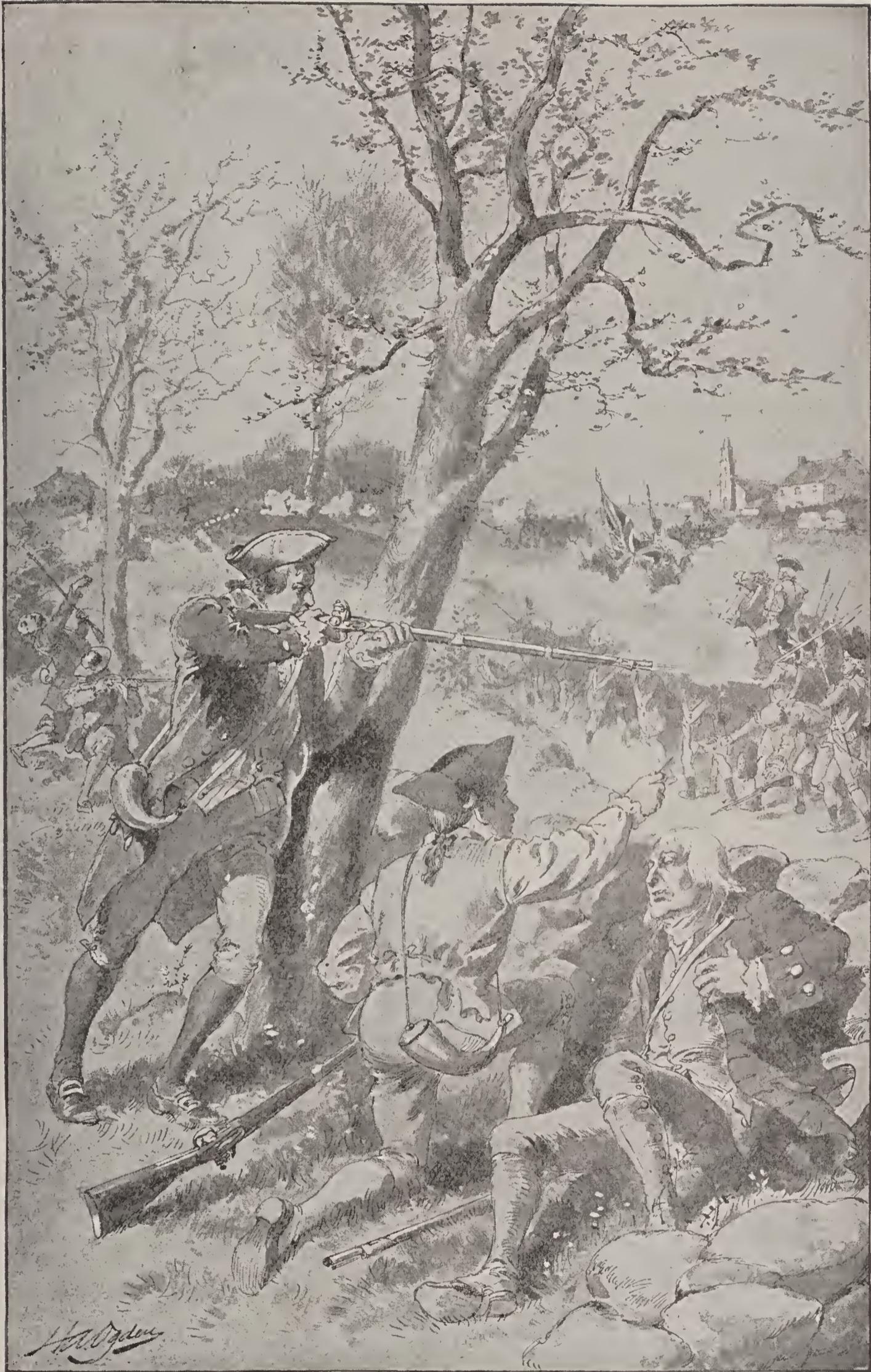
The news of the opening of the Revolution was carried as swiftly as the fleetest horses could bear their riders to the other colonies.

The response everywhere was the same—a universal, heroic outburst of patriotism, and the resolution to sustain Massachusetts at all hazards in the struggle that had opened. It was determined to send enough soldiers to Boston to hold the British within the peninsula. The assembly of Connecticut sent six thousand men, commanded by Spencer and Putnam; New Hampshire two thousand, led by Folsom and Stark; and Rhode Island, fifteen hundred, under Nathaniel Greene, who proved himself second only to Washington in skill and ability.

Far to the southward, Virginia was aflame with patriotic excitement. A convention of representatives met in Richmond in March, and, after indorsing the action of their representatives in the Continental Congress, declared that they would stand immovable in the defence of their liberties, though they expressed the hope of a speedy reconciliation. At this juncture Patrick Henry, one of the members, could restrain himself no longer. None understood more clearly than he the folly of hoping for reconciliation. America had committed herself to the struggle for independence, and to turn back or hesitate meant subjection and humiliation. He denounced the delusive hope, and asked for the appointment of a committee to see that the province was placed in a proper condition of defence. His motion was however opposed by other patriots, who still clung to the hope of reunion, and expressed the belief that the colonies were too weak to cope with so mighty a power as Great Britain.

Patrick
 Henry's
 Eloquent
 Appeal

Henry's eyes flashed fire as he heard this timid counsel, and he bounded to his feet and exclaimed: "What has there been in the conduct of the British ministry for the last ten years to justify hope? Are fleets and armies necessary to a work of love and reconciliation? Have we shown ourselves so unwilling to be reconciled that force must be called in to win us back to our love? Let us not deceive ourselves, sir. These are the implements of war and subjugation; the last arguments to which kings resort. I ask, gentlemen, what means this martial array if its purpose be not to force us to submission?"



FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY H. A. OGDEN

THE BRITISH RETREAT TO BOSTON

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Has Great Britain any enemy in this quarter of the world, to call for all this accumulation of armies and navies? No, sir; she has none. They are meant for us; they can be meant for no other. They are sent over to bind and rivet upon us the chains which the British ministry have been so long forging. And what have we to oppose them? Shall we try argument? Sir, we have been trying argument for the last ten years; have we anything new to offer? Shall we



"GIVE ME LIBERTY OR GIVE ME DEATH!"

resort to treaty and supplication? We have petitioned; we have supplicated; we have prostrated ourselves before the throne, and have implored its interposition to arrest the tyrannical hands of the ministry and parliament. Our petitions have been slighted; our remonstrances have produced additional violence and insult; our supplications have been disregarded; we have been spurned with contempt from the foot of the throne. In vain, after these things, may we indulge the fond hope of reconciliation. *There is no longer any room for hope!*

“If we wish to be free; if we wish to preserve inviolate those inestimable privileges for which we have been so long contending; if we mean not basely to abandon the struggle, in which we have been so long engaged, and which we have pledged ourselves never to abandon until the glorious object of our contest shall be obtained, we must fight! I repeat it, sir; we must fight! An appeal to arms and to the God of hosts is all that is left us! They tell us, sir, that we are weak—unable to cope with so formidable an enemy. But when shall we be stronger? Will it be next week or next year? Will it be when we are totally disarmed and when a British guard is stationed in every house? Shall we gather strength by irresolution and inaction? Shall we acquire the means of effectual resistance by lying supinely on our backs and hugging the delusive phantom of hope, until our enemies shall have bound us hand and foot? Sir, we are *not* weak, if we make a proper use of those means which the God of nature hath placed in our power. Three millions of people, armed in the holy cause of liberty, and in such a country as that which we possess, are invincible to any power which our enemy can send against us. Besides, sir, we shall not fight our battles alone. There is a great God who presides over the destinies of nations and who will raise up friends to fight our battles for us. The battle, sir, is not to the strong alone; it is to the vigilant, the active, the brave. And again, we have no election. If we were base enough to desire it, it is now too late to retire from the contest. There is no retreat but in submission and slavery! Our chains are forged! Their clanking may be heard on the plains of Boston! The war is inevitable! And let it come! I repeat it, sir, *let it come!* It is vain, sir, to extenuate the matter. Gentlemen may cry ‘Peace, peace!’ but there is no peace! The war has actually begun! The next gale that sweeps from the North will bring to our ears the clash of resounding arms! Our brethren are already in the field. Why stand we here idle? What is it the gentlemen wish? What would they have? Is life so dear or peace so sweet as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery? Forbid it, Almighty God! I know not what course others may take, but as for me, GIVE ME LIBERTY, OR GIVE ME DEATH!”

This thrilling outburst was irresistible. No wonder that the hesitating convention adopted the resolution by an almost unanimous vote. Patrick Henry, George Washington, Richard Henry Lee,

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Thomas Jefferson, and others were named the committee to carry out the resolution. They speedily submitted a plan for the defence of the colony, which was accepted.

Governor Dunmore, of Virginia, was strongly attached to the crown and was filled with anger at the audacity of the rebels. He issued proclamations against them and even tried to terrify the people by covert threats of rousing the slaves to insurrection. One



THE DEMAND UPON GOVERNOR DUNMORE

**Gov.
 Dun-
 more's
 Action**

night he caused the powder in the magazine at Williamsburg to be removed secretly to a vessel-of-war in York River. When this became known, the people were so indignant that it was hard to restrain them from laying violent hands on him. Patrick Henry headed a delegation to demand of him an explanation of his action. The governor quieted the discontent by paying the full value of the ammunition, and Henry returned to his home. Governor Dunmore's next step was to call the House of Burgesses together, to consider a conciliatory proposition from the British ministry. The Burgesses

promptly rejected it, and the governor resorted to proclamations again. He declared that if the rebels did not obey the laws, he would free the slaves and arm them against their masters; he surrounded his house with cannon and made preparations to blow up the magazine, if the worst came to the worst. The indignation of the people became so threatening that soon the governor took refuge, with his family, on board a British man-of-war, being the first royal governor to abdicate his office at the outbreak of the Revolution. Others, however, quickly imitated him, so that before the end of the year all royal rule had ceased in America.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

It will of course be remembered that the stirring times of which we were speaking were long before the magnetic telegraph was discovered. It took four days for the news of the battle of Lexington to reach New York. Although the day was Sunday, the Sons of Liberty did not hesitate to show their sentiments by open acts. They stopped all vessels in the harbor that were about to sail for Boston with supplies for the British troops, landed a cargo in defiance of the royal collector, and closed the custom-house.

In the month of May, the towns in Mecklenburg County, North Carolina, sent representatives to Charlotte, who by resolution declared themselves no longer subjects of the British crown. They agreed upon a declaration of independence, so similar in spirit and in some portions in wording, to the immortal Declaration of July 4th, 1776, that much speculation and discussion have been the result, without the matter ever having been set at rest. Patriots by the hundred continued to gather in the vicinity of Boston, their determination being to confine the invaders to the peninsula, or drive them on board of their vessels. By the 20th of April, General Artemas Ward, having been appointed by the Provincial Congress of Massachusetts, assumed command of the American levies, who now numbered several thousands, all filled with an ardent patriotism.

The
 Meck-
 lenburg
 Declara-
 tion of
 Inde-
 pend-
 ence





CHAPTER XXXI

EVENTS OF 1775 (CONCLUDED)—BUNKER HILL, ETC.

[*Authorities:* Though hostilities, as we have seen, had begun on both sides without any deliberate purpose, the colonies finally took steps to act in concert against the mother country and to give legal effect to the measures to which they were now compelled unitedly to resort. In May, 1775, was held the "Congress of the United Colonies," which authorized the raising of a Continental army (at whose head it placed General Washington), organized executive committees to prosecute the war, sent remonstrances to England, opened diplomatic relations with France, created the nucleus of a navy, established a maritime court, and gave a basis of national authority to the financial measures of the Philadelphia Congress. The earliest overt act of the executives of the young nation, after the engagement at Lexington, was to make a demonstration against the enleaguered British troops at Boston, and to fortify Breed's Hill, the immediate issue of which was the battle of Bunker Hill. The authorities for the period, besides those cited at the head of the previous chapter, and the journals of Congress, are Niles' "Principles and Acts of the Revolution;" Lodge's "Washington" (American Statesmen Series); Greene's "Historical View of the American Revolution;" Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America;" and Goodloe's "Birth of the Republic."]



Independence Hall Philadelphia

THE fortresses of Ticonderoga and Crown Point, as the reader will have seen, were on Lake Champlain, the former being one of the most valuable in the possession of Great Britain. It contained one hundred and twenty cannon, a large amount of military stores, and cost Great Britain several million dollars. The location of the two and the rumors which reached the ears of the patriots engendered the belief that the British ministry had formed a plan for cutting off New England from the rest of the colonies. When the war had been opened at Lexington, the Americans decided to capture both fortresses. The governor of Connecticut set aside a sum of

money for that purpose, and to effect it he consulted with the leading patriots, John Hancock and Samuel Adams. The enterprise was committed to the care of the brave Col. Ethan Allen, of Vermont, and his "Green Mountain Boys."

Benedict Arnold proposed to the Provincial Congress at Cambridge to capture the two posts, and was commissioned colonel, with power to raise and lead four hundred men against the strongholds. He pushed on and joined Allen at Castleton, Vermont, and though he had but a single man with him, claimed the right to lead the expedition, by virtue of his commission as colonel. The militiamen, however, elected Allen, and Arnold agreed to ride by his side as a volunteer. The expedition reached Shoreham, opposite Ticonderoga, at dusk on the 9th of May. They were disappointed at finding only a few boats in which to cross the lake, but eighty-three men, including Allen and Arnold, crossed, and the craft was sent back for the remainder. The nights were short, and it then became apparent that before the boats could return daylight would be upon them. It was necessary that the fort should be surprised; therefore it would not do to wait any longer. Allen explained the situation to his men, and told them that all who desired to withdraw from the project were at liberty to do so. Every one expressed his wish to follow his intrepid leader.

A boy named Nathan Beaman, who was familiar with the place, led Allen and his volunteers up the bank to the sally-port. The startled sentry, when the heads and shoulders of the men rose to view like so many spectres, snapped his gun and dashed into the fortress, with the Americans at his heels. Entering the parade-ground, the patriots, with a cheer, ranged themselves facing each other against opposite walls. The frightened garrison came rushing to the parade, and the minute they appeared were made prisoners. Allen was an old acquaintance of Captain Delaplace, the commandant, and knew where to look for him. He ran up the outside steps, leading to the door of the officers' quarters, and knocked with the hilt of his sword. The captain sprang out of bed and opened the door, his startled wife peeping over his shoulder.

"What is the meaning of all this hubbub?" asked the astounded officer.

"I order you to surrender at once," was Allen's reply.

"By whose authority do you make the demand?"

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Capture
 of Ticon-
 deroga
 and
 Crown
 Point

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

“In the name of Jehovah and the Continental Congress,” was the heroic response of Allen, who knew that that very day was the one appointed for the convening of Congress in Philadelphia. Delaplace would have parleyed, and, looking at the grinning boy, said, “What, Nathan, you here too!” Allen was too much in earnest, however, to permit delay, and checked the commander with a repetition of his order to surrender. The commandant had no choice but to obey, and thus the fortress, with its garrison of fifty men and its immensely valuable stores, came into the hands of the Americans without the loss of a single life. Two days later, Crown Point was also captured without bloodshed.

Conven-
 ing of the
 Second
 Contin-
 ental
 Con-
 gress

On the 10th of May, the second Continental Congress met first in Carpenter’s Hall, Philadelphia, soon adjourning to Independence Hall, with representatives from all the colonies present, except Georgia. Her delegates arrived later, in July. Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, was made president, and among his famous associates were Washington, Patrick Henry, John and Samuel Adams, Benjamin Franklin, and Thomas Jefferson. This Congress held a unique position, for it was without any power to enforce a single law. It could not enlist a solitary soldier or raise a penny of taxes. All that it could do was to advise the different colonies as to their course of action.

Although hostilities had actually begun, there was a lingering hope on the part of many of the members that England and her American colonies would yet become reconciled.* They, therefore, hesitated to take positive action, preferring to hold open the door of reunion. They could not wholly throw off at once a fondness for the mother-country, whose glory had been theirs so long, and for whom they had on many occasions fought and shed their blood. But this sentimental hope quickly vanished, as news came of the conflicts

* The readers of these pages, who naturally take the patriotic American view of the quarrel with England, should take care to distinguish between the attitude of the British crown and government and English public opinion at the period. The colonists’ view of the troubles was taken by many Englishmen of note, among others, by Lord Chatham and Edmund Burke. The speeches of both these eminent statesmen should be familiar, at least to the historical student, who wishes to do justice to the mother-land, especially Chatham’s eloquent protest against the enforcement of the Stamp Tax, and Burke’s three great utterances between the years 1774 and 1777, on American Taxation, on Conciliation with America, and his famous Letter to the Sheriffs of Bristol on the Affairs of America.

between the patriots and their oppressors; of the stubborn insistence of King George that his American colonies should be conquered; of his refusal to abate one jot of his oppressive measures; and of the brutality of the royal governors in various sections of the country. The sentiments of Congress were crystallized in the declaration: "Shall the descendants of Britons tamely submit to this? No, sirs! We never shall! while we revere the memory of our gallant and vir-

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



"I ORDER YOU TO SURRENDER AT ONCE!"

tuous ancestors; we never can surrender these glorious privileges for which they fought, bled and conquered. Admit that your fleets could destroy our towns, and ravage our sea-coasts; these are inconsiderable objects, things of no moment, to men whose bosoms glow with the ardor of liberty. We can retire beyond the reach of your navy, and, without any sensible diminution of the necessaries of life, enjoy a luxury which, from that period, you will want—the luxury of being free."

Without any distinct powers being delegated to Congress by the

PERIOD III

ENGLAND
AND FRANCE
IN
AMERICA

1758

TO

1783

The
Func-
tions of
Con-
gress

different colonies, they recognized the right of that body to decide all questions affecting the welfare of the country at large. New York City had elected a committee of one hundred, which asked Congress for direction, when news reached New York that a British regiment was on its way thither from Ireland. Congress told the committee to allow the troops to land, and to live in barracks, but not to permit them to fortify the city. Congress advised further, that General Wooster be invited to come from Connecticut, with his regiment, to aid in defending the city, should it become necessary. This advice was followed, and General Wooster encamped on the Harlem, and took active measures to guard Long Island against British foragers and cruisers.

Arrival
of Howe,
Clinton,
and Bur-
goyne

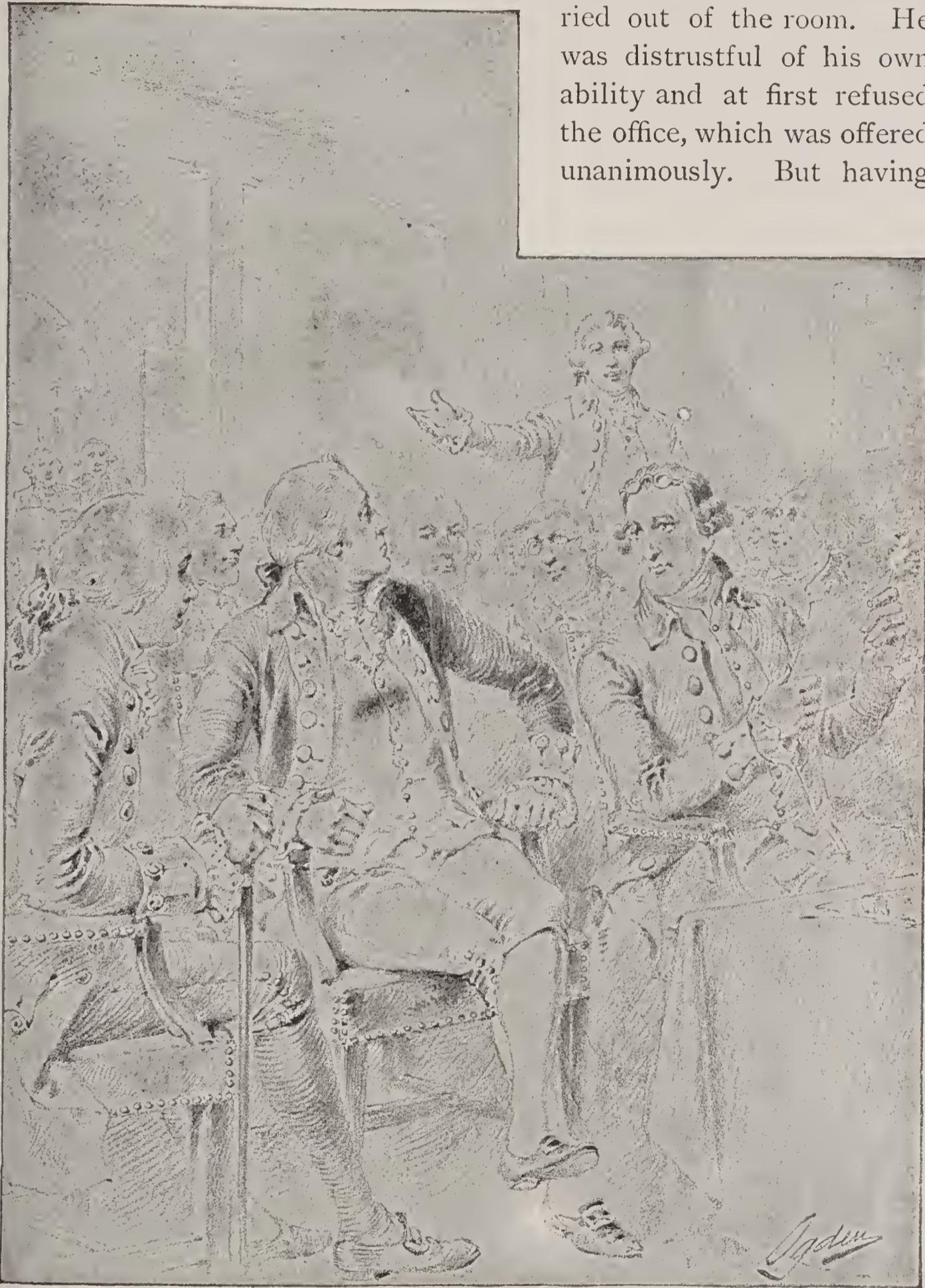
Some time after this, President Randolph was called to Virginia, where he had been elected speaker of the House of Burgesses, and John Hancock was chosen to succeed him. Then Congress addressed itself to the still higher duties which now confronted it. General Artemas Ward was universally respected for his good qualities, but it had become apparent to all that he was too old and timid and too deficient in military genius, to be the commander of the forces that were now concentrating at Boston. Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne had arrived at that port, and it was evident that Great Britain was making formidable preparations for conquering her colonies. Since the war had assumed, or would shortly assume, a continental character, it was necessary that a general-in-chief should be chosen over all the armed forces. As a first step, Congress voted to raise an army of twenty thousand men, and to issue three million dollars of paper money, for carrying on the war. Thomas Johnson, of Maryland, at the suggestion of the New England delegation, nominated George Washington commander-in-chief of the Continental armies.* Washington was so agitated that he arose and hur-

* Space may, pardonably, be taken up here, to quote the eulogistic characterization Green, the English historian, passes upon Washington, in his thoughtful and impartial chapter on "The Independence of America," in his "History of the English People." "No nobler figure," writes the historian, "ever stood in the forefront of a nation's life. Washington was grave and courteous in address; his manners were simple and unpretending; his silence and the serene calmness of his temper spoke of a perfect self-mastery. But there was little in his outer bearing to reveal the grandeur of soul which lifts his figure with all the simple majesty of an ancient statue out of the smaller passions, the meaner impulses, of the world around him. What recommended him for command was simply his weight among his fellow-landowners in Virginia, and the experience of war which he had gained by service in border contests with the French and the Indians, as well as

ried out of the room. He was distrustful of his own ability and at first refused the office, which was offered unanimously. But having

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Appoint-
 ment of Wash-
 ington
 as Com-
 mander-
 in-Chief



NOMINATION OF WASHINGTON AS COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF

been urged upon him, he, with that high sense of duty which always guided him through life, modestly accepted the appointment, and

in Braddock's luckless expedition against Fort Du Quesne. It was only as the weary fight went on that the colonists discovered, however slowly and imperfectly, the greatness

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The Major and
 Brigadier-
 Generals

henceforward consecrated his life and his energies to the service of his country.

A few days later, four major-generals and eight brigadier-generals were appointed. The former were: Artemas Ward, Charles Lee, Philip Schuyler, and Israel Putnam. The latter were: Seth Pomeroy, Richard Montgomery, David Wooster, William Heath, Joseph Spencer, John Thomas, John Sullivan, and Nathaniel Greene. It was resolved to issue a sum not exceeding \$2,000,000 on bills of credit. The rude plates were engraved by Paul Revere and printed on paper so thick that the British called them "the pasteboard money of the rebels." New issues were added from time to time, so that, at the close of 1779, the total amount in circulation was \$242,000,000. They rapidly depreciated, until before the close of the war, when they became practically worthless.

Strength
 of the
 Rival
 Forces

At the opening of the summer of 1775, the Continental forces at Cambridge numbered sixteen thousand New Englanders. General Ward was the commander, while the British army, continually increased by new arrivals, included ten thousand well-disciplined troops, under experienced officers. Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne were there, all forming plans for the overthrow of the rebel forces. While they were scheming and doing nothing, they awoke to the fact that the American batteries at Dorchester Heights in the south, or on Charlestown Heights in the north, were likely to make their situation soon untenable. They therefore decided to fortify the heights themselves, and thus avert the peril which threatened them.

The Provincial Congress had delegated discretionary powers to the Committee of Safety, the members of which, on learning of the intention of the enemy, determined to fortify Bunker Hill without delay. An order was issued on the 16th of June for the parade of a

of their leader, his clear judgment, his heroic endurance, his silence under difficulties, his calmness in the hour of danger or defeat, the patience with which he waited, the quickness and hardness with which he struck, the lofty and serene sense of duty that never swerved from its task through resentment or jealousy, that never through war or peace felt the touch of a meaner ambition, that knew no aim save that of guarding the freedom of his fellow-countrymen, and no personal longing save that of returning to his own fire-side when their freedom was secured. It was almost unconsciously that men learned to cling to Washington with a trust and faith such as few other men have won, and to regard him with a reverence which still hushes us in presence of his memory. But even America hardly recognized his real greatness while he lived. It was only when death set its seal on him that the voice of those whom he had served so long proclaimed him 'the man first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen.'"

large force in camp at Cambridge, at six o'clock in the evening, with intrenching tools. These men were placed under the command of Colonel William Prescott, of Pepperell, who received orders from General Ward to proceed to and fortify Bunker Hill on the Charlestown peninsula. After prayer by Dr. Langdon, president of Harvard College, this force, accompanied by General Putnam, and num-

PERIOD III.
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



ISRAEL PUTNAM

bering about thirteen thousand men, at nine o'clock the same evening, marched over Charlestown Neck and towards Bunker Hill. They moved silently, for it was necessary to keep their intention from the enemy. On the road a consultation was held, and it was decided that, since Breed's Hill was nearer Boston, it would be better to fortify that first. Thither the men made their way and at once began work. All through the gloom of night the patriots

Breed's
 Hill For-
 tified

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

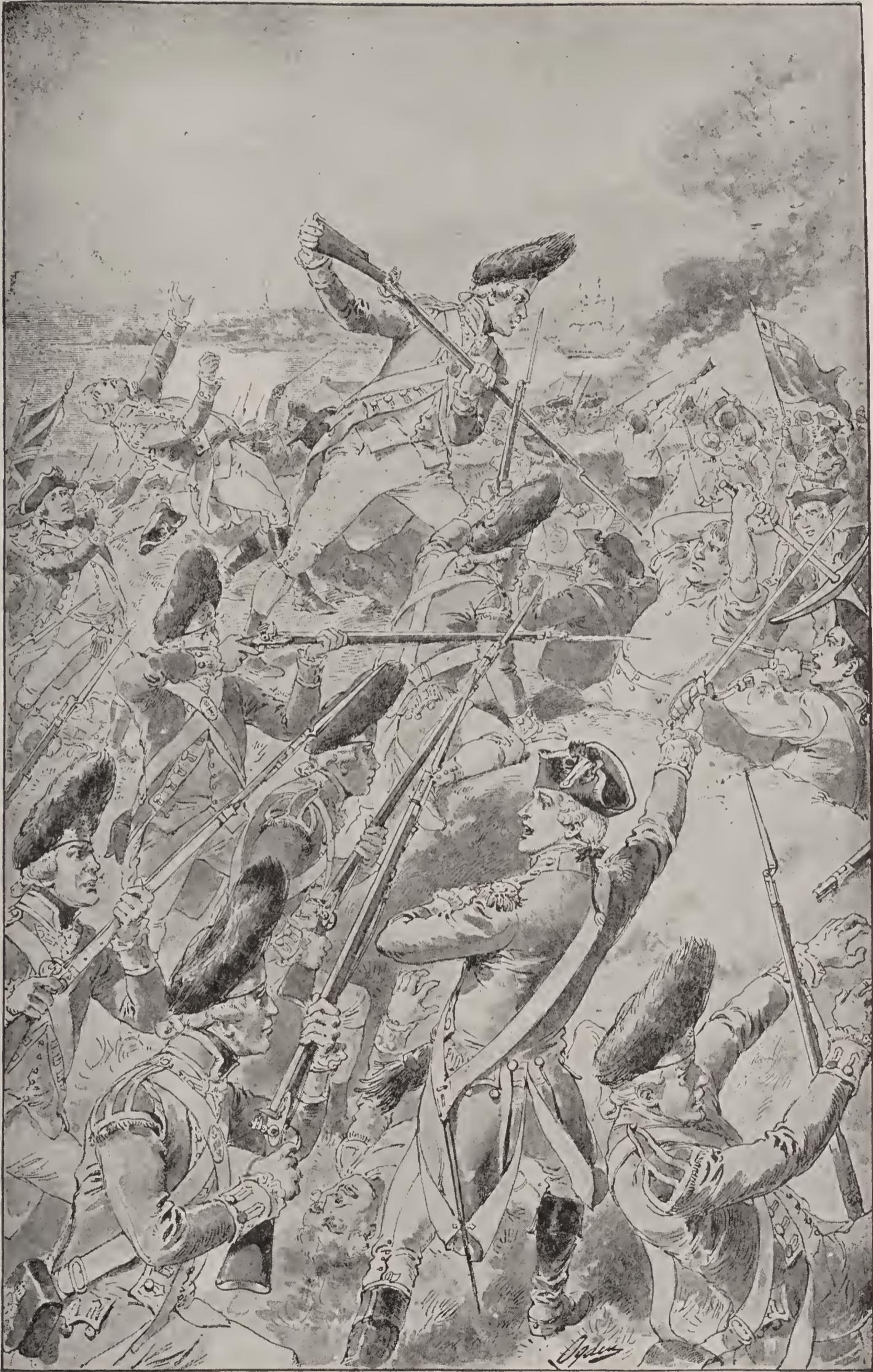
plied pick and shovel, and so near the ships-of-war that, when the waning moon rose at midnight, they were in plain sight and the voices of the sentinels were heard as they repeated the hourly "*All's well!*" At daybreak, on Saturday, the 17th of June, the amazed enemy saw a redoubt, at the intrenchments of which the patriots were still busily toiling. The ships opened fire on them, but they continued their labors without harm.

Success
 of the
 Ameri-
 cans

When General Gage learned what had been done, he called his officers together for council, and a decision was at once reached that the Americans must be instantly dislodged. Accordingly, about twenty-five thousand troops, including infantry, grenadiers, and artillery, with twelve pieces of cannon, passed over the Charles River in boats and landed at the head of the present Chelsea Bridge, near the eastern extremity of the Charlestown peninsula. When the British troops reached this point, it was a little past noon, and Howe allowed his men to dine, while he sent to Boston for reinforcements. Meanwhile, Prescott, having completed the work, and seeing that he was about to be attacked, asked General Ward for additional troops, and, with some reluctance, Ward sent the New Hampshire regiments of Stark and Reed, with several small field-pieces. A few other detachments came up, and with them Dr. Joseph Warren, who had just been commissioned major-general.

Battle of
 Bunker
 Hill

It seemed as if all the people of Boston, on that calm summer afternoon, were crowded on the roofs, steeples and balconies, breathlessly watching the thrilling sight. It was half-past three o'clock, when the British force, now increased to 3,000 men, with Howe's huge guns, advanced towards the redoubt and opened fire. The troops followed in two columns, under Howe and Pigot. The guns on the ships, and the battery on Copp's Hill, joined in the cannonade, but produced little effect. Amid the crash and roar, the Americans remained as silent as the tomb. "Don't fire till you see the whites of their eyes," was the order that had been passed along the lines. When that moment came, the single word "FIRE!" was shouted, and fifteen hundred muskets outflamed with such terrible effect that whole platoons were mown down, as if by a herculean scythe. The shattered army, in response to the call of the bugles, now retreated to the foot of the hill. There Howe rallied and re-formed them and repeated the attack, receiving the same crushing repulse as before. So many shots were fired from the houses in Charlestown, that, by



FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY H. A. OGDEN

THE BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Defeat
 of the
 Ameri-
 cans

the order of Howe, it was shelled by the battery on Copp's Hill. The town caught fire and the thick smoke shrouded Breed's Hill, until swept aside by a strong breeze. Howe with some difficulty rallied his men for a third attack, and General Clinton hurried over from Copp's Hill with a considerable force and joined him. The British advanced at quick step, and under orders to use only their bayonets. These, aided by the artillery, drove the patriots from the breastworks into the redoubt. A murderous fire was again poured from their centre, but this abruptly ceased. The ammunition of the Americans was exhausted, and after a desperate hand-to-hand struggle, they were driven out, fleeing towards Charlestown Neck, where approaching reinforcements had been checked by the enfilading fire from the enemy's vessels. Almost the last man to leave the redoubt was General Warren. He was fighting heroically, when an English officer, who recognized him, seized a musket from a soldier and shot him dead. Among the slain on the British side was Major Pitcairn. The total loss of the enemy in killed, wounded and prisoners, was ten hundred and fifty-four: that of the Americans four hundred and fifty. The British occupied the field until the next morning, when they were taken over the water to Boston. The Americans, after running a gauntlet of fire from the vessels, passed the night on Prospect Hill.

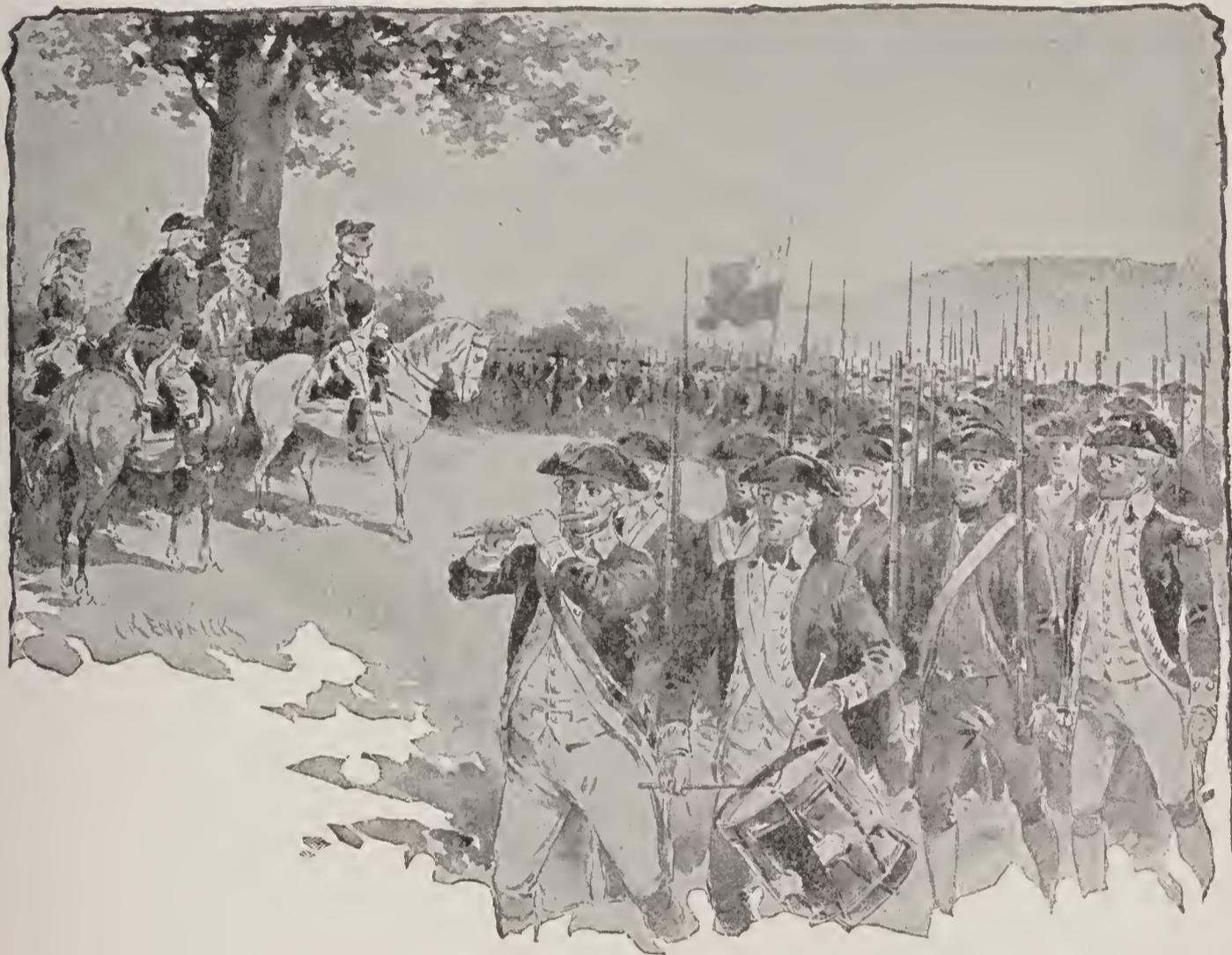
Wash-
 ington
 Assumes
 Com-
 mand

Six days after Washington's appointment to the command of the Continental armies, and, without waiting to visit Mount Vernon, he set out to assume command at Cambridge. His companions were Generals Lee and Schuyler. At Trenton, they met a messenger riding in hot haste, with the news for Congress of the battle of Bunker Hill. Washington made particular inquiries, and was greatly relieved to learn that the militia had fought with so much bravery. The commander-in-chief received proper honors and attention at New York and other points on the way, and arrived at Cambridge on the afternoon of July 2d. The next morning, he appeared with his suite under a large elm-tree, at the northern end of Cambridge Common, and, while the forces were drawn up in line, he stepped forward, drew his sword, and assumed formal command of the army.

Washington began preparations at once for pressing the siege of Boston. Adjutant-General Gates reported nearly seventeen thousand men enrolled, with about fourteen thousand fit for duty. Soon afterwards, Daniel Morgan, with his famous riflemen from Maryland,

Virginia, and western Pennsylvania, joined the army. These troops were disposed of with excellent military skill. The army was arranged in three grand divisions, consisting of two brigades each. The right wing, under General Ward, was stationed at Roxbury; the left, under General Lee, occupied Winter and Prospect hills; while the centre was commanded by General Putnam. Strong lines of intrenchments connected the extremities of the army.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



WASHINGTON TAKING COMMAND OF THE ARMY

The British intrenched themselves on Bunker Hill, with their sentries upon Charlestown Neck. A 20-gun ship was anchored between Boston and Charlestown, and floating batteries were moored in Mystic River. General Howe had superseded Gage, and, with most of his army, was on Bunker Hill, while a large number of Tories and a force of cavalry occupied the city. Thus matters substantially remained throughout the remainder of the year.

**Boston
 Be-
 sieged**

It will be remembered that when the American colonies were fighting the battles of England, Canada belonged to France, and several invasions were made, the decisive campaign being fought on the heights above Quebec. Now that Canada belonged to Great

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Proposed
 Invasion
 of Cana-
 da

Britain, the Americans believed that an effective blow could be struck by another invasion of the country. Indeed, as will appear hereafter, this has been a favorite strategic measure, whenever our country has been at war with Great Britain, though its results have not always been gratifying to American valor. The colonies were hopeful that Canada would join them in a struggle for independence. An invitation was sent by Congress across the border, urging the people to make common cause with us; but the response was not encouraging, and Sir Guy Carleton,* the governor, declared martial-law in Canada, sought the alliance of the Indian tribes, and prepared to invade New York, to recover the lake posts that had been seized. Congress, in June, 1775, decided to undertake the conquest of Canada, which seemed an easy task, as it might have been had the invasion been prompt; but valuable time was frittered away.

Ethan Allen was urgent for the movement as soon as Ticonderoga† and Crown Point‡ had been taken, and not doubting that it would be made, he did not wait for formal authority. A company of his Green Mountain Boys captured Skenesborough (now White-

* Sir Guy Carleton, afterwards Lord Dorchester [1724-1808], Governor of Quebec during the Montgomery-Arnold assault upon it, was an Irish officer in the English army and first saw active service in the second siege of Louisbourg. He was wounded before Quebec in 1759, when in command of Wolfe's corps of Grenadiers. In 1772 he was raised to the rank of Major-general, and three years later was appointed Governor of Quebec. On the failure of the American invasion of Canada, Carleton issued from it and took possession of Crown Point. After a lengthened sojourn in England, he was appointed, in 1782, Commander-in-chief in America, as successor to Sir Henry Clinton, and pursued a conciliatory policy up to the evacuation of New York by the British troops. In 1786 he was created Baron Dorchester and reappointed Governor of Quebec, a post he held almost continuously for ten years. On his final return to England, he was raised to the rank of general, but lived thenceforth in retirement until his death in 1808. Carleton, though a strict disciplinarian, as well as an able officer, was a man of humane conduct, as his kind treatment of American prisoners during the Revolutionary War and his attempts to check the excesses of the Indian auxiliaries testify.

† This historic fort, situated at the southern extremity of Lake Champlain, was built by the French in 1755; in 1758, the English were repulsed in an attack on it, and in the following year it was abandoned by the French. In the present campaign (1775), it was, as we have seen, taken by American arms, but two years later it was recaptured by Burgoyne, dismantled on his surrender, and in 1780 reoccupied by the British. At the close of the war it was abandoned.

‡ This fort, which came into the hands of the British in 1759, is situated on the west shore of Lake Champlain, about ninety miles north of Albany. It lies adjacent to the town of Ticonderoga, and is noted as the site of Fort Frederic, now in ruins, erected by the French in 1731. With its slender garrison, it was taken in May, 1775, as we have seen, by a detachment of our troops, under Seth Warner, forming part of the force with which Ethan Allen surprised Fort Ticonderoga.

hall), at the head of Lake Champlain, with a number of prisoners, a schooner, and several smaller boats. Benedict Arnold manned the schooner, equipped it with guns from Ticonderoga, and with the smaller boats sailed up the lake to attack the fort at St. John. After destroying several vessels and taking a number of prisoners, he set out to return to Ticonderoga. Meeting Allen, the two held a consultation, and Allen pushed on to occupy the captured fort, but with-

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



CAPTURE OF ETHAN ALLEN

drew before the approach of a superior force. Then followed a fatal delay by Congress before ordering the invasion of Canada.

General Schuyler reached Ticonderoga on the 18th of July, and found matters there in great confusion. Colonel Benedict Arnold claimed command, by virtue of his commission from the Provincial Congress of Massachusetts, and many of the Green Mountain Boys were so angered with him that they had gone home. Arnold was quarrelsome, overbearing, and heartily disliked, although his military skill and bravery are admitted. Complaint was made to the body that had commissioned him, and a committee sent to Ticonderoga

Affairs at
 Ticon-
 deroga

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

to inquire into matters ordered Arnold to submit to Colonel Hinman, then in command, or return to Massachusetts. Arnold, at this, was thrown into a fury, and, swearing that he would be second to no man, threw up his commission and set off to Cambridge to lay his grievances before Washington.

Meanwhile, General Schuyler learned that there were less than a thousand British regulars in Canada, that the peasantry were supposed to be friendly towards the Americans, and that no more favorable time was likely to occur for the invasion of the colony. He therefore devoted his energies to organizing and drilling the soldiers at Ticonderoga with the view to invasion, but the task was a discouraging one. The men were mutinous and tried him sorely, so much so that the campaign was thereby seriously marred. Another cause of grave anxiety was the Indians. They had been tampered with by the English. Sir William Johnson, the British agent, was already winning over the powerful Six Nations and preparing for active measures against the Americans. Congress nominated Schuyler as head of the Indian Commission, and, to meet the responsible duties thus thrown upon him, he placed Gen. Richard Montgomery in command of the expedition for the invasion of Canada. Montgomery arrived at Ticonderoga on the 17th of August, and, with about a thousand men, proceeded to Isle La Motte, to prevent a number of vessels then building on the Sorel River, from entering Lake Champlain. Schuyler joined him early in September, but while in front of the fort at St. John he was prostrated by sickness and obliged to return to Ticonderoga, where he did the best of service by forwarding troops and supplies to Montgomery, who at once invested St. John. The garrison was a strong one and made a brave defence; but on November 2d it was forced to surrender.

Capture
 of St.
 John

While the siege was in progress, Col. Ethan Allen with a hundred recruits crossed the St. Lawrence to attack Montreal, but was defeated and made prisoner, with all his men. Allen was put in irons and sent to England by General Prescott, to be tried for treason, because of his daring capture of Ticonderoga some months before. He was closely confined, and, it is said, was treated with great severity until the spring of 1778, when he was exchanged. Having taken St. John, Montgomery now moved against Montreal. Carleton knew that he could not hold the fort against a determined attack, and therefore made ready to flee to Quebec with his gar-



SIGNING THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE
JULY 4TH, 1776

risson. Montgomery captured the flotilla bearing the garrison at the mouth of the Sorel, but Carleton, by a secret flight at night, escaped to Quebec. Montgomery entered Montreal on the 13th of November, and obtained a quantity of valuable supplies for his men. All that remained to secure the conquest of Canada was to take Quebec, and the brave Montgomery now addressed himself to that task.*

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783
**Capture
 of Mon-
 treal**



INVASION OF CANADA

It will be remembered that Arnold had ridden off in anger to Washington, at Cambridge, with his complaint of ill-treatment at Ticonderoga. No one understood Arnold better than the com-

* In whatever mood France accepted the loss of her Canadian colony in 1763, she had her revenge for the defeat at Montreal and Quebec, in the Revolution that had broken out in the English colonies on the seaboard, as Montcalm himself had predicted. In turn, however, France "reaped revenge's fitting harvest in her own Reign of Terror, and all the revolutions that have followed, ere she could acquire some capacity for self-government." Whether the lesson is forgotten or not, England, as it has been well said, "trained her children to deal even with revolution as freemen, and not as slaves broke loose."

PERIOD III

ENGLAND
AND FRANCE
IN
AMERICA
1758
TO
1783

Arnold's
Expedi-
tion

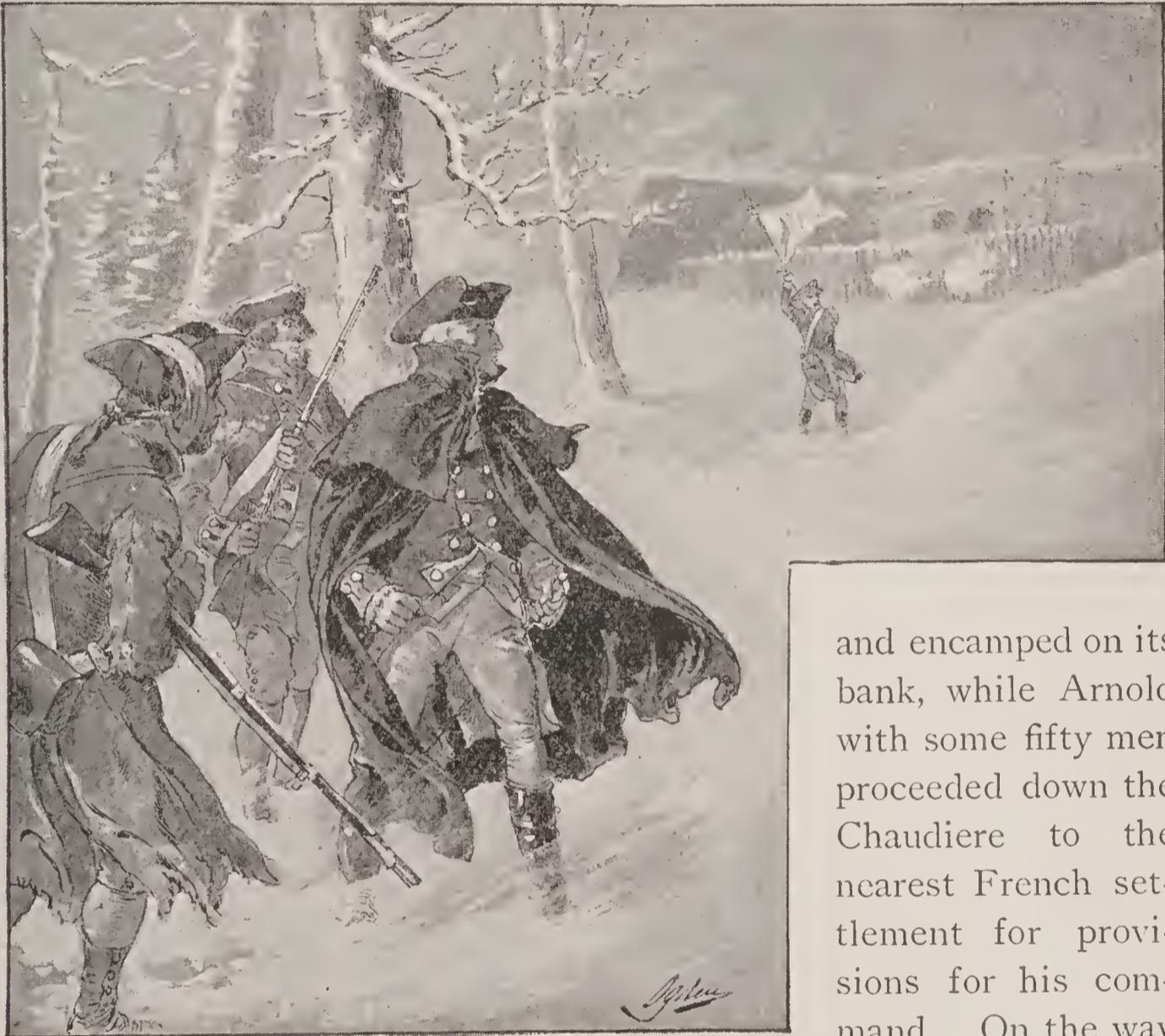
Great
Hard-
ships

mander-in-chief, and he commissioned him colonel in the Continental army and placed him in command of eleven hundred troops, selected from those at Cambridge, to co-operate with Montgomery in the conquest of Canada. Washington was pressing the siege of Boston and could ill spare the troops; but he understood the importance of making the invasion of Canada successful. Arnold and his men sailed from Newburyport, about the middle of September, for a point on the Kennebec, opposite the present city of Augusta, Maine. The country was an unbroken solitude, with only a few Indians living here and there in the vast stretches of forest. The ascent of the river was begun by means of bateaux, but soon they reached falls and rapids, where it was necessary to take the boats and supplies around to the navigable stream above. The troops carried their provisions on their backs, and oxen drew the boats. The men labored through the swift current until a point was reached where they left the river, and pushed through dense forests and swamps to Dead River, on the watershed between the St. Lawrence and the Atlantic, along which they advanced until confronted by a high snow-capped mountain. At the base of this mountain, late in October, the troops went into camp. The weather was cold and every day it grew colder. The winters being severe in that latitude, the prospect before the invaders was a very gloomy one. Many of the men had deserted, while sickness was on the increase. It was thirty miles to the nearest tributary of the St. Lawrence, down which Arnold had to voyage to Quebec. Before the march began, a cold, driving rain set in. The Dead River became a roaring torrent, filled with rushing trees and limbs, which overturned a number of the bateaux, and lost to the expedition so much provisions that the food saved was not sufficient to last a fortnight. Matters now assumed so grave an aspect that Arnold held a conference with his officers, at which it was decided to send the sick to Norridgewock, where Colonel Enos was with the rear division. Enos was ordered to hurry forward with provisions for fifteen days. Instead of obeying, he returned to Cambridge with his division. He was tried by court-martial for this act and acquitted, since it had become evident to Enos that nothing but disaster awaited the expedition; but he was never fully restored to public favor.

It would be hard to picture a more dismal, dispiriting, and depressing situation than that of Arnold and his troops. The driving

rain changed to snow, the cold increased, and ice formed continually. All the signs pointed to an early and rigorous winter, but the men resolutely pressed on. Often the only way by which the force could make headway against the current was by wading in the freezing water, waist deep, and pushing the boats in front of them. At last, after untold suffering and labor, they arrived at Lake Megantic

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



FIRING ON THE FLAG OF TRUCE

and encamped on its bank, while Arnold with some fifty men proceeded down the Chaudiere to the nearest French settlement for provisions for his command. On the way they met with a stirring experience.

A Nar-
 row Es-
 cape

They knew nothing about the river, and had hardly launched their bateaux when the current whirled them about with such violence that the men were helpless. Plunging among the boiling rapids, three of the boats were overturned and shattered to fragments. The others, having moored in more peaceful water, were able to save the men thus flung into the stream.

Now that the troops paused for rest, they heard a steady deep roar coming from a point a short way below them. They set out to

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

learn what it meant, and to their astonishment found a high cataract over which all would have plunged to certain death but for the mishap which had checked them and which, therefore, proved a blessing in disguise. Embarking again, they continued their way down the angry stream, past rapids and falls, until they reached Sertigan, where food was obtained and sent back by Indians to the main command, which was in sore need of them. They had lost all their boats and provisions, had eaten their last dog some days before, and were now living on roots. Refreshed by the food brought to them, the army resumed its march towards the St. Lawrence.

In Front
 of Que-
 bec

By this time, severe weather had fully come. In the midst of a furious snow-storm, the troops appeared like so many spectres, on the heights of Point Levis, opposite Quebec. The town was thrown into a panic. The drums beat to arms, and the garrison hastily prepared to meet the attack, which they believed would be made without delay. Arnold was confident that a majority of the people in the town were so friendly to the Americans that they would make common cause with them as soon as they appeared before it. He was eager to cross the river, but the elements prevented. A storm of sleet held the Americans idle for four days. On the night of the 13th, over five hundred men crossed the St. Lawrence in canoes, and landing at Wolfe's Cove, climbed up the ravine, and at daylight stood in battle array on the Heights of Abraham, where Wolfe had attacked Montcalm sixteen years before.

The City
 Sum-
 moned to
 Surren-
 der

The Americans advanced towards the two gates opening upon the plain, and, halting, cheered vigorously, believing that the regulars would march out to attack them, when the citizens would rise and the invaders could rush in and take possession of the city. But the commandant was too prudent to incur any risk like that. He remained at his post, and if the people had any intention of rising, they were restrained through fear of the garrison. Arnold demanded the surrender of the city and issued several proclamations, all of which were treated with contempt. Then alarming news reached him. Carleton was descending the St. Lawrence with a large force of Indians and Canadians, and the garrison were preparing to march out and assail him with field-pieces. Arnold had no cannon, so he retreated up the river to Point aux Trembles and there waited instructions from Montgomery.

That gallant officer had meanwhile not been idle. He had placed

garrisons in the forts at St. John, and at Chambly, and, leaving Montreal in charge of General Wooster, he made ready to march against Quebec. But the chief difficulty Montgomery experienced was to hold his men to their work. The enlistment terms of nearly all expired on the 1st of December, and they were already weary of their task. The soldiers refused to re-enlist, and day by day the force dwindled, while the reinforcements so urgently called for by him and Schuyler were not furnished by Congress. Montgomery made the best arrangement possible with the men that were willing to accompany him, so, leaving Montreal late in November, he joined Arnold at Point aux Trembles, on the 3d of December, and assumed at once command of the united troops. He brought with him a quantity of clothing, which was sorely needed by the suffering invaders, now less than a thousand in number.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

**Junction
 of the
 Forces**

It seemed a grim farce for this weak force to lay siege to Quebec, and we must admire the pluck displayed by the Americans. They appeared before the town on the 5th of December, and the following morning Montgomery summoned Carleton to surrender. The flag of truce was fired upon, whereupon the angered Montgomery sent a threatening notification to the officer who had thus violated the rules of civilized warfare. Carleton refused to hold intercourse with his assailant, and the latter made ready for the assault.

The weather was intensely cold, and the ground under the deep snow was frozen like flint. Spade and pickaxe were useless, so Montgomery filled large baskets with snow, poured water upon this and then allowed it to freeze. In a short time he thus erected a gleaming embankment, several feet high, upon which he placed a battery of six twelve-pounders and two howitzers. The shells from the several mortars which fell in the Lower Town set a number of buildings on fire. Then the cannon opened on the ice battery and sent the fragments flying. The crystal walls were speedily demolished, and the American battery was forced to withdraw. By this time, Montgomery saw that his cannon could make no impression on the massive stone walls, and other means, he concluded, must be devised for capturing the city. His force was so weak that he decided to wait for reinforcements, but two weeks passed and not a solitary soldier appeared. The action of Congress was slow, and the anxious Schuyler had no money with which to obtain either men or sup-

**A Futile
 Attack**

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

A Dismal
 Christ-
 mas

plies. He even used his own personal credit, but could not procure any recruits. Montgomery was thus left to help himself the best way he could.

That officer had a task on his hands before which the bravest leader would have quailed. In a few days the terms of enlistment of the remainder of his men would expire, and there was little hope of holding them longer. Snow fell almost continuously, and then small-pox broke out and raged with fatal virulence. As if this were not enough, Arnold quarrelled with his officers, who became so incensed against him that they told Montgomery they would leave the service unless they were placed under another commander. Montgomery called all his tact and wisdom into play, and, by his kind, firm words to Arnold and his appeals to the patriotism of the others, healed their differences. It was a dismal Christmas which came to the suffering troops, hundreds of miles from home, in a hostile country, shivering with cold and suffering with hunger, but to their credit be it said they did not shrink from their duty.

A council of war was held, at which it was decided that two attacks should be made upon the city at the same time,—one under the command of Montgomery, and the other under the leadership of Arnold. While Montgomery was to effect the capture of the Cape Diamond bastion, on the highest point of the promontory, Arnold was to attack the Lower Town and burn the British stockade close by the river. No date was fixed, but it was agreed that the assault should be made on the first stormy night, which was certain to come very soon. Another snow-storm set in on the afternoon of December 30th, and it was resolved that the attempt should be made that night. Desertion and sickness had reduced Montgomery's force to about seven hundred men, but he was still as resolute as ever. He energetically completed his plans, and, in the cold and darkness and storm, at two o'clock on the morning of the last day of the year, the troops were in motion.

The
 Plan of
 Assault

Colonel Livingston was to make a feint against the St. Louis Gate and set it on fire, while Major Brown was to threaten the ramparts of Cape Diamond. Arnold was to lead three hundred and fifty men to attack and set fire to the works at St. Roque, and Montgomery, with the remaining troops, was to advance below Cape Diamond, carry the defences at the base of the citadel, and then push forward and join Arnold. If successful, this would give the assailants

possession of the Lower Town, after which they would unite, destroy Prescott Gate, and dash into the city. The plan was good and well matured, and there is little doubt that it would have met with success, had not a deserter revealed the scheme to Carleton, who caused his soldiers to sleep that night on their arms.

The darkness was so dense that it was necessary for the Americans to adopt some means of recognizing each other. To do this, a piece of white paper was fastened in front of each man's cap. In the face of the blinding sleet and hail, Montgomery led his men along the icy path at the foot of the acclivity until they reached a block-house below Cape Diamond. There was no sign of life there, and, believing that the garrison were unprepared, the impatient leader shouted to his men to follow him. But the traitor from the American ranks had done his work too well. A strong company were on the watch, with weapons ready, and the moment Montgomery's voice rang out in the storm and darkness, they opened fire with grape-shot. In an instant Montgomery, two officers, and ten men were killed. The remainder hurriedly retreated to Wolfe's Cove and made no further effort to reach the gate.

Arnold at this time was fighting his way through snow-drifts on the other side of the town, which was in a turmoil. The bells were ringing, and drums were beating to arms, while above the din and tumult sounded the boom of cannon. Arnold, with the dauntless bravery for which he was noted, pushed on, forced by the circumstances we have already explained to lead his men in single file. It was found impossible to drag cannon with them, and they were therefore left behind. The fighting had hardly begun, when Arnold received a severe wound in the leg and had to be carried to the rear. The gallant Morgan then took command, and, after desperate work, captured two batteries from the enemy. He was about to attack Prescott Gate, when the depressing news reached him that the troops stationed near one of the other gates had been made prisoners. Despite the most determined fighting, and after severe loss, Morgan was compelled to surrender with four hundred troops. A force of reserves had meanwhile retreated and were soon joined by others who escaped.

Carleton and Montgomery had previously fought side by side in the French and Indian War, and the former sent out a detachment to search for the body of his old comrade. It was found, with

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Death of
 Mont-
 gomery

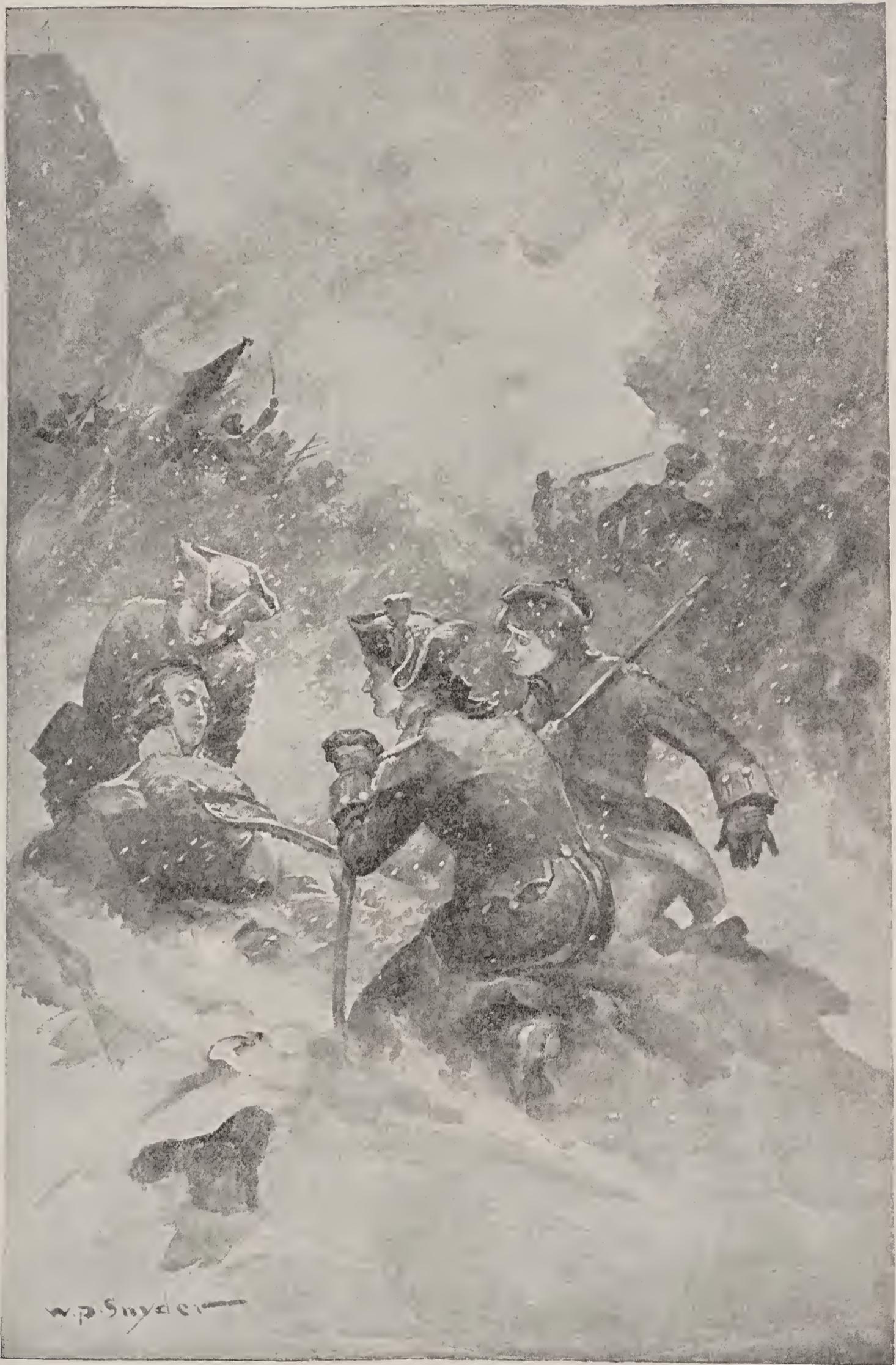
Decisive
 Repulse
 of the
 Ameri-
 cans

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

End of
 the Inva-
 sion

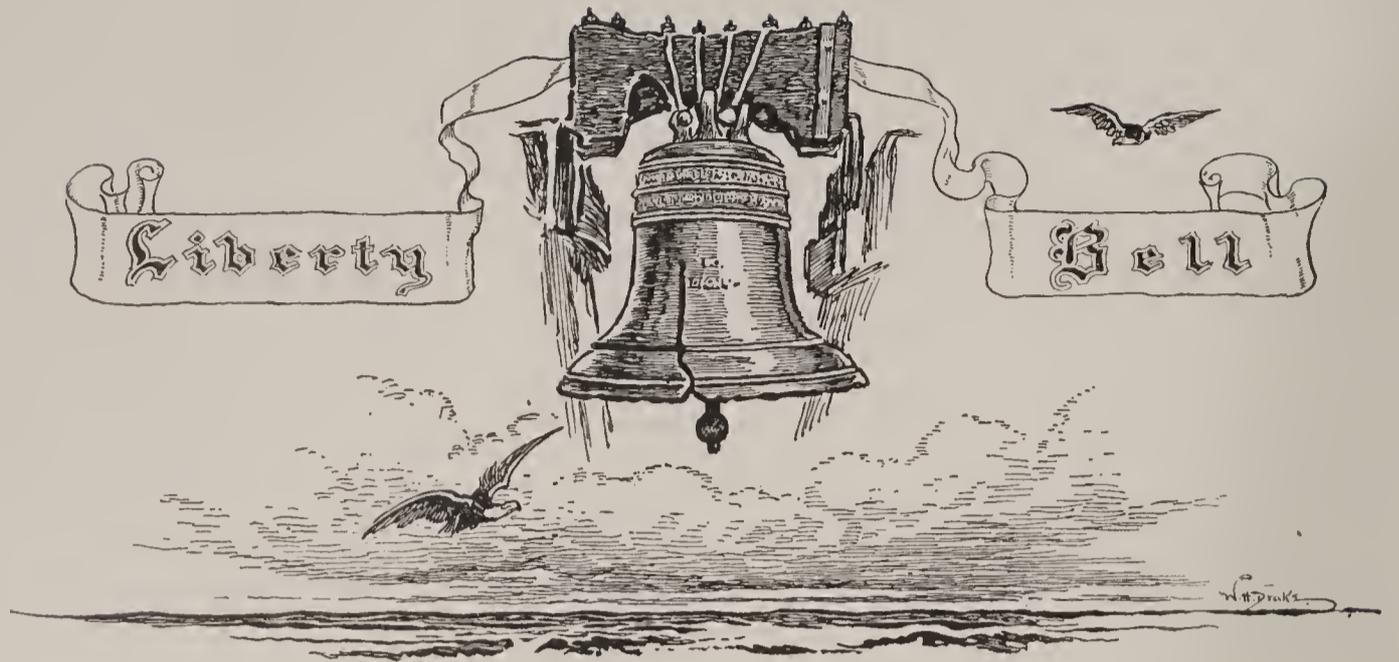
his brother officers, half buried under snow-drifts. All were reverently brought within the city and given burial. Nearly half a century later, the remains of Montgomery were brought to New York, and they now rest under a beautiful monument in St. Paul's churchyard, in lower Broadway. It would seem that this ought to have been the end of the ill-starred invasion of Canada, marked as it was by disaster almost from the beginning. But the remnants of the expeditionary force stayed behind until the following spring. By that time the folly of the whole expedition became so apparent that it was decided to leave the country. Before the sick could be removed, the English, who had been reinforced, sallied out from the gates and scattered the fugitive Americans in confusion. Carleton could feel only sympathy for his enemies. He knew their wretched plight, and humanely ordered troops to search through the woods for the wounded and helpless. All that could be found were brought in and treated kindly. Those that needed aid were sent to the hospital and told that they were at liberty to go to their homes, as soon as they felt strong enough to do so. Finally, the remnant of the shattered and dispirited army proceeded to the shelter of Crown Point, many of them dying on the way thither. Thus ends the sad story of the unfortunate Canadian invasion of 1775.





FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY W. P. SNYDER

THE DEATH OF MONTGOMERY



CHAPTER XXXII

EVENTS OF 1776 (DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE)

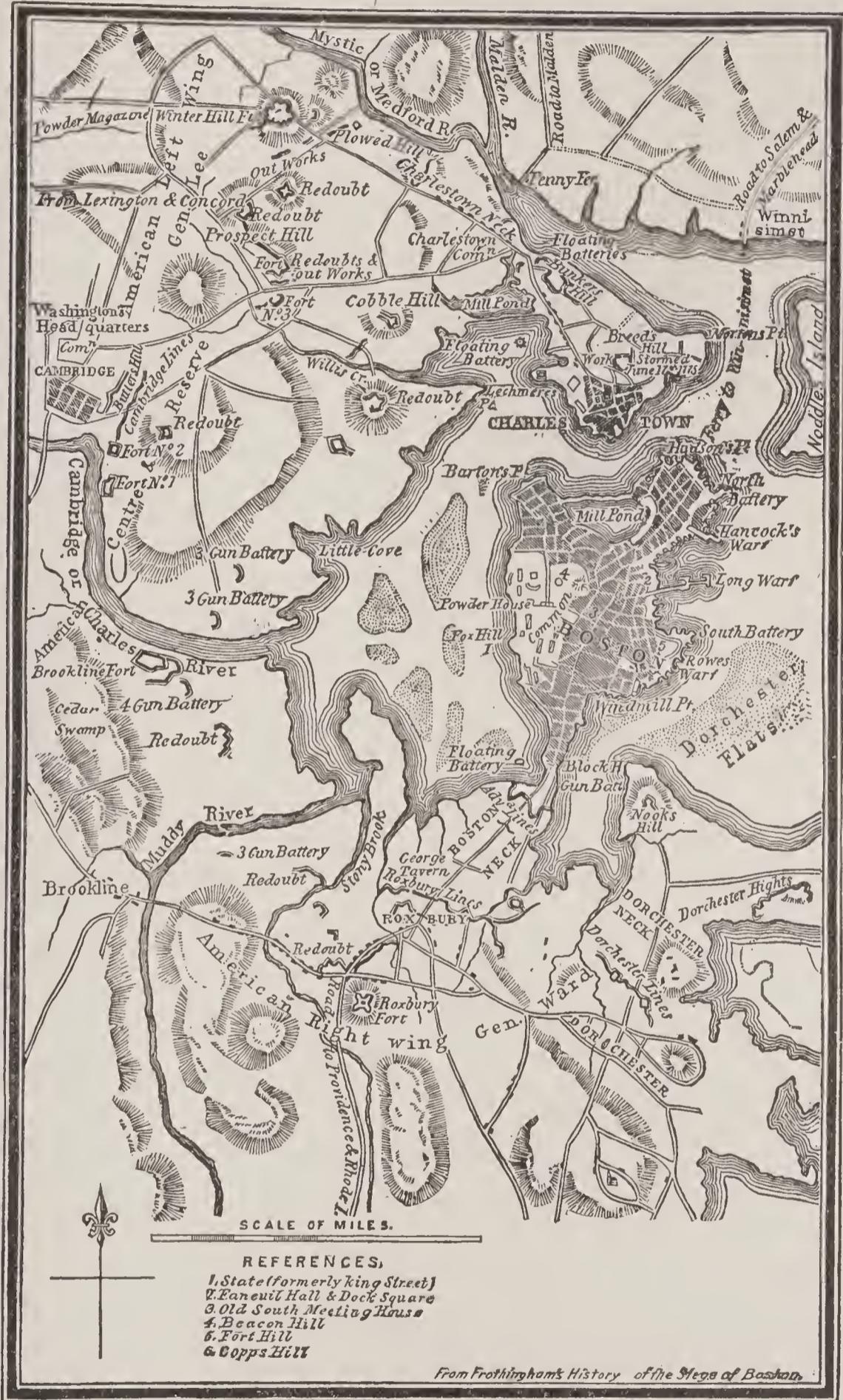
[*Authorities* : In May (1775), before the Battle of Bunker Hill, England had strengthened her forces in America by despatching to Boston Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne,* with a considerable body of British troops and a contingent of foreign mercenaries, chiefly Hessians. The arrival of the latter naturally intensified the feeling of resentment in the colonies, and drew thousands into the ranks of the New England levies, under Washington, Lee, Schuyler, Putnam, Nathaniel Greene, and other officers. With the Declaration of Independence, the conflict was fairly entered upon, though at first with dispiriting results, due partly to the ill-fortunes of war and the short term of colonial enlistments, and partly to jealousies and contentions among the commander-in-chief's general officers. With the capture of New York by the British, the fall of Fort Washington, and the consequent retreat through New Jersey, the situation grew more alarming, though it was at length relieved by the victories at Trenton and Princeton, which brought the first year's campaigns of the war to a triumphant and more hopeful close. The authorities for the period are those cited at the opening of the two previous chapters. For fuller details of the episode of Nathan Hale—the hero who at his death regretted that he had but one life to lose for his country—see his life by Stuart (Hartford, 1856), and Lossing's "The Two Spies : Nathan Hale and John André" (New York, 1886).]

Where the
first Congress
met



GENERAL WASHINGTON was meanwhile pressing the siege of Boston, but in the undertaking he was compelled to face every sort of discouragement. The terms of enlistment of all the troops would expire with the year, and unless the fates were more auspicious he was likely to be left a commander without an army. The men were ardently patriotic, but unaccustomed to bearing arms, or to be long absent from their homes. They rushed to battle in the flush of the first excitement, but, as the days and weeks passed, many

* General John Burgoyne [1722-1792] son of Capt. John, and grandson of Sir John Burgoyne, Bt., purchased a lieutenancy in the Thirteenth Light Dragoons in 1740,



BOSTON WITH ITS ENVIRONS IN 1775-1776

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The
 Siege of
 Boston

grew homesick. They had all hastily left their families and now felt that they ought to look after those they loved. Some of them, moreover, chafed under discipline, and but for the great tact of the commander he would have been well-nigh helpless. He granted furloughs, listened patiently to their complaints, counselled them wisely, and showed a kindness and sympathy which won all hearts.

Congress saw the imperative necessity of preserving the Continental army intact. A committee was therefore sent to Cambridge to consult with the commander-in-chief, and together a plan was fixed upon which proved effectual. Among the disquieting things which the autumn brought to light was the fact that there were only about eight rounds of ammunition for each man. Had this become known to the British, they could have sallied out from the city and at once scattered the besiegers. But while no important movement was made by the Americans, Washington did not allow them to remain wholly idle. Now and then cannonading was indulged in, though little was accomplished. Several skirmishes took place, and Washington strove to bring on a general battle. While not strong enough to make an open attack, he hoped the enemy would attack him, but Gage was too cautious to incur the risk. He resorted to the more

and three years afterwards eloped with and married Lady Charlotte Stanley, daughter of the eleventh Earl of Derby. On the outbreak of the Seven Years' War, he obtained the lieutenant-colonelcy of the Coldstream Guards through his father-in-law's influence, and saw considerable service on the Continent, and was sent, later on, to Portugal, as brigadier-general, to assist the Portuguese against Spain. After his return to England he entered political life, and became an *habitué* of fashionable clubs and theatres, and for a time was a successful playwright, meanwhile holding several sinecure military appointments. In 1775, he was sent to America to reinforce General Gage at Boston, and in the following year was attached to the staff of Sir Guy Carleton, in Canada. With Carleton he saw some fighting in the Lake Champlain district, but returned to England later in the year to urge upon the English ministry an active campaign, directed from Canada, upon northern New York. The British authorities, impressed by the scheme, gave Burgoyne permission to engage in it, and in May, 1777, on his return to Canada, he set out from Three Rivers, with a force of 7,000 men, to descend the waterways to the Hudson, and, in coöperation with Clinton's command which was to move northwards from New York, to seek to cut the colonies in twain. Neglecting to keep open his communications with Canada, and Clinton failing to form a junction with him, he was, as we shall presently see, surrounded at Saratoga and captured with his entire command. After this crowning disaster, Burgoyne obtained leave to return to England, where he had to face reproach and attack, against which he defended himself in his "Narrative of the Expedition from Canada." For a time he again entered political life, and was, in 1782, commander-in-chief in Ireland. His remaining years were spent in social success, and in indulging in dramatic writing, for which he had some gifts. He died suddenly, in 1792, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. See his "Life and Correspondence," by Fonblanque.

childish course of indulging in threats, of sending out reports of the formidable reinforcements on their way to join him, and of what he would do when they arrived. He sent cruisers to attack the coast towns of New England, hoping thus to induce Washington to detach troops to their relief. Among the towns burned was Falmouth, now Portland, Maine. In October, Gage was relieved of his command, on the ground of inefficiency, and General Howe assumed charge of the British armies in America. He treated the Whigs and suspected persons in Boston with great harshness, and threatened with death any who left the city without permission.

As was natural, Congress and the country became impatient with the inaction at Boston. Months had passed since the battles of Lexington and Bunker Hill, and there was no substantial change on the part of the two armies confronting each other. None was more anxious than Washington to strike a blow, but as we have seen he was powerless. His army was fast dwindling, and those that were left suffered much from lack of food and clothing. Towards the close of the year, however, something like a reaction of patriotism happily set in. The regiments began to fill up, provisions were supplied, and an air of hopefulness now animated every one. As organized, on the 1st of January, 1776, the new Continental army consisted of ten thousand men, though of this force a large number were still absent on furlough. It was at this time that a new flag was displayed, composed of thirteen alternate red and white stripes, as it is to-day, but the blue ground in the corner contained the united crosses of St. Andrew and St. George, instead of the stars which supplanted them. When it was unfurled in front of the army at Cambridge it was greeted with loud cheering.

Not counting the marines on the ships of war, the British troops in Boston were about eight thousand in number. They made themselves at home, with their riding-school in the Old South Church, and the theatre in Faneuil Hall, where one of their plays was founded on the supposed incidents in the siege of Boston, which, in the effusive British loyalty of the time, terminated with the overthrow of the Yankees! Thus the weeks and months went by, with Washington grimly holding the British within the city, until the evening of March 4th, when the patriots took possession of Dorchester Heights, from which a cannonade was opened upon the enemy. Howe would have attacked the patriots the next day but a storm

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

**Appoint-
 ment of
 General
 Howe to
 Chief
 Com-
 mand**

**The
 New
 Flag**

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

prevented. Washington continued to improve the time, and finally secured a position from which his cannon fully commanded the city.

The alternative was now forced upon Howe of fighting or retreating, and, seeing this, he began preparations for leaving the place he had occupied so long. The decision spread consternation among the Tories, who had good cause to dread the vengeance of the Whigs, towards whom they had shown great cruelty. They discreetly preferred to go with the enemies of their country and did so. On the



THE NEW FLAG

Evacua-
 tion of
 Boston

17th of March, Howe and his troops embarked on board the warships and transports, one hundred and fifty in number, and sailed for Halifax, Nova Scotia, carrying with them more than a thousand "loyalists." Then Washington and his troops marched in and occupied the city amid the heartfelt rejoicings of the people. The event caused much gladness throughout the colonies. Both branches of the Massachusetts legislature voted thanks to Washington and the army, while Congress ordered a commemorative medal to be struck.

This was produced in gold and bronze, and is now in the possession of the Massachusetts Historical Society.

The evacuation of Boston by the British, however, did not mean that they had given up their intention of conquering the colonies. The next blow struck was against the South. Early in June, Admiral Parker, with twenty-five hundred troops, appeared off Charleston, South Carolina, with the intention of capturing the city. The people there expected him and made preparations for the struggle. General Lee had been sent thither by Washington, and his arrival was inspiriting to the patriots. The militia, at the call of Governor Rutledge, flocked in from the surrounding country, and Fort Sullivan was speedily strengthened by the mounting of thirty pieces of heavy ordnance. The fort was made of palmetto logs and manned by over four hundred men, under Colonel Moultrie. The British fleet, numbering nearly forty vessels, carried two hundred and sixty-two guns. The attack began about noon, June 28th, and lasted with slight intermission until nine o'clock in the evening. While the fight was raging, the people of Charleston, who were watching it with intense interest, were thrown into dismay by the disappearance of the flag. Their belief was that the fort had surrendered, but the flagstaff had been cut in two by a cannon-shot from the fleet. Hardly had it fallen, when Sergeant William Jasper sprang through an embrasure, picked up the flag, while the shot were flying round him, re-entered the fort, and, climbing to the parapet, set the sponge-staff to which he had fastened it, firmly in place. The British were defeated and withdrew. They lost considerably over two hundred in killed and wounded, while of the gallant defenders of the fort only ten men were killed and twenty-two wounded. In honor of the valiant commander, the name of Fort Sullivan was changed to Fort Moultrie. The enemy's fleet sailed to Long Island, where, after remaining a few days to repair damages, it joined the forces at New York, under General Sir William and his brother Admiral Howe.

Washington, having driven the British out of Boston, now gave his attention to other threatened points. Some of his troops, as we have seen, went to Canada to help in the ill-fated expedition under Montgomery and Arnold, but a larger number were sent to New York and the neighborhood. It had been known that Sir Henry Clinton would sail from Boston with troops on a secret expedition,

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

**British
 Attack
 on
 Charleston**

**Repulse
 of the
 British**

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

General
 Lee in
 New
 York

and Washington suspected that New York was his destination. Governor Tryon, the royalist ruler of North Carolina, had been sent thither by the crown and was ready to lead a demonstration in its favor.

General Lee was recruiting at that time in Connecticut, and Washington ordered him to go to New York with his volunteers and there assume charge. He did so, and held the city with an iron hand. Sir Henry Clinton, however, who soon arrived with his fleet,



EXPLOIT OF SERGEANT JASPER

sailed southward to make his unsuccessful attack on Charleston. In June, General Howe* reached Sandy Hook with his recruited army from Halifax, and was soon joined by a large fleet, commanded by his brother, Richard, Earl Howe. Washington soon arrived at New

* Sir William Howe (1729-1814), brother of Earl Howe, the famous British admiral who relieved Gibraltar in 1782, served under Wolfe at Quebec, and was appointed major-general in 1777. He commanded the British forces at Bunker Hill, and was given the

York and pushed forward the defences of the city. Fort Washington was built on Washington Heights, the most elevated part of Manhattan Island, and strong batteries were constructed at other points. The peril of the country was, however, at this juncture so imminent that the commander-in-chief went to Philadelphia to consult with Congress. That body authorized the enlistment of a large body of men and in other respects followed the counsel of Washington in preparing for the vigorous prosecution of the war. The determination to gain their independence was rapidly intensifying throughout the colonies, where there had been many who were hesitating and doubtful. One of the most powerful agencies in the growth of patriotic sentiment was an argument, written by Thomas Paine,* the son of an English Quaker, who had lately come to America. The logic of the pamphlet was perfect, and it was effective chiefly in showing the true relations between England and her colonies. The legislature of Pennsylvania published and circulated the essay and presented Paine with the sum of five hundred pounds sterling, as an appreciation of his services in the cause of liberty.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The Services of Thomas Paine

The first distinctive sign of the new-born resolution for independence was the recommendation made by Congress in May, that the various colonies should form governments of their own, in place of those that had been overthrown. The advice was followed, and the colonies thereafter were known as States. On the 8th of June, a resolution was offered in Congress declaring the States free and independent. Virginia had been the first to instruct her delegates to vote for independence, and a committee of five was named to draw

First Step Towards Independence

chief command three years later, on General Gage's departure for England. He conducted the withdrawal of the British from Boston in 1776, and in the following year gained the battle of Long Island, and occupied New York. In October 28, 1776, he won the battle of White Plains, and in the following month took Fort Washington. In the autumn of 1777, he was victor at Brandywine, entered Philadelphia, and repulsed Washington at Germantown. Being superseded by Sir Henry Clinton, in 1778, he returned to England, where, after submitting to a parliamentary investigation on his military career in America, which ended in his vindication, he was made a lieutenant-general in 1782, and general in 1786. In 1790, on the death of his brother, he succeeded to the peerage as Viscount Howe, and died in 1814.

* This passionate pamphlet, entitled "Common Sense," was written by an English radical and deist whose reputation has now, for over a century, suffered in consequence of the infidel character of his "Age of Reason" and "The Rights of Man," the latter being a morally and politically disturbing answer to Burke's "Reflections on the Revolutions in France." "Common Sense" is a strong, telling, though somewhat coarsely written, argument in favor of political separation of the colonies from the motherland, and for the founding of an American Republic.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The Decla-
 ration
 of Inde-
 pend-
 ence

up the declaration. This committee was composed of Thomas Jefferson, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman, and William Livingston. Jefferson wrote nearly every word of the Declaration of Independence, but, as he was not a ready speaker, Adams did most of the talking in its favor. Their work was finished June 28th, and the Declaration itself was adopted July 4th, 1776,—a day which, doubtless, will be celebrated as our grandest and most joyous anniversary to the end of time. The immortal document was received with bonfires, illuminations, and general rejoicing. It was read at the head of the army and nerved the patriots to pledge their “lives, their fortunes, and their sacred honor,” in the struggle for liberty and independence. All this was needed, for England was soon to put forth her utmost efforts to conquer her rebellious subjects. She had not only immense armies and fleets, but she hired over sixteen thousand Hessian troops in Holland to assist in the work of subjugation.

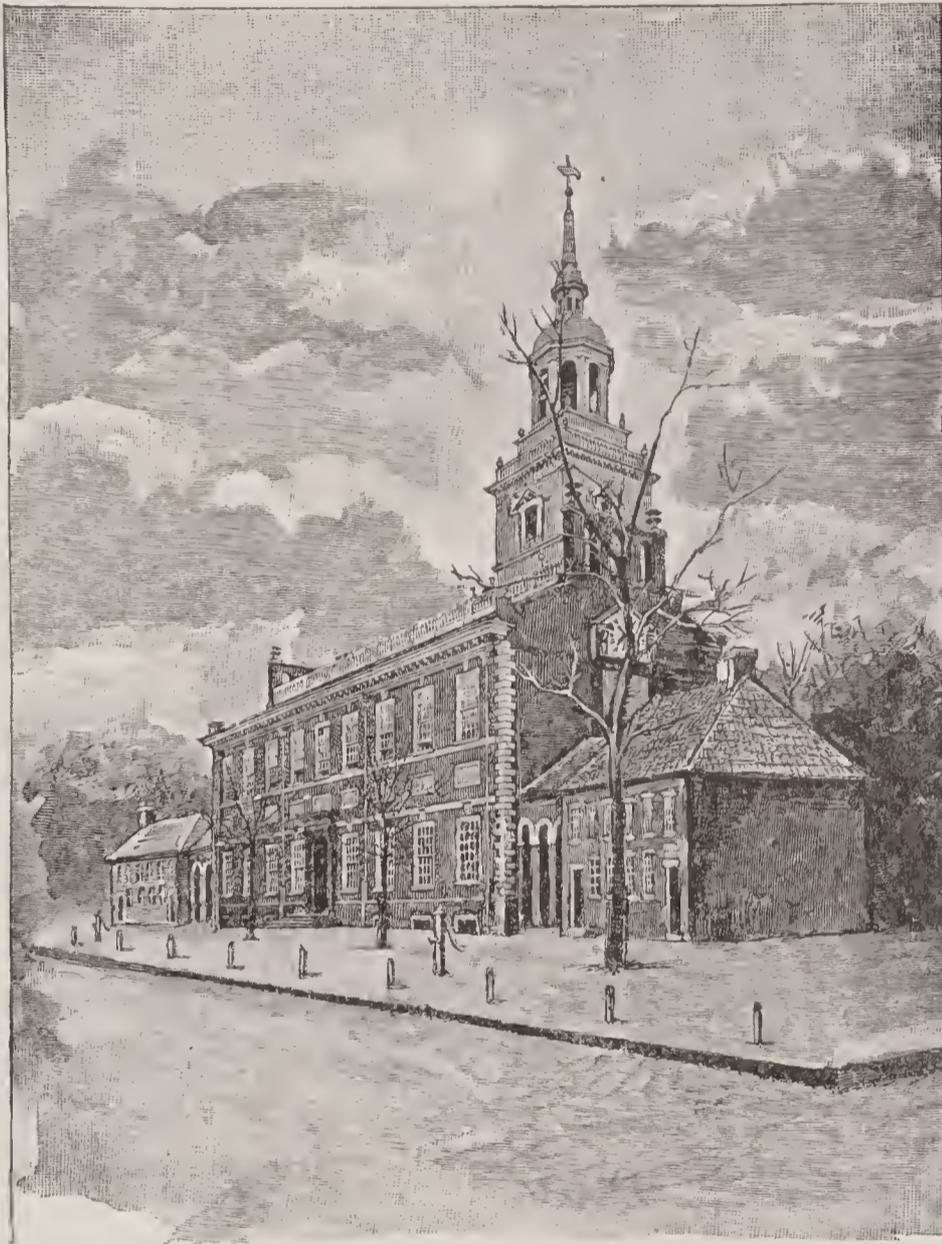
Defeat of
 Ameri-
 cans on
 Long Isl-
 and

When the two Howes arrived at New York, they believed that a single campaign would stamp out all resistance. This belief would seem warranted, when it is remembered that the British army far outnumbered that of the patriots, while the land force was supported by four hundred ships and transports, ten ships-of-the-line, and twenty frigates. With fifteen thousand men, Howe crossed to Long Island, where General Putnam, with five thousand poorly equipped troops, was posted near Brooklyn, then simply a ferry station. Through a blunder on the part of Putnam, his force was nearly surrounded and routed towards the end of August, 1776. Three thousand Americans escaped to Brooklyn, where a fort had been built; but the sluggish Howe lost all advantage by his tardiness. He spent two days debating whether to attack the fort or not. He believed that the Americans would realize their hopelessness and surrender without serious resistance; but a dense fog enabled Washington to withdraw the garrison to New York. Howe followed slowly with his immensely superior force, and Washington fell back, fighting both at Harlem and at White Plains, but with little advantage to either side. Reaching the hills east of the present town of Peekskill, he then turned about and faced the enemy.

Howe refused, however, to attack and moved into New Jersey. Washington left a part of his army under General Lee, crossed the Hudson, and marched to Fort Lee. Fort Washington, on the north-

ern end of Manhattan Island, was nearly opposite this fort and was garrisoned by Colonel Magaw, with nearly three thousand soldiers. The fort was assaulted by the enemy, November 16th, and captured, after severe loss on the part of the assailants. Washington witnessed the disaster with deep distress, but just then he was powerless to help the assailed force. This defeat endangered the whole army.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



INDEPENDENCE HALL RESTORED AS IN 1776

Washington left General Lee to hold the position at Peekskill, and with five thousand men embarked on the Hudson and moved down to a point nearly opposite New York. Early in December, Cornwallis crossed the river with a strong detachment, under orders from Howe to pursue and capture Washington, but the confident earl found the task harder than he had imagined. Washington had sent orders to General Lee to join him, but Lee purposely lagged, to that extent, indeed, that he was captured near Basking Ridge, New Jersey, as he

Capture
 of General
 Chas.
 Lee

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Dark
 Days of
 the Rev-
 olution

Crossing
 of the
 Dela-
 ware by
 Wash-
 ington

wished to be, since his heart had been with the enemy from the first, despite his boasted patriotism and seeming loyal service in the cause of independence.

Those were the dark days of the Revolution. The Continental army was in rags, and half-starving. It was continually retreating, with the pursuers so close that they often exchanged shots with the American rear-guard. It was now winter, and the ground was covered with snow, and the weather bitterly cold. Many men were even barefoot and left bloody prints on the flinty roads, as they straggled southward. Hundreds, believing the cause of freedom utterly lost, made haste to accept the offers of the crown, and returned to their allegiance.* It seemed to Washington at this time as if his army would melt away before he could reach the Delaware River, and he would be left without a command. Congress abandoned Philadelphia and sought safety in Baltimore, first investing the commander-in-chief with almost supreme power. He, tower of strength as he was, seemed to be about the only person in the whole country who was not in despair. But the hero saw that something must be done to infuse courage and hope in the hearts of his countrymen. It was all important that he should strike a blow that would be a telling one, and he determined to do it. He had meanwhile crossed the Delaware into Pennsylvania and secured all the boats within reach, for fifty miles up and down stream. Cornwallis, on the other hand, had ceased pursuit and went into winter quarters at Trenton, Princeton, and other points in New Jersey, believing it unnecessary to give any further thought to the "ragamuffins," as he called them.

On Christmas night, Washington recrossed the Delaware, about eight miles above Trenton, with twenty-five hundred picked men and several pieces of artillery. The weather was still bitterly cold and the air was full of cutting sleet. Dividing his force, the march was taken up for Trenton by two parallel roads, one along the river, and the other several miles inland. It was planned that the two divisions should reach the town at the same time, which was done. As one body of Americans was driving in the pickets on the

* It was believed for a hundred years that among those who sought the protection offered by Howe, was Joseph Reed, Adjutant-General of the continental army, and a trusted friend of Washington. In 1876, however, Adjutant-General W. S. Stryker, of New Jersey, discovered documentary proof that the officer referred to was Colonel Charles Reed, of the Burlington militia.

Pennington road, they heard the guns of Sullivan near the river, who had attacked the lower part of the town.

There were at the time one thousand Hessians in Trenton, under the command of Colonel Rall. On the night before, he was playing cards and drinking whiskey with Abraham Hunt, whose house he made his headquarters. In the midst of the game, a messenger appeared

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



“SEE THE OLD CONTINENTALS,
 IN THEIR RAGGED REGIMENTALS”

at the door and sent in a letter to the German commander. The latter shoved it into his pocket, intending to read it when the game was finished, but forgot to do so. Had he opened the letter, he would have found that it was from a Tory, warning him that the Americans were approaching the town. When Rall heard the rattle of musketry and the roar of cannon, he rushed out and made a brave effort to rally his men, but he was soon mortally wounded, and, after a brisk resistance, his troops were forced to surrender, a few escaping in the direction of Bordentown. Supported between two of his men, Rall painfully made his way to where Washington was seated

The Battle of Trenton

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The
 Turning
 Point of
 the Rev-
 olution

on his horse, and handed him his sword, begging him to show consideration to his men. Washington called upon him, as he lay dying in the house to which he had been carried, and expressed his sympathy for his hapless condition.

It seems odd to refer to the affair at Trenton as a battle, when the Americans lost but four men, two of whom were frozen to death; but it was in reality one of the most important conflicts of the Revolution. By many it is considered the turning-point of the struggle. The blow fell so quick and so sharp, and so brilliant and unexpected were its results, that it thrilled the country with new hope. Enlistments quickly increased, and everywhere there was a brightening of faces and a stronger resolve to win the cherished independence.

Having taken his prisoners into Pennsylvania, Washington recrossed the Delaware to Trenton. When this became known, Cornwallis hastened to the town, and it looked as if the Americans were being caught in a trap, from which they could not escape. The river was so full of masses of ice, grinding and crushing together, that it was impossible to force a way through it again. In front was the superior force of Cornwallis, who went to bed that night so sure of "bagging the fox" that he had made his preparations to return to England, where he expected to report that the war was ended.

At nightfall, with only the Assunpink Creek flowing between the two opposing forces, Washington lit his camp-fires and kept them brightly burning and his sentinels pacing back and forth, as if all were in readiness for the events of the morrow. During the hours of darkness, however, he was marching silently by a roundabout course to Princeton, ten miles to the north. That town was held by three regiments of infantry and three troops of dragoons, beside which a large quantity of supplies and munitions of war were stored there. The rear-guard of the British army was at Lawrenceville, about half-way between Princeton and Trenton. The Americans reached the bridge at Stony Brook, three miles from Princeton, at sunrise. There they made a short cut, while General Mercer took possession of the bridge at the main road. The British forces, under Colonel Mawhood, had just begun their movement towards Trenton, when they came upon the detachment under General Mercer at the bridge. A sharp fire was opened between the two forces, when the British charged with the bayonet, of which the patriots were destitute. General Mercer refused to surrender after being unhorsed and was

The Bat-
 tle of
 Prince-
 ton



FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY CHARLES KENDRICK

THE VICTORY AT TRENTON

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

bayoneted, while his command was put to flight, but the enemy was quickly checked by the regulars under Washington, who exposed himself with great daring. The British opened with their artillery and made a desperate effort to capture two cannon. Fighting fiercely, and with the aid of his bayonets, Colonel Mawhood forced his way to the main road and retreated towards Trenton. The Fifty-fifth British regiment was routed, and a part of the Fortieth took refuge in Nassau Hall, where it surrendered on the approach of the Americans. About thirty patriots were killed or wounded in the battle, while the enemy lost two hundred killed and two hundred and thirty prisoners.

Wash-
 ington in
 Winter
 Quar-
 ters

Cornwallis upon hearing the connonading made all haste to Princeton, but he arrived too late. Washington was already marching away from the town. Cornwallis, however, pressed the pursuit, but finding the bridge at Kingston destroyed, returned, afterwards making his way to Brunswick (now New Brunswick), to protect the valuable stores there. Washington withdrew to Morristown, where he went into winter quarters and remained until May.

Nathan
 Hale the
 Martyr

History affords no more touching story of exalted patriotism than that of Captain Nathan Hale, the "martyr spy of the Revolution." He was born at Coventry, Connecticut, in 1755, and was graduated at Yale before he was twenty-one years old. While at college, he was noted for his extraordinary athletic skill. One of his leaps on the New Haven green so far surpassed all others that for years it was inclosed within boundary marks. He was in person handsome, and had a winning manner. He was teaching school at New London and preparing to enter the ministry when news came of the battle of Lexington. He enlisted at once and persuaded many others to do so. The next morning he was on the road to Boston, and not long afterwards we find him a commissioned lieutenant in the regiment of Colonel Webb, which was employed in guarding the sea-coast in the vicinity of New London. Later on, the regiment joined Washington in the siege of Boston, and Hale became noted alike for his vigilance and his daring. Before the end of the year, he was promoted to a captaincy. His company in drill and discipline had no superior in the service. The terms of his men expiring shortly after the battle of Long Island, he gave up his own pay in order to persuade them to re-enlist. In the spring of 1776, he led a small body of spirits as daring as himself, and in a small row-boat, and in the darkness of

night, boarded and captured a British vessel, moored within a few rods of a sixty-four-gun ship, held the crew prisoners in the hold, and brought the vessel to the wharf.

The latter part of the summer of 1776, as has been shown, was a period of intense anxiety to Washington. The patriots had suffered a disastrous defeat on Long Island, and the main army had difficulty in escaping to Manhattan Island. The gloomiest period of the war

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



THE BATTLE OF PRINCETON

was at hand. Desertions were numerous, food and clothing were scarce, and with the increasing sickness there was much dissatisfaction among the men because of the failure to receive their pay. The total army numbered hardly fourteen thousand men. Opposed to them was the British army of twenty-five thousand, in superb condition, under the command of Lord Howe. They were posted across East River, stretching from Bay Ridge eastward as far as Greenpoint, with posts at Bedford, Bushwick, and Flushing, and with their warships riding at anchor in New York Bay. Washington almost felt that the existence of his army and the success of independence

Anxiety
 of Wash-
 ton

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



NATHAN HALE AS A SPY

Patriot-
ism of
Hale

depended upon acquiring an accurate knowledge of the forces of Howe, their disposition, and, if possible, that leader's intended movements. There was but one way in which this could be done:

by sending a spy into the lines of the enemy, in the person of a man bright, cool-headed, intelligent, alert, resourceful, and of dauntless courage, for, it may be said, the risk was so great that there was not one chance in ten of success. Colonel Knowlton, to whom Washington stated the case, agreed with him and set out to find the man. Selecting the most daring members of his regiment, he laid the matter before them and urged each to take the risk. Without exception every one declined, until Captain Hale was reached. He volunteered without a moment's hesitation, went to Washington, received his full instructions and set out upon his dangerous mission. He secured a school teacher's garb and left the camp at Harlem Heights. He made his way to Norwalk, where he took off his uniform and put on a brown suit and a broad-brimmed hat. A sloop took him across the Sound, and before it was daylight, he landed on the point of Great Neck, in Huntington Bay, which projects farthest into the water. He passed the day and night

with William Johnson at his farm near by, and then boldly entered the enemy's lines. What he did, where he went, what devices he adopted and what adventures befell him up to the time of his capture, of course, can never be known. He was absent two weeks, during which time it is known he visited all the encampments in and near Brooklyn. He passed the enemy's lines twice. When his work was finished in New York, he crossed to Brooklyn, it is believed near South Ferry, and

threaded his way through the lines to Huntington. Accounts differ as to the precise manner in which he was captured; but the common belief is that while he was sitting in widow Chichester's tavern, in Huntington, a Tory relative entered and recognized him. Hale was waiting for his comrades' boat and did not know his peril. The Tory betrayed him to a British naval officer, whose vessel lay in Huntington Bay. Hale walked down to the Point and seeing a boat approach-

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



THE CAPTURE OF NATHAN HALE

ing stepped into the water to leap into it. At that moment, a British officer sprang up and ordered him to surrender, several marines at the same instant covering him with their guns. Hale started to run up the bank, when the officer called again to him to surrender. Looking back, Hale saw there was no chance of escape. He quietly walked back, stepped into the boat (which he had supposed was a friendly one, until the officer and the marines rose to view) and was rowed out to the ship *Halifax*. There he was searched and the fatal papers were found between the soles of his shoes.

Capture
 of Hale

He was taken back to New York, where he arrived September

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Brutal
 Treat-
 ment of
 Hale

21st. On that day occurred a great fire, which burned four hundred dwellings, from Whitehall Slip to Barclay Street. He was taken before Lord Howe, who examined the plans and memoranda found in Hale's shoes. The prisoner denied nothing. He said he was a captain in Washington's army, had been in the British lines as a spy, did not desire a court-martial, and was sorry he had been prevented from getting the information gained to Washington. He was sentenced to be hanged on the following morning, and was at once delivered over to the brutal William Cunningham, Provost-Marshal of the royal army in New York. This Cunningham, it is a relief to state, was himself afterwards hanged; and the miscreant got his due, for he confessed that he had been accessory to several hundred murders. It was he who was responsible for the frightful sufferings of the Federal prisoners confined in the old Sugar House prison, in Rose Street, which was torn down only a few years ago. He threw Hale into a prison cell, refused to unpinion his arms, and cursed him when he asked for writing materials, a light, and a Bible. Afterwards, however, an officer of Hale's guard interceded and secured these favors for him.

Hale spent a part of the night in writing,—one letter to his aged mother, and the other to Miss Hannah Adams, of Coventry, to whom he was engaged in marriage. Then he read his Bible and gave his thoughts to the great change so close at hand. Cunningham entered the cell at daybreak and found Hale ready. He handed the Provost Marshal the two letters he had written and asked as a dying favor that they might be forwarded to their destination. Cunningham opened both, read them through, and then with an oath tore them in pieces and threw them on the floor. When afterwards asked why he committed this brutality, he replied that he did not wish the rebels to know that they had a man who could die with such firmness. While standing with the noose around his neck, Cunningham scoffingly told the prisoner that then was his chance to make his dying speech and confession. Hale gave him one look of dignified contempt, and with a depth of feeling and a touching pathos which melted several of the bystanders to tears, said, amid the awed hush:

Execu-
 tion of
 Hale

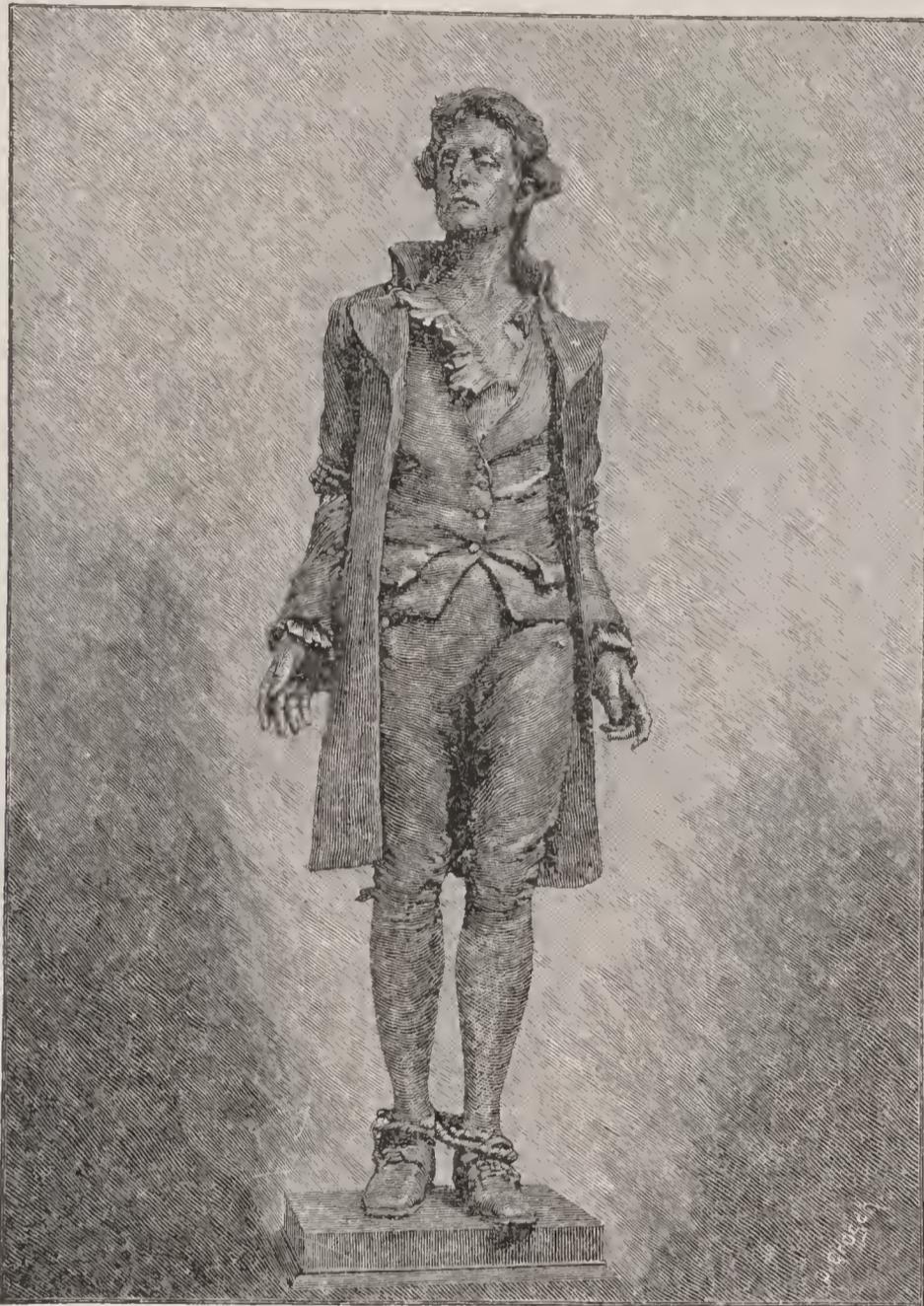
“My only regret is that I have but one life to give for my country.”

“Swing off the rebel!” commanded Cunningham. Half an hour later, the body of the martyr was buried, probably in a grave dug

beneath the gallows, though it was unmarked, and its whereabouts has never become known.

On the 25th of November, 1893, a statue of Hale was unveiled in City Hall Park, New York, with impressive ceremonies, in the presence of an immense assemblage. No wonder that more than one eye flashed with indignation at the thought that, only a few years

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



THE HALE STATUE IN CITY HALL PARK, N. Y.

before, a handsome monument had been erected in this country to the memory of Major André, an Englishman, who strove to overthrow the cause of independence in this country, while this martyr, who gave his life for the sacred cause, sleeps in an unknown grave.

**Tributes
 to the
 Memory
 of Hale**

The late Henry J. Raymond declared that Nathan Hale furnished the most conspicuous example of patriotism that the history of the Revolution has left us. "The equal of André in talent, worth, and

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

amiable manners, and his superior in that final test of character—the motive by which his acts were prompted and his life guided—he laid aside every consideration personal to himself and entered upon a service of infinite hazard to life because Washington deemed it important to the sacred cause. Like André, he was found in a hostile camp; like him, though without a trial, he was adjudged a spy, condemned to death, and hanged.”

President Dwight, of Yale College, who knew Hale intimately and loved him, wrote :

“ Thus, while fond Virtue wished to save,
 Hale, bright and generous, found a hopeless grave,
 With Genius' living flame his bosom glowed,
 And science lured him to her sweet abode :
 In Worth's fair path his feet adventured far,
 The pride of Peace, the rising star of War ;
 In duty firm, in danger calm as even—
 No friends, unchanging, and sincere to heaven.
 How short his course! the prize how early won!
 While weeping Friendship mourns her favorite son.”





CHAPTER XXXIII

EVENTS OF 1777 (BURGOYNE'S CAMPAIGN)

[*Authorities* : The present chapter fitly opens with an account of the origin and first flinging to the breeze on the field of war of the now glorious national emblem, which was soon, and in a notable degree, to be the augur of victory. Under the unfurled banner, the tide of fortune turned in favor of the Continental arms in northern New York, where the English general, Burgoyne, after repeated discomfitures, was forced to surrender with 6,000 men at Saratoga. Gloom elsewhere was, however, falling on the country, as the result of Cornwallis' taking possession of Philadelphia and the victories of Howe at Brandywine Creek and Germantown. The prospect was nevertheless brightened by the continued successes of the United States flag at sea, and by the promised aid from France. The authorities are the same as those cited in the two previous chapters, to which may be added Burgoyne's Narrative of his Campaign; Beach's "Centennial Celebrations of the State of New York" (Albany, 1879); Benjamin Franklin's Works; and, for a narrative of the naval successes of the year, Maclay's "History of the United States Navy."]



LD GLORY," the Stars and Stripes, was born on the 14th of June, 1777, on which day Congress patriotically resolved: "That the flag of the United States be thirteen stripes, alternate red and white; the union be thirteen stars, white in a blue field, presenting a new constellation." It has never been known to what influence we were indebted for the selection of the stars and stripes in our flag. Some have thought that the stripes were of Dutch origin, for they occur in Dutch armorial bearings, while others suspect that they were introduced as a compliment to Washington, on whose coat-of-arms both the stripes and stars appear; but there is no tangible evidence that either supposition is correct. The Father of his Country, nevertheless, had

Birth of
"Old
Glory"

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

How the
 Flag was
 Fashioned

much to do with designing the first Stars and Stripes. It was he, assisted by a committee appointed by Congress, who directed the preparation of the first design. They called upon Mrs. Elizabeth Ross, in Philadelphia, some time between May 23d and June 7th, 1777, with the request that she should prepare the flag. Her house, 239 Arch Street, is, we believe, still standing at this writing. Washington had a rough draft, in which the stars were six-pointed. Mrs. Ross proved that five-pointed ones would look better, and her suggestion was adopted. She had the flag finished by the next day, and it was received with great admiration wherever displayed. She was manufacturer of flags for the government for many years, her children afterwards succeeding to the business.

The flag of 1777 differed from that of to-day only in that it had but thirteen stars in the field, which were arranged in the form of a circle. The blue field, it is believed, was taken from the banner of the Scotch Covenanters, to signify the league and covenant of the united colonies against oppression, and symbolizing vigilance, perseverance, and justice. Previous to this, the patriots had fought under a variety of flags. At the beginning of the Revolution, the standard of Great Britain was used, each colony adding some local design. Massachusetts used the pine-tree on her flags and coins, while the armed ships of New York flew a white flag, inscribed with a black beaver, an emblem that now figures on the arms of the State.

The
 First
 Flags

Probably no colors were carried by the staunch old patriots at Lexington, but it was not long before they adopted a flag with the arms of Connecticut, bearing the motto: *Qui transtulit sustinet*, ("He who transplanted still sustains.") Tradition has it that at the battle of Bunker Hill a large red flag was displayed with the defiant taunt, "Come, if you dare." A flag that was well known in those days was of blue, with a field of white, quartered by a red St. George's cross.

The "Grand Union Flag" was hoisted January 2d, 1776. Its field was composed of the crosses of St. George and St. Andrew, as shown on the British banner, but the fly was made up of thirteen stripes, alternately red and white. This flag was raised on the American camp at Cambridge, and was greeted with hearty cheers and a salute of thirteen guns. It was probably displayed also in the City Hall Park, Boston, July 9th, 1776, when the Declaration of Independence was read in the presence of General Washington.

The two flags most used in colonial days were of the pine-tree and rattlesnake pattern. The pine-tree was taken from the flag of Massachusetts, and the motto, "An Appeal to Heaven," added to it. More famous was the rattlesnake flag, which originated with Franklin, twenty years before the Revolution, when he was editor of the *Philadelphia Gazette*. In an earnest appeal for a union of the colonies against the attacks of the French, he showed a wood-cut, representing a snake separated into parts, each part marked with the initials of one of the colonies, and underneath the motto: "Join or Die," or, "Unite or Die." The design came into general prominence later on, when it was divided into thirteen parts.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

On February 9th, 1776, Colonel Gadsden presented to Congress "an elegant standard, such as is to be used by the commander-in-chief of the American navy." It was of a bright yellow color, the centre bearing the "lively representation of a rattlesnake in the attitude of preparing to strike." The motto beneath was: "Don't tread on me." Congress adopted the design, which was afterwards varied, the snake being used upon a field of thirteen red and white stripes, and also upon thirteen red and blue stripes, in which cases the snake was shown as "undulating across the field."

The
 Naval
 Flag

The first independence flag displayed in South Carolina was at the taking of Fort Jackson, on James Island, September 13th, 1775. It was of blue, with a white crescent in one corner. This was the flag rescued by Sergeant Jasper in the attack of June 28th, 1776. The Stars and Stripes was carried in the battle of Brandywine, September 11th, 1777, eight days after the official promulgation of the flag at Philadelphia. One of the first conflicts in which it was displayed was at the siege of Fort Stanwix, August 2d, 1777. There was no flag in the fort when the enemy appeared, but knowing the pattern adopted, one was constructed from the crude materials on hand. This interesting relic is now in the possession of Mrs. Abram Lansing, of Albany, N. Y., a descendant of General Gansevoort. The first British surrender graced by the Stars and Stripes was at Saratoga, October 17th, 1777.

An important change was ordered by Congress, to take effect May 1st, 1795. Then and after the flag was to contain fifteen stars and fifteen stripes, one of each to be added with the admission of every new State. The two were displayed because of the admission of Vermont and Kentucky. The *Constitution*, known as *Old Iron-*

An Im-
 portant
 Change
 in Our
 Flag

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

sides, was the first ship to carry the fifteen-starred-and-striped banner to sea under canvas. It soon became evident that, with the continual addition of new States, the beautiful symmetry of the flag would in time be destroyed. At the suggestion of Capt. S. C. Reid, commander of the famous privateer *General Armstrong*, Congress, April 4th, 1818, restored the number of stripes to thirteen, and ordered that a new star should be added on the 4th of July succeeding the admission of every new State. The wife of Captain Reid made the first flag, with the old number of stripes, and with twenty stars arranged in the form of a large star.

The
 Flags of
 Other
 Nations

Although we are one of the youngest of nations, our flag is among the oldest. The flag of Great Britain, as it at present appears, was adopted in 1801; that of Spain in 1785, while the tri-color of France, also of red, white, and blue, took form in 1794. Portugal did not adopt its present flag until 1830, Italy in 1848, and the German Empire in 1871. Our banner, it may moreover be said, has been through more battles and has waved over more victories on land and sea than any other flag in the world. No European flag has had so many die in its defence. More than a million men have laid down their lives that "Old Glory" should float aloft, and millions more stand ready to-day to rush to its defence against assault from any and every quarter.

The
 Formid-
 able Brit-
 ish Cam-
 paign

Returning to our history of the events of 1777, the British government formed a plan for crushing the rebellion by means of the most formidable campaign that had yet been undertaken. This was to open communication between New York and Canada and cut off New England from the other States, by sending General Burgoyne, with seven thousand Hessians, including a corps of artillery, down the Hudson to Albany, where he was to be met by a large force from New York. At the same time, Colonel Barry St. Leger (*saint led' jer*) was to ascend the St. Lawrence to Lake Ontario and advance to Albany by way of the Mohawk River. At Crown Point, Burgoyne enlisted a large number of Indians, while St. Leger had other Indians and many Tories under his command. The convergence of these three armies would make an irresistible force, in the form of a vast wedge thrust between New England and the remaining colonies, permanently separating them and insuring the conquest of the country; but what great events flow from slight causes! One of the failures

in this great campaign was due to the blunder of a copyist. The campaign was planned in London, whence orders were sent out for the advance of Burgoyne's and St. Leger's forces from Canada. At first, Sir William Howe was simply informed of the plan, and was given discretionary powers. Then a despatch was drafted, ordering him to co-operate in the movement from New York. A clerk made a copy of the despatch for Lord George Germaine, but it was so carelessly written, and contained so many erasures, that the minister angrily ordered him to make another copy free of mistakes. While he was doing so, Lord George went to his country seat, and was not on hand when the carefully written paper was ready for his signature. It was laid away, and when the minister returned, it seems that he forgot about it. It was not sent to America for a long time,—and then too late to be of any service. Sir William Howe, being left with discretionary powers, confined his attentions to Washington's army near Philadelphia, and took no part in the co-operating movement with Burgoyne. The reason why Howe failed to send an army up the Hudson to Albany was a puzzle to the others who took part. Lord Germaine, conscious of his blame in the matter, kept the secret, and it is only within the last few years that the true explanation came to light.

While the armies of Washington and Howe were preparing for offensive movements, each sent out detachments to strike blows, as opportunity offered. The American General McDougall, stationed at Peekskill, burned the property there and retreated before the approach of a strong force. General Lincoln, at Bound Brook, New Jersey, after the loss of more than fifty men, narrowly escaped capture by a large body of troops, despatched by Cornwallis from Brunswick.

Governor Tryon was, as we have seen, a bitter enemy to the cause of American independence. He urged the employment of the most ferocious and intractable of the Indians, in order to strike terror among the rebels. Nothing suited this brutal officer better than to harry the patriots in every manner possible. In the latter part of April, 1777, he sailed up the East River with a force of two thousand men, part of whom were Tories, and, passing through Long Island Sound, landed on the Connecticut shore and marched towards Danbury, where the Americans had collected a large quantity of stores. These were destroyed, the town burned, and the people

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The Result of a Clerical Error

Gov. Tryon's Brutality

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

treated with great cruelty. The militia flew to arms, and, under the leadership of Arnold, Wooster, and others, they attacked the invaders so impetuously that Tryon made haste to retreat before his escape should be cut off. Near Ridgefield, a sharp conflict took place, and General Wooster was killed. Arnold's horse was shot, and, as it fell, the rider's foot was caught in the stirrup and he was thrown with his steed. While he was trying to disengage himself, a Tory ran up to him with fixed bayonet.

"Surrender!" he commanded; "you're my prisoner."

At this moment, Arnold freed his foot and sprang erect.

Gal-
lantry of
Arnold

"Not yet," he replied, levelling his pistol and shooting the Tory dead. Then the daring officer ran for the woods not far off. The bullets were whistling about his ears, and several passed through his clothing, but he was unhurt, and, plunging among the trees, was safe for the time. The gallantry shown by Arnold in this fight incited Congress to present him with a fine horse, in lieu of the one he lost, together with rich trappings for it, and it cannot be denied that he won the gift. The invaders lost three times as many men on this raid as did the Americans. Meanwhile, the latter indulged in a number of retaliatory raids. In the succeeding month, Colonel Meigs crossed Long Island Sound, with a hundred and seventy men in whaleboats, from Guilford, Connecticut, and burned a dozen vessels at Sag Harbor and took nearly a hundred prisoners, without losing a man.

Daring
Capture
of Gen.
Prescott

It was General Prescott, it will be remembered, who put Ethan Allen in irons and sent him to England to be tried for treason. This officer made his headquarters at the house of a Quaker, a few miles from Newport, Rhode Island, near the shores of Narragansett Bay. Lieutenant-Colonel Barton, of Providence, with several picked men, crossed the bay from Warwick Point in four small boats, passing stealthily among the British vessels without discovery, and made his way to the farmhouse where Prescott was staying. The night was dark, and, while most of the men stayed behind at a safe distance, the colonel, with several companions, including a burly negro, silently approached the house. A sentinel was seen at the gate, but he did not suspect danger, and was seized before he could give the alarm. Colonel Barton took the musket from his hands and told him that if he made any noise he would be instantly killed. Then they softly entered the dwelling. It was quite late, and the only person about

was the Quaker, who sat in his chair reading. He calmly surveyed his visitors as they gently pushed open the door and showed no sign of alarm at the visit.

“Where is General Prescott?” asked Colonel Barton, in a whisper.

The “Friend” pointed upward, without speaking. Barton nodded

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



UNLOCKING THE DOOR

his head, and, passing into the hall, cautiously ascended the stairs, with the negro behind him. The door of Prescott's room was locked, and Barton stood for a moment in some perplexity.

“How shall we get that open,” he asked in an undertone, “without alarming him?”

“Does yo' want dat doah opened quick?” whispered the grinning African.

PERIOD III

ENGLAND
AND FRANCEIN
AMERICA

1758

TO

1783

Ex-
change
of Gen.
Prescott
for Gen.
Lee

“ I do, if it can be done.”

“ Watch me.”

Stepping back a pace, the negro bent his head, and with one powerful thrust drove the door inward. Prescott leaped from his bed, startled by the shock, only to find himself confronted by Colonel Barton, with drawn sword, who announced that he was a prisoner. He was assured that he could save his life only by keeping still. He obeyed and soon after was landed at Warwick Point. Thence he was removed in a carriage to Providence, and finally sent to Washington, who was then in New Jersey, where he was exchanged for General Charles Lee. This daring exploit of Barton's received the tribute of a sword from Congress, together with a colonelcy in the Continental army.

Move-
ments of
Bur-
goyne

Meanwhile, Burgoyne's invading army * reached Crown Point and threatened Ticonderoga, where St. Clair was in command. The British force now numbered seven thousand men, and he had a considerable train of artillery. St. Clair's troops were a little over a third of those of Burgoyne, but he was hopeful of holding him at bay. He did so until the invaders secured command of his position, when he evacuated the fort, after spiking his guns. The Americans were hotly pursued and a number captured, but St. Clair, with nearly two thousand troops, reached Fort Edward.

The loss of Ticonderoga, with close upon two hundred cannon

* “ The Historic Waters of Champlain,” to quote the words of George William Curtis at the Centennial Celebration at Schuylerville, October 17th, 1877, “ have never seen a spectacle more splendid than the advancing army—the scarlet host of Burgoyne. The drums of the King's army were joyfully beating in the summer dawn ; the bugles rang, the cannon thundered, the rising June sun shone on the scarlet coats of British grenadiers, on the bright helmets of German dragoons, and on burnished artillery and polished arms. The trained and veteran troops were admirably equipped and commanded. . . . On the 1st of July, the brilliant pageant swept up Lake Champlain and the echoes of the mighty wilderness which had answered the guns of Amherst and the drum-beat of Montcalm, saluted the transports and gunboats that, led by a dusky swarm of Indians in bark canoes, stretched between the eastern shore, along which Riedesel and the Germans marched, and the main body advancing with Phillips upon the west. . . . To us, it is a picture. But to know what it truly was, let the happy farmer on these green slopes and placid meadows imagine a sudden flight to-night with all he loves and from all he owns, struggling up steep hills, lost in tangled woods, crowding along difficult roads, at every step expecting the glistening tomahawk, the bullet, and the mercies of a foreign soldiery. . . . We come with song and speech and proud commemoration to celebrate the triumph of this day (the surrender of Saratoga). Let us not forget the cost of that triumph, the infinite suffering that this unchanging sky beheld ; the torture of men ; the heartbreak of women ; the terror of little children, that paid for the happiness which we now enjoy.”

and a large number of prisoners, spread dismay through out the country, and Schuyler (*sky' ler*) and St. Clair were strongly condemned by those who did not wait to hear the particulars. They had done all that was possible, while Congress had failed to send the reinforcements so sorely needed by the patriots. Washington, at any rate, understood the situation, and he gave both officers and men credit for having done everything that lay in their power. He saw the need of checking the march of Burgoyne, and, though he could ill-afford to deplete his own army, he directed that a part of the troops then on their way from New England to join him, should ascend the Hudson and give aid to Schuyler, who was at Saratoga when he learned of the disaster at Ticonderoga. He lost no time in hastening to Fort Edward, to bring together the scattered troops and oppose Burgoyne, who was issuing boastful proclamations and ordering the rebels to submit. When Schuyler had gathered every available man, his force was less than one-half that of Burgoyne, but with that he destroyed the bridges and placed many obstacles in the path of the invading army. Burgoyne advanced cautiously, for the British at New York were unable to send garrisons for the lake forts, and his own Indians were beginning to desert him.

At Fort Edward occurred the touching episode of the death of Jane McCrea, which has been related hundreds of times, though the versions of the story have often lacked truth. Miss McCrea was a beautiful young woman, engaged in marriage to a member of Burgoyne's army, and was visiting Fort Edward at the time of the approach of the British troops. A party of Indians seized her, with the design of carrying her into the British camp on horseback. A squad of Americans started in pursuit, and upon coming in sight of the Indians, fired a volley. One of the bullets struck the young woman and she fell dead from her horse. The Indians then scalped her and carried her luxuriant tresses into camp as a trophy. Her lover was so shocked when he learned of the occurrence, that he left the army, went to Canada, and lived thereafter a life of solitude. Slight as was this incident, when compared with the momentous events then taking place, it nevertheless made a profound sensation throughout the country, and was the cause of hundreds of young men flocking to the Continental army.

Schuyler now determined to make a stand at Stillwater, where he had established a fortified camp and was receiving many recruits.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

At-
 tempts to
 Check
 Bur-
 goyne

Death of
 Jane Mc-
 Crea

PERIOD 111

ENGLAND
AND FRANCE
IN
AMERICA1758
TO
1783Growing
Weak-
ness of
Bur-
goyne

The panic caused by the evacuation of Ticonderoga passed, and a feeling of buoyant patriotism brought considerable additions to the ranks of the American army. Furthermore, it was apparent that Burgoyne was growing weaker. He was losing many men by desertion, while his base of supplies was so distant that his army began to suffer for food. The patriots, meanwhile, were gathering round him on all sides and harassing him continually, while with every mile he advanced southward his condition grew worse.

Since it was as difficult to retreat as to advance, Burgoyne decided to strike a blow that would encourage the Tories, and enable him to procure horses and cattle, of which his command stood in great need. A strong detachment of British Hessians, Canadians, and Indians, under Lieutenant-Colonel Baum, set out for Bennington, Vermont, and arrived there on the evening of August 13th. Baum saw so many Americans in the neighborhood that he sent back to Burgoyne for reinforcements. Two German battalions, with two cannon, were despatched to his assistance, their advance being through a downpour of rain, which continued for twenty-four hours. While awaiting their arrival, Baum took up position on a hill, some miles west of Bennington, which sloped down towards the Walloomscoick Creek, where he threw up intrenchments.

Amer-
ican Vic-
tory at
Benning-
ton

Colonel John Stark, a veteran of the French and Indian War, was at Bennington with a part of his brigade. He immediately sent to Manchester for the remnants of Col. Seth Warner's regiment, in camp there, and they marched through the same drenching rain which descended upon the reinforcements on their way to the assistance of Baum. The storm finally subsided, and the morning of August 16th was hot and sultry. At three o'clock in the afternoon, Stark divided his forces so as to attack, from every side, the enemy on Walloomscoick Heights. "There they are, boys," said Stark; "we'll beat them to-day, or Molly Stark's a widow!" The impetuosity of the assault struck terror among the Indians, who broke through the American lines and fled to the woods. The fight continued for a couple of hours, when the enemy's ammunition failed, and they attempted to cut their way through the investing lines. Baum was killed, and all his men were made prisoners. At this juncture, the reinforcements from Burgoyne arrived, and almost at the same moment Stark was joined by fresh troops. The engagement was immediately renewed and continued until sunset, when the enemy

retreated, leaving their artillery and wounded behind them. The victory was so complete that it greatly inspired the Americans, while it caused the gravest alarm on the part of Burgoyne, whose situation now became really perilous. Many more of his Canadians and Indians deserted him, and, for the first time, he saw starvation threaten his troops.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

While these stirring events were taking place to the east of Stillwater, others hardly less important were occurring to the westward.



DEATH OF JANE McCREA

Joseph Brant, the famous Mohawk chief, had made a visit to England and was presented to the King (George III.). He was treated with so much consideration that he promised to aid the English in conquering the colonies, and he kept his promise. Early in June (1777), the head of the Mohawks gathered his warriors about him and at once began offensive operations. Schulyer ordered Brigadier-General Nicholas Herkimer, in command of the Tryon County militia, to check any movement on the part of Brant. Fort Schuyler

Siege of
 Fort
 Schuy-
 ler

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

received a strong garrison, which was soon besieged by St. Leger, with a large force of Canadians, British, and Indians, together with a number of Americans who still adhered to the fortunes of the British. Learning of this, Herkimer marched with a number of the militia to the relief of the fort. He sent word to the commandant of his intention, and a detachment from the garrison simultaneously sallied out and attacked the besiegers, who were routed and scattered in every direction, while a large amount of plunder was taken. One cause of his defeat was the absence of a considerable portion of the investing force, which had gone to meet Herkimer, and of whose approach they knew.

Bravery
 of Gen.
 Her-
 kimer

At Oriskany, near Utica, Herkimer's militia were marching through the woods, when they were ambushed by the Tories and Indians, who furiously assailed them. The rear-guard broke and fled, but the remainder fought with the utmost bravery. The same bullet that killed Herkimer's horse wounded him mortally, but, the valorous old hero propped himself on the ground against his saddle, and, supported by the trunk of a tree, smoked his pipe, and gave directions as coolly as if he were on parade. A violent thunder-shower checked the fighting for a while, but it was soon renewed. Suddenly, the sound of firing caused by a sortie from the fort reached the ears of the Indians, who fled in a panic, quickly followed by the white men. General Herkimer was carried to his home, where he shortly afterwards died from the effects of his wound.

The siege of Fort Schuyler was pressed; but the garrison held out bravely. The prospect was so gloomy, however, that a messenger was sent to Schuyler begging for relief. That wise commander, though he saw the necessity of beating back St. Leger, in order to insure the impending victory over Burgoyne, could ill spare a man. He, however, called a council of war and recommended that relief be sent, though in this he was opposed by his officers, because, as they thought, they were not strong enough to check Burgoyne.

The
 Relief for
 Fort
 Schuy-
 ler

At this, Schuyler lost patience and declared that the relief should be given. "Where is the brigadier who will take command?" he cried, looking round in the faces of the officers. Arnold promptly stepped forward and at once announced his readiness. Within the following twenty-four hours, eight hundred volunteers under this leader were marching westward. The manner in which the siege of Fort Schuyler was raised was not paralleled during the Revolution,

for it was daring and unique. The incident recalls an episode in the life of General Oglethorpe, which bore some resemblance to it.

On his arrival at German Flats, Arnold found a Tory prisoner who had been condemned to death for some misdeed. He was a half-idiot, whose mother begged Arnold to spare his life. Arnold consented, on condition that the young man would do a certain thing for him. The delighted fellow announced himself ready for any task, no matter what it was.

“You are to go,” he said, “with a friendly Oneida Indian to the camp of St. Leger’s warriors and make them believe that my army is twice as numerous as theirs, and that I am on my march against them, and that if they wait we shall kill every one of them.”

The prisoner eagerly pledged himself to do what was asked, and the piece of strategy was quickly arranged. Several bullets were fired through the clothing of the young man, and he was told to go. Away he sped at his highest speed, so that, on reaching the Indian camp, he was panting and almost exhausted. When the startled savages looked at him for an explanation, he said he had just eluded the Americans, and showed the bullet-holes in his clothing as witness of his story. “They are like the leaves on the trees,” he added; “they will soon be here and all who stay will be killed.”

While the warriors were listening to these alarming words, the Oneida Indian dashed in among them from another direction, and with the same story. This was enough, and indeed more than enough. The Indians were so terrified that it was impossible for the officers to restrain them. They ran off pell-mell through the woods towards Oswego, quickly followed by the soldiers who shared the panic. Thus ended the siege of Fort Schuyler and the dreaded Indian invasion, without any fighting on the part of the Americans.

The overthrow of St. Leger was a heavy blow to Burgoyne, who saw his hopes of conquest daily vanishing. He felt that defeat was drawing near, and that his grand scheme of invasion which was to be a crushing out of the rebellion was likely to end in overwhelming disaster to himself. To General Schuyler, more than to any other man, was the present success of the American arms due. While preparing to make his triumph complete, General Gates, however, arrived in camp with an order from Congress to supersede him in the command. This was a cruel blow to Schuyler, and unhappily it was the result of intrigue. Washington, when he was asked to appoint a successor to

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

An In-
 genious
 Strata-
 gem

Arrival
 of Gen.
 Gates

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Schuyler, properly refused, and Congress then commissioned Gates and voted him all the aid for which Schuyler had so long asked in vain. But though he felt the indignity, Schuyler was none the less a patriot. He received Gates cordially, and loyally volunteered to give him all the help he could in conquering Burgoyne.

Battle of
 Bemis
 Heights

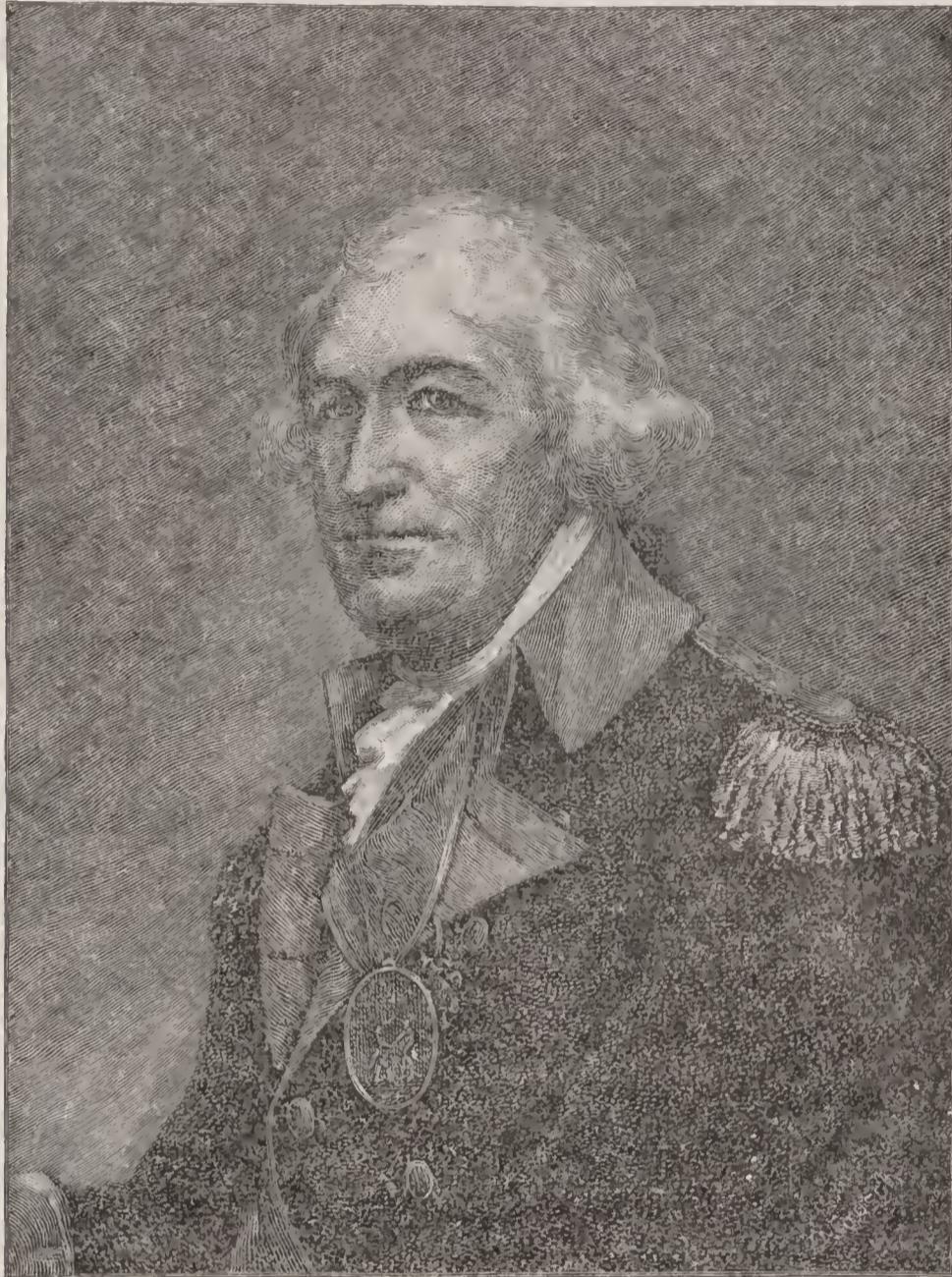
Gates was tardy in his movements, and three weeks passed before he moved up the valley of the Hudson with his army of nine thousand men. Upon Bemis Heights, a short distance above Stillwater, he established a fortified camp. Burgoyne, whose army was reduced to less than six thousand, called in his outposts, crossed the Hudson, and encamped on the heights of Saratoga. It was as fatal for him to remain idle as to retreat, so, on the morning of the 19th, he advanced in three columns to offer battle. Gates showed such an indisposition to fight, that it pointed to a lack of personal courage. Arnold and the other officers, on the contrary, were so eager for battle that it was hard to restrain them. In the severe conflict which ensued Arnold distinguished himself, and had Gates granted him the reinforcements for which he asked, he would no doubt have turned the right wing of the British army, but Gates was inexorable. As it was, the invaders would have been compelled to surrender but for the timely aid of their Hessian allies. After a lull, the battle was, however, renewed and with more fury than ever. A charge of the king's troops was repelled so fiercely that the enemy fell back. Arnold was at the side of Gates begging for reinforcements, but the commander stubbornly refused; yet, as we shall presently see, it was Arnold's courage and skill which beyond question saved the American army from disaster. Not less notable were the heroic efforts of others on the field. The gallant Morgan and his riflemen rendered scarcely less effective aid, and yet when Gates sent his official report of the battle to Congress, he did not mention the name of either officer. It was a pitiful example of meanness and jealousy.

Timidity
 of Gen.
 Gates

Seeing the great work that could be done by following up the advantage gained, Arnold urged that the attack should be renewed the next day, but Gates would not give his consent. Burgoyne, meanwhile, fell back a couple of miles and again threw up intrenchments. While thus engaged, he was cheered by a message from Sir Henry Clinton at New York, who promised to cause a diversion by sending an expedition up the Hudson. Burgoyne, ever confident, replied that he could hold out until the 12th of October. But the

condition of the invaders rapidly grew worse. The Indians were continually deserting; nearly a thousand sick and wounded were in the hospital; the Americans were converging on all sides; and the foraging parties came back empty-handed and often with many of their numbers missing. Volunteers, on the other hand, flocked to

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



GENERAL HORATIO GATES

the standard of the patriots, whose hopes now rose to the highest point.

Arnold's impatience and quick temper led him to address a note to Gates, complaining of his tardiness, in which he used such plain words that the commander took offence. But the position of things with the British, who now set out to return to the lakes, was desperate. Burgoyne called a council of war, which decided that the only thing to do was to fight. On the morning of October 7th, therefore, he advanced against the Americans. In the battle which followed,

**Bur-
 goyne's
 Desper-
 ate Posi-
 tion**

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Arnold's
 Intrepid-
 ity

Morgan and his riflemen did fine service, but all the Americans fought with unsurpassed bravery; so much so, indeed, that a cannon was taken and retaken five times. Finally it remained in the hands of the Americans, and was quickly turned upon the fleeing enemy.

Gates had deprived Arnold of a command before the battle, because of his impertinence, and forbade him to take part in any fighting. Arnold, chafing and incensed at his forced inaction, listened to the sounds of the battle until he could restrain himself no longer. Then he leaped into the saddle and sent his horse flying into the thickest of the conflict. The indignant Gates ordered Major Armstrong to follow and bring back his insubordinate officer. He set off to do so, but Arnold, glancing over his shoulder and knowing his errand, quickly left his pursuer behind. The troops broke into cheers when Arnold placed himself at the head of his brigade and plunged with reckless bravery into the fight. Never did soldier fight more dauntlessly! Ah, why did not some good angel, three years later, whisper into the ear of this man, and draw him back from the precipice over which he leaped to the uttermost depths of infamy?

Defeat of
 Bur-
 goyne

The two leaders on the American side who performed prodigies of valor were Arnold and Morgan. On the enemy's side, fully as brave and daring was General Fraser,* of the British army. His voice and example thrilled his men to deeds of valor that compelled the admiration of his opponents. Mounted, in full uniform, on his noble gray charger, he was so conspicuous an object that an American sharpshooter in the branches of a tree singled him out, and brought him mortally wounded from his horse. His fall caused a panic, and, at the critical moment, three thousand fresh New York militia arrived on the field. The British lines were broken and the troops retreated to their intrenchments, leaving their artillery behind

* A pathetic interest attaches to the death of this gallant Scottish commander serving under Burgoyne. He belonged to the family of the Frasers of Lovat. The chieftain of the clan, Simon, Lord Lovat, came to the block for complicity in the Scottish rebellion of 1745, and besides losing his head he lost his estates in the ill-fated Stuart cause. General Fraser, who was heir to the estates that had become forfeit to the Crown, was, it is said, promised their restoration on the successful issue of the Burgoyne expedition. His death on Bemis Heights extinguished all hopes of revoking the act of attainder in the interest of the Fraser clan. The lamented officer was buried early in the morning after the battle, when the conflict was resumed, and the chaplain who read the service at the grave was, with the officers who assisted at the obsequies, spattered with mud from the cannon-balls that at intervals fell about the group.

them. Arnold now led a charge against them. It was desperately resisted, but nothing could stay him and Morgan's riflemen. When at last Arnold drove the Hessians pell-mell before him, they fired a parting volley which killed Arnold's horse and inflicted a severe wound in the same leg that had been injured at Quebec. Then it was that Major Armstrong, who had been sent by Gates to prevent Arnold doing "some rash thing," managed to overtake the wounded hero and delivered the order for his return to his superior officer. Benedict Arnold won this great victory against the orders of the general in command, who, though he did not appear on the field of battle, received all the credit and glory.

During the night, Burgoyne, with his whole army, retreated to a point a mile north of the intrenchments that were occupied by the Americans. He was naturally depressed, for he then foresaw the inevitable end. He had started out with bombastic proclamations and high-flown promises; but all was to close in disaster and overthrow. After an unspeakably dismal march through a rain-storm, Burgoyne reached the heights of Saratoga on the morning of October 10th. The Americans followed, and the British commander then decided to continue the struggle no longer. The situation, he saw, was hopeless, for besides being hemmed in by the patriots, his army was on the verge of starvation. After holding a council with his officers, he sent a proposal to Gates offering to surrender. The terms were soon agreed upon, and the vanquished army laid down its arms in front of the present village of Schuylerville.

Burgoyne's Indian allies had fled long before.* The number of troops that now became prisoners of war was 5,791 officers and men,† among whom were six members of the British parliament. Some of the trophies were a train of brass artillery, of the finest make then known, five thousand muskets, and an immense quantity of ammunition and stores. The Americans treated the prisoners with great kindness, dividing their food with them, and showing them every consideration.

* The reason assigned for this desertion of the Indians is highly creditable to Burgoyne. It resulted from the General's putting a check on the propensity of the savage allies of the British to scalp and plunder the unarmed, though it is known that Burgoyne himself urged the employment of the Indians as auxiliaries of the army.

† Of this surrendered force, 3,379 were English and provincials, and 2,412 German auxiliaries. The strength of the American army at Saratoga on the day of the surrender was 11,098, of which 7,716 were regulars and 3,382 militia.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Surrender of
 Burgoyne

PERIOD III

ENGLAND
AND FRANCE
IN
AMERICA1758
TO
1783Far-
reaching
Results
of the
Victory

The capture of Burgoyne and his army was the most substantial triumph that the patriots had thus far gained in the war. It spread dismay in England, where the resentment against Burgoyne was so deep that it was several years before justice was done him. The rejoicing and gratitude among the colonies were correspondingly great. The victory, moreover, was far-reaching in its results. In the autumn of 1776, Benjamin Franklin had been sent to France as commissioner of the United States to the French court, with Silas Deane and Arthur Lee as his assistants. The two latter gentlemen had already been in Paris some time, but had effected little. A change, however, came about after the surrender at Saratoga. The appointment of Franklin was one of the wisest steps taken by our country. He was shrewd, patriotic, abounding in homely wit, and withal a philosopher. The struggle for independence developed no finer or better equipped patriot than he. Dressed in his homely garb, with his genial humor and bright conversation, he quickly became a favorite at the gay court and won friends where we already had many ardent sympathizers.

The
Treaty
with
France

Early in 1777, the commissioners asked France to make a treaty with the United States for their mutual benefit in peace and war. Aid had already been furnished our country from the French arsenals and public treasury, but it was done secretly. The king wished to wait until some substantial progress, some decisive advantage, was gained by the Americans, before he committed himself unreservedly in our favor, for in doing so he foresaw the certainty of a rupture with England. The surrender of Burgoyne afforded this excuse, and the important step was hence taken. One-third of the British forces in America had been either killed or captured, and France hesitated no longer to recognize our independence. The treaty was signed February 6th, 1778. France acknowledged the independence of the United States, and the two nations pledged themselves to make common cause, each binding itself not to treat with Great Britain for peace without the consent of the other. This was the first treaty made between the United States and a foreign power. In addition, France agreed to send to our assistance a fleet of sixteen war-vessels, under D'Estaing, and an army of four thousand men.

Great Britain, of course, at once heard of France's action, and now declared war against her, and invited the United States to help her. As an inducement, she offered to give everything that she had

refused three years before, including freedom from taxation, and according representation in parliament; but the offer was too late. The Americans were firmly resolved on independence and snubbed the English commissioners sent to this country. It should be stated that since the ruling families in France and Spain were related, Spain joined France in the war against Great Britain in 1779, and

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



GENERAL JOHN BURGOYNE

Holland, for commercial reasons, united with those powers in 1780. Thus, as the war went on, Great Britain found her hands full.

Let us now return to the progress of events in 1777. While everything had gone so well in the North, disaster and misfortune followed fast upon each other with the other portions of the patriot army. After his victory at Princeton, Washington withdrew to the heights of Morristown, where he spent the winter. His lines, fol-

Disaster
 and
 Misfortune

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

lowing the trend of the mountains, stretched from the Hudson to the Delaware. At first the British line faced him, but in consequence of the hostility of the inhabitants, the invaders gradually drew in around Brunswick and near Sandy Hook. Howe repeatedly tried to induce the Americans to come out, but Washington was too cautious. The British commander had his eye upon Philadelphia, but was afraid to march through New Jersey, lest Washington should attack him on the flank.

Capture
 of the
 Forts on
 the
 Hudson
 High-
 lands

Meanwhile, Sir Henry Clinton, whom Howe had left in command at New York, made several diversions in favor of his chief. Situated in the Hudson Highlands were three forts, viz. : Fort Constitution, on a rocky island, opposite West Point, and Forts Clinton and Montgomery, on the west bank of the river, one on either side of a small stream. From Fort Montgomery the Americans had stretched a chain and boom across the Hudson to Anthony's Nose, to prevent vessels from passing up stream. These forts were feebly garrisoned and were under the command of General Putnam, whose headquarters were at Peekskill. They were attacked by so superior a force that many of the defenders were captured and the remainder scattered. The chain and boom were broken, the Americans burning most of their vessels, to prevent their falling into the hands of the enemy, who then devastated both shores of the Hudson. These events took place while the campaign of Burgoyne was in progress, and the marauders were engaged in their work of destruction when the news of the British general's surrender caused them to retreat hurriedly to New York.

Advance
 of Wash-
 ington

Washington now marched to Philadelphia, expecting to meet the British south of that city. In the latter part of August, he learned that Lord Howe's fleet, with his brother's army, was coming up Chesapeake Bay, with the evident intention of attacking the city. Washington marched from Philadelphia on the 24th of August, and the next day was at Wilmington, Delaware, while the British troops were landing at the head of Elk River, a little more than fifty miles from the American capital. They numbered eighteen thousand well-equipped men, while the Americans had hardly eleven thousand, of whom a fifth were Pennsylvania militia. Washington marched beyond Wilmington and took up position behind Red Clay Creek. Sharp skirmishing followed, but Washington outgeneralled Howe and fell back to Brandywine Creek, which he crossed at Chad's Ford, posting

his army on the hills to the eastward. He displayed no little skill in the manœuvring and fighting which followed, but Sullivan, through some misinformation, blundered, and the final result was a defeat of the Americans, with a loss of twelve hundred men. They therefore retreated to Chester, and the next morning (September 12th), Washington proceeded to Philadelphia, and encamped near Germantown. Congress, seeing that it would again be compelled to fly, once more invested the commander-in-chief with large discretionary power. He sought to bring on a battle, but the British eluded the Americans, hurriedly marched to Philadelphia, and took possession of the vicinity September 26th. Congress meanwhile fled to Lancaster, and afterwards to York.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Capture
 of Phila-
 delphia

Washington and his army were at this time about twenty miles from Philadelphia, on Skippack Creek. On the night of October 3d, a stealthy march of fourteen miles was made to Germantown, where they attacked Howe's army at daylight. The whole region that morning was enveloped in a dense fog, but the Americans drove the British pell-mell before them. Howe hurried to the spot only to meet his panic-stricken battalions. A great disaster was impending to his army, when unexpected assistance came to it. A stone building, known as Chew's House, was occupied by a strong force of the enemy, who turned it into a castle by barricading the doors and lower windows. From this fort, they kept up a destructive fire, and could not be dislodged. A long delay resulted from the attempt to capture it. The fog was so dense that men could not see each other a few paces apart; the troops became bewildered, and the confusion was so great that the plans of Washington were disarranged. The Americans, as usual, fought bravely and were on the eve of a decisive victory, when an alarm was created and a disorderly retreat followed. Washington and his Continentals finally took up their winter quarters at Valley Forge, on the Schuylkill, just above Norristown. The invaders marched into Philadelphia, where they held high revel during the terribly severe winter which followed, while the patriots shivered and starved at Valley Forge.

Ameri-
 can
 Defeat at
 German-
 town

And now it is necessary to relate some things which are anything but pleasant reading, to those, at least, who may have conceived the notion that the whole country was at the time aflame with patriotism; that our soldiers in the Revolutionary war were always much braver than the enemy; that everybody was honest, moral, and upright; and

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Shameful
 Truths

that the Tories were few in number, and hardly dared show themselves except under the protection of the "red-coats."

We cannot give too much glory to the patriots who won our independence. They went through every possible suffering; they starved, shivered with cold, and gasped with heat; the paper money in which they were now and then paid soon became worthless; they tramped through the snow and over frozen roads often barefoot, and they fought, bled, and died with an almost unsurpassed heroism. While this is true, nevertheless it is a fact that, with all the sturdy patriotism, there was jealousy, dishonesty, trickery, meanness, and demoralization, and that to a degree that alarmed all true friends of the country.

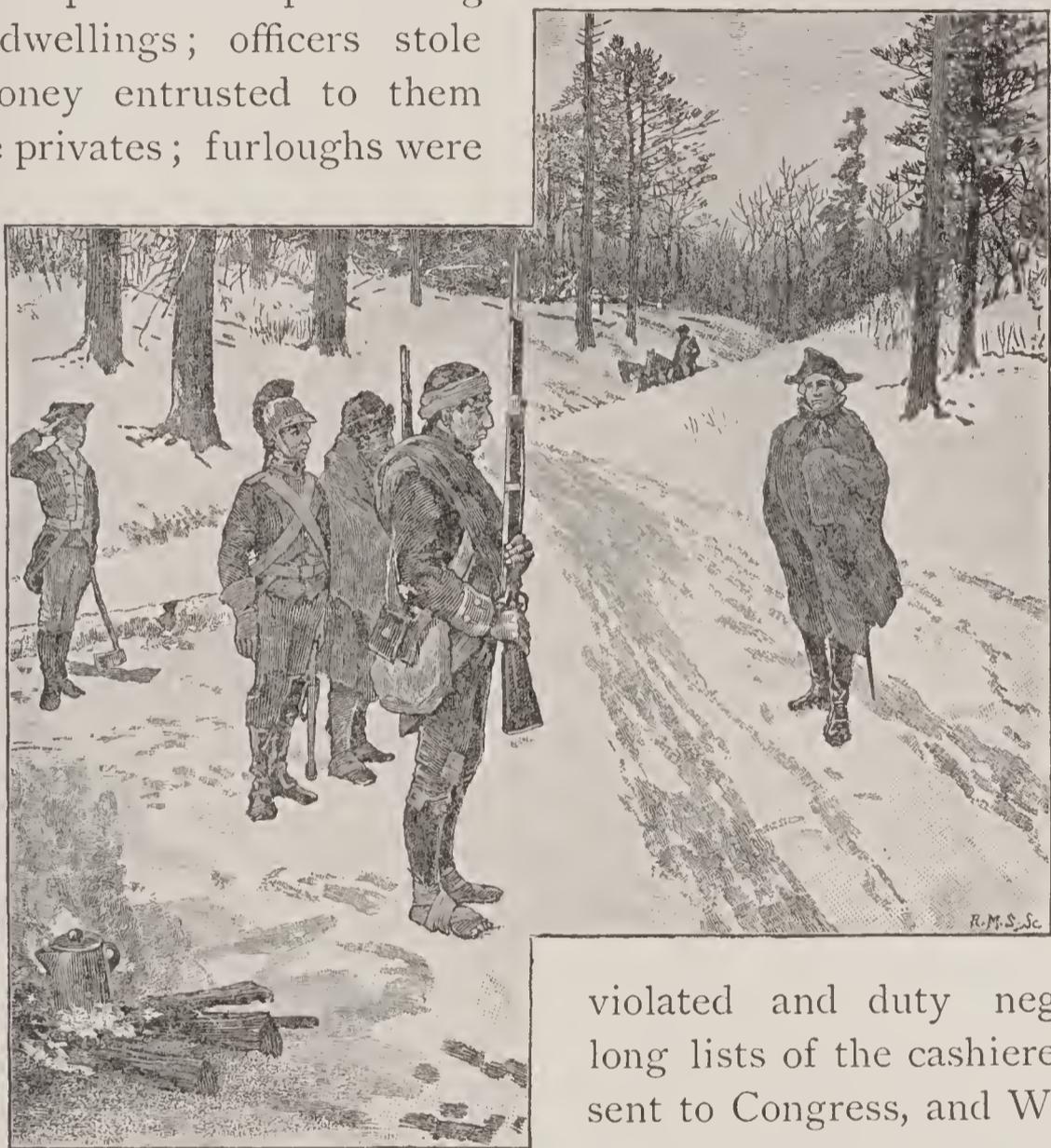
Wash-
 ington's
 Disgust

While the wretched army of patriots were suffering at Valley Forge, Americans hoarded the necessaries of life and contractors became rich. Though days passed without any of the soldiers tasting meat, there was plenty of it for the invaders in Philadelphia. The farmers stole to the city with their choicest products, because they received British gold in payment. Washington was not the meekest of men, when the welfare of his soldiers was at stake. Having obtained authority from Congress, he seized provisions for his troops, paying therefor with scrip, and ordered all the farmers within a radius of seventy miles to thresh out one-half their grain by February 1st, and the remainder by March 1st, under penalty of having it all seized as straw. The churlish farmers refused and burned what they could not sell, to keep it from the famishing patriots. Nor was this the worst that then happened. Men gave up their usual pursuits and plunged into speculation, stock-jobbing, and gambling; official signatures were forged; honest debts were repudiated; patriotism was scoffed at, until the disgusted and grieved Washington wrote: "Idleness, dissipation, and extravagance seemed to have laid hold of most; speculation, peculation, and an insatiate thirst for riches have got the better of every other consideration and almost every order of men."

Naturally the people were ardent at first, but many soon tired of the hardships and dangers of real war. During the retreat across New Jersey, it seemed as if every house had a piece of red flannel tacked on the front, as a sign that they were royalists; not a hundred volunteers were picked up on that woful march; half of the Maryland militia sent to Washington's help just before the battle

of Germantown deserted; when Philadelphia was in the hands of the enemy, and the province was overrun by the British, Pennsylvania had barely twelve hundred militia in service. In 1781, one thousand soldiers perjured themselves to escape military duty, a number becoming informers, spies, and guides for the enemy; drunkenness and theft were common; Whigs were accused of being Tories, so as to furnish a pretext for plundering their dwellings; officers stole the money entrusted to them for the privates; furloughs were

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



AT VALLEY FORGE

violated and duty neglected; long lists of the cashiered were sent to Congress, and Washington wrote to one governor that the officers he sent him were

not fit to be shoe-blacks. He told another that his officers, as a rule, were from the lowest class, and led their men into every kind of mischief. There were plenty of rogues among the surgeons, too, who took bribes to grant discharges and ate up the delicacies intended for the sick. The officers quarrelled about their respective ranks and positions. John Adams wrote in 1777: "I am wearied to death by the wrangles between military officers, high and low. They quarrel like cats and dogs."

Quarrel-
 ing like
 Cats and
 Dogs

Even Washington did not escape envenomed personal attack. A

PERIOD III

ENGLAND
AND FRANCE
IN
AMERICA1758
TO
1783Injustice
to Wash-
ington

bitter opposition against him developed. Congress was as exacting as ever, and gave little heed to his wishes. Benedict Arnold was the oldest brigadier-general and was not only entitled to promotion for his brilliant services, but was strongly recommended by the commander-in-chief; yet Congress would not promote him. Stark resented a similar slight by going back to his plough, where he stayed until Bennington brought him to the front again. Gates was appointed adjutant-general without consulting Washington, and the commissary department was reorganized against his strongly expressed wishes. The department could not have worked more wretchedly. It was said that during the distressful march to Valley Forge, when half the men were barefooted, "hogsheads of shoes and stockings and clothing were lying at different places on the roads and in the woods rotting for want of teams, or money to pay the teamsters."

Gates was so puffed up by his victory over Burgoyne, and by the flattery of his pretended friends, that he reported directly to Congress, instead of to Washington as was his duty. Had Gates transported his army to Pennsylvania, as Washington urged him to do, there is little doubt that Howe would have been driven from Philadelphia and the capital saved. Finally, a cabal was organized to displace Washington and place Gates at the head of the army. An Irishman, named Conway, who had been sent over from France by Silas Deane, was made brigadier-general by Congress. Washington distrusted the adventurer and protested against his promotion. Nevertheless, he was passed over his seniors and made first of all major-general and then inspector-general.

The
Conway
Cabal

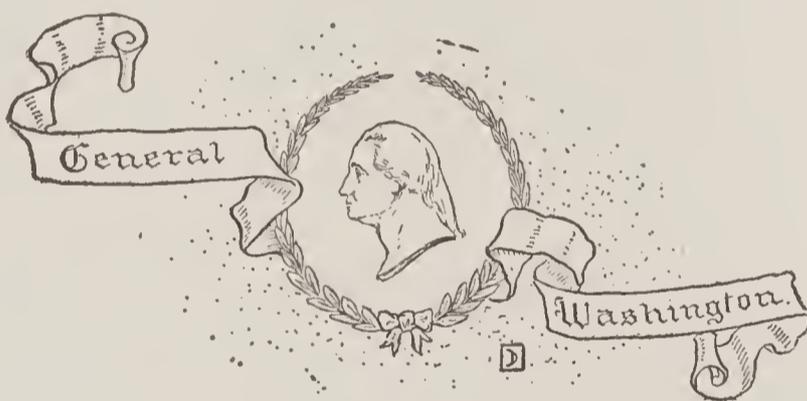
Conway announced that all the disasters were due to Washington's incapacity, and no success was likely until he was displaced by a competent leader. In the plot to remove him were Conway, Gates, Mifflin, and Gen. Charles Lee. They had many supporters in Congress, but, happily, not as many as Washington had. Throughout the whole trying ordeal, that great and good man preserved his lofty bearing, and made no complaint. Treachery, ill-will, and open enmity could not chill his patriotism. In a letter to Patrick Henry, he wrote: "If the cause is advanced, indifferent is it to me where or in what quarter it happens." But the best men implicitly trusted Washington. They resented the plotting of the "Conway Cabal," one of whose chief supporters, Samuel Adams, dared not show himself before the army. General Cadwallader challenged Conway to

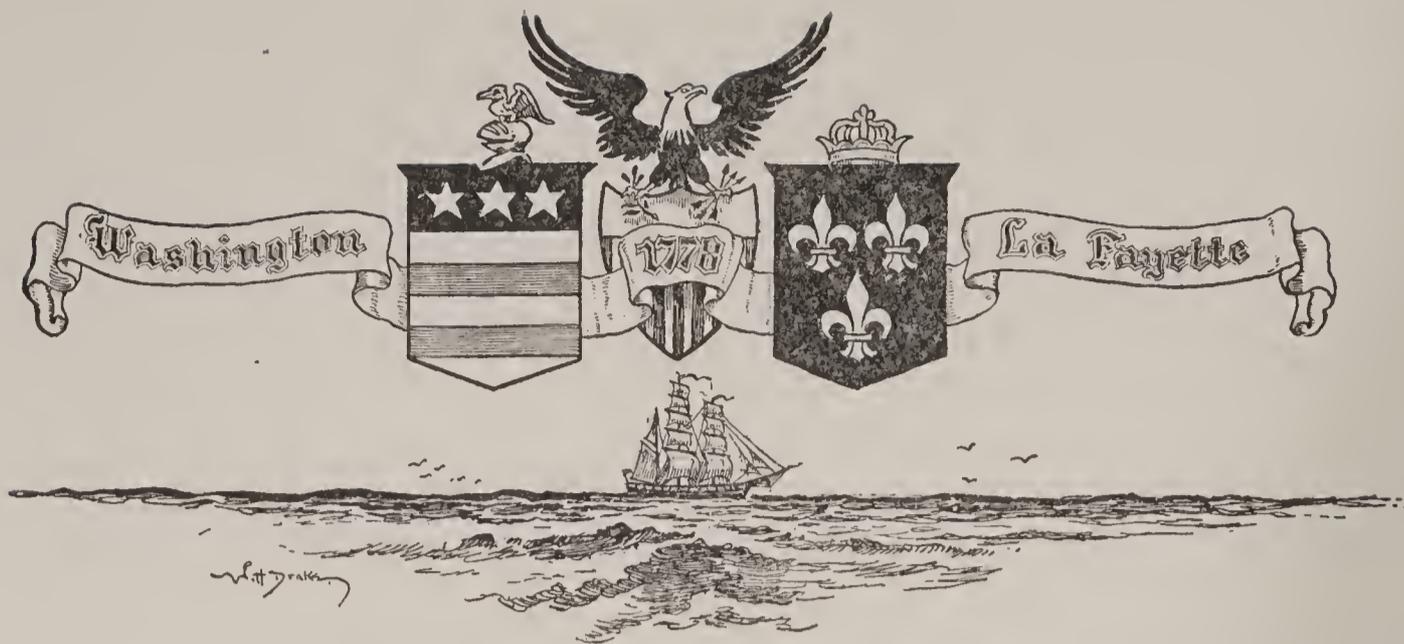
mortal combat, and wounded him so desperately that he did not believe he would survive, though he finally recovered. In the presence of death, Conway wrote to Washington: "Sir:—I find myself just able to hold my pen during a few minutes, and take this opportunity of expressing my sincere grief for having done, written, or said anything disagreeable to your excellency. My career will soon be over; therefore, justice and truth prompt me to declare my last sentiments. You are, in my eyes, the great and good man. May you long enjoy the love, esteem, and veneration of these States whose liberties you have asserted by your virtues."

When Washington read this pitiful letter he said: "Poor Conway! he never could have intended much wrong; there is nothing to forgive." The cabal, which was so discreditable to all concerned, soon fell to pieces, and the character of Washington shone out with renewed splendor. All saw that the hopes of the country were centred in him, who formed the most striking example in history of the one "indispensable man" in the struggle for independence.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Wash-
 ington
 the Coun-
 try's
 Hope





CHAPTER XXXIV

EVENTS OF 1778 (WYOMING AND CHERRY VALLEY)

[*Authorities:* Dark as was the era that now opens—with a dwindling, poorly fed, and ill-equipped army, and the country despairing and in financial straits—there were glimpses of a brighter day to reanimate the spirit and rekindle the hope of the struggling and heavily beset nation. Washington, like the patriot and hero he was, strove to keep the army in good spirits and bear the burdens cast upon him until the time came when the righteous cause would triumph. Burgoyne's surrender, backed by American diplomacy at the French Court, did much to put the young nation again in heart, for at this juncture Lafayette, with other foreign officers, came upon the scene; D'Estaing appeared in American waters with a French fleet, and the French treasury gave substantial aid to Congress in its sore financial need. The authorities for the season's campaigns, in addition to those previously cited, are the Lives of Lafayette, Von Steuben, and the Mohawk chief, Joseph Brant (W. L. Stone's), and Headley's "Washington and his Generals." For an account of the Wyoming massacre, see Peck's "Wyoming, its History, and Incidents;" and, if allowance be made for poetic license and exaggeration, see also the poet Campbell's "Gertrude of Wyoming."]



Old South Church.

Lafayette

It is meet that mention should be made of a number of educated foreign officers who came to the United States and voluntarily gave their services in our struggle for independence. The most prominent of these was the Marquis de Lafayette, a gallant Frenchman, only nineteen years old. He was of a noble family, married and wealthy, with brilliant prospects. Against the objections of his relatives, the protests of the British minister, and the orders of the king, he purchased a small vessel, fitted it out at his own expense, and, eluding the officers, crossed the Atlantic to America. Reaching Charleston, he hastened to Philadelphia and asked permission to serve without pay. A few days later, he made the acquaintance of Washington, and

a tender friendship was formed between them which lasted through life. Lafayette's valor won for him a commission as major-general before he was twenty-one. He fought valiantly at Brandywine, where he was wounded, but was active through the remainder of the war.

Among other foreign patriots who joined our armies were Baron de Kalb, a highly trained German general; Kosciusko and Pulaski, two Polish officers; and Conway, an Irishman, who, as we have shown, became an enemy of Washington and joined in plots against him. These arrived in this country during the year 1777. One of the most valuable of our friends was Baron Frederick William von Steuben, who presented himself to Washington when the army was at Valley Forge. Steuben was a thorough soldier. He was born in a Prussian fortress, had passed his infancy and childhood among soldiers, and himself became one when only fourteen years old. He took part on many great battlefields of Europe. On arriving here, he was made inspector-general, in place of Conway, and threw his whole soul into the work of training the army for the battles yet to be fought. He was a man of powerful frame, a rigid disciplinarian, with a fierce temper, which sometimes got the better of him. When he could not express himself with enough vigor, because of his slight knowledge of English, he would turn to one of his officers and beg him to swear at the stupid troops for him. But no one was offended, for all appreciated his worth and unselfishness.

It was while Washington was at Valley Forge that Congress ordered that the army should consist of 40,000 foot, in addition to artillery and horse. In May, 1778, our forces, including those on the Hudson and in other places, were hardly 15,000, those with Washington being about 12,000. At that period, the British had 30,000 troops in New York and Philadelphia, and 4,000 in Rhode Island.

The British commissioners sent to this country to treat with Congress brought with them orders for the transfer of the army in Philadelphia to New York, where it was decided to concentrate the forces. General Howe was superseded in the chief command by Sir Henry Clinton. War with France was now impending, and there was fear of a French fleet entering the Delaware and there shutting in the troops. Besides this, England meant to attack some of the French West India Islands, and with that end in view 5,000 troops were detached from the army, of which 3,000 were sent to Florida,

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Other
 Foreign
 Patriots

Dispar-
 ity of the
 Forces

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

and the remainder to New York. Clinton had not enough transports to take his men to New York by water. He therefore shipped all he could, including a number of Tories, and set out with the others overland through New Jersey. Washington, who was expecting this, entered Philadelphia with his vanguard on the same day (June 18th) that the British rear-guard marched out. The main army of Americans crossed the Delaware, fifteen miles above Trenton, on the 20th and 21st of June, and pursued the British with so much vigor that Clinton had to change his course, and took the road leading to Monmouth Court House and Sandy Hook. Washington, when he ascer-



WASHINGTON AND LEE AT MONMOUTH

tained this, sent forward Lafayette, followed by Lee, each with a strong force, with orders to attack the enemy whenever the chance presented, while he, a half dozen miles behind, held the main army in readiness to advance to their support.

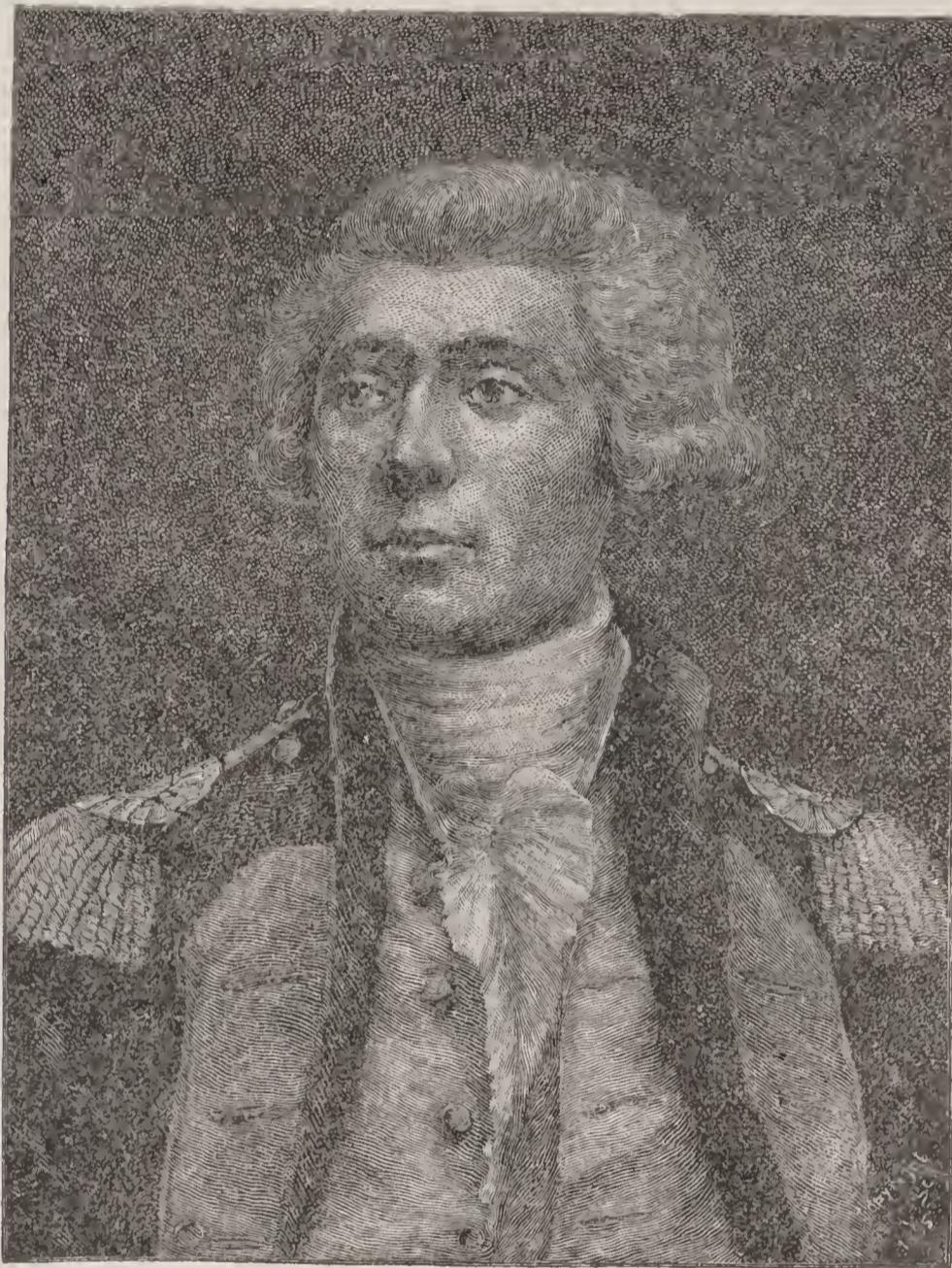
The heat in those midsummer days was frightful, many of the men in each army being overcome by it. On the 28th, Clinton was encamped at Monmouth Court House, with his baggage train in front, and his most effective troops in the rear. Washington favored attacking the enemy while on the march, but Lee and several of the officers opposed this. Lee had five thousand men under him, exclusive of Dickinson's New Jersey militia and Morgan's riflemen, who were ordered to threaten the right flank of the British. The two armies were five miles apart. When Washington requested Lee to offer some plan of action, Lee replied that he must be governed

Battle at
 Mon-
 mouth
 Court
 House

by circumstances, but he meanwhile edged a little closer to the enemy with a few hundred men.

At daylight, Clinton began his march towards New York. Knyp-
hausen, the Hessian leader, had charge of the baggage-train and its
convoy, and Clinton with his best troops was to follow at eight
o'clock. Washington ordered Lee to attack at once, unless impera-

PERIOD III
—
ENGLAND
AND FRANCE
IN
AMERICA
1758
TO
1783
—



GILBERT MOTTIER, MARQUIS DE LAFAYETTE

tive reasons prevented, and Washington immediately moved forward to his support. Lafayette was equally ardent, but being the junior, yielded the command to Lee, who rebuffed him when he proffered advice. Dickinson's militia made the attack a little before eight o'clock. Believing that he was confronted by the British army, he sent for reinforcements, but the troops in front formed a small flanking-party only, which fell back. The reports to Lee were con-

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

fusing, and it was not known until an hour had elapsed that the enemy were retreating towards Middletown, when the chance of striking their left flank was thereby lost. Colonel Butler next drove some of the British cavalry through the village, after which he took up position on a slight elevation and awaited the other brigades. He was charged by the British light dragoons, who were, however, repulsed. Affairs now looked critical, when Lee ordered Wayne to



"MOLLY PITCHER" AT MONMOUTH

**General
 Lee's
 Incom-
 petency**

march to the right and capture the British rear-guard. The other officers, who had received no orders at all, mistook this movement for a retreat, for the enemy were threatening their communication with Wayne. They also fell back and had left their positions before a command reached them from Lee to stand fast. The whole division was in full retreat, observing which the enemy turned about to attack them. Lee watched the Americans until they had crossed a ravine, when he set out to follow them.

At this moment, Lee came face to face with Washington, who was in a terrible rage. Reining up his horse, he demanded in a voice of thunder what he meant by his action. Lee attempted some excuse, offering to take charge of the troops and lead them again to the attack, but Washington closed his mouth by commanding him to go to the rear. He obeyed, humiliated, angry, and resentful. Lee was afterwards brought to trial by court-martial and suspended from all command for one year. He addressed so insolent a letter to Congress that he was dismissed from the service.* Lee being out of the way, the battle began. The fighting was furious, many of the soldiers succumbing to the intolerable heat and dust. Lieutenant-Colonel Monckton, of the Royal Grenadiers, was killed, his body falling into the hands of the Americans. Fortune wavered for a time, but when the fighting ceased, at five o'clock in the afternoon, the advantage was clearly with the Americans. Washington now impatiently awaited the breaking of day to complete his victory, but during the night Clinton stole away, and, reaching Sandy Hook, found Howe's fleet awaiting him. The troops arrived in New York on the 5th of July, while Washington, marching to the Hudson, crossed at King's Ferry and took up position near his old camp at White Plains.

The battle of Monmouth had some striking features. In the first place, it was the only battle of the Revolution in which every one of the thirteen colonies had representatives among the patriot forces. One of the British grenadiers killed was the tallest man in the army. He was known as the "High Sergeant," and well deserved the name, for his stature was seven feet four inches. The name of "Molly Pitcher" is inseparably connected with the battle of Monmouth, and the scene which made her immortal is shown in bas-relief on the monument since erected on the battle-field. Molly, who was a woman of powerful physique, was engaged in carrying water from a spring for her husband, who was a cannoneer. The thirst of the soldiers was torturing, for the thermometer stood at 96° in the shade, and the patriotic woman was kept busy. While thus em-

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Victory
 of the
 Ameri-
 cans

"Molly
 Pitcher"

* That Lee was a traitor to the cause which he pretended to support has been proved beyond question. Some years since, George H. Moore, LL.D., of the city of New York, secured possession of the letter written by Lee while he was a prisoner, and addressed to General Howe. It was penned March 29, 1777, and the offer of his services to the British commander was made in unmistakable terms. That they were not accepted was probably because Howe rated them at their true value.



FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY J. STEEPLE DAVIS

THE WYOMING MASSACRE

ployed, she saw her husband fall. She ran to his help, but he was dead when she reached his side. At that moment, an officer ordered the gun to be removed because he could spare no one to serve it. Molly asked that she might be allowed to take her dead husband's place. The officer assented, and she handled the gun with much skill and courage throughout the battle. She was presented to Washington after the victory, and he not only complimented her, but made her a lieutenant, while Congress granted her half-pay for life.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 . IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

In the city of Carlisle, Pa., is a plain stone monument, mounted on a pedestal, bearing this inscription :

MOLLIE MCCAULEY.
 Renowned in History as Mollie Pitcher,
 The Heroine of Monmouth.
 Died January, 1833, aged 79 years.
 Erected by the Citizens of Cumberland Co.,
 July 4. 1876.

D'Estaing arrived in the Delaware with a French fleet on the 8th of July, 1778. Howe's fleet lay off Sandy Hook ready to co-operate with the army in New York. D'Estaing sailed thither to attack it, but the enemy's vessels were all in Raritan Bay, where the heavy French ships could not follow them, because the water was too shallow at the bar above Sandy Hook. Washington had sent Sullivan to drive out the British force from Newport, and he asked D'Estaing to help in the enterprise with thirty-five hundred land troops. D'Estaing ran past the batteries near the entrance to Narragansett Bay, August 8th. Sullivan's army had been increased to ten thousand men by the addition of New England troops, and arrangements were made for the landing of the French forces on the 10th; but, on the day before, Sullivan discovered that the British outposts at the northern end of the island had been abandoned, and he crossed over from Tiverton. At this juncture, Howe's fleet appeared off Newport, and D'Estaing sailed out to attack it. A violent storm, however, came up and scattered both fleets. D'Estaing sailed to Boston for repairs, while Howe returned to New York

Arrival
 of the
 French
 Fleet

D'Estaing then came back to Newport. He had promised to land his troops after the engagement at sea to help Sullivan in his attack. Greene and Lafayette, who each commanded a division, visited him

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

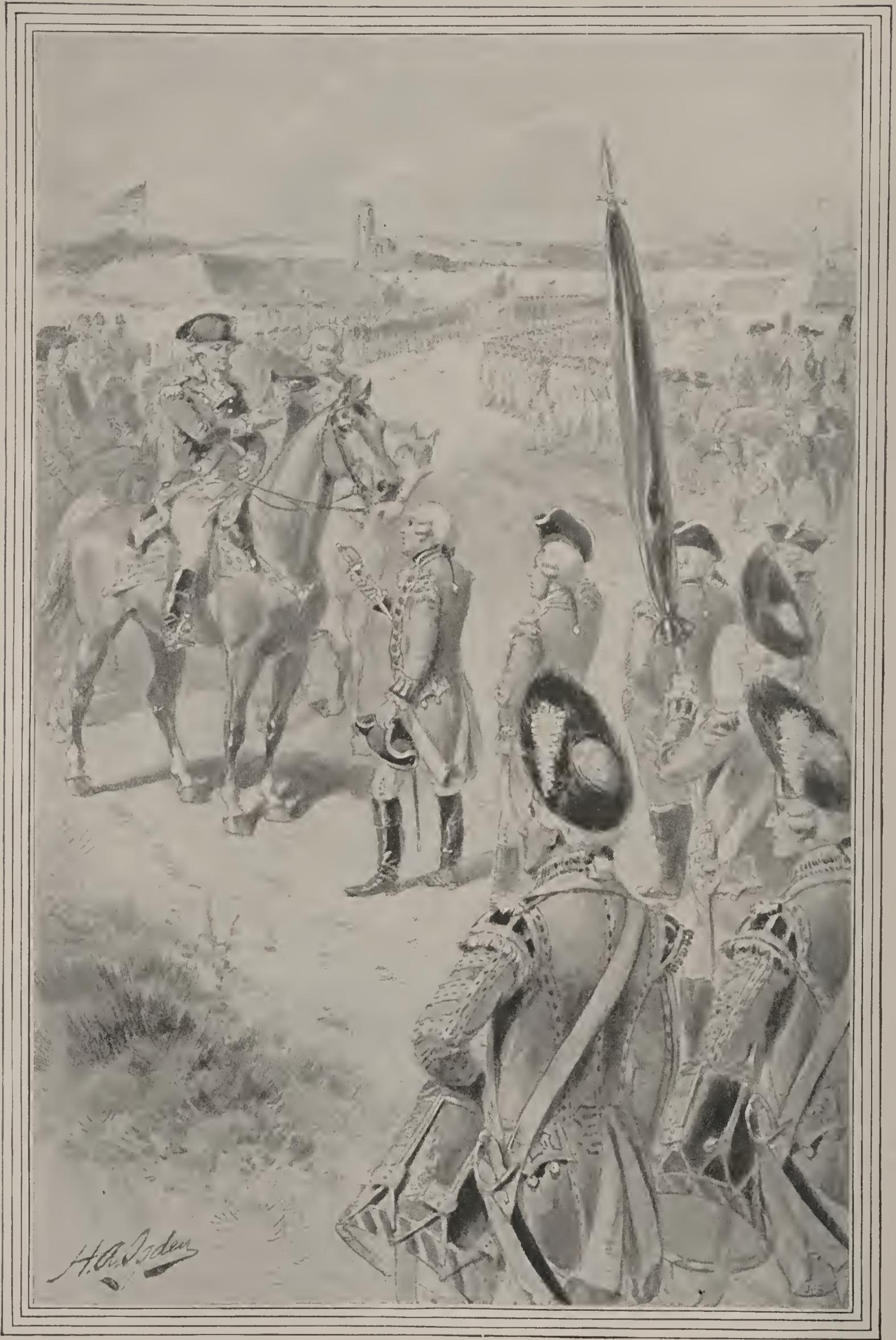
on his flag-ship and urged him to keep his promise, but he refused and sailed away again. Finding themselves deserted by their French allies, the New England troops returned home, and Sullivan was left with hardly six thousand men. Nevertheless, he at once attacked the enemy. Sharp fighting followed, and in one case an American regiment composed of negroes (who had been promised their freedom as a reward) repelled three fierce charges of the Hessians. The following day word reached Sullivan from Washington that Clinton was hurrying to that point with five thousand reinforcements and ordering him to retreat at once. Contrary winds so delayed the English vessels that the American army got safely away.

French
 Coward-
 ice

Howe now sailed for Boston and challenged D'Estaing to come out and fight him. The Frenchman declined, on the plea that his vessels were not fully repaired. When nothing remained to be done, D'Estaing sailed for the West Indies, leaving the Americans to do their own fighting. Previous to this, the anger against the Frenchmen, because of their cowardice, was too strong to be repressed. Sullivan and Greene denounced their breach of faith, and the French officers were insulted on the streets of Boston. A brawl resulted one day in which one of the French officers was killed. While gratitude is due to France for her assistance to us in those trying days, it is not the less a fact that her troops gave us no help until the Yorktown campaign. Whenever they were needed, duty called them, so they said, to the West Indies, where there were colonies to defend against England. Nevertheless, France furnished us liberally with money and supplies.

The Wy-
 oming
 Valley

The Wyoming Valley is one of the most beautiful regions in Pennsylvania, lying between romantic mountain ranges, and watered by the Susquehanna, which winds through it. Count Zinzendorf, the devoted Moravian missionary, was the first visitor to the region, and he spent years laboring for the conversion of the Indians. The first name applied to the place was Westmoreland County, and it was claimed as a part of Connecticut under the grant of Charles II. About forty settlers from Connecticut made their homes in Wyoming, some twenty years before the breaking out of the Revolution. They prospered and increased in numbers, but were alarmed when they learned of the alliance between the British and the Indians. Most of the able-bodied men were absent in the Continental army, and the settlers repeatedly asked Congress to send soldiers to help in



THE SURRENDER AT YORKTOWN

repelling the attack that they knew would soon be made upon them.

John Butler and his son Walter were prominent Tory leaders in northern and western New York and were as merciless as the most ferocious of the Indians. The elder Butler, who was a colonel in the British service, formed a plan for the invasion of Wyoming, whose beauty and helplessness appealed to his brutal instincts. He was visited by Tories from that section, who showed him that the raid not only would yield much plunder but would be attended with little danger to himself. Calling a number of Tories and a large force of Seneca warriors about him, he set out in the latter part of June on his errand of devastation and death. Colonel Zebulon Butler, a cousin of the Tory leader, happened to be in Wyoming, and assumed command of the old men, boys, and a few soldiers with which to defend their homes against the invasion. They took refuge in the structure known as "Forty Fort," where the frightened women and children gathered and prayerfully awaited the issue of battle. Before the arrival of the enemy, whiskey was distributed among the defenders. In those days, as in still earlier Colonial times, drinking was more common than it is now, and the proceeding therefore was a customary one, but the sad fact has been established that some of the patriots drank so much that they were visibly affected at the very time when they needed full command of their faculties.

The demand of the Tory Butler for the surrender of the fort was refused. Colonel Zebulon Butler was in favor of acting on the defensive, but the others clamored to be led against the invaders in the open plain, where the patriots would have to fight a foe three times as numerous as themselves, and with every advantage of position. Colonel Butler was overruled, and, much against his judgment, consented that the motley forces should march out and give the invaders battle. He placed himself at their head, declaring that he would go as far as any of them. The fight was well maintained for a time, and the defenders were encouraged by a fair prospect of victory; but at the critical moment they were thrown into confusion by a mistaken order, and a sudden charge by the Indians caused a panic. This was the beginning of the cruel massacre which has made the name of Wyoming historic. Colonel Zebulon Butler found it impossible to rally his men, of whom four-fifths were cut down while fleeing from their foes. The women and children, seeing the dread-

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Col. John
 Butler's
 Expedi-
 tion
 against
 Wyo-
 ming

The
 Mas-
 sacre

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

ful disaster that had overtaken their defenders, fled to the woods and mountains, while others flocked to the post known as Fort Wyoming. This was held by Colonel Denison; who, under the pledge of Colonel John Butler that none of the people should be harmed, surrendered. A large number of the garrison and scores of women and children were tomahawked.

The
 "Shades
 of
 Death"

Many who knew what the result of submission would be, preferred to face any peril rather than trust themselves to the mercy of either the Tories or the Indians. Plunging into the woods, they hurried towards the settlements on the upper Delaware. Some succeeded in reaching Stroudsburg and other points, but having had no time to make preparation for flight, many perished in the solitudes of Pocono, while others died from hunger, insomuch that the wild region has ever since been known by the gruesome designation of the "Shades of Death."

Deeds too frightful for description were enacted among those that were left behind. During those hot July days and nights the air was heavy with the smoke of burning buildings, which were plundered and fired by the invaders. Men, women, and children were shot down and tortured, the most fiendish passions finding full indulgence, until, it may be said, they exhausted themselves. Hundreds of people were put to death before the dreadful work came to an end.

Strange
 Escapes

It may be doubted whether any episode in the history of our country was ever marked by a greater number of extraordinary escapes than was the case in the massacre of Wyoming. One soldier, overcome by liquor, tumbled down in a wheat-field and fell asleep. He was roused by the shouting of a fugitive, who in fleeing from his Indian pursuers, who were almost upon him, called to the drunken man to fire at them. The soldier mumbled brokenly, wobbled his gun about for a moment, and, without taking any aim, pulled the trigger. The bullet killed the foremost warrior and caused the others to turn and run, under the belief that a party of whites were lying in wait to ambush them. Another fugitive, after hastening for hours through the woods until worn out, knew from the sounds he heard behind him that the Indians were gaining and would soon overtake him. Looking about for some place to hide in, he found a hollow log, into which he forced his way. He had hardly done so, when a spider began spinning its web across the mouth of the log, and was thus at work on its gossamer fabric, when his two Indian

pursuers sat down on the fallen tree. The fugitive heard their voices and the sound of the bullets rattling in their pouches. By and by, it occurred to one of them that the white man whom they were seeking might be hiding in the log. The warrior went to the end of it, stooped down and peeped in, but the spider's web satisfied him that no one had passed inside, and he did not investigate fur-

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



SAVED BY A SPIDER'S WEB

ther. After the two had been gone for some time, the scared fugitive crept out of his hiding-place, and after much suffering and privation reached his friends in New York State.

Again, sixteen captives were ranged around a large flat stone, while a fury, in the person of "Queen Esther," as she was called, began braining them with a death-maul. Two young men suddenly

"Queen
 Esther"

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Frances
 Slocum

leaped to their feet and dashed off at the top of their speed, pursued by several warriors, who, however, did not fire, because they wished to make them prisoners that they might undergo the death meted out to the others. One of the young men tripped in a running vine and rolled down the river bank under the heavy branches of a fallen tree. He lay still and his pursuers passed on without suspecting his hiding-place. Later on, he stole out, and in the darkness made his way to Wilkesbarre. His friend leaped into the river, and, though repeatedly fired upon, managed by diving and desperate swimming to reach the other shore, where he caught and mounted a wandering horse and escaped without any serious wounds. One of the poor fugitives hiding on Monocacy Island was discovered by a Tory, who proved to be his own brother, and who, heedless of his prayers for mercy, put him to death. Some time after the massacre, little Frances Slocum, about six years old, was stolen by Indians and carried off. Her mother searched for her for twenty years, and died without having obtained the first clue of her lost child. Her brothers, who had become prosperous and wealthy men, continued the search for many years without success, and then, convinced that their sister was dead, gave up the search. Yet she was alive all these years, and many a time was within reach of her friends, from whom she carefully hid herself, for she had become an Indian in all but blood. Sixty years after Frances Slocum was stolen by the Indians, she was found by her brothers, between whom and herself affectionate relations were established and lasted till her death.

British
 Praise of
 Indian
 Atroc-
 ities

Who would suppose that any defenders of the atrocities of the Indians could be found among enlightened people? Yet the British secretary for the colonies praised the savages for their bravery and humanity, and encouraged them to continue their raids at other points on the frontier. In the appropriations for the support of the army was one for "scalping-knives." What a reproach to a civilized nation!

Other sections beside Wyoming suffered from the ferocity alike of the Tories and the Indians. Urged by the British agents, who stopped at no means of harrying the patriots, the miscreants struck whenever the opportunity offered. Sir William Johnson was the British superintendent of Indian affairs in New York, and possessed great influence over the powerful league of the Six Nations. Through his exertions most of the tribes made common cause

against the patriots, though a number refused to take part, and some even showed a friendly disposition to the Americans. Brant, the Mohawk chieftain, was a relative by blood of Johnson, and gave him great aid in his evil work. Spies and scouts were sent out, and the reports they brought back led to numerous raiding expeditions among the whites on the frontier.

Brant organized parties of his warriors on the upper waters of the Susquehanna, whose object was to secure all the white scalps possible. These parties threaded their way through the gloomy forests, with the silence of shadows, and descended like wolves upon the exposed settlements. Often the slumbering pioneer was awakened in the depth of night by the ringing war-whoop and the crack of the red men's rifles. His defence, however brave, was in vain, and he was shot down on the threshold

while fighting for his family, who suffered the same fate or were carried off captives to undergo torture and a lingering death. Often the darkness was lit up by the glare of burning dwellings, and the rescue party, hastening to the scene, arrived too late to save the hapless ones, who dreaded the dusky warriors no more than the Tories, many of whom had formerly been neighbors and had eaten at their tables. Even before the fearful visitation of Wyoming Valley, the settlement of Springfield, at the head of Otsego Lake, was laid in ashes. In the following month, Cobleskill was attacked by Brant, who slew most of the troops stationed there and burned the houses. Schoharie County was kept in a continual state of alarm by these raids.

In the month of November, during a driving storm of snow and sleet, a force of Tories, led by Walter N. Butler, and of Indians under Brant, descended upon Cherry Valley, which was unprepared for defence. In this instance, Butler showed himself lacking in every trait of manliness, and equally devoid of mercy. Brant was his superior in those respects, and repeatedly appealed to him to treat the white people with consideration; but Butler turned a deaf ear to his protests. Sixteen soldiers belonging to the weak garrison were killed and twice as many women and children were put to

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



JOSEPH BRANT

The
 Descent
 upon
 Cherry
 Valley

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

death. Then Butler gathered forty miserable men, women, and children as captives. A bitterly cold storm was still raging, and the prisoners were only half-clothed. Their sufferings were beyond description, for when a halt was made, they had no shelter, and could only huddle together on the wet, cold ground, so woe-begone and distressed that death would have been a welcome relief.

Naval
 Opera-
 tions

The 32-gun frigate *Randolph* was the first of the vessels ordered by Congress, in 1775, to get to sea. She left Philadelphia in February, 1777, with general cruising orders. Some weeks later she put into Charleston with six prizes. She was blockaded in that port until the following year, when she sailed with several State ships of South Carolina. On March 7th, while eastward of the Barbadoes, the 64-gun ship *Yarmouth* was sighted. By order of Captain Nicholas Biddle, of the *Randolph*, the weaker consorts made all sail, while he stayed to fight the formidable antagonist. The battle had continued an hour, when a shot entered the *Randolph's* magazine and she blew up, sinking in a few seconds. Out of her three hundred and fifteen men, only four escaped, and they, after floating about on some spars for five days, having only rain-water to quench their thirst, which they imbibed by means of a saturated blanket, were picked up by the *Yarmouth*.

Paul
 Jones

Paul Jones towers head and shoulders above all the other naval heroes of the Revolution. In command of the 18-gun ship *Ranger*, he sailed from Portsmouth, N. H., on November 1, 1777. He secured a number of prizes, performed many heroic deeds, and to strike a decisive blow at the British resolved to set fire to the shipping in Whitehaven, a city of fifty thousand inhabitants, in Cumberland, and thus "put an end, by one good fire in England of shipping, to all burnings in America." These words are quoted from Captain Jones' memorial to Congress.

Late on the night of April 22d, two boats, containing thirty men between them, left the *Ranger*, Jones commanding one and Lieutenant Wallingford the other. There were streakings of light in the east, as the boats parted company at the outer pier of the harbor. When Lieutenant Wallingford reached land, his candle was burned out, and he gave up the attempt he had in view. Meanwhile, a weak fort on the south side of the harbor was captured by Jones, the guns spiked, and the garrison made prisoners. Jones directed a squad of

men to set fire to the shipping, while he and the others of the attacking expedition ran to a second fort, a quarter of a mile away, where the guns were also spiked. Hurrying back, he was incensed to find that his orders to set fire to the shipping had been disobeyed. The excuse offered was that the candles had gone out.

The situation was exasperating, but Jones was not the man to be balked in this manner. The sun was above the horizon and the alarm had been spread, it is believed, by one of his own men, who deserted the boats after the landing was made. Jones himself ran into the houses at hand, got a light, and began the work of destruction by boarding a large vessel, starting a fire in her hold, and throwing a barrel of tar over the flames, which burned furiously. Fully one hundred and fifty other vessels inclosed this ship, some of them of large size, and it looked for a time as if all were doomed. Despite the great peril of the Americans, they embarked with coolness at the end of the pier, while Jones, facing about, held his pistol levelled at the crowd gathered at the other end of the wharf, and kept them at bay until the ship that had been fired was ablaze. Then he quietly stepped down into the boat and was rowed to the *Ranger*. The townspeople then rushed to the endangered shipping, and, by dint of vigorous work, succeeded in preventing the spread of the flames. The withdrawing boats would have been fired upon, with the result probably of many casualties, had not the guns been spiked. As a consequence not a man in them was injured.

Jones had another purpose in his descent upon this part of the coast. He intended to capture the Earl of Selkirk, a Scottish nobleman, whose country-seat was on the Isle of St. Mary, at the mouth of the Dee, and hold him as a hostage for the better treatment of the Americans in English prisons. The house was secretly surrounded at night, but, luckily for the earl, he was absent. The men, without the knowledge of Jones, brought away several hundred dollars' worth of silver plate, all of which was returned by the captain with a letter of apology for the misconduct of his crew.

Even so daring a man as Paul Jones saw that it would not do for him to remain much longer in that neighborhood, for the country was fully aroused and cruisers from various quarters were hastening to attack the *Ranger*. On April 24th, therefore, he crossed over to Carrickfergus, in the hope that the *Drake*, an English sloop-of-war at anchor there, would fight him. The Englishman accepted the battle, and the

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Jones'
 Descent
 upon
 White-
 haven

Failure
 of the
 Attack

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

engagement took place in mid-channel, "in sight of three kingdoms." The *Drake* had a crew of one hundred and sixty, who at the end of an hour struck their flag to the *Ranger*, whose men numbered only one hundred and twenty-three. A month after starting upon this cruise, Jones returned to France, arriving there May 8th, having accomplished more than had hitherto been done in the dauntless annals of American seamanship.

Despite the many successes of the American navy, the country lost a great many cruisers. When the year 1778 closed, we had only fourteen vessels of war, with a total of three hundred and twenty-two guns. Against this insignificant force was to be set the one hundred and eighty ships of England, of which eighty-nine, with a total of 2,576 guns, were stationed in American waters.

Finan-
 cial
 Distress
 of the
 States

Congress had returned to Philadelphia in July, after its evacuation by the British, and devoted a portion of each week to financial matters. Fifteen million dollars in bills of credit were issued in September, but their value depreciated, so that the only resource seemed to be an appeal to France, which had shown so friendly an interest in the struggle of the colonies for independence. A humiliating plea was made to the king of that country, and an agent was sent to the Netherlands to negotiate a loan at The Hague. The financial distress of the States awakened the belief in England that the war could be pushed to a speedy conclusion. Congress gave up its hopeless task of conquering Canada, and decided that Washington should act on the defensive, except in making retaliatory expeditions against the Tories and Indians.

The War
 in the
 South

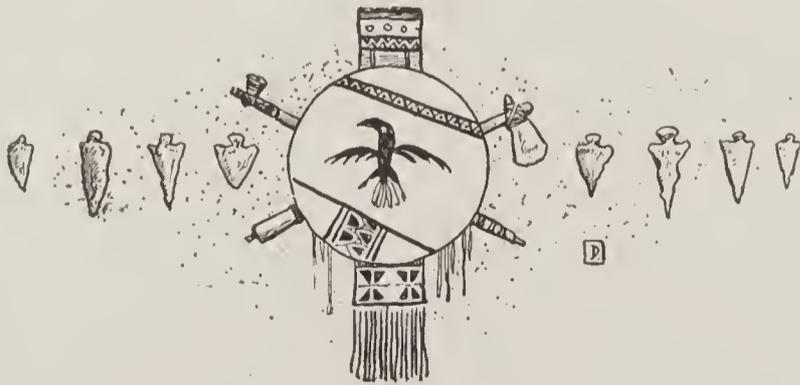
It will be observed that the war which had opened in Massachusetts was steadily drifting southward. Great campaigns had been fought in what are known as the Middle States, which continued to be the theatre of operations for several years. In the extreme South, matters were in a deplorable condition. Tories were numerous, and in many places civil war reigned. The patriots were so few in numbers that the enemy prepared a careful campaign for the capture of Savannah and the conquest of Georgia. Five thousand additional troops were to be landed at Charleston, and a strong force of Indians was to be brought from Florida and Alabama to assail the frontier settlements, while the commandant at Detroit was to send others to join them from the Northwest.

General Prevost, who was in command of a mixed force of regulars, Tories, and Indians in East Florida, sent two expeditions in the autumn of the year from St. Augustine, Florida. They committed many outrages and brought away an enormous amount of plunder. In the latter part of November, Clinton despatched Lieutenant-Colonel Campbell, with two thousand troops, to invade Georgia. The troops went by the sea and landed at Savannah, on the morning of December 29th. The patriot general, Robert Howe, of North Carolina, with less than a thousand dispirited men hurried up from Sunbury, and three miles below Savannah, at Brewton's Hill, fought a battle with a much superior force and was badly defeated. In the flight through rice-fields and streams, a hundred patriots were drowned and four hundred made prisoners. The others who succeeded in escaping took refuge in South Carolina, while the enemy occupied Savannah.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The lack of money and credit compelled the closing of the campaign in the autumn of 1778. The relative position of the invaders and patriots was much the same as at the close of 1776. The headquarters of the British were in New York, and those of Washington in New Jersey. The patriots, however, had learned much in the science of war; they were still strong and ardent in their resolution to be free, and, fortunately, they at length gained the help of one of the most powerful nations of Europe.

Close of
 the
 Cam-
 paign





CHAPTER XXXV

EVENTS OF 1779 (ON LAND AND SEA)

[*Authorities*: The policy of the British Government and the war movements of the royal commanders in America during 1779 were a perplexity to Washington. Attention had been turned by the British to the South, where it was supposed the monarchical feeling was still strong, and Tory influence was active. Georgia was overrun by the royal troops, while from New York, also in British hands, Sir Henry Clinton * kept an eye on weak points in the North, in the hope of striking a blow that might wipe out the memory of the surrender at Saratoga. The Hudson was specially menaced, yet here General Wayne ("Mad Anthony," as he was called) was able to retake Stony Point, "one of the most brilliant achievements of the war," as Washington Irving remarks. General Sullivan was able also to carry terror into the Indian cantonments in the Genessee Valley and so checkmate Tory designs, in concert with their savage allies. Roger Clarke's successes, moreover, in the Illinois country, and Evan Selby's expedition against the Chickamaugas had their good effects in repressing Indian raids and violence. On the other hand, the country suffered severely from the stress of the situation generally, and particularly from the marauding expeditions of the British both up the Chesapeake and along the coast of Connecticut. At sea, the year, however, brought its triumphs in the daring heroism of Paul Jones, † whose harrying of the British coasts and destruction of English shipping were happy offsets to American embarrassments and losses on land. The authorities for the period, besides the general histories already mentioned, are the lives of Paul Jones and Maclay's "History of the United States Navy."]

**General
Lincoln
in the
South**



GENERAL BENJAMIN LINCOLN, of Massachusetts, had been appointed to the chief command of the patriot troops in the South, and arrived in South Carolina early in January, 1779. He made his headquarters at Purysburg, twenty-five miles north of Savannah, where he set to work to form an army to resist the British invasion. He had poor material to draw from, consisting of raw recruits, a few Con-

* Major-General Sir Henry Clinton, K.B. [1738-1795], who figures prominently in

† Paul Jones [1748-1792], familiarly known as Commodore Paul Jones, though his

tinental regiments, and the remnants of the defeated troops of Howe.

Campbell was in high spirits over his capture of Savannah, and pushed his conquest of the region with great vigor. He promised to protect all the inhabitants on condition that the able-bodied men among them should rally to his support, and the prisoners who refused this were thrust into filthy prison-ships, where many died of disease. His bitter persecution, however, only made the patriots here, as elsewhere, more determined in their struggle for independence. In August, Campbell, with a force of two thousand men, advanced up the Georgia side of the Savannah River to Augusta, to help the Tories, open communication with the Creek Indians in the

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Campbell's Cruelties

the events of the Revolutionary War as commander-in-chief of the British forces in America, was the son of Admiral George Clinton, Governor of Newfoundland, and from 1743 to 1753 Governor of New York. At an early age, he served in the New York militia, and in 1751 became a lieutenant in the Coldstream Guards, and later colonel in the Grenadier Guards. With the latter corps he first saw active service in Hanover during the Seven Years' War. In 1775, he came again to America, with Generals Howe and Burgoyne, and took part in the battle of Bunker Hill. In the following year he was appointed second in command to Sir William Howe, whom he afterwards succeeded, and was present at the battle of Long Island and the capture of New York. When he attained to full command of the king's forces in America, he made New York his headquarters, and thence sent our predatory expeditions in various directions, chiefly on the New England and Southern coasts. In May, 1781, Clinton resigned in favor of Sir Guy Carleton and returned to England, where he published, in reply to Cornwallis' strictures, a "Narrative," reciting his connection with affairs in America. Subsequently he entered Parliament, but, on being appointed Governor of Gibraltar, he proceeded thither, and, about eighteen months afterwards (December, 1795), died at that post.

Sir Henry Clinton

family name was Paul, was a Scottish seaman, early engaged in trade with America, and at one time mate of a slave-ship in the West Indies. In 1773, he appears to have settled in Virginia, where he had inherited property, and there took the name of Jones. Two years later, on the breaking out of the Revolutionary War, he became a lieutenant in the United States Navy, on board the *Alfred*, and subsequently was appointed her commander. In the North Atlantic, and especially in Acadian and New England waters, Jones carried terror to many a British merchant craft, bringing several prizes into American ports. Subsequently, Congress gave him the command successively of the *Ranger* and the *Bonhomme Richard*, in both of which he conducted audacious expeditions in British seas, carrying his conquests into French ports, and made several daring descents on the coasts of both England and Scotland. In 1779, his command extended over a small squadron of ships, which did much havoc among vessels flying the British flag, capturing or destroying as many as twenty-six vessels. His most signal conquest was the one narrated in the text, the sanguinary combat with the *Serapis* and her consort, off Scarborough. This achievement practically ended his career in the United States service, for after the war he entered the Russian navy as an admiral and served against the Turks in the Black Sea. Falling into disfavor at the Russian court, he was shortly afterwards relieved of his command, whereupon he retired to Paris on a pension, where he died in 1792.

John Paul Jones

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The
 Conquest
 of
 Georgia

West, and crush all patriots who dared to resist him. A band of Tories, while on the way to join the royal troops, devastated a portion of the South Carolina border. The patriots rallied under Colonel Andrew Pickens, and chasing them across the Savannah, killed a hundred of them. A few days later, Pickens defeated them again on Kettle Creek, killing seventy of the Tories, including Boyd, the commander, and taking seventy-five prisoners. Of the latter, five were hanged on a charge of treason. Francis Marion, the "Swamp Fox" of the Carolinas, also struck many effective blows, for he and his men were familiar with the country, moved swiftly and secretly, appearing in the most unexpected places, and inspiring terror by their dispatch and daring. Lincoln was encouraged by the success of Pickens, and gathered three thousand men in camp. He sent General Ashe, with two thousand troops and several pieces of cannon, to drive Campbell from Augusta, and to keep the invaders in the low and unhealthy regions along the coast. Crossing the Savannah near Augusta, Ashe pursued Campbell towards the sea as far as Brier Creek, forty miles distant, where he went into camp, with his flanks protected by swamps. Prevost, who was marching with a strong force to the help of Campbell, discovered Ashe, and by a wide detour gained his rear. Then, March 3, 1779, he made an unexpected attack on the patriots, who fled in every direction, after suffering severe loss. So complete was the overthrow that only a few hundreds rejoined Lincoln. Prevost now declared the re-establishment of royal authority in Georgia, which became virtually a reconquered province of the crown.

Critical
 Situation in
 South
 Carolina

Meanwhile, the British Major Gardiner had been sent from Savannah to take possession of Port Royal Island, preparatory to a march upon Charleston; but early in February he was defeated with severe loss by General Moultrie, after which Moultrie with his men joined Lincoln at Purysburg. On the 23d of April, Lincoln marched up the Savannah with the main body of his army, but Prevost had dispatched a detachment of his troops into South Carolina to check the invasion. He had with him twenty-five hundred soldiers, besides a considerable body of Indians. Moultrie, who was at Black Swamp with about one-third as many men, made a politic retreat, burning the bridges behind him. After this many of his troops deserted, and the situation in South Carolina thus became extremely critical.

Emboldened by the position of affairs, Prevost pushed into South Carolina, with the intention of capturing Charleston. The city made every preparation to resist the attack, and Prevost decided that the chances of success were too slight to warrant the risk, so he withdrew, and the hot weather prevented any important movements until autumn. In September, it was determined to make an attempt to recapture Savannah, and D'Estaing, who returned from the West Indies, agreed to help. He appeared at the mouth of the river with twenty-two sail of the line, a number of small vessels, and six thou-

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



CAPTURE OF STONY POINT

sand troops, and demanded the surrender of the city. Prevost asked for a suspension of hostilities, and unfortunately it was conceded. The delay granted gave Prevost time to complete his already strong defences, to mount his guns, and to receive a reinforcement of eight hundred men from Port Royal. He now replied to D'Estaing that he would defend the place to the last. Reinforcements had also, meanwhile, reached D'Estaing, consisting of the troops of Lincoln, Colonel McIntosh, and Count Pulaski. The bombardment which ensued was continued for several days, but produced so little effect that the attempt was made to carry the works by storm. The assaulting troops consisted of three thousand French and fifteen hundred

Failure
 to recapture
 Savannah

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Americans, who fought with splendid bravery. D'Estaing led his own men, and displayed the highest heroism, being twice wounded. Count Pulaski was mortally hurt, and the brave Sergeant Jasper, of Fort Sullivan fame, fell. The battle raged for over an hour, when the assailants were driven back, with the loss of more than a thousand killed and wounded, while the British had less than fifty killed. The siege was finally abandoned, the Americans recrossing the Savannah and returning to Charleston, while the French fleet again sailed to the West Indies. The failure of this enterprise cast a gloom over the Union, especially in the South.

The
 Cam-
 paign in
 the
 North

In the North, the campaign made little progress. Clinton sent out marauding excursions, which either plundered or burned Norwalk, Fairfield, and New Haven. The brutal Tryon was the leader in the latter expedition, and declared that he had shown undeserved mercy to the rebels in allowing a single house to remain standing on the New England coast. General Putnam was at Horse Neck when Tryon arrived in the neighborhood. He hurriedly gathered a few militia, greatly annoyed the British, and, when compelled to flee, dashed his horse down a precipice, whither the British dragoons dared not follow.

Capture
 of Stony
 Point

General Wayne, often called "Mad Anthony" because of his reckless daring, performed one of the most brilliant exploits of the war in the summer of 1779. He learned the countersign at Stony Point from a negro, who was in the habit of selling fruit to the English. In the darkness of a sultry night, the troops followed the negro to the causeway leading over the submerged marsh around the foot of the hill on which the fort stood. The guide gave the countersign to the sentinel, who was seized the next moment and gagged. Passing over the causeway, Wayne and his men reached the base of the hill undetected. Then they formed in two divisions, with unloaded muskets and fixed bayonets, and stealthily made their way to the top. They were not discovered until almost in front of the picket, when fire was opened on the Americans. Wayne was at the head of his troops and fell wounded. He asked his men to carry him into the fort that he might die there. Before they could do so, he changed his mind and "decided not to die." Joining in the resistless rush, the patriots swept everything before them. The fort was taken, with the loss to the defenders of six hundred in killed, wounded, and prisoners.

The atrocities of the Indians at Wyoming, Cherry Valley, and other places kept the settlers in a state of constant terror. Resolved to end this woful condition of affairs, General Sullivan was sent into the Indian country with an effective army, against which no successful opposition could well be made. This formidable campaign was against the Iroquois, or Six Nations, all of whom, with the exception of the Oneidas and a few Mohawks, had been guilty of

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



FIRST NAVAL BATTLE OF THE UNITED STATES

frightful outrages. An opposing force was routed (August 29th) near where Elmira now stands, and then Sullivan completed his work with appalling thoroughness. He left more than forty Indian villages in ashes, and laid waste the harvest fields so ruthlessly that during the severe winter which followed many of the savages died of starvation and disease. A fertile, well-cultivated country was thus, in a single campaign, turned into a desert.

One of the most important successes of the war was that of George Rogers Clarke, in the Illinois country, begun the previous year. Clarke, like Washington, was convinced that the many Indian

Punish-
 ment of
 the
 Iroquois

PERIOD III

ENGLAND
AND FRANCE
IN
AMERICA
1758
TO
1783

Clarke's
expe-
dition

outrages that had taken place were due to some direct inciting cause. He discovered that the British posts of Detroit, Kaskaskia, and Vincennes furnished the savages with the arms and ammunition with which they devastated the surrounding country. At his request, Governor Patrick Henry, of Virginia, authorized him to move against the Indians of the West. He gathered a company of Virginians from the Holston, with three companies of Kentuckians, and set out for the hostile country. A fort was built on Corn Island, at the Falls of the Ohio, and, landing at the mouth of the Tennessee, they marched across the present State of Illinois to Kaskaskia.

By a brilliant dash, the garrison was surprised and disarmed without the loss of a man on either side. Pressing on, Clarke captured Fort Cahokia, a French post, where the French, learning that their country had acknowledged our independence, cheered for America and freedom. Hurrying forward to Vincennes, that post (Fort St. Vincent) surrendered without firing a gun, and the garrison took the oath of allegiance to Virginia. When the British governor, Hamilton, at Detroit, learned of this, he was indignant, and with a strong force recaptured Vincennes in the following December. Two months later, Clarke was there again and compelled the garrison a second time to surrender. Finding proof that Governor Hamilton, who was now a captive, had been active in persuading the Indians to commit their cruelties, Clarke sent him to Virginia in irons. In making this march from Kaskaskia to Vincennes, Clarke and his men had to wade through icy swamps, where for miles the water rose to their waists and even to their shoulders. They cheerfully endured the severest hardships, but nevertheless moved with a celerity and effectiveness that marked their achievements as among the most remarkable in the records of the war. It has been truly claimed that but for this march and conquest by Clarke, the western boundary of the United States, at the close of the Revolution, would have been the Alleghany Mountains instead of the Mississippi River. A war party of Chickamauga Indians marched against the Carolina frontier, whereupon Colonel Evan Shelby, with a thousand men from the Holston and Wautauga settlements, passed down the Tennessee in boats, in April, 1779, and destroyed the homes of the savages and nearly all their provisions. This blow and that of Clarke severed the bond that had existed between the Northern and Southern Indians, and brought peace to the sorely harried region.

Col.
Shelby's
Exploit



WARREN SHEPPARD

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY WARREN SHEPPARD

BATTLE OF LAKE CHAMPLAIN

PERIOD III

ENGLAND
AND FRANCE
IN
AMERICA1758
TO
1783A
Glorious
Theme

AMERICAN PROWESS ON THE SEA

Any narrative of the history of our country would be singularly incomplete without some record of the prowess of American seamen at successive eras in the national annals, and an account of the origin and growth of the now formidable United States Navy. We have no intention of slighting in these pages the achievements of this important branch of the fighting arm of our country. The work it has done has been such as no patriot could fail to feel pride in, besides the substantial advantages it has obtained for the nation as an aggressive as well as a defensive force. Happily, the subject—in the writings of Maclay, Mahan, and other able and well-informed chroniclers of the United States Navy—is now being treated adequately, and with an appreciation of the service that American seamen have rendered at important eras in the national history. Hitherto, it has been the theme of the novelist rather than of the historian; and it has been to Fenimore Cooper that the people have in the main turned for vivid and entertaining narratives of maritime exploits on the high seas by the country's naval defenders. Without doing injustice to maritime romance, as furnished by high-spirited and patriotic writers such as the author of "The Pilot," "The Red Rover," and "The Two Admirals," it is more fitting that what has to be said of the contests at sea between the United States and her enemies should be related with the gravity as well as with the truth of history rather than with the picturesque effects but fictional glowings of romance. The story told as history, however, will lack little of the fascination which novelists have thrown around the subject, for the real is often no less thrilling than the unreal—fact no less marvellous than fiction.

The
Mistress
of the
Seas

It seems hardly necessary to say that, at the opening of the Revolution, the colonies had no thought of competing with the large and powerful navy of Great Britain. England was mistress of the ocean, and a contest with her on the sea would have been much like a struggle between a mouse and a lion. And yet this relative situation was not without its advantages to Americans. They had many skilful sailors, and it was easy to build swift-sailing vessels, which, venturing stealthily out from the harbors, were never compelled to go far without descrying some of the shipping of the enemy. A sudden

dash, a daring attack, and the gallant deed was done. On the other hand, the multitude of British frigates and men-of-war had to grope along the coasts or over the waters in their search for the audacious privateers, and were liable to spend weeks in the hunt without success. The patriots, of course, were familiar with their own inlets and numerous secure hiding-places, to which they could flee when pursued. The prospect of securing valuable cargoes and prize-money was ever before the commanders of American cruisers, and, combined with their ardent patriotism, the most powerful incentive that can be imagined was theirs to impel them to the utmost efforts.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The news that two British transports, containing arms and ammunition, had sailed from England for Quebec stirred the Continental Congress to action. If the cargoes of those vessels could be captured, it was obvious that they would be of immense value to the patriot armies, which were sorely in need of supplies. Accordingly, on the 13th of October, 1775, Congress authorized a committee to fit out and arm two swift vessels for the purpose of waylaying and attacking the ships of the enemy. The date named, therefore, may be accepted as marking the birth of the American navy. It was then a weak, puny infant; but it had life, and was destined, in the fulness of time, to become a veritable giant that was to strike Titan blows on all the waters of the globe.

Birth of
 the American
 Navy

On the 30th of the same month, Congress decided to fit out two more vessels, strongly armed. It must be borne in mind that, at this period, Congress did not believe that a final separation from the mother country was inevitable. This belief was a restraining influence at first. The land and sea forces were ordered to refrain, as far as possible, from open acts of rebellion. The result was other than was anticipated, for the enemy accepted such moderation as timidity. The town of Portland (then known as Falmouth) had, as we have seen, been laid in ashes, and other settlements were attacked with a fury that added much to the growing resentment against England. Awaking to its mistake, Congress, on the 25th of November, authorized the capture of any armed vessel used against the colonies, or any tender or transport employed in carrying munitions of war for either the British army or the navy.

Action of
 Congress

Four days later, the first battle was fought in which a regularly commissioned American war-vessel was engaged. The action was between the Massachusetts State cruiser *Lee* and the British armed

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

transport *Nancy*. The *Lee* had a commission from General Washington authorizing her to cruise in the vicinity of Boston to intercept supplies for the British. Several other cruisers were commissioned by Washington for the same purpose. After a brisk fight, Captain John Manly, in command of the *Lee*, captured the *Nancy* which had a valuable cargo of war supplies.

More
 Decisive
 Steps

The slight successes so quickly obtained encouraged Congress to take more decisive steps towards the establishment of a navy. On the 13th of December, the construction of five ships of 32 guns each, five of 28 guns, and three of 24 guns, was ordered, with injunctions that they were to be completed by the following April. Other laws were passed for the purchase and equipment of cruisers. A list of officers was approved in the same month, with Esek Hopkins as commander-in-chief. Hopkins left Philadelphia in January, 1776, in command of a squadron of eight cruisers, of which the *Alfred* was the flagship. He sailed up and down the coast, looking for the British squadron that had inflicted great damage; but, failing to sight it, headed for the town of New Providence, where he knew that considerable military supplies were stored. These were captured with little trouble, and Hopkins carried away a number of leading citizens to be held as hostages for the good treatment of certain prisoners in the hands of the enemy.

Our First
 Naval
 Battle

On his return, late on the evening of the 6th of April, Captain Hopkins, when off Long Island, became involved in a fierce fight with the enemy. After a few minutes, his ship, the *Cabot*, was disabled, Captain Hopkins and several of his men being badly wounded, and others were killed. The *Alfred*, on which John Paul Jones was first lieutenant, came up and took a hand in the fight, while another American cruiser secured a position off the stranger's lee quarter and opened an effective fire. Finding matters becoming too hot, the enemy made her escape in the darkness. This was the first naval battle in which the United States took part.

The result of Captain Hopkins' cruise was the censure of Congress for having exceeded his instructions by going to New Providence. Furthermore, he had demonstrated that he was lacking in courage, and his name was dropped from the list of officers, early in 1777. Previous to this, on the 23d of March, 1776, Congress issued letters of marque, and all public and private cruisers of the colonies were authorized to capture any armed or unarmed vessel which flew

the British flag. This gave an impetus to privateering, and the exploits of the infant navy were of the most daring and successful nature. Paul Jones gave such proof of his dauntless courage and consummate seamanship that he was made commander of the twelve-gun brig *Providence*. He became a captain in October, 1776, his astonishing exploits keeping pace with his advancement.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The importance of Lake Champlain as the only route for inland communication between Canada and the American colonies roused both sides to early attempts to secure control of its waters. In the autumn of 1776, the American fleet included fifteen vessels, with a total of eighty-eight guns, and eight hundred and eleven men, of whom only about seven hundred were on duty. The fleet was under the command of Benedict Arnold, who declared that a more unfit and worthless lot of seamen could hardly have been brought together. The British squadron, carrying eighty-nine guns, was manned by six hundred and ninety-seven officers and men, who were the flower of the British navy. Nevertheless, Arnold made the best preparations possible for the attack of this vastly superior force. The British employed a large body of Indians to fire upon the Americans from the woods along the shore. When the shots from these redskins became too galling, the Americans would turn one of the cannon in that direction and send the savages skurrying among the trees. This fight took place on the 11th of October and was indecisive; but the British commander determined to renew the attack in the morning with a vigor, it was said, that would destroy every vessel of the American squadron.

The
 American Fleet
 on Lake
 Cham-
 plain

No one could have shown greater bravery than Arnold, and his example inspired his men, but he saw that it would be folly to continue the battle on the morrow. He, therefore, made an attempt to steal through the enemy's lines at night, with the hope of reaching Crown Point. At daylight the squadron was nine miles distant. Two of the gondolas were so shattered with shot that they were sunk, while the remainder were hastily fitted up and pressed on for Crown Point. The British commander began the pursuit as soon as the flight was discovered. Arnold kept up a running fire as long as possible, and, when all hope was gone, he ran his vessels ashore, destroyed them, and fled with his men to Crown Point. The American loss was eighty killed and wounded, while that of the enemy

Defeat
 of the
 Ameri-
 cans

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Daring
 of the
 Privateers

A Remarkable
 Escape

was about half that number. The prisoners were almost immediately released on parole at Ticonderoga.

The English authorities of the time admitted that the damage to the West India trade alone amounted, in 1776, to two million dollars, while more than three hundred vessels were captured in that year by the American cruisers.

It was in the order of things that the American privateers which had been so successful in defending their coasts and intercepting the supplies of the enemy, should be tempted into still more daring ventures. So they spread sail and sped across the Atlantic, where, as may be supposed, their arrival caused no little consternation. Some of the exploits of these cruisers are almost incredible. The greater the danger the greater the attraction. The *Lexington*, in September, engaged the *Alert*, and the battle raged for two hours; but the high sea rendered the fire comparatively ineffective. Unfortunately, the Americans were caught unprepared and several broadsides were discharged by firing muskets at the vent of the cannon. When the ammunition was exhausted, the *Lexington* withdrew, but the *Alert*, after some hasty repairs, gave chase, and in four hours overhauled her. For an hour the American had to lie in sullen silence and receive the fire of the enemy. Then, as there was no hope left, she struck her flag. She was taken to Plymouth and the officers and crew were thrown into prison on the charge of treason. They were subjected to the most brutal treatment and often were upon the verge of starvation. In their desperation they began tunneling under the prison, and succeeded in gaining their liberty one dark night and boarded a vessel in London, bound for Dunkirk. Sad to say, they were recognized by a press gang and once more imprisoned. Richard Dale had been master's mate on the *Lexington*. He and his companions remained another full year in captivity, and then one day he walked out when the sun was shining. He was in a British uniform and passed the guards without suspicion on their part, finally reaching home in safety. He doubtless was helped by some English friend, but Dale would never reveal the name of the good Samaritan.

Who would suspect, in studying the accounts of the recent and present experiments in submarine warfare, that the invention was made during the early years of our Revolution, and by one of our own citizens? Such, however, is the fact. In 1777, David Bushnell, of Saybrook, Connecticut, made a submarine boat, which he

called the *American Turtle*. From his description, as given in a letter to Thomas Jefferson, it appears that it was large enough to hold a man, who could navigate the odd craft under water for half an hour without coming to the surface. With it the operator could fasten a magazine, made of two pieces of oak hollowed out, and filled with one hundred and fifty pounds of powder, to the hull of an enemy's frigate. Within this magazine was a little machine which would run any desired length of time under twelve hours, when it unpinned a strong lock and ignited the powder. By that time, of course the *American Turtle* would have returned to shore and be beyond the reach of danger.

Not only was this curious invention constructed, but its merits were put to the proof. In August, 1777, the British frigate *Cerberus*, while cruising through Long Island Sound, on the lookout for Connecticut poultry and beef, anchored off New London. About eleven o'clock at night, a line was discovered trailing astern, and, on hauling it in, "a machine too heavy for one man to haul up was found." A boat was lowered and the machine lifted upon deck. Much puzzled to understand what it was, the people were examining it closely, when it exploded, killing three men and blowing one overboard. In his report of the occurrence, the British officer wrote angrily of "the mode these villains must have taken," adding that "the ingenuity of these people is singular in their secret modes of mischief."

Lafayette, whose good service in the American struggle will never be forgotten, decided to visit his native land, to aid our commissioners at the French court. The 32-gun frigate *Alliance* was set apart for that purpose, and placed under the command of Capt. Pierre Landais, one of his countrymen. It was hard to fill out her complement of sailors, for seamen were then few, andt here was a general dislike to serving under a foreign officer. To meet the difficulty, Massachusetts offered liberty to a number of English seamen, who had been cast ashore from the wreck of the *Somerset*. The offer was gladly accepted, and the *Alliance*, which sailed from Boston, January 11, 1779, took with her a motley crew of Englishmen, a few French sailors, and a number of American volunteers.

There was misgiving among the friends of Lafayette when they bade him good-by, for the English Parliament had during the conflict offered a liberal bounty to any of her sailors who should bring

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The
 First
 Sub-
 marine
 Boat

Peril of
 Lafay-
 ette

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

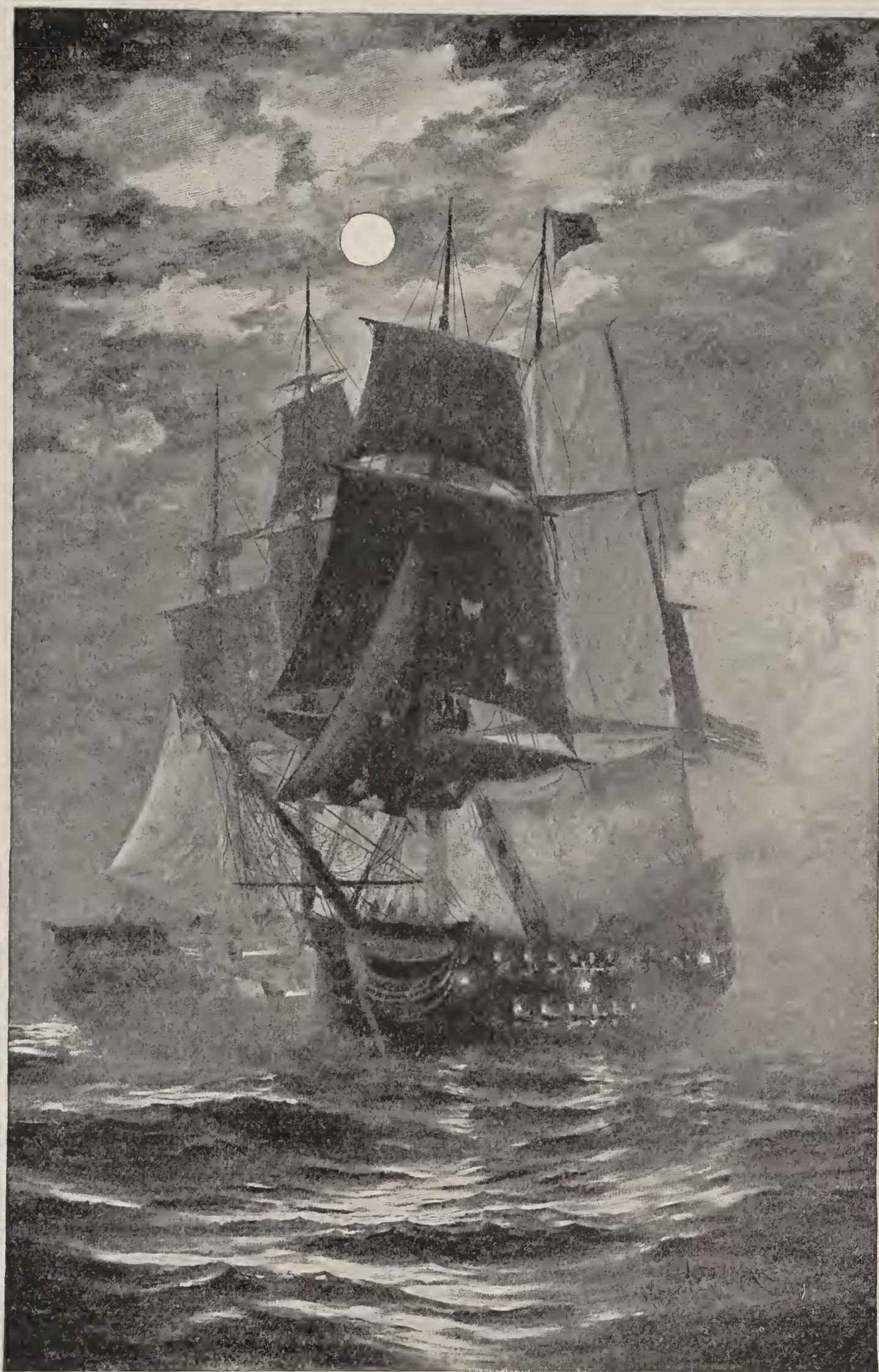
A Friend
 in Need

an American vessel into port. This was known to the seventy or eighty English seamen, who speedily formed a plot for the capture of the vessel. They were so much more numerous than the others, that they had good reason to believe they would succeed. The plot was made known to one of the sailors supposed to be an Irishman, because he spoke with a Celtic brogue. In truth, however, he was an American, who had been in Ireland long enough to acquire a peculiarity of accent. He pretended to favor the scheme, and thus learned the particulars. An hour before the time for striking the blow, he revealed the plot to the officer of the deck, naming also those who would remain faithful and stand by the flag. Prompt measures were taken and the mutineers were overawed and they begged for mercy. About half of them were put in irons and placed in prison on the arrival at Brest, but the kind-hearted Lafayette interceded and they were afterwards exchanged.

Not always, however, was good fortune on the side of the Americans. The English had erected a naval station near the mouth of the Penobscot, which became so great an annoyance that Massachusetts resolved to dislodge the enemy, without asking assistance from the government. With this view, fifteen hundred militia, under Gen. Solomon Lovell, were embarked in thirteen privateers and transports, which were accompanied by the 32-gun frigate *Warren*, the 14-gun brig *Diligent*, now flying the stars and stripes, and the 12-gun brig *Providence*, the whole marine force being under the command of Captain Saltonstall, of the *Warren*.

Coward-
 ice of
 Captain
 Salton-
 stall

McLean's Station, as the place was called, was on the eastern shore of Penobscot Bay, nine miles from the sea. It stood on a peninsula, covered with a dense forest. While McLean was clearing a way in the wood, he learned of the expedition, and when the American vessels appeared, on July 25th, his three sloops of war opened fire. Three days passed before the patriots were able to land, during which McLean wrought hard to strengthen his fortifications. General Lovell erected a battery about half a mile from the enemy, and pounded away for nearly two weeks, without doing more than making a great noise. Then he began preparations for an assault. When everything was ready, news reached Lovell that Sir George Collier was coming up the bay with a considerable naval force. How Paul Jones would have welcomed such a chance! but to Captain Saltonstall the news came like the knell of doom. He hurriedly embarked his troops and can-



THE BONHOMME RICHARD AND THE SERAPIS

FROM THE ORIGINAL PAINTING BY WARREN SHEPPARD

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

A "Red
 Letter"
 Year

non in the night, hoping that he might escape, but the enemy pursued, and many of the ships were burned or blown up. Leaping ashore, the men plunged into the trackless woods, and set out for their homes, hundreds of miles away. Many died on the road, and those who succeeded in reaching civilization were starving, exhausted, and in the last stages of emaciation.

The year whose story we are relating, however, will always be a "red letter" one in the history of our country, for in the early autumn took place one of the most important sea-fights in the naval annals of the world. Captain Paul Jones had fought his way to the head of the American navy, when, by his express desire, he was given command of the 40-gun ship *Duras*, whose name, in deference to his wishes, was changed to the *Bonhomme Richard* (*bon-num' rē-shar'*). This was in compliment to Dr. Benjamin Franklin, between whom and the redoubtable Paul Jones there was a warm friendship. The *Bonhomme Richard* was a dilapidated East India merchantman, which Jones patched and changed so that, when all that was possible had been done, she carried forty-two guns. The *Alliance*, which had brought over Lafayette, was commanded by Captain Landais, under the orders of Captain Jones. The *Pallas* of thirty guns, the merchant brig *Vengeance*, and the 18-gun cutter *Cerf* were added to the expedition. The scarcity of seamen made it hard work to man these vessels, and when it was completed the mongrel crews included seventeen different nationalities.

Jones'
 Squad-
 ron

The squadron sailed from L'Orient on June 19, 1779, Captain Landais sullen and resentful, because the command was not given to him. The jangle of tongues and lack of discipline on board the ships caused a collision between the *Bonhomme Richard* and the *Alliance*, which compelled a return to port for repairs, from which sail was not again made until August 14th. It was a fortunate accident, for while the repairs were under way, one hundred and nineteen exchanged American prisoners arrived in a cartel ship at Nantes. Nearly all of them enlisted on board the *Bonhomme Richard*, adding greatly to her strength and discipline. Among them was Richard Dale, master's mate in the *Lexington*, escaped from Mill Prison in the uniform of a British officer. As soon as he learned of Jones' enterprise he hastened to him and offered his services. Jones made him his first lieutenant.

Captain Landais showed so much insubordination, and acted so strangely, that Captain Jones became convinced that he was not in

his right mind, but he bore with him. While several prizes were taken a number of disturbing incidents occurred. The English coast was in consternation and the utmost excitement prevailed. Captain Jones had sent so many of his crew home in charge of prizes that only three hundred and twenty men were left. Doubling Flamborough Head, the *Bonhomme Richard* was joined by the *Pallas* and the *Alliance*. While chasing a brigantine, about noon on September 21, a large sail, followed by others, rounded Flamborough Head from the south. Still others came in sight, until in less than half an hour the astounded Americans found themselves in the presence of a fleet of forty-two ships.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The
 Fleet of
 the
 Enemy

It was a critical situation, but after studying them through his glass, Jones discovered that there were only two vessels of war in the fleet. Accordingly he gave the signal to make chase. In doing so, he was obliged to abandon his own pilot-boat, which was pursuing the brigantine, so that the crew of the *Bonhomme* numbered three hundred and four men in all. The unarmed vessels scattered like a covey of quail, while the large English frigate made ready for battle. At this critical stage, the American was exasperated by the insubordination of Captain Landais, who disregarded his signals, while Captain Cottineau, of the *Pallas*, was almost as disobedient, though later he altered his behavior and gallantly supported the dauntless American. The delay prevented an approach to the enemy until near dusk, when there was much manœuvring before the *Bonhomme Richard* and her enemy began edging toward each other. The latter was the frigate *Serapis* (*Se-rā'pis*), carrying fifty guns, with a crew of three hundred and twenty men, under the command of Captain Pearson. When within pistol-shot in the darkness, a hail came from the *Serapis*: "What ship is that?" Jones wished to close before opening fire, and to gain time called back: "I do not understand you." The hail was repeated in a louder voice: "What ship is that? Answer or I shall fire into you," but no reply was returned, and the only sounds were the rippling of water from the bows of the huge vessels, and the ominous preparations on board the American for the death-grapple.

A sheet of flame burst from the sides of the two frigates at the same instant. Forty guns had been discharged, and round-shot, grape, and canister splintered the timbers on their errand of death and destruction. Two of the six 18-pounders on the lower deck of the *Bonhomme Richard* burst, killing nearly all who were working them and

Opening
 of the
 Battle

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

A
 Terrific
 Struggle

splintering the deck above. This calamity caused the abandonment of the American's heaviest battery, since the men refused to handle the other cannon. Jones forged ahead and crossed the bow of the *Serapis* to leeward, the latter filling away and coming up on his port quarter. Then the frigates worked nearer each other, until once more within pistol-shot. They were wrapped now in a dense volume of smoke, which was continually lit up by the red flashes from the guns. Not only did these flames spout from the cannon, but there was a continuous rattle of musketry from the rigging of both, and, amid the appalling crash and roar, could be heard the shrieks of the wounded and dying, and the cheers of those that were as yet unhurt.

The men fought as if they were tigers. Within the first half-hour, the *Bonhomme Richard* was struck several times below her water-line and began leaking badly. The loss of the battery of 18-pounders compelled Jones to rely upon his smaller armament of 12-pounders. By and by this battery of fourteen guns was silenced, and seven of the quarter-deck and forecastle guns were dismantled, leaving the frigate with only two 9-pounders on the quarter-deck. By hard work, a 9-pounder was dragged over from the starboard side and the three guns were loaded and fired under the direction of Jones. The deck of the *Serapis* was swept with murderous effect, and the American guns were then double-shotted and pointed at the mainmast.

The battle had raged for an hour when the moon rose. The *Serapis* sought to work across the course of the *Bonhomme Richard*, so as to rake her, but she miscalculated the distance, yawed, put her helm a-lee, and the American overtaking her shoved her bowsprit over her stern. Each expected the other to board, and in the momentary lull, Captain Pearson called: "Have you struck?" "Struck! no!" shouted back Jones, "I haven't begun to fight!" The frigates swung apart, and, while the *Serapis* was striving again for position to rake her rival, her jib-boom fouled with the starboard mizzen shrouds of the *Bonhomme Richard*. With his own hands, Jones lashed the spar to his rigging, seeing that his only chance was to fight at close quarters, but the lurching of the vessels broke the bowsprit, and at the same moment the spare anchor of the *Serapis* caught on the *Bonhomme Richard's* quarter and held. The Americans hurriedly passed a hawser over the stump of the enemy's bowsprit and around

"I
 Haven't
 Begun to
 Fight"

their own mizzenmast. Thus the frigates were interlocked as may be said, in each other's arms, and fought more fiercely than ever. Fearful that the Americans would board through the lower ports on the engaged side of the *Serapis*, they were closed. Since the lids swung outward, they could not be opened, so the enemy fired through them, blowing away the lids. So close indeed were the frigates

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



WHAT WON THE BATTLE

that the gunners of each, in loading, had to push one end of the rammers into the ports of the other vessel. The blazing wads set the *Bonhomme Richard* on fire in several places, but the flames were put out before making much headway. The enemy prepared to board, but, finding the Americans drawn up and awaiting them, abandoned the attempt.

Desperate
 Plight of
 the
 Richard

It looked now as if the *Bonhomme Richard* was helpless. Her

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

lower battery of 18-pounders was destroyed by the first broadside, while the fire of the English gunners was incessant from the opposite battery. They smashed the six ports into one huge gap, through which the crimsoned waves continually washed, some of the shot tearing entirely through the *Bonhomme Richard* and dropping into the sea beyond. As the only thing that could be done to check this, all the Americans were distributed on the upper decks and in the rigging, where their markmanship drove every officer and sailor out of sight, while the 9-pounders and two 12-pounders that had been brought into action again silenced in time the upper batteries of the *Serapis*.

What
 Won the
 Battle

At this fearful crisis in the fight, one of the American seamen did a thing which really decided the battle. He had crept out on the main yard of the *Bonhomme Richard* with a bucket of hand-grenades, which he began throwing on the decks of the enemy, wherever he saw any men. As the sailors withdrew below decks, he flung the grenades into the hatches. At last, taking careful aim, he hurled one through the main hatchway into the gun-room below. It fell upon a pile of ammunition, which instantly exploded, killing or wounding thirty-eight, twenty of whom were blown to fragments. Just then the *Alliance* came up, and Captain Jones felt that his victory was won; but, to his dismay, the *Alliance* deliberately fired a broadside into the stern of the *Bonhomme Richard*. Captain Jones shouted to him for God's sake to stop, but Captain Landais fired again. Signals were displayed to apprise him of his horrible mistake, but he circled round the *Bonhomme Richard*, firing repeatedly, killing and wounding several of the Americans, and sending in a number of shots below the water line. The attack was so vicious that it was believed the *Alliance* had been captured by the enemy and had come to the assistance of the *Serapis*. Finally, however, she stood away, and Jones kept his shattered flag still flying.

Treach-
 ery of
 Captain
 Landais

But the *Bonhomme Richard* was by this time sinking, and fire had broken out again. Between one and two hundred prisoners were set free. All was in inextricable confusion. The released men ran hither and thither, and the expectation was that the frigate would be blown up, for the fire was close to the magazine. Lieutenant Dale ran to the quarter-deck to haul down the colors, but they had been shot away, whereupon the gunner dashed to the taffrail and shouted for quarter.

With his ship settling in the water and certain soon to sink, with the fire fast eating its way to the magazine, with more than a hundred prisoners skulking about the decks, waiting for a chance to strike from behind, with the dead and wounded everywhere, and all his officers urging a surrender, who would have held out with the belief that a grain of hope remained? No man except John Paul Jones.

To the hail from the *Serapis* asking whether he had surrendered, Jones thundered back, "No!" Then the hero shouted to his prisoners that the *Serapis* was sinking and their only hope was to keep the *Bonhomme Richard* afloat. The panicstricken Englishmen flew to the pumps and toiled with might and main. Thus they helped to float the frigate, to check the fast-spreading fire, and had no opportunity to strike a blow against their captors. Then Captain Jones drew his pistol and declared he would shoot the first man who refused to obey his order to work the guns. All knew him and obeyed.

Captain Pearson was amazed at the action of the American, whose fire increased, and the shots were of deadly effectiveness. His own vessel was on fire, and, finding himself helpless, Pearson himself at half-past ten hauled down his flag. Within the following five minutes his mainmast fell over the side, dragging the mizzen-topmast with it. Captain Jones stopped firing, and Lieutenant Dale, by order of the American commander, sprang aboard, followed by several others, and took possession. It required the joint efforts of both crews to keep the *Bonhomme Richard* afloat through the night, while the wounded and prisoners were transferred to the *Serapis*. On the morning of the 25th, the *Bonhomme Richard* plunged downward, bow foremost, and passed out of sight forever. The remaining ships of the squadron repaired their damages and arrived at Texel on the 3d of October.

Maclay in his "History of the United States Navy," upon whose spirited account of the engagement we have drawn, gives the following summary of this most remarkable fight:

COMPARATIVE FORCE AND LOSS.

	Guns.	Lbs.	Crew.	Killed.	Wounded.	Total.
Bonhomme Richard	42	557	304	49	67	116
Serapis.	50	600	320	49	68	117

Time of battle: 3 hours, 30 minutes.

The other British frigate, the *Countess of Scarborough*, made a gallant defence, but was compelled to strike her flag to the *Pallas*, under Captain Cottineau, after an action lasting about two hours.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Paul
 Jones'
 In-
 trepidity

Sur-
 render of
 the
 Serapis

PERIOD III

ENGLAND
AND FRANCE
IN
AMERICA
1758
TO
1783

A
Merited
Compli-
ment

The conduct of Captain Landais caused intense indignation both in France and America, but, afraid of offending the French government, whose aid we so much needed, our commissioners refrained from pressing the charges against him. However, he was dismissed from the French navy and ordered to quit the country. Congress also dismissed him from the American service, while the general belief in his insanity prevented harsher measures. Almost equal credit for skill and bravery must be given to Captain Pearson, commander of the *Serapis*. Naturally he was depressed when he handed his sword to Jones and made an ill-natured remark, but Jones complimented him on the gallant defence he had made, and said that he was sure his sovereign would reward him. So it proved, for the king knighted him. When this was told to Jones, he smiled and remarked: "He deserves it; if I fall in with him again, I'll make a lord of him!"

The
Career of
Jones

Since this was the last important service rendered by Paul Jones to the United States, the reader will doubtless be glad to learn something more about him. He was born of humble parents and named John Paul, in Kirkcudbrightshire, Scotland, in 1747. He went to sea at the age of twelve, but when twenty-five years old he inherited a valuable estate from his brother in Virginia. He took possession of it, and, for some unknown reason, added the name of "Jones" to that of John Paul. He lived quietly on his property for two years, when war was declared with England. He promptly offered his services to the Continental government, and, as we have learned, served with great distinction from the first, and without even pay or allowance. England officially declared him a "traitor, pirate, and felon," and put a price of ten thousand guineas on his head; but he was no more of a traitor, pirate, or felon than was George Washington, "Mad Anthony" Wayne, or Thomas Jefferson, for, like Jones, all of these were born British subjects. It is strange that, even in later years, Jones has been referred to as a privateer, a sea rover, and a bold marauder, which is equivalent to calling him a pirate. Let it be remembered that all this applies to a man who headed the list of first lieutenants appointed in the navy of the colonies, on December 22, 1775; who held the first captain's commission granted under the United States, August 8, 1776; who received the thanks of Congress in 1781; who was unanimously elected by Congress to be the first officer of the American navy in 1781, and who received a gold medal

from the same body, similar to that presented to Washington; who was presented with a gold sword by Louis XVI., of France, and also with the Grand Cross of the Order of Military Merit, never before given to a foreigner. Greater than all these was the loving esteem in which he was held by Washington, Franklin, Jefferson, and La-

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



PAUL JONES

fayette. Who will dispute the belief that Jones was an unswerving patriot and one of the most daring of men?

In 1788, Jones was made a rear-admiral in the Russian navy and fought against the Turks, receiving from the Empress Catherine the Order of St. Anne. He died in Paris in 1792. Now, one of the most interesting experiences that one can have is to see a great person just as he is. It is not every famous man who can stand a close scrutiny. It has been said that Washington was almost the only one whose private life, the closer it is studied, makes the

Death of
 Jones

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

True
 Heroes

greater demands upon our admiration and love. Others have weaknesses, some of them so glaring as to be the cause of pain to their admirers; but where these failings are slight and harmless, they serve to draw rather than to repel us. We do not esteem Washington the less because he sometimes misspelled his words when writing letters, and we rather like him the more when we learn that at the battle of Monmouth, upon the discovery of the treachery of Lee, he flew into a towering rage and denounced him in such terrible words that even Lafayette was awed.

Our government owns many manuscripts so precious that no sum in the world would buy them. Among them are a number of letters written by Paul Jones, which were mostly collected and preserved through the efforts of President Jefferson, who was a life-long correspondent of Jones. One of these letters is here appended, just as it was written by Jones. It is addressed to Mr. Hewes, member of Congress from South Carolina, to whom the writer was indebted for his commission, and is an account of the cruise of Commodore Hopkins' squadron, in which, as will be remembered, Jones served as first-lieutenant on the flagship *Alfred*:

APRIL 4th, 1776.

A
 Characteristic
 Letter

Agreeable to your kind request, I have taken up my pen to give you the particulars of our Cruise from the Capes of Delaware. On the 17th of Feb'y the Fleet put to Sea, with a Smart North East wind. In the night of the nineteenth (the Gale having increased) we lost Company with the Hornet and Fly tender. We Continued Steering to the Southward without seeing a Single Sail or meeting with anything remarkable till the first of March when we Anchored at Abaco (one of the Bahamia Islands) having previously brought too a Couple of New Providence Sloops to take Pilots out of them—by these People we were informed that there was a large Quantity of Powder with a number of Cannon in the two Forts of New Providence. In Consequence of this Intelligence the Marines and Landsmen to the number of 300 and Upwards under the Command of Captn Nicholas Embarked in two Sloops. It was determined that they should keep below Deck 'till the Sloops were got in Close to the Fort and they were then to land instantly and take possession before the Island could be alarmed—this however was rendered abortive as the Forts Fired an alarm on the approach of our Fleet. We then ran in and anchored at a small Key, 3 Leagues to Windward of the Town and from thence the Comodore dispatched the marines with the sloop Providence and Schooner Wasp to cover the Landing. they landed without oposition and soon took possession of the Eastern Garrison, F. Montigne, which (after Firing a few shot) the Islanders had abandoned. The Next morning, the Marines marched from the Town and were met by a messenger from the Govr. who told Captn Nicholas that "The Western Garrison (F. Nassau) was ready for his reception and he might march his Force in as soon as he pleased." This was effected without firing a Gun on our side—but the Govr has send of 150 barrels of Powder the Night before. Inclosed you have an Inventory of the Cannon stores, &c., which we took Possession of and brought off in the Fleet we continued at N. Providence till the 17th ulta and then bro't off the Govr and two more Gentn Prisoners—our Cruise was now directed back for the Continents, and after meeting with much bad

weather, on the 5th Inst off Block Island we took one of Captain Wallace's tenders the Hawke schooner of 6 guns the next morning we fell in with the Glasgow man of war and a Hot Engagement Ensued the particulars of which I cannot communicate better than by extracting the minutes which I entered in the Alfred's Logbook, as follows.

At 2 A.M. Cleared the Slop for action at $\frac{1}{2}$ past do the Cabot being between us and the Enemy began to Engage and soon after we did the same—at the third Glass the Enemy bore away and by crouding sail at length got a considerable way ahead made signals for the of ye English Fleet at Rhoad Island to come to her Assistance and steered directly for the Harbour. The Comodore then thought in Imprudent to Resign our Prizes &c. by Pursuing further, therefore to Prevent our being decoyed into their hands, at $\frac{1}{2}$ past six made the signal to leave off Chase and hauled by the wind to join our Prizes. The Cabott was disabled at the 2nd broadside—the Capt. being dangerously Wounded; the Master and several men killed—the Enemy's whole Fire was then directed at us, and an unlucky shot haveing carried away our Wheel Block and Ropes the Ship broached too and gave the enemy an opportunity of Rakeing us with serving Broad-sides before we were taken in Condition to steer the Ship and Return the Fire. In the Action we Received several shot under the Water which made the ship Verry Leaky—we had besides the Main mast shot thro' and the upper works and Rigging very considerably damaged—Yett it is surprising that we only lost the 2nd lieutenant of Marines and 4 men of whom, a Midshipman prisoner Martin Gellingwater who was in the Cockpit and had been taken in the Bomb Brig Bolton yesterday—we had no more than three men dangerously and 4 slightly wounded.

The following paragraph in brackets is marked out, but perfectly legible:

[It is your province to make the Natural Comments arising from the subject I wish to avoid Cencuring Individuals—the utmost delicacy is necessary and highly becoming in my situation—I therefore Content myself with relating Facts only, and leave wiser heads the privilege of determining their propriety.]

I have the pleasure of assuring you that the Commr in Chief is respected thro the Fleet and I verily believe that the officers and men in general would go any length to execute his Orders. It is with pain that I confine this piaudit too an individual—I should be happy in extending it to every Captain and officer in the Service—praise is certainly due to some—but alas! there are Exceptions. It is certainly for the Interest of the Service that a Cordial Interchange of Civilities should subsist between Superiour and Inferiour Officers—and therefore it is bad policy in Superiours to behave toward their inferiours indiscriminately as tho' they were of a lower Species. Such a Conduct will damp the spirits of any man. Would to heaven it were otherwise but in sad truth this is a Conduct too much in Fashion in our Infant Fleet—the ill Consequences of this are obvious—men of liberal minds, who have been long accustomed to command can Ill brook being thus set at naught by others who pretend to claim a monopoly of sense. the rude ungentle treatment they experience, creates such heart burnings as are no wise consonant with that chearful ardour and spirit which ought ever to be the Characteristic of an Officer—and therefore when he adopts such a line of conduct in order to prove it—for to to be well obeyed, it is necessary to be esteemed—whoever thinks himself hearty in the service is widely mistaken.

The Fleet having been reinforced with 20 omen lent from the Army is now in condition for another Enterprize and we expect to embrace the first wind for Rhode Island when I hope we shall meet with better success as we understand that the Scarborough is now there, it is Proposed to clean the ships at Rhode Island or Providence that our detention there will admit of a return of letters from Philadelphia meantime with a grateful sense of Past favours I have the honour to be with Much Esteem

Sir Your very obliged

Most humble servant

J. P. JONES.

PERIOD III
 —
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783
 —



CHAPTER XXXVI

EVENTS OF 1780 (CAMPAIGN IN THE SOUTH)

[*Authorities:* In spite of French aid to the Continental cause, the British, having command of the sea, continued, during the year 1780, to keep Washington's anxieties on the strain as to the objective points of royalist attack. At one time, there would occur a feint in the direction of Newport, at another a descent would be made on Georgia and the Carolinas; while from the British base at New York, the Highlands of the Hudson were constantly the objects of menacing movements. The brunt of the year's fighting, however, fell upon the South, Sir Henry Clinton capturing Charleston, while Gates' command had to yield to Lord Rawdon at Camden, and to Lord Cornwallis at Clermont. The situation for a time brightened with the victory at King's Mountain, only to fall into temporary gloom again over Arnold's miserable betrayal of his trust. That at the hour of the nation's dire extremity treason should enter the breast of Benedict Arnold is, considering his services to his country, one of those strange fatalities difficult to account for in the careers of some men. Disappointments and the irritation of slights had, it would seem, long preyed upon an envious and uneasy mind, and led its victim to resort to clandestine correspondence with the enemy, with the result of covering Arnold's name with eternal infamy. The authorities for the Arnold episode are Sparks' *Memoir* (*Library of American Biography*), and the *Life*, by I. N. Arnold; also Winthrop Sargent's "*Life and Career of Major John André*," and Lossing's "*Two Spies—Hale and André*."]]

A Severe Winter



THE winter of 1779–80 was one of the most terrible in the history of our country. In the North the snow lay for months to the depth of several feet; men were frozen to death on the highway, and hundreds of wild, and very many domestic, animals perished. All the ordinary channels of trade were closed and military operations suspended. The Continental troops at Morristown suffered not only from the Arctic cold, but even from lack of food. Washington was forced to make levies on the people, but he did it carefully, seeking the aid of the civil magistrates, and giving certificates to those from whom sup-

plies were taken. The farmers showed more willingness to befriend the army than those at Valley Forge, and the hardships of the patriots, as a consequence, were less severe than during the year previous.

Sir Henry Clinton was determined to capture Charleston. Towards the close of the year 1779, he embarked from New York with seventy-five hundred men, leaving Knyphausen in command of the city with a small force, for Washington had sent so many of his troops south that he could give the enemy little trouble. Several raids were made by both opposing parties. Lord Stirling burned a number of houses and vessels on Staten Island, while the British de-

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



MARION IN AMBUSH.

stroyed the Presbyterian church and court-house at Elizabethtown. These forays could have no effect on the general struggle, but served to intensify the resentment of each side.

The British expedition southward encountered such tempestuous weather that it did not reach Charleston until the close of January. On the route thither, the American cruisers captured several transports and supply vessels, while so many of the horses died that Clinton did not land on St. John's Island, thirty miles south of Charleston, until the 11th of February. He then advanced to St. James' Island, and a part of his fleet returned to blockade Charleston. General Lincoln had a garrison of three thousand troops, with which he was confident of holding the city against any approach from the

The
 British
 Expedition
 against
 Charleston

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Siege of
 the City

land side. Commodore Whipple had nine small vessels in the harbor, which, with the strong guns of Fort Moultrie, he was certain could prevent the British fleet from crossing the bar.

The fleet entered the harbor April 9th, without resistance from the fort, while the troops had appeared before the American earthworks on the 29th of March. A demand for the surrender of the city was made April 10th, and being refused, the siege began. The situation became so critical that a council was held on the 13th, to consider the propriety of evacuating the town. Before a decision was reached, evacuation became impossible. The cavalry sent out to keep open the communication with the country were scattered,



MAP OF THE CAROLINAS

Sur-
 render of
 Charles-
 ton

and Cornwallis arrived from New York with about three thousand fresh troops. Fort Moultrie was obliged to surrender May 6th, but another summons to the city was refused three days later. A cannonade was opened, and, on the 12th, all hope being gone, Lincoln surrendered. The disaster was a crushing one. Clinton gained five thousand men as prisoners of war. North Carolina lost all her regular soldiers and was defenceless. Indeed, the whole South was virtually conquered. Clinton stationed a strong force at Ninety-six, a second at Camden, and a third at Augusta. Then he issued a proclamation offering pardon to all who would swear allegiance to the English government. Many accepted the offer, but still more remained true to the cause of freedom.

About the only ones left to do battle for their country were the partisan rangers, under General Marion the "Swamp Fox," Colonel Sumter, Pickens, and other daring leaders. All fought like heroes against the Tories and the invaders and did patriotic service; but like the raids elsewhere, they had little effect upon the war itself. General Gates, the conqueror of Burgoyne, was sent South to assume command of that department. He selected a position, with such forces as he could collect, at Clermont, S. C., while Lords Rawdon and Cornwallis were at Camden. By a singular coincidence each force formed the same plan for a night attack upon the other, and on

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

**Battle at
 Camden**



ANDRÉ'S DISAPPOINTMENT

the 16th of August they met at Sander's Creek. The Americans fought well for a time, but the militia were wholly untrained, and the veterans too few to hold their ground. A decisive defeat was the result.

In this disastrous affair the brave De Kalb fell, pierced with eleven wounds. His comrades fought desperately over his body, but could not withstand the overwhelming forces hurled against them. The patriots were so scattered and disorganized that they could not be rallied, and for the time being all organized resistance in the South to British rule ended. Gates made his way to Charlotte,

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

N. C., where he was superseded by Gen. Nathaniel Greene, one of the best officers in the American service. He did all that was possible with the scant material within reach, but for a while could accomplish little.

The governor of North Carolina appealed to the backwoodsmen of East Tennessee to help the Old North State. They responded gal-



ANDRÉ

lantly, and nine hundred men, as brave as ever sat in the saddle, rode out to meet Colonel Ferguson. On the top of King's Mountain, October 7th, was fought one of the most famous battles of the war. Ferguson was a fine soldier, and had the larger force and the stronger position. He fought bravely and with much skill, but the mountaineers with their unerring rifles forced him back, and finally the leader was killed. Still the riflemen pressed on, until the enemy, after three hundred had been killed, laid down their arms. The victory

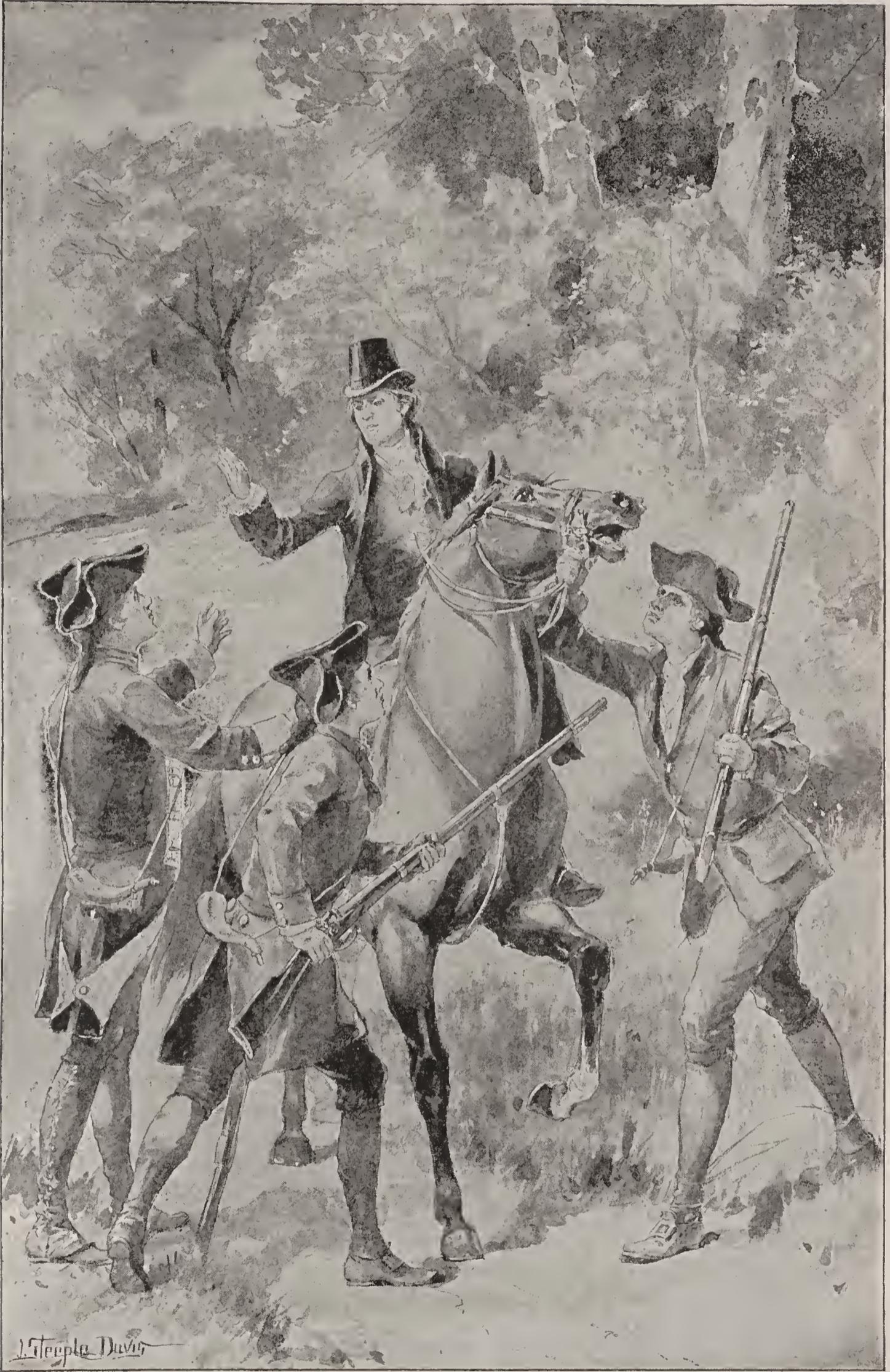
was an inspiring one. Jefferson called it "the joyful turning of the tide," and Bancroft, the historian, observes that "the victory of King's Mountain, which in the spirit of the American soldiers was like the rising at Concord in its effect, like the success at Bennington, changed the aspects of the war."

It will be observed that military events steadily drifted southward. Little was done in the North, though the year will always be memorable because of the most hideous occurrence of the war. Benedict Arnold was among the bravest of those who drew sword in defence of their country. At Quebec and at Saratoga he had fought with the heroism of a lion and won praise from all. He was wounded more than once, and at his own request was left in command at Philadelphia, after its evacuation by Clinton, so as to give his wounds time to heal.

Arnold was proud, overbearing, and insolent. He married a Tory lady, and the couple lived far beyond their means. He was so detested in Philadelphia because of his oppressive acts, that he was once mobbed on the streets. Charges were repeatedly preferred against him, and he was sentenced to be reprimanded by the commander-in-chief. Washington did his duty with much delicacy, for

Patriot
 Victory
 at King's
 Mountain

Benedict
 Arnold
 as a
 Patriot



CAPTURE OF ANDRÉ

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY J. STEEPLER DAVIS

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

**Arnold's
 Plan of
 Betrayal**

he respected the bravery of the man, who had not received at all times from Congress the consideration to which he was entitled. Arnold was angered, and to appease his wounded feelings he deliberately resolved to betray his country. At his own request he was given command of the post at West Point, one of the most important in the country. Previous to this, he had been holding a secret correspondence with Sir Henry Clinton, and matters had gone so far that it was necessary for a third party to meet Arnold and arrange the details of the betrayal. Clinton sent his favorite officer, Major André, up the Hudson, on the sloop-of-war *Vulture*, warning him not to go ashore under any circumstances. Since the utmost caution was necessary on the part of all, and especially on that of Arnold, he waited in the woods on the shore below West Point, while André, disobeying the order of Clinton, was rowed from the sloop at night and met the traitor in the woods. There they talked for hours, and the plans for the surrender of West Point and its garrison were completed.

But the interview had lasted so long that it was daylight when it was finished. In the mean time the *Vulture* had been fired upon by the Americans and had dropped down stream, so that André could not get back to her. Thus he was left within the American lines, but it seemed an easy matter to return to New York. Arnold furnished him with a pass, while he would have no trouble after reaching his own lines. Thus provided, and in the character of an American merchant named John Anderson, he mounted a horse and set out to ride back to New York by following the course of the Hudson. All went well until he reached Tarrytown. There three patriots were seated among the bushes at the side of the road playing cards. Their names were John Paulding, Isaac Van Wart, and David Williams. When the young horseman came round the bend in the highway, Paulding sprang up, and, presenting his bayonet, ordered him to stop. His two companions followed close behind him and André had no choice but to obey.

**Capture
 of
 André**

Now, it so happened that one of these men had been a prisoner some time before and wore a British coat which he brought away with him. Observing this, André supposed that the three were loyalists, and committed the fatal blunder of acting on that belief. Seeing his error, the three encouraged it, until finally André declared that he was a British officer engaged on important business.

They then compelled him to dismount, and, taking him to one side of the road, carefully searched him. In his stockings were found the papers which proved him to be a spy. André offered any amount of money for his release, but the patriots, poor as they were, could not be bribed. The three young men conducted their prisoner to Lieutenant-Colonel Jameson, in command of the nearest military post at North Castle. That officer examined the papers, and then, with a stupidity which is beyond comprehension, sent the particulars of the arrest of André to Benedict Arnold. Seeing that discovery was certain, Arnold told his wife the truth, kissed his sleeping infant, darted out of the house, sprang into the saddle, and rode headlong to the river, where he sprang into a boat and was rowed to the *Vulture*. She immediately made sail for New York, where she arrived with the traitor, who was rewarded for his treachery by a colonelcy in the English army and the sum of £6,315.*

Much sympathy was felt for André, but there could be no denying the fact that he was a spy. Every possible effort was made to save him, Clinton making a strong appeal to Washington; but the latter, who would have been glad to exchange the prisoner for Arnold, felt that to show mercy would be not only undeserved but an act of weakness. Nathan Hale had been brutally gibbeted, and André, who was tried at Tappan by fourteen general officers, was found guilty and sentenced to be hanged. He wrote to Washington asking that he might be shot, but even that pitiful boon could not be granted. He was hanged October 2, 1780. Congress rewarded his

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Escape
 of
 Arnold

Execu-
 tion of
 André

* When Benedict Arnold, who was despised in London almost as heartily as by his own countrymen, died, he left four sons and one daughter. Edwin Shippen Arnold became a lieutenant in the Sixth Bengal Cavalry of the British Army and paymaster at Muttra, India, dying in 1813, at Singapore. James Robertson Arnold, another son, was a lieutenant-general in the British Army. He died in 1834, and his widow in 1852. George Arnold was lieutenant-colonel of the Second Bengal Cavalry and died in India in 1828.

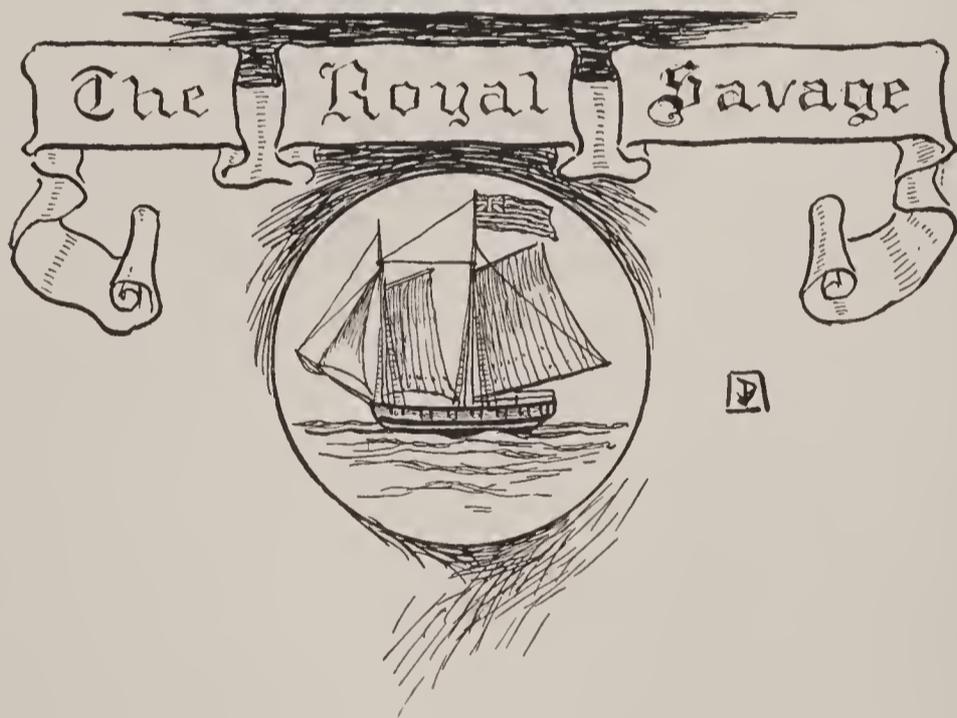
The only son of Benedict Arnold who left any children was William Fitch, who was also an officer in the British Army, being a captain in the Nineteenth Lancers. He died in 1846 and left six children, of whom two were sons. The second son, William Trail Arnold, was a soldier like his father, grandfather, and all of his uncles. He attained the rank of captain and was killed at Sebastopol. Edwin Gladwin Arnold, grandson of Benedict Arnold, is at this writing an honored and revered clergyman of the Church of England. All four of the daughters of William Fitch Arnold married clergymen of the Church of England, and the record of every son and grandson of the traitor is that of a daring, high-minded honorable man, while their posterity are distinguished and universally respected for their worth, a fact which no one can regret, since they could not be in any way responsible for the sins of their misguided ancestor.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Decline
 of the
 American
 Navy

three captors with a vote of thanks, a commemorative medal, and two hundred dollars a year for life. A marble monument rests over the burial-place of each, while a monument was erected to the memory of André in Westminster Abbey.

There was little left of the American navy at the opening of 1780. Despite the brilliant successes that marked the beginning of the Revolution, the overwhelming power of England, the mistress of the seas, had virtually annihilated the gallant privateers and American vessels of war. Great Britain had suffered such loss of her shipping and commerce that she refused in future to exchange prisoners and voted 85,000 men for her navy during the year 1780. The French fleet, under Count d'Estaing, having sailed to the West Indies, it was well-nigh impossible for the American vessels to get to sea. Nevertheless, a few succeeded and added more than one stirring achievement to the many already made.





CHAPTER XXXVII

EVENTS OF 1781 AND CLOSE OF THE WAR

[*Authorities* : With this chapter the drama of the Revolution terminates. It opens in gloom but closes in triumph. The surrender at Yorktown not only shattered England's attempt to wield autocratic power over her colonies, but gave them their well-earned independence. "Whatever might be the importance of the event in the history of England," writes Green, the historian, "it was of unequalled moment in the history of the world. If it crippled for a while the supremacy of the English nation, it founded the supremacy of the English race. From the hour of American independence the life of the English people has flowed not in one current, but in two ; and while the older has shown little signs of lessening, the younger has fast risen to a greatness which has changed the face of the world." Much, however, as we shall see, was yet to be wrought before the young Republic was set on its feet. What lay before it, it set about sturdily, though not without misgivings, to accomplish. The authorities, American and English, for the period are those already enumerated. For the story of the Tory loyalists, for whom, unfortunately, there was no amnesty, and who were now to be driven, by the soreness of revolutionary feeling, from their homes, see Sabin's "Loyalists of the American Revolution," and Jones' "Revolutionary History of New York."]



THE seventh year of the War for Independence abounded with striking events, one of the first importance being a remarkable display of patriotism on the part of the Continental troops. Congress was weak and dilatory. It passed strong resolutions but was lax in carrying them out. As a result the army was woefully lacking in clothing and in money. The British held hundreds of prisoners and exchanges were slow. Many of those taken on Long Island and at Fort Washington, in 1776, underwent horrible sufferings in the three sugar houses and in the Prevost prison, where the brutal Marshal Cunningham delighted to inflict all manner of cruelties upon them. Un-

Sufferings
of the
Patriot
Army

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

numbered bones of the patriots, who died on the filthy prison-ships, are lying to-day at the bottom of Wallabout Bay, and the treatment of the hapless captives forms one of the darkest episodes in the history of the Revolution.

There was bitter complaint among the soldiers over the meaning of the words of their enlistment "for three years, or during the war." The soldiers claimed (it would seem with justice, for such was the interpretation of similar terms for enlistment in the war for the Union) that this meant for three years, if the war lasted so long, or less if the war should end within three years. Congress declared the meaning to be that the term was for three years, or to the end of the war, no matter how long it should last. Nothing seemed lacking to bring discontent among the poor soldiers. They received their pay only at long intervals, and even when paid, the Continental money was worth little more than waste-paper—the currency having so greatly depreciated. Angered beyond all bearing by the neglect or indifference of Congress, thirteen hundred of the Pennsylvania line revolted at Morristown on the first day of the year, and prepared to march to Philadelphia and compel Congress to do them justice. General Wayne did his utmost to restrain them. He appealed to their patriotism, and, drawing his pistol, threatened to shoot the first man who moved. The soldiers presented their bayonets at his breast and declared that, while they loved and honored him, they would kill him if he fired.

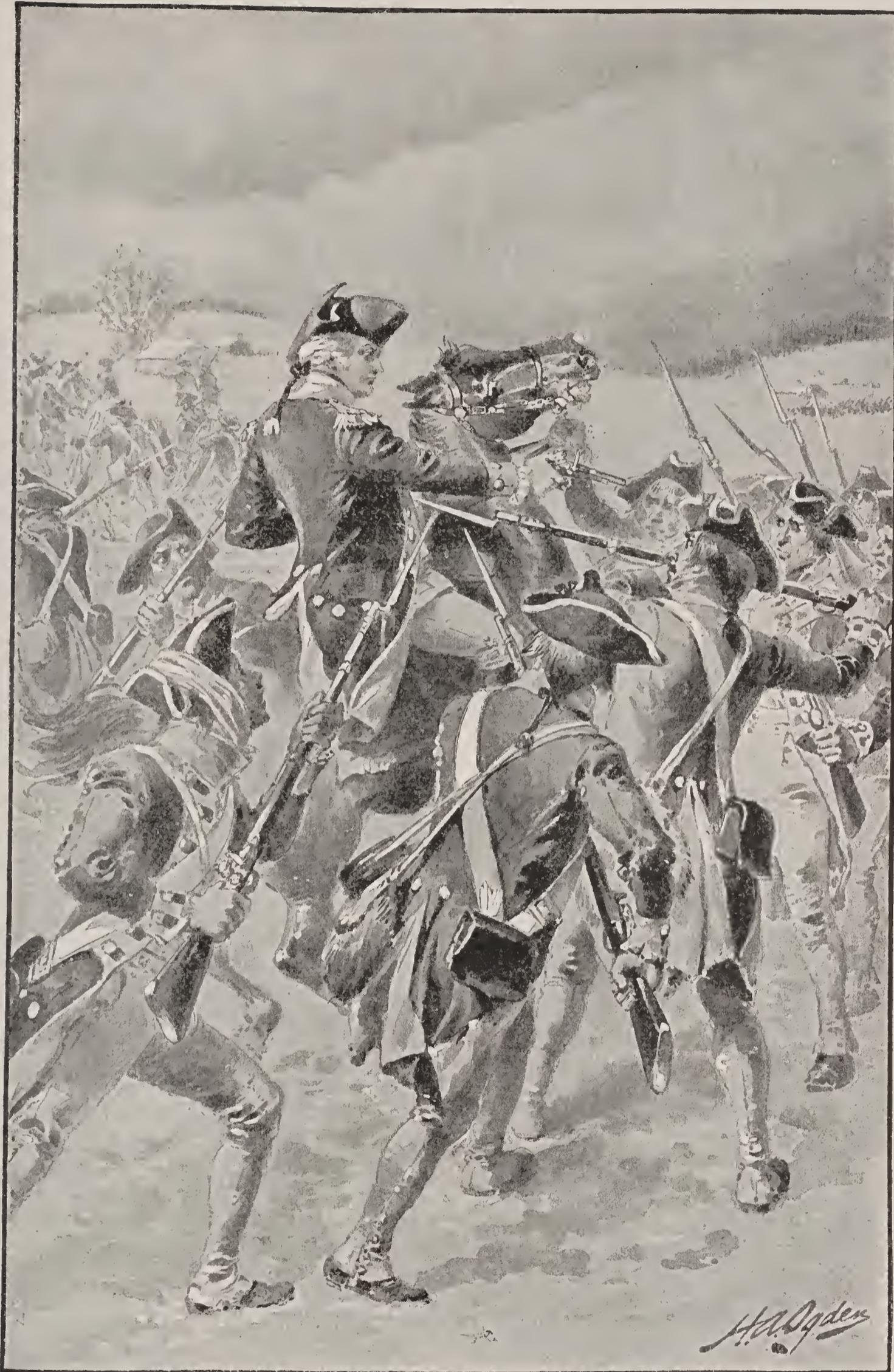
"I will not fire," replied the brave man, "but I will go with you."

He rode with them to Princeton, where they gave him a written list of their complaints and demands. They were reasonable. Under his promise to lay them before Congress, the troops returned to Morristown. Congress saw that it would not do to trifle, and the demands, as far as possible, were complied with. Most of the Pennsylvania line was disbanded for the winter, new recruits taking their place in the spring.

When Sir Henry Clinton in New York heard of the revolt he was delighted. He crossed over to Staten Island to abet the mutineers, and sent two agents among them, with a Tory, who offered to pay the men in cash every dollar they claimed if they would march to New York, where he would take them under his protection. The indignant soldiers seized the emissaries and handed them over to Wayne, with the request that he would hang them as spies. General Wayne

Revolt
 of the
 Pennsyl-
 vania
 Line

True
 Patriot-
 ism



REVOLT OF THE PENNSYLVANIA LINE

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY H. A. OGDEN

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

gladly complied. The reward that had been promised for the detection of these secret agents was offered to the soldiers. "No," was the reply; "necessity forced us to demand justice from Congress, but we want no pay for doing our simple duty." A few weeks after this revolt, a part of the New Jersey line followed the example of the Pennsylvanians. Washington saw that his army would dissolve unless he took stern repressive measures. Two of the ringleaders were hanged, and then all trouble of that nature ended.

The War
 in the
 South

The chief theatre of events was now in the South. Beginning in New England, the tide of war had steadily rolled southward, and the closing scenes were to take place on Southern soil. General Greene, now in chief command of the patriots, set himself to a herculean task with his usual address and skill. His army was formed in two divisions. He took post with the main body at Cheraw, east of the Pedee, while Gen. Daniel Morgan, with a thousand men, was stationed near the junction of the Broad and Pacolet rivers, in western South Carolina. Thus Cornwallis, who was preparing to march again into North Carolina, found himself between two bodies of patriots. The British commander sent Tarleton with a superior force to capture or rout Morgan, who fell back to The Cowpens, near the North Carolina line. Although opposed by a more numerous enemy, the patriots demanded a chance to wipe out the disgrace of Camden, and no one could have been more pleased to comply than their leader.

Battle of
 The
 Cowpens

Hostilities opened on the morning of January 17th, and the affair quickly became a furious engagement. Morgan manœuvred and fought with so much skill that Tarleton was utterly routed, his cavalry being pursued for twenty miles. The loss of the Americans was but seventy-two killed and wounded, while that of the enemy was more than three hundred, with five hundred prisoners, and an immense amount of supplies. The victory was a crushing one, and caused considerable consternation in the camp of Cornwallis when the news reached him. Morgan crossed the Broad River with his prisoners, intending to make his way to Virginia. Cornwallis meanwhile started with his whole army in pursuit. He was confident of heading off the patriots at the fords of the Catawba, but reached there two hours after Morgan had crossed. It was late in the afternoon, and, feeling sure of his game, he waited until morning, when he received a reminder of his experience with Washington at Trenton, four years before. Morgan was gone, and a heavy rainfall had

so raised the stream that the British commander was held idle for several hours, during which Morgan reached the banks of the Yadkin, where Greene joined him, having left his troops at Cheraw in command of General Huger. On his way, however, Greene learned of the pursuit by Cornwallis, and sent orders to Huger to break camp and unite with Morgan at Salisbury or Charlotte.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The movements which followed were among the most remarkable in our history. Greene was making for Virginia and Cornwallis chased him for two hundred miles. The pursuer had been held sev-



CAPTURE OF A REDOUBT AT YORKTOWN

eral hours at the Catawba, but, crossing at last, he renewed the chase after Morgan, and reached one bank of the Yadkin, February 3d, as the Americans on the other side were forming in line to continue the march southward. And, lo! the Yadkin was rising rapidly just as the Catawba had done. The impatient Cornwallis had to linger until the next day, while the Continentals leisurely marched off on their course. They were joined at Guilford Court House by the troops from the Pedee, but being far inferior to their pursuers in numbers, they continued their retreat to the Dan, which was already rising, when on the 13th of February they crossed and entered Halifax County, Va. By and by, when Cornwallis came again in view,

A
 Skilful
 Retreat

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Battle at
 Guilford
 Court
 House

he found himself stopped for the third time by high water. Disgusted with the turn of affairs, he wheeled about and, marching through North Carolina, reached Hillsborough, where he made his headquarters.

Having rested and recruited his men, Greene recrossed the Dan ten days later. His army was now recruited to about five thousand, and he sought a meeting with Cornwallis. A battle of two hours' duration was fought at Guilford Court House on the 15th of March. It, too, was of the fiercest character and proved disastrous to both sides. The Americans lost four hundred killed and wounded, while a thousand deserted and went home. The British losses were six hundred men. When the news reached England, a member of Parliament exclaimed: "Another such victory will ruin the British army." Cornwallis now retreated towards Wilmington, on learning which Greene pursued him to Deep River, but turned back towards Camden, determined to strike a blow for the recovery of South Carolina from the enemy.

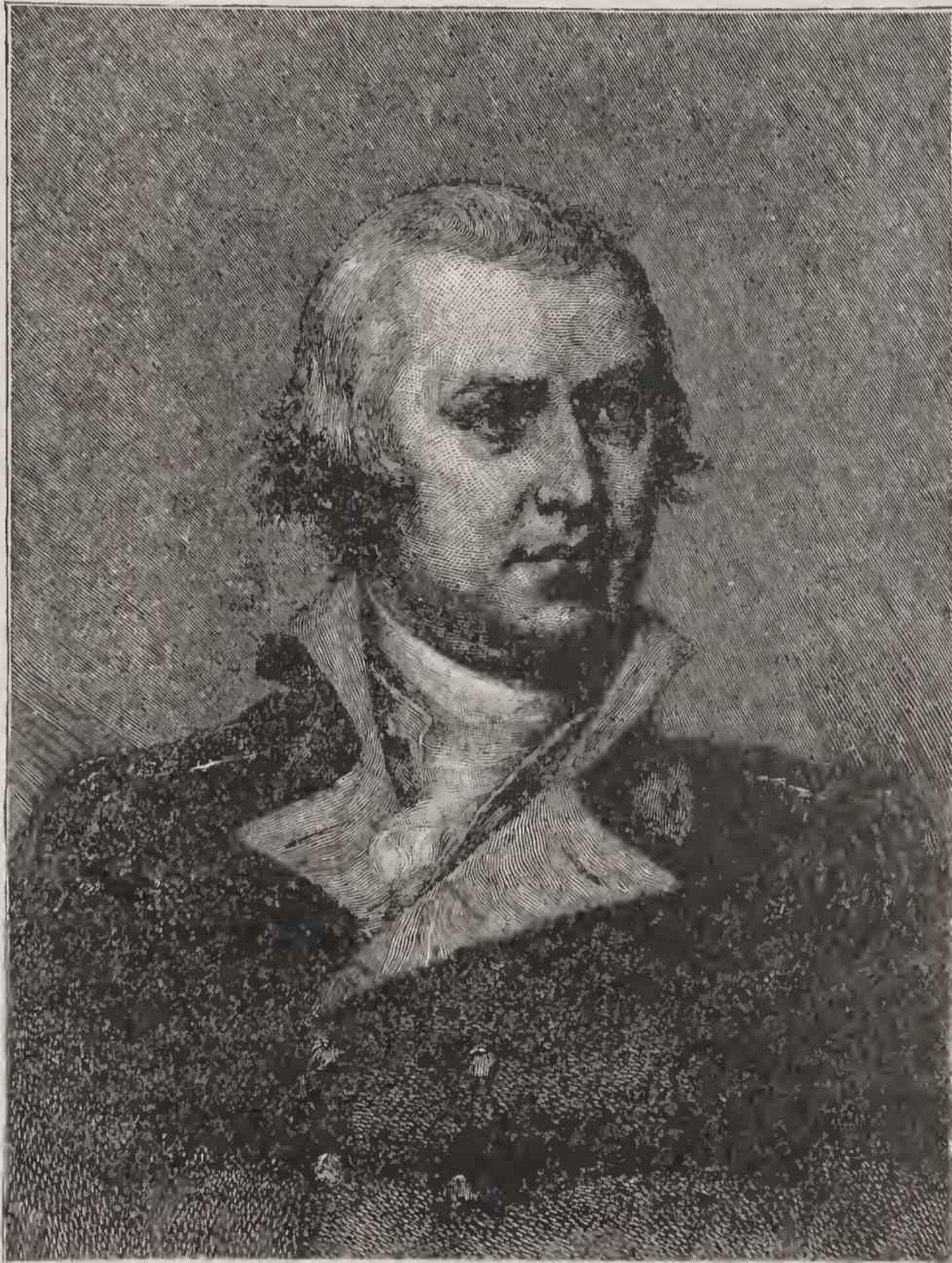
Arnold's
 Raid

Meanwhile, Benedict Arnold was striving to earn the reward that had been paid him for his treason. He was now fighting "with a rope around his neck," for he knew that if he fell into the hands of his former comrades, they would make short work with him. He was sent from New York to Virginia, with about sixteen hundred British and Tories and several armed ships. His purpose was to compel Virginia to bring back the troops which had been sent to the help of the Carolinas. Arnold ascended the James River and landed about a thousand men at Westover, January 2, 1781. The Baron de Steuben was at this time in Virginia collecting recruits and training them, and there was a hurried gathering of the militia to meet the traitor. The Baron kept his small force to the south of the James, under the belief that Petersburg was the object of Arnold's attack, but, instead, he pushed on to Richmond, the greater portion of which he laid in ashes. Then he retreated to Westover and set out on another raid down the river. He was pursued by the militia, but fled up stream to Portsmouth, opposite Norfolk. The Americans tried hard to capture Arnold. Jefferson, governor of Virginia, offered five thousand guineas for his arrest, and Washington sent Lafayette with twelve hundred men to help catch the recreant. General Phillips arrived in March and superseded Arnold in command of the British troops. He took with him two thousand picked men,

and plundered many plantations, sending hundreds of slaves to the West Indies. While the movements were converging against Arnold, Cornwallis himself arrived and assumed command. The earl held the traitor in such contempt that he sent him back to New York, where he was not compelled to meet or to speak to him.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

Cornwallis caused a wholesale destruction of property, but fell



GENERAL NATHANIEL GREENE

back before the advance of Lafayette, Steuben, and Wayne, to Williamsburg. There orders reached him from Clinton in New York, to send three thousand of his troops thither for its protection against the combined French and American armies. Cornwallis was also directed to select some suitable place and fortify it. The earl was made very angry by the reception of this command, for he believed Clinton did it purposely to break up the active campaign he had

Move-
 ments of
 Corn-
 wallis

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

begun in Virginia. Nevertheless, he had no choice but to obey. After sending away such a large detachment of his troops, he saw that his safety lay in selecting a good position and making it as strong as possible. At Yorktown, therefore, on a high and salubrious plain, he erected his fortified camp, throwing up military defences also at Gloucester, on the opposite side of the river. Here we will leave him for a time while we take a brief glance at military events occurring elsewhere.

Defeats
 and Suc-
 cesses
 in the
 South

Lord Rawdon was at Camden with nine hundred men, strongly intrenched. To gain possession of the interior of South Carolina, General Greene saw that he must capture Camden and Ninety-Six. Giving up the pursuit of Cornwallis, he marched against Rawdon. His position was too strong to be attacked, and while Greene was waiting for reinforcements, Rawdon marched out and attacked him on the morning of April 25th. Greene was taken partly by surprise, but he fought bravely and with much skill, though compelled in the end to retreat, the loss on each side being about equal. Lee and Marion captured Wright's Bluff, on the Santee, the next day, thus cutting the communication of the enemy with Charleston, upon which they had to rely for supplies. This compelled Rawdon to leave Camden and retreat to Eutaw Springs.

Success
 of
 General
 Greene

Greene now laid siege to the strong post Ninety-Six, when, learning that reinforcements were on their way to strengthen the garrison, he attacked it, but was unsuccessful. The British, however, evacuated the place soon after, and the Americans took possession. Colonel Stewart, who had now superseded Lord Rawdon, was attacked by Greene at Eutaw Springs, September 8th. The battle began in the morning and quickly became general. The British were defeated, and the jubilant Americans began plundering their deserted camp. While they were feasting, the enemy assailed them and compelled them to retreat, but Stewart held the partisan troops around him in such fear that he withdrew towards Charleston. Greene sent detachments to pursue them a long way while he occupied the deserted field. This virtually ended Greene's campaign, which had been pushed with a skill that could not well have been surpassed. He had driven the invaders from the interior of North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia. Congress passed for him a vote of thanks, and presented him with a gold medal, together with a British standard captured during battle.

At this time the Count de Grasse was in command of the French fleet in the West Indies, and had given assurances to Washington that he would co-operate with the allied armies in a new movement against the British. Washington was at Dobbs Ferry planning a campaign against Clinton in New York, but the prospects for a time were

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



LORD CORNWALLIS

gloomy. Then they brightened; for on the 6th of July, the French forces from New England, under Rochambeau (*rō-shōng-bō'*), arrived at Dobbs Ferry and joined the Americans. The two commanders held many conferences with leading members of Congress over the momentous campaign now impending. Learning that the French fleet had headed for the Chesapeake, Washington decided to abandon his intended campaign against New York, join Lafayette at the York

Junction
 of the
 French
 and
 American
 Forces

PERIOD III

ENGLAND
AND FRANCE

IN

AMERICA

1758

TO

1783

Plan of
Wash-
ington

peninsula, and push Cornwallis to the wall. In his diary under date of August 14, 1781, Washington wrote:

“Matters having now come to a crisis, and a decided plan to be determined upon, I was obliged, from the shortness of Count de Grasse’s promised stay on this coast, the apparent disinclination of their naval officers to force the harbor of New York, and the feeble compliance of the States with my requisition for men hitherto, and the little prospect of greater exertions in the future, to give up all idea of attacking New York, and instead thereof to move against Yorktown.”

Washington, by many stratagems, confirmed Clinton in his belief that he intended to attack him in New York. It was not until September, a week after the allied armies had been on their march, that Clinton learned that, instead of the movement being a feint to cover a sudden descent upon the city, the armies were really marching against Cornwallis, far away in Virginia. He took some comfort in the fact that he had countermanded the order for Cornwallis to send troops to New York.

Good news came to Washington September 5th, when the allied armies had encamped at Chester, Pa. De Grasse with his ships and land troops had entered Chesapeake Bay. Three days later Washington, accompanied by Rochambeau and the Marquis de Chastellux, left Baltimore for a two days’ visit to Mount Vernon, from which the commander-in-chief had been absent more than six years. The last division of the allied forces reached Williamsburg, September 25th, and preparations for the siege were at once begun. Cornwallis saw the danger closing round him, and urged Clinton to send him what aid he could, adding that, if he did not quickly do so, he must be prepared to hear the worst. On the 28th, the allied armies, twelve thousand in number, marched from Williamsburg to Yorktown, twelve miles distant. The British outposts were driven in, and possession taken of the abandoned positions. The tactical line of the co-operating allies was in the form of a horseshoe, two miles from the enemy’s works. By the 30th, each line rested on the river and thus Yorktown was completely invested. The British, at Gloucester, were held powerless by the French dragoons, the Virginia militia, and a strong force of French marines. Tarleton once attempted a sortie with his cavalry, but they were routed, Tarleton narrowly escaping being made a prisoner. The siege was pressed

Advance
of the
Allied
Armies

with concerted vigor, the allies pushing steadily forward, French and Americans together in friendly rivalry. On the afternoon of the 9th a cannonade was begun by the Americans on the right. It continued all night, and in the morning the French batteries on the left joined in the bombardment. That night several British vessels in the river were fired by being struck by red-hot shot.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



“ CORNWALLIS IS TAKEN ”

The situation of Cornwallis grew more desperate every day and indeed almost every hour. His cavalry suffered so much because of lack of forage that many of the horses were killed and sent floating down the river. The French fleet were on the alert for reinforcements from Clinton, and the lines of the allied troops pressed closer and closer. An epidemic, meanwhile, broke out in the British camp, and two thousand of the seven thousand under Cornwallis were soon

Hopeless
 Situation of
 Cornwallis

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

in the hospital. The longing eyes cast southward saw no friendly sail whitening the waters, and the hopes of the British were well-nigh gone. Cornwallis, as a last recourse, determined to leave behind him his sick, his baggage, and all his impedimenta, cross the river at night to Gloucester, attack the French there, and then push northward by rapid marches through Pennsylvania and New Jersey to New York. A part of his army crossed, but a storm drove the boats down stream. It took until daylight to recover them, when the troops that had been taken over were brought back.

Sur-
 render of
 Corn-
 wallis

This misfortune ended all thought of resistance on the part of the British commander. He opened negotiations for surrender, and the terms of capitulation were signed October 18th. On the following afternoon, at two o'clock, the British army marched out of Yorktown, with colors cased, drums beating, and muskets at the shoulder. The French were drawn up on the left of the road, the Americans on the right, their lines extending more than a mile. With a delicacy characteristic of him, Washington ordered all mere spectators to keep away, and he suppressed every evidence of exultation. General O'Hara rode at the head of the British troops. When opposite Washington, on his white charger, he raised his hat, and apologized for the absence of Cornwallis, who, he said, was ill. Washington replied that to General Lincoln had been assigned the duty of receiving the submission of the garrison. It was he who had been compelled to surrender Charleston the previous year to Sir Henry Clinton. Lincoln conducted the troops to an open field and gave the order to "ground arms." Some of the men were so angry that they flung their muskets down with a violence that broke them—a bit of spleen perhaps justified by the humiliating occasion.*

* Lord Cornwallis [1738-1805], British general, Governor-General of India during the Mysore War, and Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland at the era of the union with Great Britain, was the son of Earl Cornwallis, whose wife was a daughter of Lord Townshend and niece of Sir Robert Walpole. He entered the army in 1756 and first saw active service at Minden and in other actions, under Ferdinand of Brunswick, the Prussian general, who commanded the allied troops against France in the Seven Years' War. On the death of his father he sat in the House of Lords as a Whig peer, and was opposed to coercive measures against the American colonies. In 1776 he came to America with reinforcements, and took a command first under Sir William Howe and afterwards under Sir Henry Clinton. His military talents were far superior to those of either of his chiefs, as is shown by his exploits in the various operations of the war, in his capture of Fort Lee and pursuit of Washington through New Jersey, in the victory on the Brandywine and the occupation of Philadelphia, and, later, in his defeat of Gates at Camden, and in the

The total number of troops surrendered was about seven thousand, exclusive of two thousand sailors, nearly as many negroes, and fifteen hundred Tories. During the siege the enemy had lost five hundred and fifty in killed, wounded, and missing, that of the allies being about three hundred. With the prisoners were delivered about eight thousand muskets, seventy-five brass, one hundred and sixty iron cannon, and an immense quantity of ammunition and stores. The force which brought about this great victory included thirty-seven ships-of-the-line and seven thousand men, furnished by the French, and nine thousand troops, including five thousand five hundred regulars, provided by the Americans.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The decisive triumph secured the independence of America. On the succeeding day Washington expressed in general orders his great commendation of both armies. The next day was the Sabbath, and divine services were held throughout the camp. Lieutenant-Colonel Tighlman, one of Washington's aides, mounted a swift horse and set out with the glorious news for Philadelphia. He reached there at midnight, October 23d, and the joyful tidings quickly spread. The watchman on his rounds added to his usual cry "All's well!" the words "and Cornwallis is taken!" The old State House bell was set ringing, and nearly every one was on the streets, shaking hands, cheering, or perhaps shedding tears of joy. It was hardly light when cannon began booming. Congress met at an early hour, and the despatch from Washington was read. It was decided to go in a body, at two o'clock in the afternoon, to the Dutch Lutheran Church and there "return thanks to Almighty God for crowning the allied armies of the United States and France with victory." A few days

The
 News in
 Phila-
 delphia

affair at Guilford Court-House. Hemmed in by De Grasse's French fleet and Washington's army at Yorktown—a position which he occupied by Clinton's orders and out of which his superior officer failed to relieve him—he was forced, as we have seen, to capitulate. On being released from his parole he was offered, on his return to England, the Governor-Generalship of India, but the appointment he did not accept until the offer was renewed in 1786. There he distinguished himself by many important services, civil and military. He took part in the operations against Tippoo Sahib, and was present with Sir Robert Abercromby at the storming of Seringapatam. For his services in India he was created Marquis. Returning to England in 1793, he was appointed Master of Ordnance, with a seat in the Cabinet; and, when the Irish rebellion of 1798 broke out, he was made viceroy. Under his régime, the Irish rising was humanely repressed and the Act of Union passed. In 1805, he was again nominated to the Governor-Generalship of India, where he died a few months after his arrival in the great dependency of the British Crown. Specially valuable is the "Cornwallis Correspondence," in relation alike to American, Irish, and East Indian affairs.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The
 News in
 England

Peace

later Congress voted the nation's thanks and fitting honors to Washington, Rochambeau, and De Grasse, and their officers, and resolved that a marble column should be erected at Yorktown to commemorate the event.

The news reached England November 25th, and there, naturally enough, caused dismay and consternation. Lord North, the prime minister, flung up his arms and exclaimed: "O God, it is all over!" When the stubborn king had rallied from the shock, he declared that no efforts should be relaxed until the colonies were subdued. But the growing opposition to the war asserted itself in every quarter. Lord North retired from the ministry in March of the following year (1782), and the successors of himself and his associates were, happily, the friends of peace. King George stormed for a while, but in the end was compelled to yield. In May, Sir Guy Carleton arrived in New York, with proposals for reconciliation. These statements will explain the inscription on the recently erected Dobbs Ferry monument, the corner-stone of which was laid June 14, 1894:

WASHINGTON'S HEADQUARTERS.

Here, August 14, 1781, Washington planned the Yorktown campaign, which brought to a triumphant end the War for American Independence.

Here, May 6, 1783, Washington and Sir Guy Carleton arranged for the evacuation of American soil by the British.

And opposite this point, May 8, 1783, a British sloop of war fired 17 guns in honor of the American Commander-in-Chief, the first salute by Great Britain to the United States of America.

WASHINGTON
 ROCHAMBEAU.

Erected
 June 14, 1894,
 by the
 New York State Society
 Sons of the American Revolution.

In relating the closing events of the war, we must not forget the further part taken by our gallant little navy. We stated in our account of Paul Jones that the capture of the *Serapis* was the last ser-

vice which he rendered to our country. From this it should not be supposed that he lost his interest in the struggle, or was not as eager as ever to strike his telling blows for the cause of American independence. He sailed from France in September, 1780, in command of the 20-gun ship *Ariel*, lent him by the king. She, however, proved unseaworthy, and was so wrenched in a storm that he had to work his way back to port, from which he sailed in December, 1780. Early in January he began an action with an English ship, which he compelled to strike her colors, but she effected her escape in the darkness and confusion. Jones was next made commander of the 74-gun ship *America*, but the war ended before she was ready for sea.

In February, 1781, the *Alliance* left Boston for France, and on the outward voyage captured the privateer *Alert*. She sailed from L'Orient March 31st, accompanied by the French 40-gun letter of marque, *Marquis de la Fayette*. Two days later, they together captured the English 26-gun privateer *Mars*, and the *Minerva*, of ten guns. Then the *Alliance* continued her cruise alone. While drawing near two sails on the 28th of May, the wind fell to that extent that the *Alliance* lost her steerage way, but the smaller vessels, aided by sweeps, took a favorable position off the frigate's stern and quarter and opened fire. For an hour Captain Barry was obliged to hold this intolerable position, receiving the broadsides of the enemy and unable to return an effective fire. Barry was badly wounded and carried below. When on the point of surrendering, the breeze freshened, the *Alliance* ran between her two opponents, and she poured such tremendous broadsides into them that they struck. One of the prizes, while striving to run into Boston, was retaken, but the *Alliance* made port in safety.

A brilliant victory by a Pennsylvania State cruiser was gained as late as April, 1782. She was the *Hyder Ally*, a merchant ship, carrying sixteen 6-pounders, and a crew of one hundred and ten men under command of Lieut. Joshua Barney. Her duty was to convoy a fleet of merchantmen down to the Capes, after which she was to return to the State jurisdiction. Off Cape May on the 8th of April, while the merchantmen were waiting for a breeze, two English cruisers stood in towards them. Barney instantly signalled to the merchantmen to make sail up the bay while he covered their retreat. The first Englishman delivered a broadside at the *Hyder Ally* and continued her pursuit of the convoy, without receiving a reply from the American,

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

The
 Fighting
 on the
 Sea

A Brill-
 iant
 Victory



THE HYDER ALLY AND THE GENERAL MONK

FROM THE ORIGINAL PAINTING BY WARREN SHEPPARD

who was waiting for the second vessel, the 20-gun sloop-of-war *General Monk*. When directly opposite, the *Hyder Ally* delivered a broadside, whereupon the *General Monk* put about with the intention of boarding, perceiving which Lieutenant Barney told his man at the wheel, when he received an order from him to do exactly the reverse of the command given him. At the moment the ships were about to foul, Barney shouted: "Hard port your helm, or you will run afoul of us!" The wheelman instantly turned the wheel hard to the starboard and brought the Englishman's jibboom afoul of their fore-rigging, the enemy, who had heard the command as it was intended he should, having no suspicion of what was really intended. As a consequence, he was instantly exposed to a raking fire from the whole American broadside, which was so destructive that the *General Monk* was speedily forced to surrender. Then Barney rejoined his convoy before another English ship could come within range.

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

This American victory was the more striking when all the facts are remembered. Their comparative force and estimated loss, as given by Maclay, were as follows :

	Guns.	Lbs.	Crew.	Killed.	Wounded.	Total.
Hyder Ally.....	16	96	110	4	11	15
General Monk.....	20	180	136	20	33	53

Time of engagement, 30 minutes.

During the Revolution, 542 seamen of the regular navy were killed in battle, while considerably more were lost in the privateers which played so active a part in the struggle. Of the 542 killed, 311 perished when the United States 28-gun frigate *Randolph*, Captain Nicholas Biddle, was blown up by a shot from the *Yarmouth*, March 7, 1778. About the same number of soldiers were slain in the land battles, but this estimate does not include the 9,500 Americans who died in the British prison-ships in Wallabout Bay. Besides the Americans, 1,500 French sailors, who had been captured near our coast, thus died. The total number of Americans who lost their lives in the Revolutionary War was, approximately, 12,000. The total number of Continental vessels lost during the struggle by capture, wreck, and other casualty, was 24, carrying 470 guns. The loss of the British was 102 war vessels, carrying 2,622 guns, and the total number captured by American cruisers, privateers, or private enterprise, was in the neighborhood of 800.

Losses
 of the
 Patriots
 during
 the
 Revolution

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783
 Finan-
 cial Cost
 of the
 Revolu-
 tion

The financial cost of the Revolution cannot be exactly given. That of the United States has been estimated at 135 millions in specie. The debt of Great Britain was increased during the war over 600 million dollars. Probably at no time did the British forces in this country exceed 40,000 men. Our own armies were mainly made up of militia and minute-men, whose terms of service, as a rule, were brief.

Throughout the struggle there was naturally much resentment against the Tories. Most of the States had passed laws to confiscate the estates of persons who fought on the side of the enemy. Many of the Tories, therefore, left the country with the British troops, those from the North going to Canada and Nova Scotia, and those from the South to the West Indies. Years after, when the angry feelings were soothed, numbers came back and settled in their old homes.

The
 Tories

More than a hundred years have now passed since Great Britain acknowledged the independence of the United States, and the question may to-day be asked: Can we not afford to do justice to the men who were known as Loyalists, or Tories, during that long and desperate struggle? Were they all scoundrels and traitors to be thought and spoken of with detestation? Probably no name has been held up to school-children as so utterly abhorrent as that of "Tory." They have been taught in their histories and readers, as well as in speeches and orations, that the one being to be scorned above all others was he who being born in this country took sides with England in the war for liberty. To some extent this feeling is natural and justifiable. Prof. Moses Coit Tyler, of Cornell University, himself a descendant of a patriot family and a gentleman of high culture, has lately published a thoughtful article on the subject in the *American Historical Review*. Quoting John Adams, he shows that New York and Pennsylvania were so evenly divided in sentiment, that if they had not been kept in line by New England on the north and by Virginia on the south, "they would have joined the British." The two parties were about equal in North Carolina; while in South Carolina the Tories were the more numerous. Georgia, as we have shown, virtually swung back to the Crown, to be regained later, but the people were about to take it out of the confederation when the decisive victory of Yorktown occurred. Lecky, the English historian, who approved the separation of the colonies from the mother-country, says

that the Revolution "was the work of an energetic minority who succeeded in committing an undecided and fluctuating majority to courses for which they had little love, and leading them step by step to a position from which it was impossible to recede." John Adams, one of the most ardent of patriots, asserted that one-third of the people of the thirteen States were opposed to the Revolution from its opening to its close. The Loyalists yearned for a stable govern-

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783



WASHINGTON'S PATRIOTISM

ment and believed that it would be best obtained under British rule. Among the latter were scholars, church-members, and affectionate fathers. Of the three hundred and ten Loyalists banished by Massachusetts alone at the close of the Revolution, many of them to meet uncomplainingly great hardships in the wildernesses of Canada, more than one-fifth were graduates of Harvard College. It should be remembered, too, that the leaders in the revolt hoped at first not for separation, but for some means of compelling England to show them

PERIOD III
 ENGLAND
 AND FRANCE
 IN
 AMERICA
 1758
 TO
 1783

more justice and consideration. Had she done this, the Declaration of Independence, as we have stated, would have been deferred many years, and probably would never have been penned at all, since separation was sure to come, but it might better have been a peaceful and an amicable one. Yet with such vast odds against them, how much more glorious were the hardships, the sufferings, and the triumphs of the patriots under Washington and the other leaders of the young nation! That America was to be free was "writ in the book of fate."

The embers of war burned for a long time after the surrender of Yorktown. Savannah was not evacuated until July 11, 1782, and Charleston not until the 14th of the following December. At Versailles, in November, 1782, the independence of the United States was acknowledged in a provisional treaty. John Oswald was commissioner for England, while John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, John Jay, and Henry Laurens represented the United States. On the 17th of April, eight years, lacking two days, after the battle of Lexington, Washington was ordered to proclaim a cessation of hostilities and to disband the army. The final treaty was signed at Paris, September 3, 1783, and the last British troops on our soil sailed from New York on the 25th of November.

Final
 Events
 of the
 War

The lofty patriotism of Washington never shone with more splendor than in the closing days of the great struggle for independence. The country was in a deplorable condition. Commerce, trade, manufactures, and almost all kinds of business were paralyzed and all but ruined. The soldiers, believing that they were about to be disbanded and sent in many instances to desolated homes without pay, were on the verge of open revolt. They petitioned Congress, but the treasury was empty. They turned to Washington and invited him to become king, believing that in a monarchy lay their chief hope. He, however, spurned the offer. "If I am not deceived," said he, "in the knowledge of myself, you could not have found a person to whom your schemes could be more disagreeable." He begged them not to stain their splendid services by any rash proceeding. His great influence prevailed both with the army and with Congress, and the trouble was at length adjusted.

Wash-
 ington's
 Patriot-
 ism

Washington bade farewell to his army in a touching address and set out for his home at Mount Vernon. Stopping at Annapolis, he on the 23d of December resigned his commission to Congress.



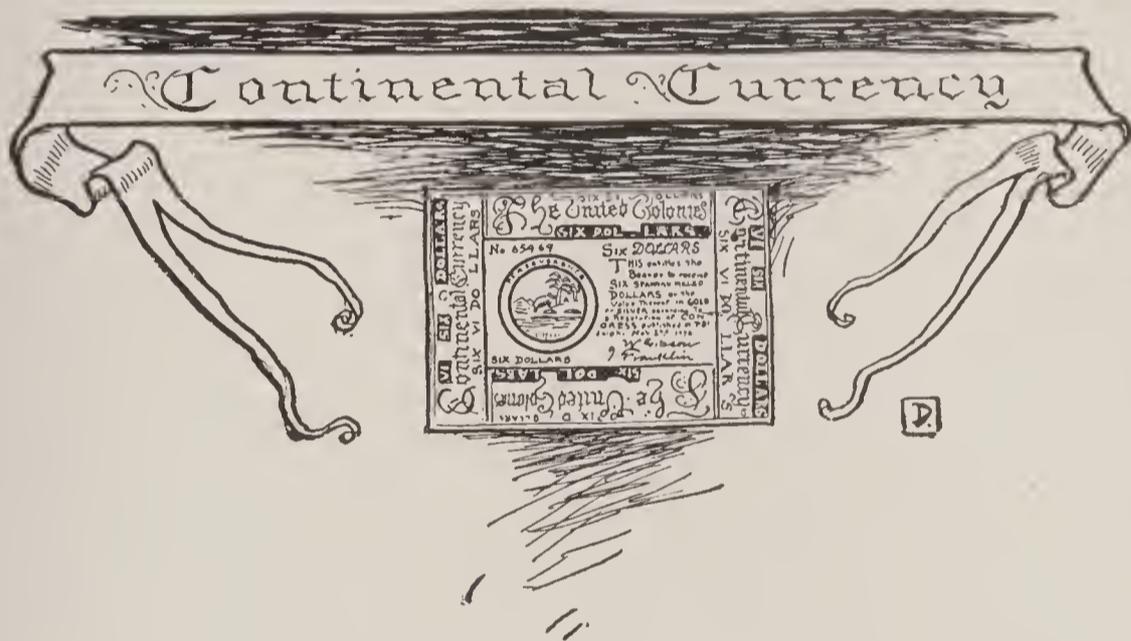
W. H. S. 1812

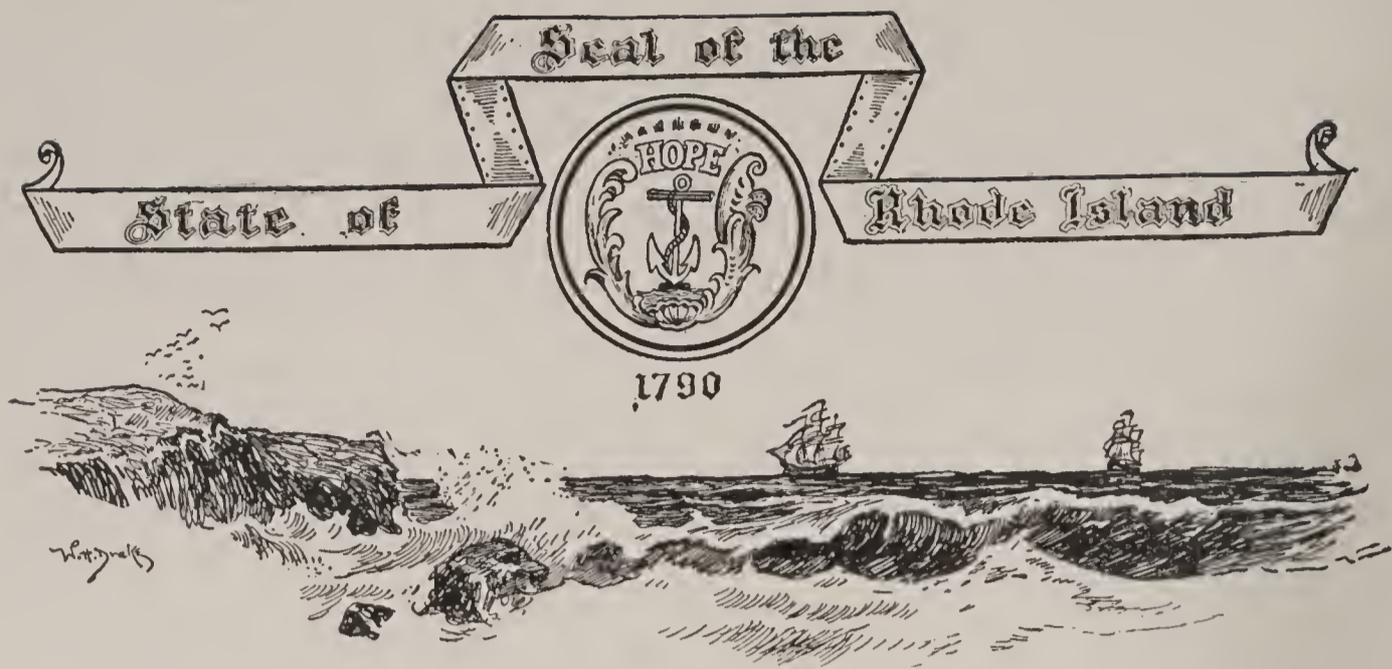
THE "CONSTITUTION" AND THE "GUERRIERE"

“ You retire from the theatre of action,” said the president of Congress, upon receiving the commission, “ with the blessings of your fellow-citizens ; but the glory of your virtues will not terminate with your military command ; it will continue to animate remotest ages.”

37

PERIOD III
ENGLAND
AND FRANCE
IN
AMERICA
1758
TO
1783





PERIOD IV—THE REPUBLIC AND THE CONSTITUTION

CHAPTER XXXVIII

FORMATION OF THE CONSTITUTION

[*Authorities*: With the cessation of hostilities came the return of peace, happily typified by the withdrawal of Washington into the private life of a citizen at Mount Vernon. The country's annals now pass from the militant into the political and administrative stage, with the adoption of a federal constitution and the organization of a national administration. When the Articles of Confederation were at length agreed to, a federal convention arranged the details of the new government, while the people's choice fell upon Washington as its first head. When this had been done, the league of States became *de facto* a nation, which now set out on its onward beneficent course. A brief outline of the chief features and provisions of the Constitution, administrative, legislative, and judicial, is supplied in the present chapter. The more important of the many authorities on the charter and institutions of the nation and the individual States are as follows: Vol. I. Bryce's "American Commonwealth," Story's "Commentaries," Von Holst's "Constitutional History," Bancroft's "History of the Constitution," Curtis' "Constitutional History of the United States," and Fiske's "Critical Period of American History," together with the lives of the American statesmen who figured in the early political and diplomatic history of the nation.]



THE United States had gained its independence and a place among the nations. A career of wonderful growth and prosperity was before it; but the close of the struggle left the several States in a woful condition. They were exhausted by the sacrifices, the fightings, the hardships, the sufferings and the tremendous drain upon their resources. They seemed like a young giant brought to the verge of death by illness, but with enough vitality left to give hope of convalescence and renewed strength. In the constructive work of consolidating the young nation, a greater task than the Revolution now confronted the statesmen and patriots of the country. The Con-

tinental Congress had managed affairs during the war. The body had little power, however, beyond that of advising the States. The struggle for existence held the thirteen colonies together during those stormy days, but when independence was secured, it soon became evident that the Union was a "rope of sand." The various States had formed local constitutions of their own; when they chose they obeyed the national government, and when they did not choose to do so—which was generally the case—they paid no heed to Congress.*

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Deplorable
 Condition
 of the
 States

The Articles of Confederation were agreed upon by Congress in 1777. They attempted to define the powers that were to be given to the federal authority, so as to check the encroachments of the States. The Articles could not be effective until adopted by all the States. Within the following two years, twelve accepted them, but Maryland would not give her consent until near the close of the war, or, more specifically, March 1, 1781. This long delay was caused by the disputes over the boundaries of the States. The western boundaries of New Hampshire, Rhode Island, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, and Maryland, had been fixed by the King of England, and they, therefore, had no claim to extend further westward. New York insisted that she had no western boundary, though she was willing that it should be made as it is to-day. Massachusetts, Connecticut, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia were supposed originally to reach to the Pacific. The transfer of Louisiana to Spain in 1763, interposed the Mississippi as the western boundary, to which line they asserted their territory extended.†

* As a proof of the straits to which the colonies were reduced during the Revolution, the different locations of the national capital may be given. It was in Philadelphia from September 5, 1774, until December, 1776; at Baltimore from December 20, 1776, to March, 1777; at Philadelphia from March 4, 1777, to September, 1777; at Lancaster, Pa., from September 27, 1777, to September 30, 1777; at York, Pa, from September 30th, 1777, to July, 1778; at Philadelphia from July 2, 1778, to June 30, 1783; at Princeton, N. J., from June 30, 1783, to November 20, 1783; at Annapolis, Md., from November, 1783, to November, 1784; Trenton, N. J., from November, 1784, to January, 1785; New York from January 11, 1785, to 1790, when the seat of Government was changed to Philadelphia, where it remained until 1800, since which time it has been at Washington.

† The following facts will help to give a realistic idea of the times at the close of the Revolution.

Every gentleman wore a queue and powdered his hair.

Imprisonment for debt was a common practice.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

The
 Boundary Dis-
 putes

If the reader will look at the map he will see that all the States claiming the Mississippi as their western limit were bounded north and south, by parallel lines, Virginia being the only exception. She set up a remarkable claim, which was that her northern boundary ran northwest, so that it widened out like a fan in the direction of the Pacific, and included all the present States of Kentucky, Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Wisconsin, and Michigan, and overlapped the claims of Massachusetts and Connecticut. The States whose western boundaries had been fixed naturally opposed these extravagant claims. They argued that the king, by forbidding the sale of lands west of the Alleghanies, made those mountains the western boundaries for the other colonies, and, since the thirteen States had won this territory together from England they ought to share it among them. General confusion was the result. Some States sold lands in the West to which other States laid claim, while those who had no ownership in them denounced the whole thing as wrong. Maryland would not agree to the Articles of Confederation until she received pledges that these western claims should be abandoned.

Sur-
 render of
 Alleged
 Rights
 by States

Now followed a general surrender of the alleged rights. New York yielded hers in 1780, Virginia in 1784, Massachusetts in 1785, Connecticut in 1786, South Carolina in 1787, North Carolina in

There was not a public library in the United States.

Almost all the furniture was imported from England.

An old copper mine in Connecticut was used as a prison.

There was only one hat factory, and that made cocked hats.

A day laborer considered himself well paid with two shillings a day.

Crockery plates were objected to because they dulled the knives.

A man who jeered at the preacher or criticised the sermon was fined.

Virginia contained a fifth of the whole population of the country.

A gentleman bowing to a lady always scraped his foot on the ground.

Two stage-coaches bore all the travel between New York and Boston.

The whipping-post and pillory were still standing in Boston and New York.

Beef, pork, salt fish, potatoes, and hominy were the staple diet all the year round.

Buttons were scarce and expensive, and the trousers were fastened with pegs or laces.

There were no manufactures in this country, and every housewife raised her own flax and made her own linen.

The church collection was taken in a bag at the end of a pole, with a bell attached to rouse sleepy contributors.

Leather breeches, a checked shirt, a red flannel jacket, and a cocked hat formed the dress of an artisan.

When a man had enough tea he placed his spoon across his cup to indicate that he wanted no more.

A new arrival in a jail was set upon by his fellow-prisoners and robbed of everything he had.

1790, and Georgia in 1802. The western boundaries were thus fixed as they are to-day. Connecticut, however, retained a large tract in Northeastern Ohio, which is still known as the Western Reserve. Massachusetts insisted upon her right to a portion of New York, which in time bought off the claim. Connecticut also clung to the Wyoming settlement in Pennsylvania, but finally gave it up.

The Articles of Confederation needed but a trial to prove their worthlessness. Congress, the one governing body, had no power to

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829



SHAYS' INSURRECTION

lay taxes, regulate commerce, or punish crime. The stronger States passed laws which injured the weaker ones, and there was as yet no way to stop the aggression. Great Britain, moreover, still oppressed our commerce, and Congress was powerless to take or secure united action to restrain her. Every one saw that something must be done, for matters were rapidly growing worse; but there was no agreement upon the proper remedy. There was talk of forming several confederacies. The people of western North Carolina, in Au-

Threatened
 Anarchy

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Domes-
 tic
 Disturb-
 ances

gust, 1784, declared themselves independent of North Carolina. They adopted a constitution, in November, 1785, and formed themselves into the State of Franklin, or Frankland, with John Sevier as governor. North Carolina ordered the officers to disband. Seven counties were in operation, and they refused to dissolve. Two governments existed in each county, and every man was allowed to select the government to which he would pay taxes. Thus two opposing governments ran side by side, manifestly a most extraordinary state of affairs. In 1788, however, the State of Franklin went out of existence and was absorbed by North Carolina.

Meanwhile, the Wyoming settlers revolted against Pennsylvania; a convention in Portland, Me., debated the question of making that State independent; and the legislature of New Hampshire was surrounded by an armed mob, who insisted that no taxes whatever should be collected. Everybody was poor and lacked the money to pay taxes. Daniel Shays, formerly a captain in the Continental army, at the head of two thousand men in Massachusetts, demanded the remission of all taxation, with the issue of a large amount of paper money. Congress was obliged to send four thousand troops, under General Lincoln, to disperse the mob. The country was drifting fast into anarchy, and these ominous events proved that the only way to avert destruction was by the formation of a strong central government. Earnest discussions were held in the library at Mount Vernon, by Washington, Hamilton, and other statesmen. Finally Washington, following the suggestion made by Hamilton several years before, proposed a convention of the States to form a plan for a union in commercial matters, over which Congress had no control. The request from such a source could not be slighted, and a convention of the States was called at Annapolis. When the deputies met, on the 11th of September, 1786, the only States represented were New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, and Virginia. These being a minority of the whole, a resolution was passed recommending a meeting at Philadelphia in the following May. The proceedings were reported to Congress, which urged the holding of such a convention as the one named. All the States responded, except Rhode Island, which remained out of the Union until 1790.

The
 Germ of
 Stable
 Govern-
 ment

The convention which met in Independence Hall, in May, 1787, included some of the ablest men in the country, among whom were



UPPER WALL STREET, NEW YORK, IN 1783

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY J. STEEPLE DAVIS

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Agreement
 upon the
 Constitution

Washington, James Madison, Benjamin Franklin, Alexander Hamilton, Benjamin West, Edmund Randolph, Robert Morris, and Gouverneur Morris. Washington was chosen as the presiding officer. Week after week, until four months had gone by, did these men argue, discuss, agree and disagree, sometimes being on the point of irruption, while the Constitution was gradually moulded into shape. The small States, which at that time were New York, New Hampshire, New Jersey, Delaware, and Maryland, were very jealous of the larger ones, from whom they feared oppression, through their preponderating power over legislation in the new government. This was guarded against by giving each State in the Union two members of the United States Senate, while the number of members of the House of Representatives was to be based upon the population of the respective States. The Southern States wished to continue the slave trade, and the abhorred traffic was permitted for twenty years. Finally, on September 17, 1787, the convention agreed upon the Constitution of the United States and adjourned.

The Constitution was to go into effect when ratified by nine of the States. It provided a central government, which could not only advise but act. It consisted of three departments: the legislative, or Congress, which makes the laws; the executive, consisting of the president and his officers, to enforce the laws made by Congress, and the judicial, consisting of the Federal courts, which decides whether the laws passed are in agreement with the Constitution.

Principal
 Provisions
 of the
 Constitution

The legislative department, or law-making power, is Congress, composed of two branches, the Senate and House of Representatives. As has already been said, each State is entitled to two members of the Senate, who serve for six years. The Representatives serve for two years, and are chosen according to the population of a State, thus guaranteeing every member of the Union against oppressive legislation from the more populous States, and giving at the same time to each a recognition of its population. Congress imposes taxes, borrows money, regulates commerce, coins money, declares war, raises and supports armies and navies, establishes post-offices, and employs the army to suppress insurrections. None of the States can do these things, except to levy its own local taxes, borrow its own money, and use its own militia. The united majority of each branch is sufficient to pass a law; but if the President should veto a bill within ten days after its passage, it requires

a two-thirds vote of each house to make it a law. All treaties made by the President must have the assent of two-thirds of the members of the Senate before they can go into effect.

The President, with some checks on the part of the Senate, chooses the executive officers. We must bear in mind that no man votes directly for the President and Vice-President. Each State chooses as many electors as it has Senators and Representatives together, and a majority of these select the President and Vice-President. At first each elector named two persons, and the highest two names on the list became President and Vice-President. There was so protracted a struggle in 1804, that a change was made, so that each elector now votes for one name for President, and one for Vice-President. Electors have the right to vote for whom they choose, but it would be dishonorable for an elector to vote for any one not nominated by his party, and no one, with a single exception hereinafter explained, has ever done so. The reader will observe the advantage of this method. If the highest two officers were chosen by popular vote, some populous State might give a fraudulent majority of hundreds of thousands, and perhaps decide the election in all the other States where the vote is close. Thus one State could cheat more than forty others; but, as provided by the Constitution, such dishonesty would affect only the single State in which it was perpetrated.

The President is chosen for four years and is commander-in-chief of the army and navy, and appoints most of the officers, which appointments, as a rule, must be agreed to by the Senate before they are valid. If the President misbehaves, he may be impeached, that is accused, by the House of Representatives, and tried by the Senate, sitting as a Court. If convicted and removed, or if he should die or resign, or become unable to perform the duties of his office, the Vice-President succeeds him. By subsequent amendments to the Constitution, the order of succession to the Presidency runs through the Vice-President, Secretaries of State, Treasury, and War, the Attorney-General, the Postmaster-General, and the Secretaries of the Navy, Interior, and Agriculture.

The Supreme Court, together with such inferior courts as Congress may establish, constitutes the Judiciary Department. The judges are appointed for life by the President and Senate. If there is doubt as to the constitutionality of a law, it is interpreted by one

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

**How Our
 President is
 Elected
 and His
 Powers**

**The
 Supreme
 Court**

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

of the inferior courts, and if this is not satisfactory, it is carried by appeal to the Supreme Court, which decision is final, there being no recourse beyond that tribunal.

Since slavery existed for a long time after the adoption of the Constitution, it was provided that three-fifths of the slaves should be counted in calculating the population for Representatives. Slaves who fled from one State into another could be followed and arrested wherever found. The territory of the United States was to be governed by Congress, which body was to admit new States as they were organized. Each State was to be guaranteed a republican form of government, and it is within the power of three-fourths of the States, or two-thirds of both houses of the national legislature, to amend the Constitution.

Supremacy of
 the Constitution

The Constitution is the supreme law of the land. It gives us one of the most beneficent forms of government ever designed by the wisdom of man. Every one should study its provisions with the utmost care. As amendments have become necessary, they have been adopted, but the Constitution stands substantially as it came from the master-hands of those who first gave it form and substance, and under which we have since become the greatest of nations.

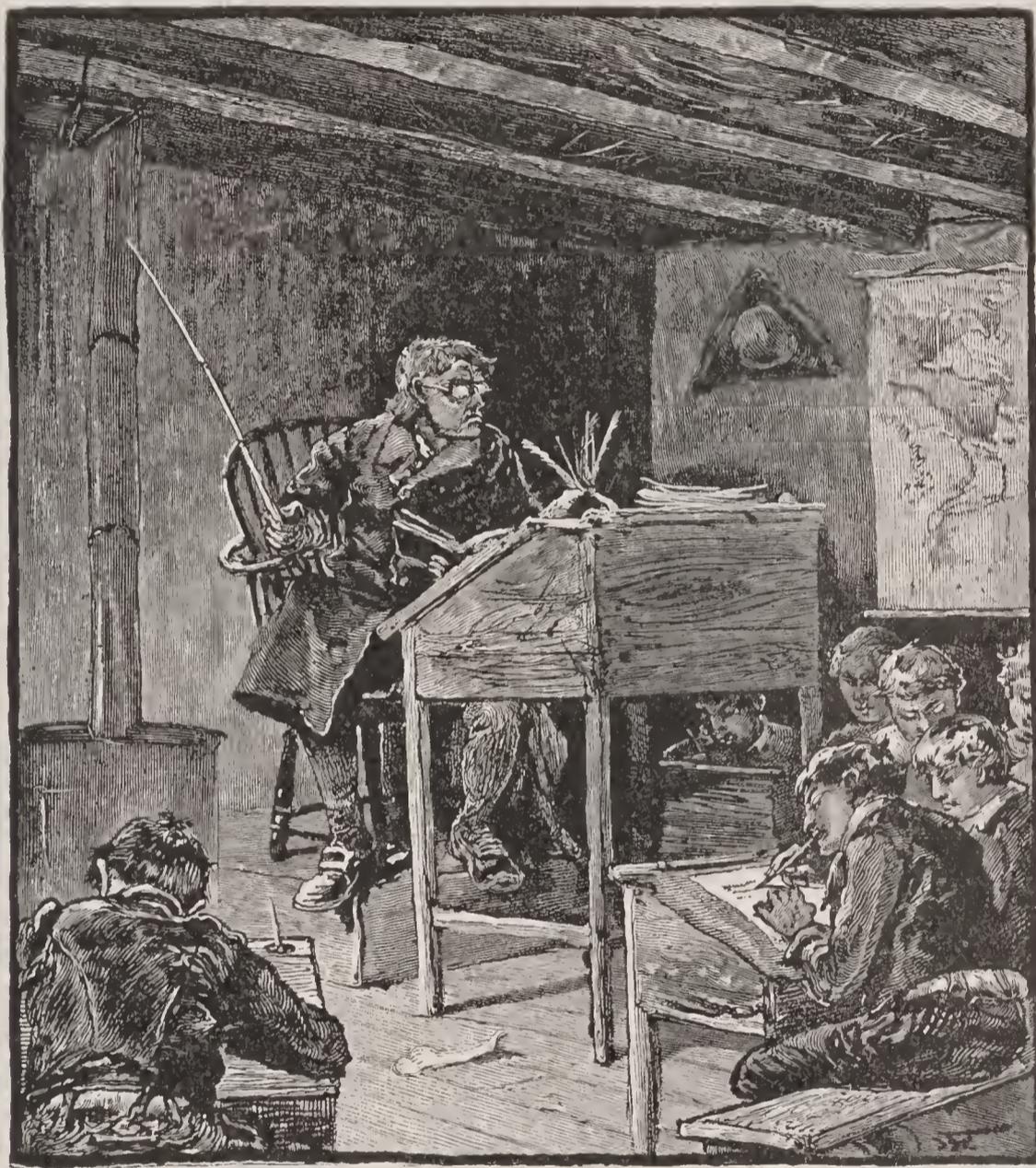
The New
 Government

There was at first strong opposition to the Constitution. Those who favored it were called "Federalists." They wished to increase the powers of the national government and make it respected and feared at home and abroad. The "anti-Federalists" took the opposite ground. They were jealous of Congress, and feared that, if so much power was given to the central government, a monarchy by and by would be established. Nevertheless, the Constitution was so eminently wise and beneficial, that it was adopted by nine States, followed soon after by Virginia and New York. North Carolina ratified it in 1789, and Rhode Island, the last to give adhesion, in 1790. As soon as the ninth State had taken this action, the Congress of the Confederation named March 4, 1789, as the date on which the new government should go into operation. New York was selected as the meeting-place, and a day was fixed on which the people were to choose electors and a subsequent day was appointed when those electors should meet in their States and vote for President and Vice-President. This was done, the elections being held in each of the eleven States which had ratified the Constitution, with the exception of New York, whose legislature had made no provision for

the election. Sixty-nine electoral votes were cast, of which Washington received every one. His is the only instance in which the President has been chosen by a unanimous vote. The second largest vote, in the first Presidential election, was thirty-four, which was cast for John Adams, who, in accordance with the law then prevailing, became Vice-President.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

It must be remembered that the Congress of the Confederation



A COLONIAL SCHOOL-ROOM

was in session in New York while the Philadelphia convention was framing the Constitution. During this period, Congress organized a territorial government for the immense region northwest of the Ohio. An ordinance for its admission as the Northwest Territory was reported by a committee of Congress July 11, 1787. Among the provisions were the exclusion of slavery, the guarantee of religious freedom, trial by jury, and equal political rights. The Territory was

Organi-
 zation of
 the
 North-
 west
 Terri-
 tory

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Our
 Country
 in 1789

to be governed by persons appointed by Congress, though when the population sufficiently increased it was to be formed into five States, which should be admitted into the Union with all the rights of the original States. This was the law under which Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin became States.

It will be interesting to glance at our country as it was when the national government came into existence. The total population, not counting Indians, was 3,929,827, of whom 757,365 were of African descent. To-day the single State of New York contains more people than were in the whole country, including the Indians, at the close of the Revolution. There was not a city with 25,000 population, the largest being Boston, New York, Philadelphia, and Charleston. Here and there in these cities you would find roomy, comfortable mansions, but with few of the conveniences that are in the most humble of dwellings to-day. The streets were poorly paved and lighted, and never clean. Water was brought from the town-pump or well, gas was unknown, and the flint and steel were used when a fire was needed. No one had, as yet dreamed of the railway, though crude attempts had been made at steam navigation. As for lucifer matches, sewing-machines, railroads, steam printing-presses, gas, electric lighting, and scores of other conveniences, there are those living to-day who can remember when they first came into use.

“Old
 Times”

In the olden times, a man who owed money and was unable to pay it, could be arrested, thrown into prison, and kept there while his wife and children suffered. Robert Morris at one time was the wealthiest man in America. He was one of the prominent signers of the Declaration of Independence, a member of Congress, and one of the ablest men in the country. In 1777, the Revolution would have come to a standstill, unless \$50,000 in gold was provided for paying the starving men, whose terms of enlistment had expired. Morris raised the sum on his own personal security, and secured other amounts as badly needed as the first. But for him the War of Independence might have failed; and yet, later on, dire were his own necessities. This same patriot, when he had become an old man, was thrown into prison for debt and kept there as long as the law permitted. “I have no money to buy bread for my family,” he wrote to a friend, but he retained his cheerful, hopeful disposition to the last, dying a few years later in a humble home in Philadelphia. To-day most of our population is in cities, but at that time people

generally lived on farms. About everything used by the farmer and his family, even their clothing, was produced from his land. Rural life was harder in New England than anywhere else, for crops were raised more easily in the Middle and Southern States and more readily sold. Newspapers were few, and so were amusements. Life was made up almost wholly of labor and rest.

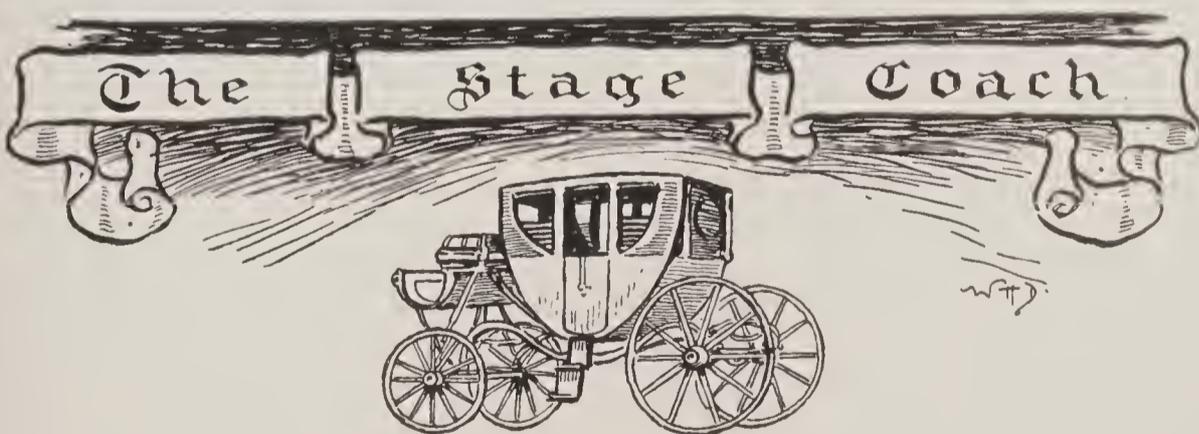
We can now make the journey from New York to Philadelphia in two hours. A hundred years ago, it required two days. Sailing-vessels served along the coast, while in the interior it was by stage, on horseback or on foot. Often contrary winds kept the traveller two weeks on the voyage between New York and Albany. A man who had crossed the ocean was an object of wondering curiosity on the streets. The settlements were then mainly confined to the coast. New York was an Indian hunting-ground beyond Schenectady, and the whole country between the Alleghanies and the Mississippi, except a few settlements in Kentucky and Tennessee, was a wilderness.

The schools had improved only a little over those of Colonial times. The teacher was generally a harsh man, whose chief work lay in enforcing order by means of the "gad," which was always lying within reach on his desk. The books were few and poor, the benches were uncomfortable, and the rooms badly heated in winter. Yet boys and girls cheerfully trudged miles through the deep snow or trying heat, and from their ranks have risen those who have helped to make the people instructed, our homes happy, and our country great.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

The
 Methods
 of
 Travel

The
 Schools



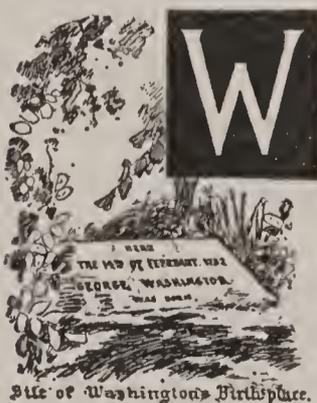


Fort George.

CHAPTER XXXIX

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION—FIRST TERM, 1789-1793

[*Authorities* : Elevated by his work and worth to the highest honor of the country which owed its existence to his sword, Washington, after the inauguration ceremonies, modestly assumed the functions of his high office and entered upon his administrative duties. The ovations received by the first President on his triumphal progress to the seat of Government were in sharp contrast with the uncheered marchings of the weary soldier during the long and darkened years of the war. As the former days, with the trials that beset them, were recalled, well might Washington exclaim : " Let those follow the pursuits of ambition and fame who have a keener relish for them ; they have no fascinating allurements for me!" When the country had to be served, as he best could serve it, there was no holding back, however, nor any slackness in the spirit or chill in the devotion of the country's hero as he addressed himself to the labor of his new tasks. Fortunate was the nation in having as the first administrator of its affairs one who so signally affixed upon them the impress of his own high and sterling character. The authorities for the period are, notably, the Lives of Washington by Sparks, Marshall, and Irving. See, also, the constitutional histories already referred to ; Lodge's " Alexander Hamilton " (American Statesmen Series); and McMasters' " History of the People of the United States."]



Site of Washington's Birthplace.

WHY is the name of George Washington honored above all others in America, and revered throughout the civilized world? There is no character that shines with greater lustre in the pages of history, and it will remain undimmed through the ages to come. And yet Washington never won a battle; he was not an orator; he had only a fair education; and, since his death, there have been many equally skilled in statecraft; but no nation or country has ever produced his equal. Some patriots have approached him in many of his high

qualities, but not in all. He was truthful, high-minded, an affectionate son, charitable, the soul of honor, and a religious man, but so

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829



GEORGE WASHINGTON

have been and so are thousands of others. But he was more than all these.

It is rare in history that the life of a great nation depends upon one man. No name towers above the others in our second war with

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUB-
 LIC AND
 THE CONSTI-
 TUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Wash-
 ington
 the
 Indis-
 pensable
 Man

Great Britain, and had all the leaders in the terrific years from 1861 to 1865 never been born, the cause of the Union would have triumphed just the same; but, had Washington been slain at Trenton or at Princeton or at Germantown, the Revolution would have ended then and there, for no man then lived in our country who was fitted to take his place and perform his stupendous work. He was appointed of heaven, and so, though exposed many a time to peril, he was never wounded, but lived until his task was finished and then lay down on his bed and peacefully died at Mount Vernon. When the sad news was borne across the ocean, Napoleon Bonaparte, the most wonderful military genius of all time, declared that no greater man had ever lived, and the flags of the British fleet, under Lord Bridport, were half-masted for the one person that had wrested the American colonies from Great Britain.

His
 Charac-
 ter

When Washington drew his sword, in 1775, serving to the close without pay, he saw the end from the beginning. He knew his country would conquer, and no discouragement, no disaster, no treachery, no envy and plotting, could shake his exalted faith or cause him to falter in the work to which he had dedicated his life, his energies, his soul, his all. A man of wealth and possessing large estate, he did not visit his home, that was meanwhile falling into ruin, for more than six years, fearing that it might imperil the cause of liberty for him to leave his post for even a brief season. He could be stern and shoot the soldiers who repeated the attempt to revolt at Morristown, and he could hang, while he pitied, Major André, because the good of his country demanded it. He could ride through the blinding sleet in the storm and darkness to Trenton and direct the cannon that played upon the affrighted Hessians, and then visit with tearful sympathy the bedside of the dying Rall, who begged him, without need therefor, to show consideration to his captured soldiers. Gaunt and hungry with his shivering troops at Valley Forge, he stole off into the wintry woods, and, kneeling on the snow, poured out his soul in supplication to heaven. He was terrible in his wrath, as when he ordered the traitor Lee to the rear at Monmouth. He was great enough to spurn the crown offered him by his soldiers, and when President he gathered the ablest men around him, caring naught whether they were friends or enemies, so that they were patriots. He stayed the madness of the hour when his country would have rushed pell-mell to the help of France in the throes of her agony.

The soldier had become the statesman, and no man ever combined the two in so eminent a degree as he.

Washington was the loftiest type of the patriot, rising like a mountain peak above the mists into the clear sunlight, where the shafts of malice, of envyings, of plots, and misgivings, could not reach or fret him. He saw and knew but one thing,—the good of his country. The Ship of State needed a master-hand to steer it clear of the rocks, the shoals, and the whirlpools, and to save it from wreck, and he alone was able to do it. When the ship reached smooth water, he resigned the helm to others, for not until then did he deem it safe to do so.

The inauguration of Washington, as President of the United States, was the only one ever held in the city of New York, and it took place not on the fourth or fifth of March, as has since been the custom. The government was slow in getting into operation, there being no quorum in the Senate until the 6th of April, and the votes of the Presidential electors could not be counted and declared until a quorum was obtained. It then required eight days to take the news to Washington, at Mount Vernon. The distance was measured by the best means of conveyance, the pony-express, carrying the United States mail.

It may be said that the inauguration ceremonies of Washington began with his departure from Mount Vernon, and ended with his taking the oath of office in New York. He spent two days in making his preparations and started on April 16th. His aged mother was still living and loaned him £600 to pay his expenses. The great, massive man, magnificent in stature and strength, took the fragile parent in his arms, pressed her to his heart, kissed her good-by, and never saw her again on earth. Must not those dim eyes have lit up with love and gratitude as she realized the happiness of being the mother of such a son? Leaving her at Fredericksburg, Washington dined with his friends and admirers the next day at Alexandria. He was received at Georgetown the same afternoon with a great ovation, and the popular enthusiasm followed him every step of the way to the metropolis. At Chester he left his family-carriage, and, mounted upon a superb white horse, rode into Philadelphia, where it seemed as if every man, woman, and child, had gathered to do him homage. As he passed under one of the many arches erected for the occasion, a young girl placed a laurel wreath upon his brow. The city was

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

The
 Inauguration of
 Washington

The
 Journey from
 Mount
 Vernon

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

brilliant with bunting, the houses were decorated, the bells clanged, and a Spanish frigate in the river fired a salute. At the old City Tavern, on Second and Chestnut streets, a banquet was served and a grand reception given to the President-elect. The arch under which Washington passed at Trenton, while little girls dressed in white strewed his path with flowers and sang an ode, is still preserved as one of the precious heirlooms of the Revolution. At Elizabeth-



WASHINGTON AT TRENTON

Arrival
 in New
 York

port, he went on board the great barge which bore him to New York. This boat was one of the most perfect specimens of the shipbuilder's skill and was manned by thirteen masters of ships, representing the thirteen original Colonies. The joint-committee appointed by Congress to receive the President were on board. As the barge approached the city, it was surrounded and accompanied by many other boats, one of which sailed alongside, while a number of men sang an original ode, set to the music of "God Save the King." Washing-

ton was so deeply affected by these demonstrations that it is said he wept.

Governor Clinton, with his staff and many of his officers in full uniform, met Washington at the ferry stairs. The streets were crowded with the cheering multitudes, and bunting and flags were fluttering everywhere. The mayor and other municipal officers, the foreign ambassadors, and others, escorted the party to the Franklin House, where the President-elect afterwards dined with Governor Clinton.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829



INAUGURATION OF WASHINGTON

Washington wore on the occasion military breeches and a buff waistcoat and a blue coat, with brass buttons, and was a splendid picture of American manhood. The same suit may be seen in the government museum at Washington to-day.

Since this was the first inauguration of a President, Congress anxiously discussed the forms which should be followed. One question which arose was as to how the President should be addressed. It was finally decided that he should receive the simple

The
 Forms to
 be Used

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

designation of "the President of the United States," and thus it has always been. The next problem was as to how he should be installed into office, the decision being that he should be sworn in on the balcony adjoining the Senate chamber, which was in the old Federal building, at the corner of Broad and Wall streets, now the site of the Sub-Treasury of the United States.

The
 First In-
 auguration

The 30th of April, the day appointed for the ceremony, was ushered in by the firing of a salute from Fort George, and the ringing of the church bells throughout the city. Religious services were held in all the churches. At twelve o'clock a procession was formed, and Washington, escorted by a troop of light dragoons and a legion of infantry, followed by committees of Congress and the heads of the departments in carriages, foreign ministers, and citizens, was driven to the place of inauguration. The small Federal building was crowded. While the Senate was debating whether it should rise or sit when the President-elect entered, the House of Representatives, headed by the Speaker, marched into the chamber. The question was not decided when Washington was announced by the joint-committee. As he appeared, every man rose to his feet and remained standing until the President-elect was seated, the chair being taken by John Adams, the Vice-President, who had been sworn into office some days before. Mr. Adams then announced to the joint body that George Washington, having been duly elected to the office of President of the United States, was now ready to take the oath of office prescribed by the Constitution. Washington was conducted to the balcony outside the Senate chamber. He was accompanied by John Adams, Governor Clinton, and Chancellor Livingston. The moment they appeared, they were greeted with tumultuous cheers, which Washington acknowledged by bowing very low, with his hand upon his heart. He wore a full dark-brown cloth suit, with white silk stockings, and silver-buckled shoes, all of American manufacture, and at his side hung a straight, plain, steel-hilted sword.

The
 Oath
 Admin-
 istered

The impressive scene is preserved in bronze on the great eastern door of the Senate wing of the Capitol at Washington. Chancellor Livingston administered the oath, and Washington, bending low over the sacred volume, kissed it reverently, and looking heavenward said with solemn emphasis, "I swear, so help me God!"* Turning

* This Bible was then and is now the property of the St. John's Lodge of Free Masons, of the City of New York.

towards the vast multitude, the chancellor waved his hand and cried, "Long live George Washington, President of the United States!" The crowd caught the cry and it rolled back and forth from the throats of a great concourse of people; a flag was run up on the cupola, the artillery thundered, and the bells rang joyfully. Then Washington returned to the Senate chamber and delivered his brief but memorable inaugural address. He lacked the graces of an orator and it is said he was confused and embarrassed. Of its delivery Senator William Maclay, from Pennsylvania, remarks that:

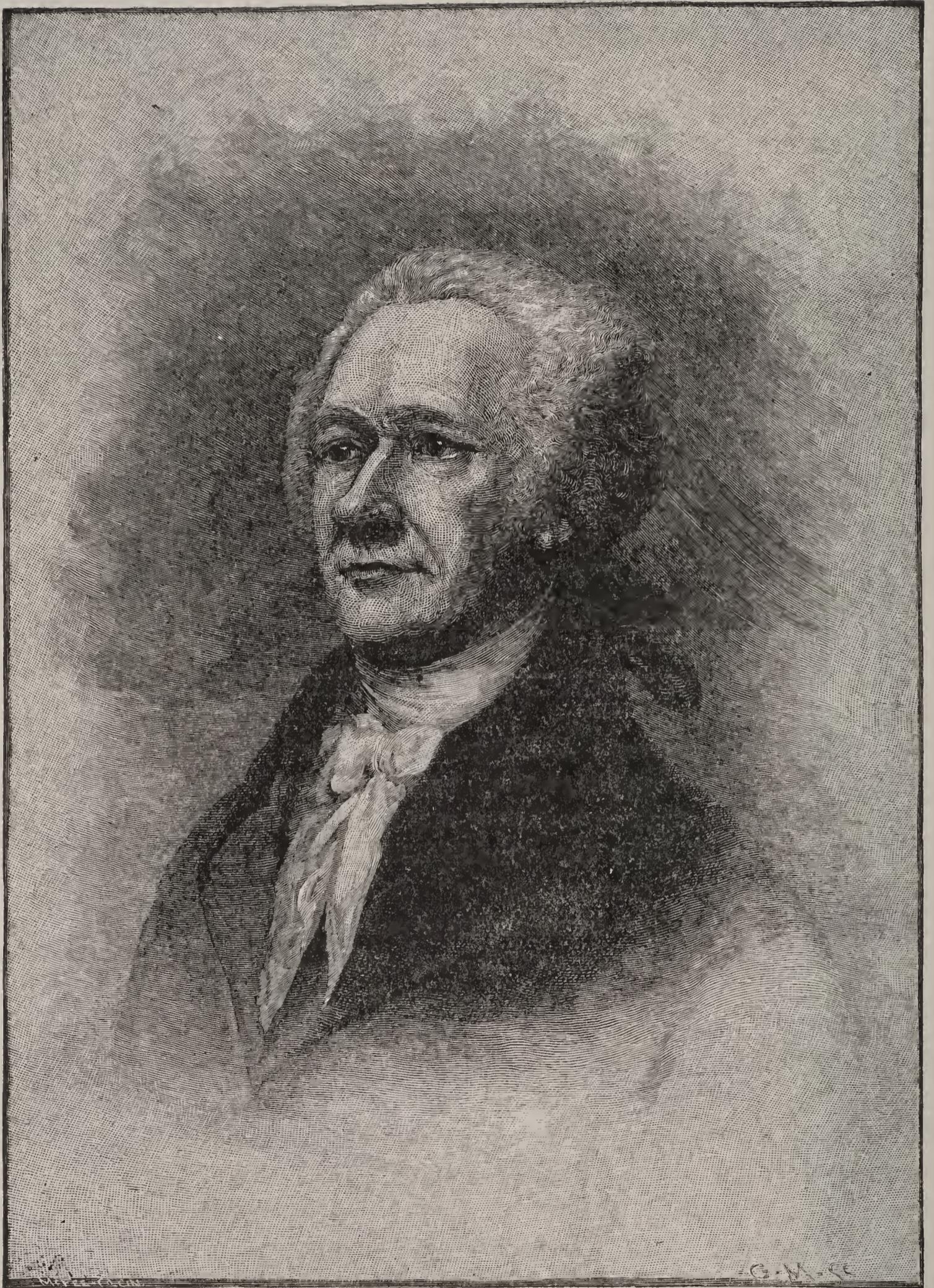
"This great man was agitated and embarrassed more than ever he was by the levelled cannon or pointed musket. He trembled and several times could scarce make out to read, though it must be supposed he had often read it before. He put the fingers of his left hand in his pocket, changing the paper to his right. After some time he did the same with the fingers of his right hand. When he came to the words 'all the world' he made a flourish with his right hand which left rather an ungainly impression. I sincerely, for my part, wished all set ceremony in the hands of the dancing-masters, and that this first of men had read his address in the plainest manner without taking his eyes from the paper, for I felt hurt when he was not first in everything."

From the Senate chamber, Washington went to St. Paul's Church, Broadway, where the chaplain of the Senate officiated. The crowd was so dense that a carriage could not move. Later in the day, he returned to the hotel, after the evening's fireworks, on foot. And so ended the auspicious ceremonies.

The President made his home at the Franklin House, in Cherry Street. Mrs. Washington received in great state every Friday evening between eight and nine o'clock. Quite often the President and Mrs. Washington went out driving in the forenoon. Washington, although thoroughly democratic in his principles, was fond of ceremony and insisted upon a proper recognition of his station. His state-coach was drawn by either four or six horses, with, usually, a pair of outriders in advance. The customary drive was by the Bowery to the Boston Post Road, as far as Harlem. Then it led across the island in a slanting course by what is now St. Nicholas Avenue, to about where 144th Street is. There was a steep road from the plains to the heights, connecting with the old Bloomingdale Road, by which the city was reached again along the drive down the west side.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

**Embarrassment
 of Wash-
 ington**



ALEXANDER HAMILTON

After a time Washington found the Franklin House, in Cherry Street, inconveniently far from the centre of the city. So he moved into the McComb mansion, on Broadway, below Trinity Church. In 1793, he left New York, and, so far as is known, never returned to it.

Now the wisest man that ever lived often needs counsel. Great as Washington was, he required advisers in his trying task, as have all of his successors. So he selected his Cabinet, as it is called, which consisted of five members: Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, Secretary of State; Alexander Hamilton, of New York, Secretary of the Treasury; Gen. Henry Knox, of Massachusetts, Secretary of War and Navy; Samuel Osgood, of Massachusetts, Postmaster-General; Edmund Randolph, of Virginia, Attorney-General. Two of the most important members, Jefferson and Hamilton, disagreed from the first, and their association as Washington's advisers became very trying to their chief. Hamilton, like Washington, was a Federalist, while Jefferson became the head of what at that time was the Republican, or strict Construction Party. Before long, Hamilton and Jefferson began lashing each other in the newspapers—a favorite method of quarrelling among our forefathers. Washington, who appreciated the great qualities of both men, strove to act the part of peacemaker with the usual result—that is, no result at all. Jefferson withdrew from the Cabinet at the end of the year 1793, and was succeeded by Edmund Randolph, who very speedily got himself into trouble.

Important negotiations were going on at that time between our country and France. The French Minister gave his government to understand that with a few thousand dollars at his disposal he could favorably influence American affairs. He said that the idea was suggested to him by Randolph. This despatch was intercepted by a British ship and sent to the British Minister in Philadelphia. Then Randolph resigned his office and published a "vindication." Some time after, the government made up an account of \$49,000 against Randolph, for moneys placed in his hands to meet the expenses of foreign intercourse. Being submitted to arbitrators, they decided against Randolph, who thereby lost his fortune.

Timothy Pickering, of Massachusetts, was transferred from the War Department to the Department of State, where he remained through the remainder of Washington's two terms of office and a portion of Adams'. Then trouble came again because of the public

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

The
 First
 Cabinet

Cabinet
 Changes

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

(and doubtless truthful) charges that the French Directory had demanded bribes of the American commissioners sent by the State Department. Hamilton took a leading part in this wrangle, though he was not a member of the Cabinet. As the best remedy, Adams dismissed his whole Cabinet. Henry Knox filled the duties of Secretary of War and Navy with marked ability for years. He was killed by swallowing a chicken-bone. James McHenry, of Maryland, who succeeded him, held the office during the remainder of Washington's term and was with Adams until dismissed, in 1800, because of his opposition to Adams' policy and his friendship for Hamilton. Osgood, the Postmaster-General, preferred to live in New York to retaining his office and living in Philadelphia. He therefore resigned when the seat of government was removed to the latter city. Pickering succeeded him temporarily, whose successor, Joseph Habersham, of Georgia, was Postmaster-General under Washington, Adams, and Jefferson, his term extending from February 15, 1795, until November 28, 1801, when he resigned to become president of a bank in Savannah.

Salaries
 of the
 Cabinet
 Officers

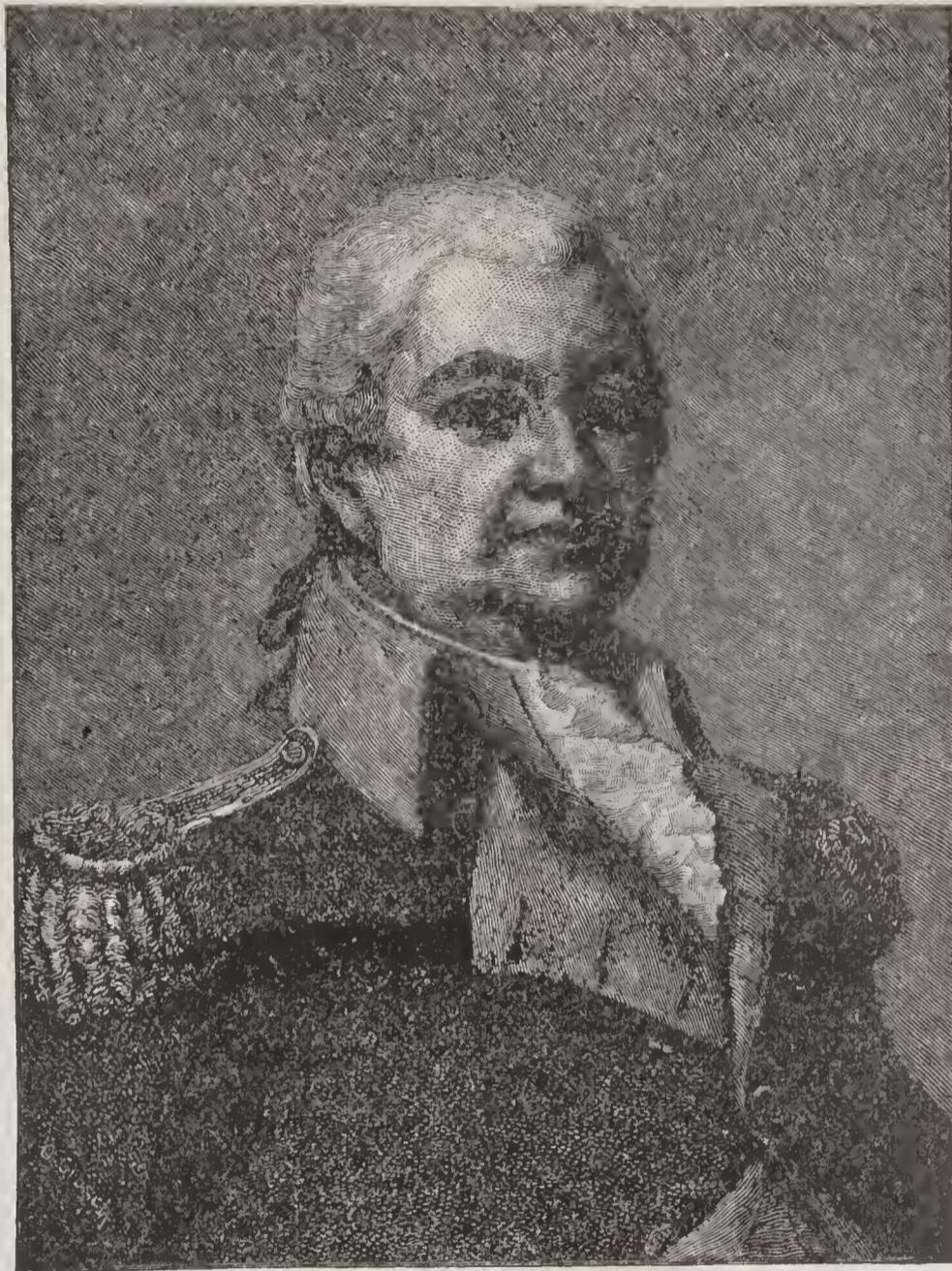
The salaries of the first Cabinet officers were less than half of what is paid to-day. The Secretary of State received \$3,500 per annum, and other members \$3,000 each. A good many years passed before the present figure—\$8,000—was fixed. A Secretary of the Navy was not appointed until 1798. Previous to that time, the naval department was under the charge of the Secretary of War, but when the government was organized, not a single vessel of the Continental navy remained, and the military establishment consisted of one regiment of foot, a battalion of artillery, and the militia of the various States. In 1829, during Jackson's administration, the Postmaster-General became a Cabinet officer, and the Secretary of Agriculture was added during the administration of President Benjamin Harrison, in 1889.

Serious
 Work to
 be done

The inauguration over, the new government addressed itself to the serious work before it. The most urgent need was the financial one, and fortunately the ablest financier of the country, Alexander Hamilton, was in charge of the important office. His scheme was submitted in writing to the House of Representatives, January 15, 1790. The foreign debt at that time, with accrued interest, amounted to nearly \$12,000,000, mostly due to France and private lenders in Holland. The domestic debt, including outstanding Continental

money, with interest thereon, exceeded \$42,000,000. Hamilton urged that the national government should assume the foreign and domestic debts as well as those contracted by the different States. Although his plan was opposed, it was finally accepted, and with slight changes continued to be the policy of the government for more than twenty years. The State debts thus assumed were as fol-

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829



GENERAL KNOX

lows: New Hampshire, \$300,000; Massachusetts, \$4,000,000; Rhode Island, \$200,000; Connecticut \$1,600,000; New York, \$1,200,000; New Jersey, \$800,000; Pennsylvania, \$2,200,000; Delaware, \$200,000; Maryland, \$800,000; Virginia, \$3,000,000; North Carolina, \$2,400,000; Georgia, \$300,000; South Carolina, \$4,000,000—a total of \$21,000,000.

The
 State
 Debts
 Assumed
 by the
 Govern-
 ment

Hamilton proposed to fund the debt, issuing new certificates, and,

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

in the warm discussions which followed, the lines were sharply drawn between the Federalists and the Anti-Federalists. At that time there were only three banks in the country—the Bank of New York, in New York; the Bank of North America, in Philadelphia; and the Bank of Massachusetts, in Boston, all of which were State institutions. Hamilton advocated the establishment of a bank, with a



ELI WHITNEY

The
 United
 States
 Bank

capital of \$10,000,000, the government being one-fifth owner of the stock and a preferred borrower to the same amount. This scheme, too, was strongly opposed, but it became a law in 1791, and the bank was chartered for twenty years. The subscriptions required that one-fourth of the stock should be paid in gold or silver coin, and the remainder in six per cent. certificates of the bank. Within a few hours the whole number of shares was subscribed. The bank went

into operation in February, 1794, and branches were established at different centres.

The means having been provided for funding the debt and borrowing money, the equally important work remained of providing a way to earn the interest. In his report to Congress, Hamilton recommended a protective tariff, but advised that the materials from which goods are manufactured should not be taxed, while such articles as competed with those made in this country should be prohibited. A bill embodying these features became a law, February 9, 1792, previous to which a law had been made which placed an import duty upon imported, and an excise duty upon domestic, spirits. A mint was also established in Philadelphia for the coining of money, and a postal system was adopted the same year.*

During the first session of Congress steps were also taken for the formation of a Federal judiciary. The bill which finally passed created a national judiciary, consisting of a Supreme Court having a chief-justice and five associate-justices, who were to hold two sessions annually at the seat of the Federal government. Circuit and district courts were given jurisdiction over certain cases. Each State was made a district, and the Territories of Maine and Kentucky were provided for in the same manner. The remaining Territories were grouped together in three circuits. In every civil case when the question in dispute involved a sum amounting to \$2,000, an appeal as to points of law was allowed from the lower courts to the Supreme

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

A Protective
 Tariff

The
 Federal
 Judiciary

* The earliest coinage in this country was minted at Boston in 1652. It consisted of shillings and of six and three cent pieces, and was in use for thirty-four years. From 1773 to 1787, the Congress of the Confederation claimed the sole right to regulate the alloy and value of the coin struck by the States. In June, 1785, Vermont granted to Reuben Harmon, Jr., the right to coin copper money for the State, and Connecticut did likewise in the following October. All these coins were made of copper. In June, 1786, New Jersey granted similar rights, and on October 17, 1786, Massachusetts established a mint and coined cents and half-cents. The earliest coins struck by the United States are known as "Fugios," because of one of the words on one side. The mint was established April 2, 1792, at Philadelphia, and all coinage previous to 1835 was minted there. By the act of March 3d, of that year, branch mints were established at Charlotte, N. C., Dahlonega, Ga., and New Orleans. A branch mint was established in San Francisco in 1852, at Denver 1862, and Carson, Nev., 1863. In 1873, the Denver and Charlotte mints were changed into assay offices. The coinage act of 1792 established the silver dollar as a unit. The coinage of silver dollars, though commenced in 1794, amounted, down to the year 1840, to but \$1,501,822, having been wholly suspended for thirty years, originally in 1806, by executive order. The silver dollars coined in 1804 were so few that they are now worth one thousand dollars apiece. The system of coinage adopted in 1785 was recommended by Jefferson.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Court. The President was to appoint a marshal for each district, whose powers were those of a sheriff. A district-attorney represented the interests of the government and was to act for the United States whenever necessary. The first chief-justice was John Jay, of New York, and Edmund Randolph, of Virginia, was appointed attorney-general. The associate-judges were: John Rutledge, of South Carolina; James Wilson, of Pennsylvania; William Cushing, of Massachusetts; Robert H. Harrison, of Maryland; and John Blair, of Virginia.

Vermont
 Admitted

Vermont, first known as the New Hampshire Grants, had disputed for years with New York over their respective boundaries, and the dispute was in existence when it was interrupted for a time by the breaking out of the Revolution. The people in 1777 declared themselves an independent State, and in 1781 Congress offered to admit it, but with such a curtailment of its area that the people refused. Finally, New York proposed to give up all claim to the territory on the payment by Vermont of \$30,000. This was agreed to, and March 4, 1791, Vermont was admitted as the fourteenth State of our Union. The leading facts in the early history of the "Green Mountain State" have been already given. Its name comes from its principal range of mountains, *verd*, green, and *mont*, mountain. The next State to be admitted was Kentucky, June 1, 1792. We have learned that it had been a part of Virginia, a citizen of which gave the first account of it in 1758. It was visited and settled by Daniel Boone, in 1769. Other settlers followed, and, in 1775, put up log-cabins and block-houses at Boonesborough and at Harrodsburg. Numerous and desperate fights with the Indians took place, and the territory in consequence gained the name of the "Dark and Bloody Ground." Louisville was founded in 1778, Lexington in 1779, and Maysville in 1784. The rich soil and fine climate of Kentucky early attracted settlers, and it rapidly increased in population. Virginia consented that it should become a separate State shortly before its admission to the Union. The origin of its name is uncertain.

Invention
 of the
 Cotton
 Gin

During Washington's first term, a law student named Eli Whitney, a native of Massachusetts, and a graduate of Yale College, was boarding at Savannah, Georgia, with the widow of Gen. Nathaniel Greene, who had died some years before from sunstroke. At that time there was little cotton raised in the South, for, though the soil and climate are highly favorable, it was very hard to separate the fibre

from the seed. A negro had to keep at work all day to clean a pound of cotton, at which rate there was no money to be made from its culture. Mrs. Greene asked Whitney to try to make a machine that would do this work. The young man, after much labor and difficulty, produced the "cotton-gin," the most important invention in its results which has ever been made in this country. The machine was completed in 1793, and wrought a revolution in the South. It did the work of more than a thousand men. Cotton quickly be-

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829



THE COTTON GIN

came a leading industry in that section, and added millions of dollars to the wealth of the inhabitants. Four-fifths of the cotton used in England comes from this country, which produces annually billions of pounds' weight of the useful product. It is claimed by many that but for the invention of the cotton gin (the word "gin" is a shortening of "engine"), there never would have been a civil war, since the South would not have been wealthy and strong enough to enter into the conflict.

The
 Great
 Work of
 the Cot-
 ton Gin

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Changes
 in the
 Seat of
 Govern-
 ment

The first national census was taken in 1791, the result of which has already been given. Just before Congress adjourned, in September, it requested the President to recommend a day of public thanksgiving and prayer, for the whole nation, in acknowledgment of the signal favor of the Almighty in permitting them to establish a free government. The President appointed Thursday, November 26, 1790. It was generally observed and was the first national religious holiday in our history. After discussion, it was decided that the permanent location of the seat of the national government should be at the head of water navigation on the Potomac River, within a territory ten miles square, lying on each side of the river, ceded by Maryland and Virginia, and named the District of Columbia, in honor of the discoverer of America. It was to become the seat of government at the end of ten years, during which period the capital should be Philadelphia, New York ceasing to have that honor after 1790.





CHAPTER XL

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION,—SECOND TERM, 1793—1797

[*Authorities* : To the troubles of Washington's administration, incident to the organization of the machinery of government and the settlement of financial questions, were added frontier disturbances with the Indians, and economical issues arising out of an unpopular excise law. More serious than these, however, were the complications of parties, which thus early began to vex the young Republic, and the embroilment with both France and England—the sequel in part of the French Revolution, and the bias of political factions in the United States in favor of one or other of the two belligerent nations. Despite these rufflings of the political waters of the country, the national bark continued to make headway, while the energies of the people awoke to new life. Three new States, meanwhile, were added to the Union, which reinvigorated its powers, and gave an impetus to the opening up of the country and to improved facilities of communication, quickened by the appliance of steam-power. The period closes with Washington's Farewell Address, and the election of a new President. To supplement the contents of this chapter, the reader is recommended to consult the authorities named at the head of the previous one, together with Lecky's and Green's *England*; and Schouler's "*History of the United States under the Constitution*"; and Pellew's "*John Jay*," in the "*American Statesmen*" Series.]



TWO distinct political parties assumed form during Washington's first term of office. They were the Federalists and the Republicans. Each desired good government; but the Federalists claimed that the right way to secure that boon was through the Federal government. The Republicans were equally convinced that the surest agency was that of the States. The Federalists wished to give the

The
Federalists
and
Republicans

Federal government as much, and the Republicans as little, power as possible. The Democrats of to-day are the successors of the Republicans of a hundred years ago. Hamilton and Knox were then the Federal leaders, while Jefferson and Randolph were the most promi-

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

nent Republicans. The Republicans were not strong enough in 1792 to contest the election for President, whose period of office had expired, and once more all the electors voted for Washington, while John Adams, also a Federalist, received the next largest vote and was re-elected Vice-President. Think of a President of the United States being twice chosen unanimously to the exalted office, and urged to accept it a third time! But did not Washington deserve the honor?

The second inauguration of Washington took place in Philadelphia, March 4, 1793. He was the same grand figure that stood before the



MARTHA WASHINGTON

two branches of Congress and took upon himself, for the second time, the vows of his high office. Congress was meantime sitting in Federal Hall, at the corner of Fifth and Chestnut streets. The occasion was made a general holiday, and the streets were crowded with happy people. Washington, at his second inauguration, wore a suit of black velvet, with black silk stockings, and diamond knee-buckles. His japanned shoes were clasped with large silver buckles. His hair was gathered in a black silk bag, powdered, as was the fashion of the day, and tied with a bow of black ribbon.

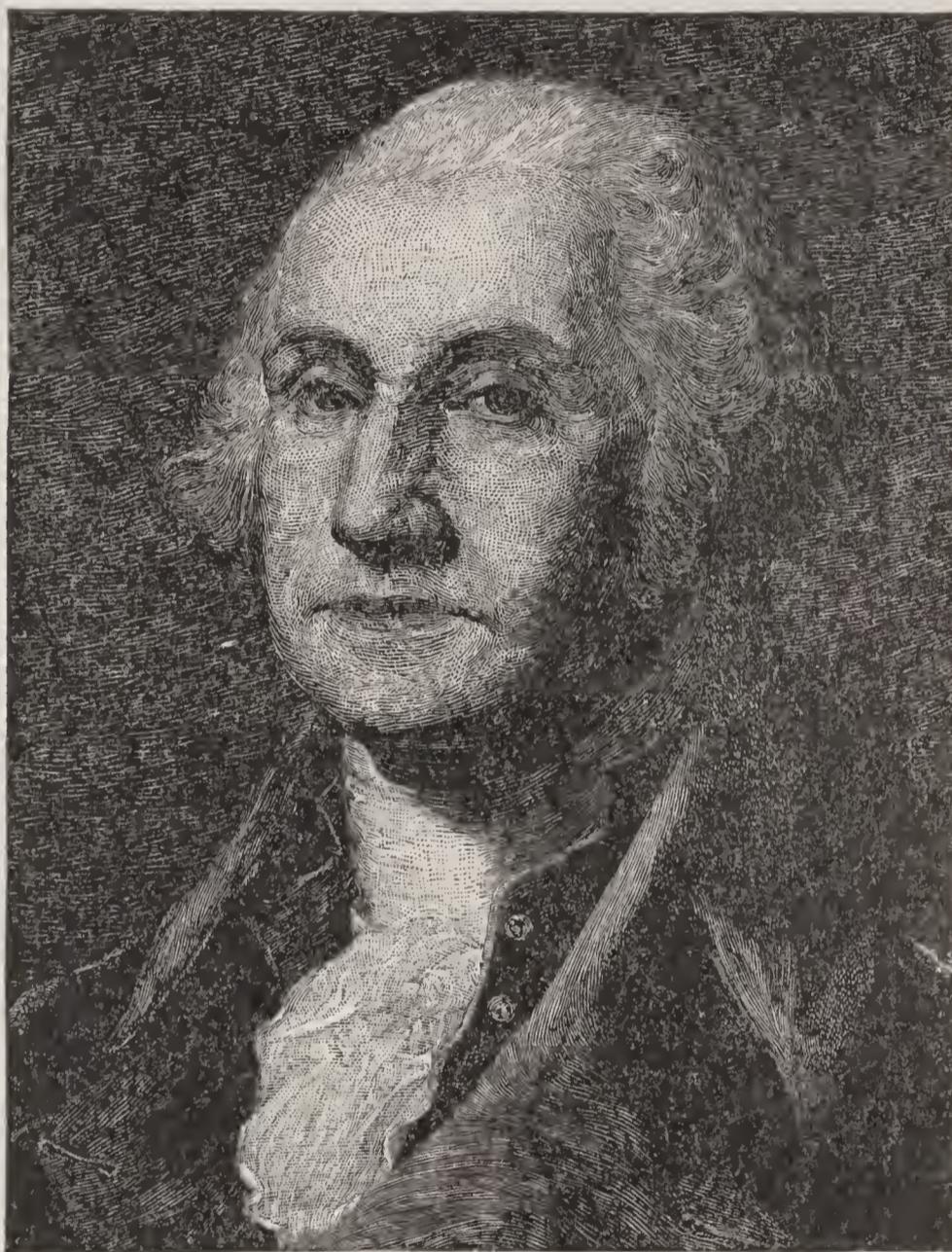
He wore a light dress sword, with green shagreen scabbard, and the hilt richly ornamented. His costume was much more elegant than on the occasion of the first inaugural ceremonies. Indeed, he was one of the best-dressed men in the country, but it was not from personal vanity, but out of respect for his exalted station.

On this occasion there was no formal procession. He was driven to the hall in a superb coach, drawn by six white horses, two gentlemen in full dress preceding the carriage. They carried in their hands long white wands, and the crowds parted respectfully before them, leaving a way for the slow-moving carriage. When the President entered the hall of the Senate, where both houses had assembled, all rose and made obeisance and remained standing until he had ascended the dais to the Speaker's seat at the further end. Thomas Jefferson stood at his side, wearing a blue coat, single-breasted, with large plain brass buttons, his vest and small-clothes being of crimson. The two men were of precisely the same height, though Jefferson

Washington's
 Second
 Inauguration

was of much slighter frame than Washington. Judge Cushing administered the oath. Then Washington drew from his breast a roll of manuscript containing his inaugural address. He showed none of the embarrassment which marked the delivery of his address at his first installation, and he laid the paper on the table as soon as he had finished reading it. A few minutes later, he withdrew from the

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829



GEORGE WASHINGTON

chamber, all standing as before until he had quitted the building. Then the clerk of the House took up the paper and read the address again to the joint Assembly.

There were important interests extending from the first term of Washington into the second. After the organization of the Northwest Territory, in 1787, an increasing stream of immigrants poured into the Ohio region. General Arthur St. Clair, a former Con-

**Important
 Interests**

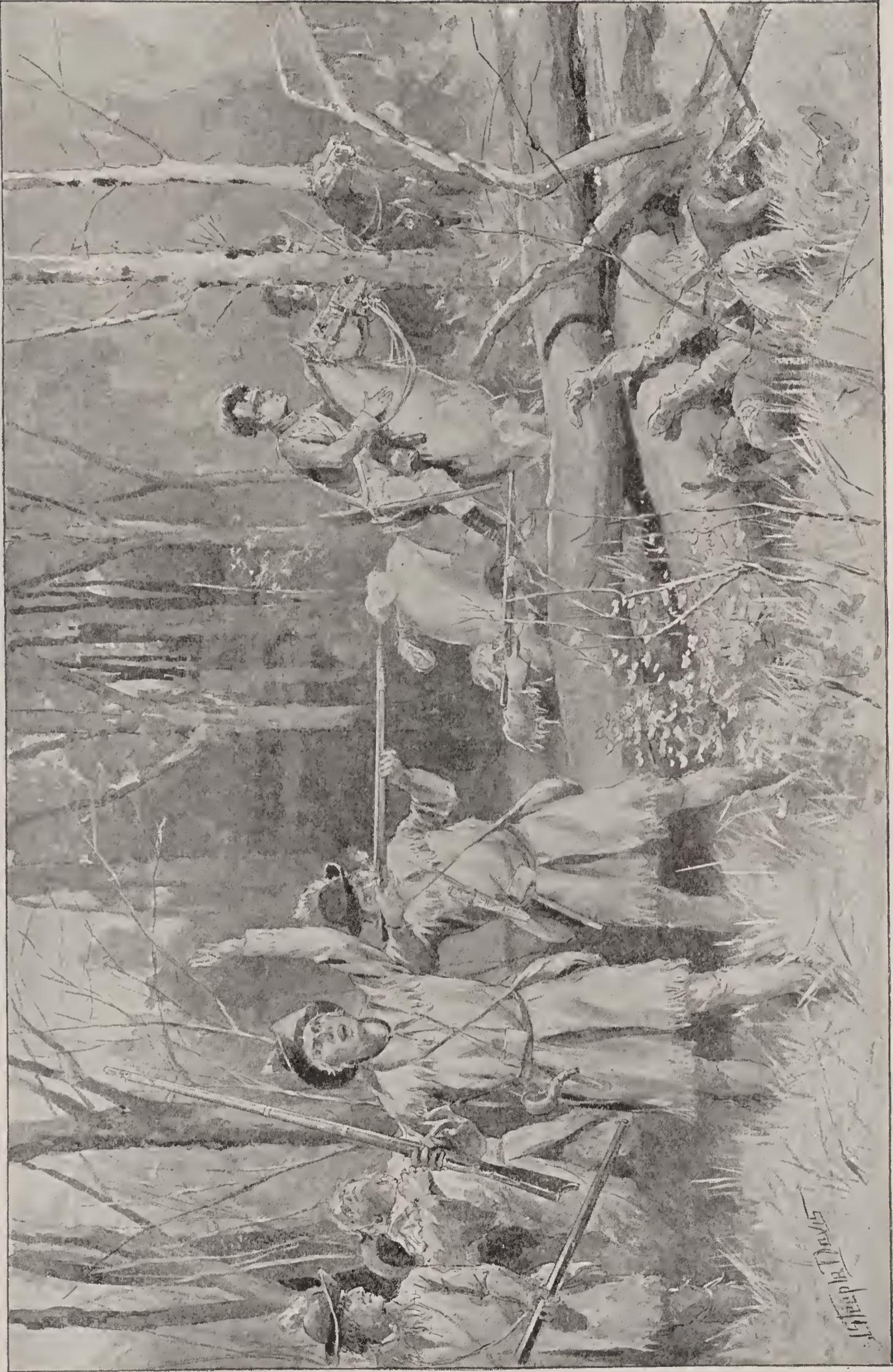
PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Defeat of
 General
 Harmar

tinental officer, was made the first governor, and he soon found serious trouble on his hands. England was still sullen towards our country, and, in violation of the terms of the treaty of 1783, she retained possession of Detroit and other Western posts. British agents incited the Indians to murder the settlers, and in 1790 the tribes were in open war and refused to make peace with the Americans. General Harmar, in September, 1790, set out with more than a thousand troops, regulars and volunteers, from Fort Washington—now Cincinnati—to invade the Indian country around the sources of the Maumee and punish the red men for their outrages. Harmar had a force strong enough to strike as crushing a blow as did Sullivan in 1779, but he was badly defeated in two engagements and abandoned the enterprise. Some successes were, however, made in the following year, by General Scott, of Kentucky, and by General Wilkinson, but they served only to excite the Indians to further atrocities.

Defeat of
 General
 St. Clair

Resolved to bring the savages to terms, two thousand troops marched northward from Fort Washington, in September, 1791, with General St. Clair in command. Their purpose was to plant military posts in the Indian country. Fort Hamilton was erected, twenty miles from Fort Washington, on the Miami River, while forty miles farther was built Fort Jefferson. A hundred miles from their starting-point, the soldiers went into camp, on a tributary of the Upper Wabash, near the Indiana line. Just before daylight, November 4th, they were furiously attacked by a large force of Indians. The troops fought bravely, but were unfortunately routed with great loss. General Butler, who was in immediate command, was killed with most of the officers. St. Clair, after having three horses killed under him, managed to save his life by lashing a mule, upon which he leaped, into a gallop when he saw that his army was defeated. The disaster spread dismay along the frontier. When the news reached Washington, the President was thrown into a towering rage. It took great provocation thus to stir the depths of his nature, but he had warned St. Clair against making the very blunder he had committed. Washington walked up and down the room, bewailing the loss of life and denouncing St. Clair for having disobeyed him and brought sorrow to so many homes. By and by the great man became calmer, and remarked to his secretary that St. Clair should have justice done him. He would not condemn him until he had heard his defence.



THE BATTLE OF FALLEN TIMBERS

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY J. STEEPLE DAVIS

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Appointment of
 General Wayne
 to succeed St.
 Clair

St. Clair, meanwhile, was so crippled with the gout that he could hardly walk. Some weeks later, however, he hobbled into the room and Washington offered him his hand. St. Clair grasped it in both of his and received such a kind welcome that he sobbed like a child. It was evident that a more successful soldier must be sent against the Indians. Washington did not blunder when he appointed Anthony Wayne to succeed St. Clair in the military command. Negotiations had the while been going on with the savages, but they ended in failure, and Wayne knew that the outrages would be renewed. He entered the Indian country in the autumn of 1793, with a strong military force. He spent the winter at Greenville, near the scene of St. Clair's defeat, and there built a stockade. When summer came, he advanced to the Maumee River and erected Fort Defiance, at the junction of that stream and the Au Glaize. Another was built on the St. Mary's, and, in August, he marched down the Maumee with three thousand troops and encamped near Fort Miami, a British military post at the foot of the Maumee Rapids.

Although General Wayne is often called "Mad Anthony," there was no madness or even excess of rashness about him. He was one of the bravest of men, and never shirked danger. Washington had unbounded confidence in the officer, for he knew him thoroughly, while Wayne showed his faith in Washington by once telling him, when a desperate scheme was under consideration, that he would lead a charge into the lower regions if Washington would only plan the campaign.

There was no danger of Wayne repeating the mistake of his predecessors. He advanced carefully and with so much precaution that the crafty Indians could not surprise him. He offered them peace if they would bury the hatchet. True to their treacherous nature, they tried to gain time. "Wait where you are for ten days," they answered, "and we shall treat with you, but if you advance we shall destroy you."

Wayne's
 Victory
 at Fallen
 Timbers

Disregarding this menace, Wayne advanced to the head of the Maumee Rapids, and a decisive battle took place at Fallen Timbers, August 20, 1794. The savages were routed with great loss, and Wayne gave the sympathizing British officers at the nearest post notice that, if they would offer him a suitable pretext, he would serve them in the same manner. They did not accept the challenge. Wayne laid waste the Indian country, and again went into winter

quarters at Greenville. The Indians were so humbled that, in the following summer, nearly twelve hundred warriors and their sachems, representing twelve tribes, met commissioners of the United States at Greenville and ceded to our government 25,000 square miles of territory in the present states of Michigan and Indiana, in addition to sixteen separate tracts including lands and forts. In payment for these cessions, the Indians participating received \$20,000 worth of presents, and were promised an annual allowance of \$10,000. A special treaty was made with Great Britain about this time, by which the military posts in the West were soon evacuated. There was not much further trouble with the Indians until the year before the breaking out of the War of 1812.

An appalling revolution began in France in 1789. The people were trampled upon and treated like brutes, until they broke into desperate revolt and committed excesses which horrified the world. Thousands of nobles and others were killed, for no other reason than that they were of gentle birth. The country was drenched with blood and the frenzy of insanity prevailed. Jefferson was in France when the uprising took place and sympathized with it, for it seemed, in its purpose, like our own Revolution. He felt very friendly, and when he came back to America, to enter the Cabinet, he hoped that our country would give aid to the revolutionists. But Washington was wiser than he, and discreetly resolved that our government should not become entangled with any foreign one. Many of our people seemed to lose their senses in the madness over the French uprising, and clamored that we should aid the French in their warfare against monarchy. "Citizen Genêt" (*zhéh-nā'*), an ambassador to our government from the French Republic, arrived in Charleston, South Carolina, in April, 1793. Washington, who was anxiously watching the trend of events, issued a proclamation of neutrality a few days later, warning all citizens against helping to kindle war in Europe. The friends of France were much angered because of this, and heaped abuse upon the President.

Genêt did not wait to present his credentials to our government, but began to enlist men in the service of the French Republic. He was furnished with blank commissions, and set to work to fit out privateers to attack the commerce of England, Spain, and Holland. One of these brought a prize into Philadelphia, before Genêt himself reached that city. The Frenchman was received with great enthu-

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUB-
 LIC AND
 THE CONSTI-
 TUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Indian
 Cessions
 to the
 Govern-
 ment

"Citizen
 Genet"

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Recall
 of Genet

siasm, and was thus encouraged in his disregard of our government's wishes. He sought to create a breach between it and the people, and at one time seemed likely to do so. It was another of those great crises in which Washington preserved his superb poise and guided the Ship of State past the rocks that threatened her. He requested the French Republic to recall Genet, and, since such a request is never unheeded, Genet was notified to return home. At the same time, the French government expressed its regrets at their ambassador's imprudent course and sent an acceptable minister to replace him. Genet knew that if he went back to France his neck would be placed under the guillotine, so he wisely stayed in this country. He married a daughter of Governor Clinton, and was a loyal and respected citizen when he died, in 1834.

It has been stated that one of the laws passed by Congress imposed a tax upon whiskey. The roads in this country were so bad at certain seasons as to be almost impassable. In the western part of Pennsylvania and Virginia, it cost more to haul the grain to market than it could be sold for. So the farmers turned it into whiskey, which occupied less bulk and was more readily carried. They resented the laying of the new tax and despitefully used the officers who were sent to collect it. The insurrection spread throughout the Pittsburg region, and many outrages were committed. At one time fully six thousand insurgents were under arms, and, as is often the case, the local militia were the friends of the mob.

Insurrec-
 tion in
 Western
 Pennsyl-
 vania and
 Virginia

The insurrection spread to an alarming extent. Albert Gallatin, afterwards Secretary of the Treasury, acted as secretary at a convention of the insurgents at Pittsburg, and helped to organize the rebellion. It was estimated that the insurgent counties could raise sixteen thousand fighting men, and Judge Brackenridge hinted that if the general government should attempt force, those in revolt might ask aid from Great Britain, or even march on Philadelphia itself. This was blatant treason, and Washington was not the one to trifle with the insurgent spirit. He exhausted peaceable means, but would not listen to the pacific measures proposed by the leaders around him. He ordered out a large body of militia from Virginia, Maryland, Pennsylvania, and New Jersey, and sent them, under the command of "Light-Horse Harry" Lee, to the rebellious district. The mutineers were overawed. They did not expect a hostile act on the part of the government. They began to talk matters over

among themselves, and it was not necessary for General Lee to order a shot fired. The rebellion subsided and was heard of no more. Again the wise firmness and wisdom of Washington saved the nation from a grave peril.

The course of Great Britain in holding the Western military posts, in violation of the treaty of 1783, will be remembered. Her excuse was that our agreement regarding the property of the so-called Tories had not been kept, and we would not pay the debts contracted before the Revolution. The friction became so great that Washington proposed to send a special envoy to the British court, to arrange for a settlement of the disputes. In conformity with the President's wish, Congress, on the 19th of April, 1794, commissioned John Jay to undertake the delicate mission. He returned with a treaty which provided for the collection of debts here by British creditors, but furnished no indemnity for the slaves stolen by the English. It also guaranteed the evacuation of the Western posts and payment for unlawful captures on the high seas. The treaty was not what we wanted, but it was the best that could be secured, and averted a new war with England. It, however, awoke bitter hostility against the administration, and Jay was burnt in effigy, but the treaty was ratified June 24, 1795.

In October following a treaty was made with Spain, which defined the boundaries between the Spanish territories of Louisiana and Florida, and secured to us the free navigation of the Mississippi and the use of the port of New Orleans for a period of ten years.

There occurred a series of incidents a hundred and more years ago, which is anything but a pleasant memory now to Americans. Think of that little nest of barbarians away off in Algiers, compelling the United States to pay them tribute, under the threat that, if we refused, they would not allow our commerce to enter the Mediterranean, but would make prisoners and slaves of all our sailors who dared to enter that inland European sea! It was humiliating; but the explanation lies in the fact that, as has been stated, we had not a single ship in our navy, and it was cheaper to pay tribute than to fight. We then weren't ready, but the day was to come when those insolent Algerines were to be taught a lesson. On the 25th of July, 1785, an Algerine cruiser captured the ship *Maria*, of Boston, near the straits of Gibraltar, and made slaves of the crew. A few days later, the *Dauphin*, of Philadelphia, and the *Minerva*, of New York,

PERIOD IV
THE REPUBLIC AND
THE CONSTITUTION
1783
TO
1829

Jay's
Treaty

Inso-
lence of
Algiers

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

A Striking Incident

were taken, so that over a hundred American citizens were huddled in the slave-pens of Algiers. Here is an extract from a newspaper, which records the sailing of the frigate *Crescent*, January 20, 1798, from Portsmouth, New Hampshire: "She is one of the finest specimens of naval architecture which was ever borne on the Piscataqua's waters, and is a present from the United States to the Dey of Algiers, as a compensation for delay in fulfilling our treaty stipulations. The *Crescent* has many valuable presents on board for the Dey, and when she sailed was supposed to be worth at least \$300,000. Twenty-six barrels of dollars constituted a part of her cargo. It is worthy of remark that the captain, the chief of the officers and many of the privates of the *Crescent* frigate have been prisoners in Algiers." The United States paid about a million dollars for the ransom of American captives held by the Dey of Algiers. From 1785 until 1793, those pirates captured fifteen American vessels, and made 180 officers and sailors their slaves, treating them with the greatest cruelty. In 1795, the United States made a treaty with Algiers by which it agreed to pay an annual tribute to the Dey for the relief of captured seamen. In doing this, it may be said that we only imitated the current action of the leading nations in Europe.

Admission of Tennessee

Tennessee was admitted to the Union, June 1, 1796. We have shown that it had been a part of North Carolina. A fort was built by the British in 1756, named Loudon, upon the present site of Knoxville, and a few pioneers clustered round it. After the State of Franklin was dissolved, North Carolina ceded Tennessee to the United States, and it was formed into the Southwest Territory. The State is divided into three parts by the Tennessee River, and the Cumberland Mountains which cross it. The chief cities are Nashville, the capital, in middle Tennessee, Memphis, in western Tennessee, and Chattanooga, in eastern Tennessee. Its name is derived from the river Tennessee, meaning the "river with the great bend."

Although those were trying times, the country was meanwhile becoming strong, and was laying the foundations of a solid prosperity. Government was more powerful and secure, and commerce was extending. The Stars and Stripes floated beside the flags of other nations in foreign ports, and by many sea-going Americans was patriotically deemed, and rightly so, the most beautiful of them all. In 1790, the Boston ship *Columbia* made the first American voyage around the world. Our forefathers early proved that they were of an

inventive turn by beginning to take out patents; there were manufactures, too, in various parts of the country. The mint, in 1793, sent out more than 10,000 copper cents, which were the first coins made by the government. Two years later, the first gold pieces appeared. Several of the chief cities laid turnpike roads for some distance out into the country, charging toll, so as to repay the expense. Two short canals also were dug in New England.

One of the most interesting attempts at improved navigation was that of John Fitch to build steamboats. His jewelry store in Trenton was destroyed by the Hessians, because he gave help to the patriots in repairing their weapons. He travelled in the West, and was held captive for a long time by the Indians. He was an ingenious man, and, on his return, set to work to form a company to help him construct a steamboat at Philadelphia. He succeeded in building one, which ran five or six miles an hour, and ascended the Delaware as far as Burlington, some say to Trenton. It was a crude affair, however, and is generally referred to as a failure, but it led the way to Fulton's success later. The first newspaper in the Northwest was published in Cincinnati, in 1793, when the town consisted of about a hundred log-cabins. It seems strange to read that when two large passenger-boats began running between Pittsburg and Cincinnati, in 1794, they were moved with oars, had bullet-proof sides, and carried several cannon to protect them from the Indians.

As Washington's second term drew to a close there were many, including Vice-President Adams, who begged him to serve for a third term. But he would not consent. He felt that his health was becoming impaired, and his almost ruined estates demanded his attention. He issued his farewell address to the people of the United States, September 17, 1796. This admirable and now historic paper is so full of wisdom and sound statesmanship that it should be studied and remembered by every American in the land. It is a priceless gift to the nation which the great man loved and served so well.

Now that Presidential candidates had to be sought elsewhere, the contest became a bitter wrangle. In fact, it closely resembled the Presidential elections in these later times. The Federalists supported John Adams, while the Republicans were in favor of Thomas Jefferson. Some prominent Federalists in the Northern and Eastern States favored Hamilton, and a few desired John Jay; but the majority clung to Adams. In the hope of dividing the Federalist vote,

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

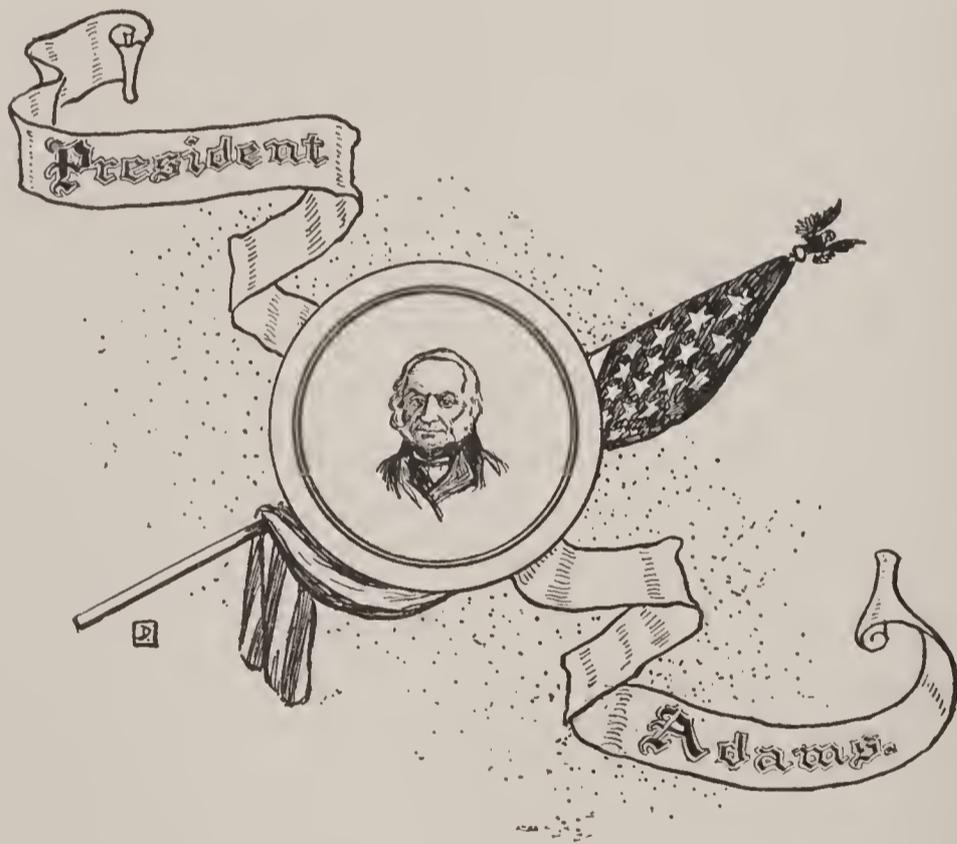
John
 Fitch's
 Steam-
 boat

Election
 of John
 Adams

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Thomas Pinckney, of South Carolina, was put forward. Hamilton has been credited with the suggestion, but it came to naught. It required seventy votes to elect, and Adams received seventy-one, while Jefferson received but three votes fewer. Adams, therefore, became President, and Jefferson Vice-President, the latter's politics being the opposite of the President's.*

* The Constitution provided that any man who was a citizen of the United States, at the time of the adoption of the Constitution, was eligible to the Presidency. Consequently, Alexander Hamilton, who was a native of the West Indies, and who had a strong following, was eligible, and there is reason for believing that the provision named was incorporated in the Constitution for the purpose of bestowing such eligibility upon him.





CHAPTER XLI

JOHN ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION—1797—1801

[*Authorities*: The administration of the second incumbent of the Presidential office was not a tranquil one, nor, in its effect upon Mr. Adams himself, can it be said to have conduced to happiness. Though the nominee of the Federalists, he gave mortal offence to that now historic party, in the pacific relations of his Government with France (which during the Directorate had become obnoxious to the country), and the opposing of which involved the party in much obloquy, from which it never recovered. He was also unfortunate in standing sponsor for the unpopular Alien and Sedition law, though probably with the best intent, for his character was good, though his temper was at times evil. His patriotism no one could question, and great had been his services to the country. The action of the French Directory incited war preparations, and made even an appeal necessary to the nation's retired commander-in-chief. Happily, Bonaparte's coming on the scene changed the aspect of affairs, and the illustrious Washington, instead of buckling on his armor again, gathered up his loins for his last sleep. The Peace of 1801 followed fitly upon the close of the national hero's career. The authorities for the period, in addition to the notable histories, including McMaster's "History of the People of the United States," are Hamilton's "The Federalist"; the Works of John Adams; Morse's *Memoirs of Adams and Jefferson*; Pellew's *John Jay*; and Gay's *Madison* (American Statesmen Series).]



Naval Engagement

JOHN ADAMS, the second President, was born at Braintree, Mass., October 19, 1735. At the age of twenty he was graduated from Harvard College, and three years later was admitted to the bar. He was one of the most active and influential members of the first and second Continental Congresses, where he did more than any other man to crystallize the American sentiment for independence. While Jefferson wrote the Declaration, Adams was its ablest advocate, and really brought about its adoption. It was he who suggested the appointment of Washington as commander-in-chief of the Conti-

The
Second
Presi-
dent

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Adams'
 Inauguration

Washington
 and
 Adams

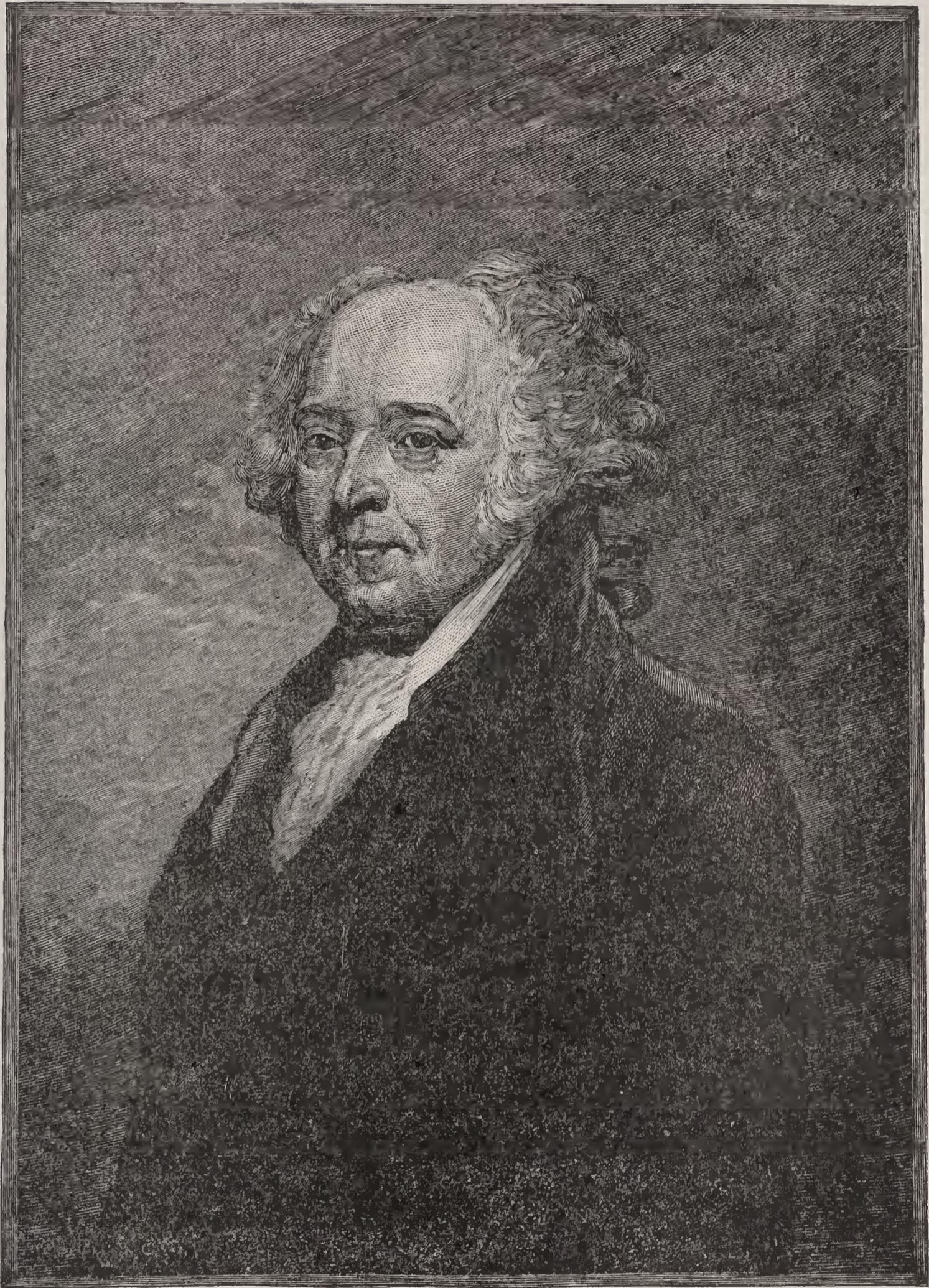
mental armies. He was afterwards a severe critic of Washington, but was manly enough ere long to admit his mistake in that respect.

Adams was a man of prodigious activity in Congress during the Revolution. He was a member of ninety committees and chairman of twenty-five. As commissioner to France and Holland, he accomplished important results, and he served as minister-plenipotentiary while negotiating a treaty with Great Britain. Large loans were raised through his influence, and he secured many excellent treaties with foreign powers. The preliminary treaty of Versailles was framed by him in association with Franklin, and he was the first American minister to England, serving at the Court of St. James until 1788. He received the thanks of Congress for the "patriotism, perseverance and diligence" which marked his career abroad.

The inauguration of John Adams was the last to take place in Philadelphia, where he was installed in the House of Representatives, which was so packed that many had to sit on the floor. When the Senate entered the chamber, the President led the procession and Washington was the guest of honor. The latter had taken but a few steps into the room when a burst of applause came from every part of the house, Adams meeting with the same generous reception. The President-elect delivered his inaugural, and the oath was administered by Chief-Justice Oliver Ellsworth. A few minutes afterwards, Adams, Vice-President Jefferson, and Washington retired amid great cheering and a discharge of artillery. There was a general illumination in the evening, but no procession. A large number of callers were received informally at the President's house, and Washington held a popular levee, to which hundreds flocked for the honor of pressing his hand.

The administration of Washington dovetails into that of Adams. Both were Federalists, and the Cabinet of the first President was accepted at once in its entirety by the second. The difference lay in the chiefs themselves, but what a difference! Both were men of eminent ability, but Adams was irascible, obdurate, and lacking in the serene self-command of Washington. He seemed always to have a dispute or some quarrel on hand. When he failed of re-election, he showed his resentment by the childish act of leaving the city of Washington early in the morning, so as not to be present at the inauguration of his successor.

One of the legacies of Washington's administration was the trouble



JOHN ADAMS

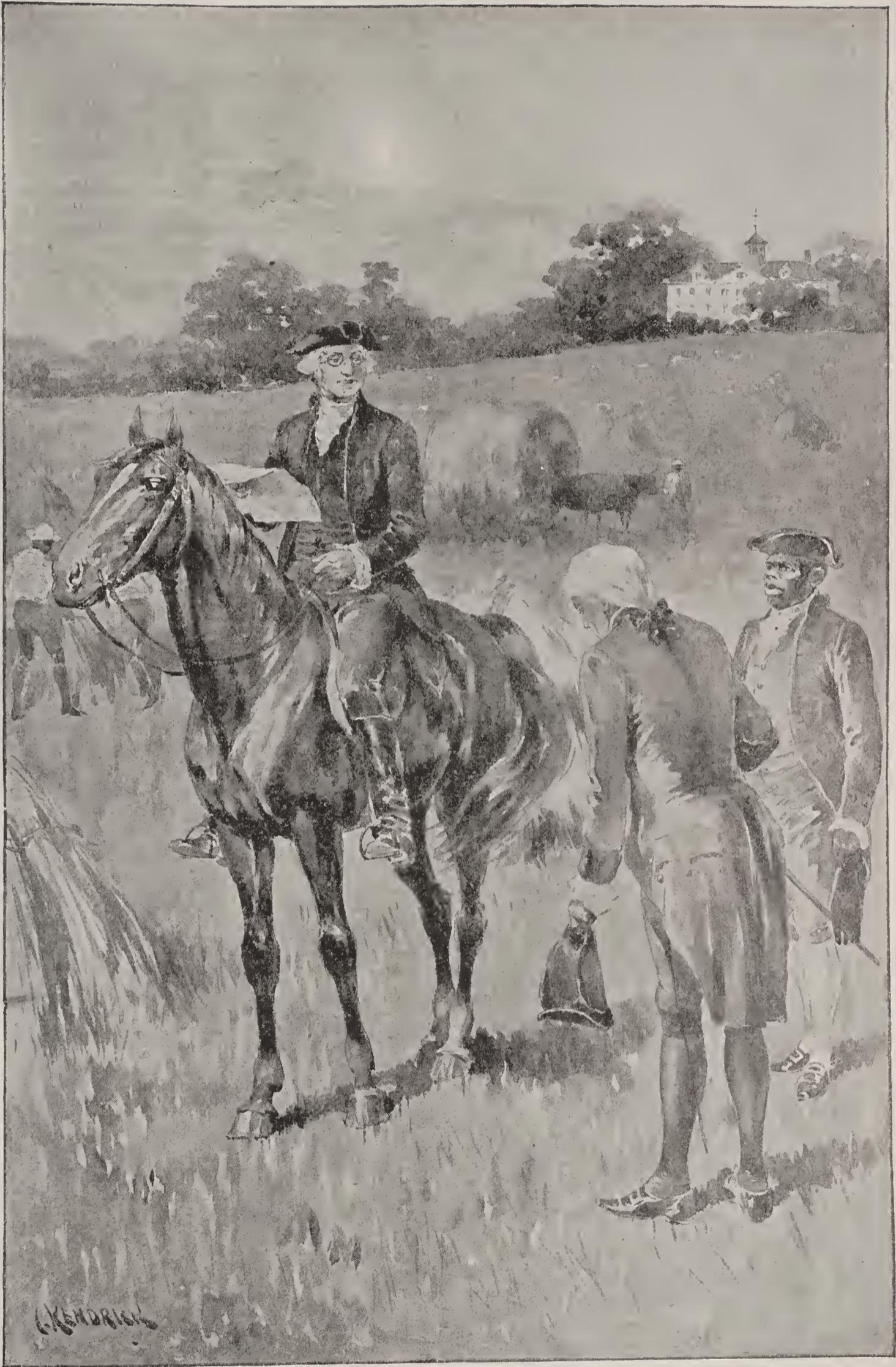
PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Troubles
 with
 France

with France, which really began before Adams assumed the duties of his office. Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, our new minister, had been ordered out of the country by the Directory, as the then governing body of France was termed. This insult was accompanied by a notice that no other minister would be received until we met the demands of the French Republic. At the same time, orders were issued for the French marine to seize American vessels. There were several reasons for this course of the French Directory, which was composed of five persons, who were made rulers in 1795. They were angry because of the treaty made with Great Britain, and also on account of the failure to elect Jefferson, who was regarded as a strong friend of France. So they thought to punish the United States for daring to act contrary to their wishes. The decree, which was issued in May, 1797, declared that any American found on board a hostile ship, even if placed there by impressment, should be hanged as a pirate. Now, since England was even at that time enforcing her alleged "right of search," by which she took from any American vessel she might overhaul such seamen as she claimed belonged to England (and she held in this arbitrary manner many who were Americans), it will be seen that our poor sailors were placed in a sad situation.

"Millions for
 Defence,
 but Not
 One Cent
 for
 Tribute"

President Adams convened Congress in extraordinary session May 15, 1797. Its earliest enactment was to provide for calling out eighty thousand militia and the creating of a small naval force; but Congress seemed to believe that the troubles might be adjusted without war, so John Marshall, afterward Chief-Justice of the United States, and Elbridge Gerry were appointed commissioners to join Pinckney in the effort to settle the dispute by diplomacy. They reached France in October, 1797, and sought an audience with the French Directory. They were informed that no hearing would be granted unless they agreed to loan France a large sum of money and pay a bribe of \$240,000 to the five members of the Directory. This insulting proposal was accompanied by a hint that, if it was not accepted, the envoys would be ordered to leave the country within twenty-four hours, and our coasts would be ravaged by French cruisers sent from San Domingo. "Millions for defence, but not one cent for tribute!" answered Pinckney, and the envoys took their departure, Gerry remaining, however, some time after his companions had left. The insolent Directory soon issued another decree, which



"I AM READY FOR ANY SERVICE THAT I CAN GIVE MY COUNTRY"

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY CHAS. KENDRICK

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Impending War
 with
 France

virtually annihilated our commerce in European waters. The Americans were roused by these repeated aggressions and demanded that war should be declared against France. In his first annual message to Congress, November 23, 1797, President Adams recommended preparations for hostilities, and in March following he asked Congress to provide the sinews of war. The request was promptly granted. A provisional army, composed of twenty thousand regular soldiers, was empowered to be raised, and arrangements were made to call the militia and volunteers into service. The mistake of not rebuilding a navy was by this time fully seen, and steps were taken to provide an effective naval force. The office of Secretary of the Navy was created, and, on the 30th of April, 1798, Benjamin Stoddard, of Georgetown, D. C., as such officer, was added to the President's Cabinet.

A navy of twenty-four vessels was ordered, and our merchantmen were authorized to arm themselves against the French vessels of war. Washington was appointed commander-in-chief of all the forces raised, with the commission of lieutenant-general. He was in the fields at Mount Vernon, where his men were gathering his grain harvest, when the Secretary of War arrived in person and handed the commission to him. Washington looked it over, and, as he saw its significance, his eye flashed and he said: "I am ready for any service that I can give my country." He asked the President not to call him to active duty until necessary, and wished his friend Alexander Hamilton to be the acting general-in-chief. This request was granted, and Hamilton was commissioned the first major-general. Washington met the general officers in conference at Philadelphia and arranged for the organization of the military forces. At the same time, he expressed his belief that the clouds of war would soon disappear.

Washington's
 Patriotism

Philadelphia was visited by the scourge of yellow fever in the summer of 1798. New York and other seaboard cities also suffered. Congress in consequence adjourned to Trenton, but many of its members were absent, and President Adams was kept a long time at his home in Quincy, Mass., by the serious illness of his wife. The war spirit, however, intensified, and though war did not take place on land, there was fighting on the ocean.

It was during these exciting days that Congress passed the "Alien and Sedition laws." Some of the most vicious writers for the con-

temporary press were foreign adventurers. They were enemies of our institutions, and became so obnoxious that, by an act, approved June 18, 1798, the President was authorized to send out of the country such aliens or foreigners as he deemed dangerous to its welfare, or, in case they remained, they were to give bonds for their good behavior. The Sedition law made it a penal offence for any one to defame Congress or the President, to rouse the hatred of the people against them, or to stir up sedition in the United States.

These laws provoked much indignation throughout the country. They were considered an attack on the liberty of the press and the utterance of free speech. The legislatures of Virginia and Kentucky declared that Congress had no right to make such laws, and affirmed that the States should not obey them. The resolutions were sent to other legislatures and came from the pen of Vice-President Jefferson. One of the dearest rights of an American citizen is that of saying what he thinks about the government, and he will never consent to have the right taken from him. The laws were very unpopular, and resulted in the defeat of the Federalists at the next election, and they never regained control of the government.

On November 16, 1798, the United States war-ship *Baltimore*, while convoying merchant vessels from Charleston to Havana, was hailed and brought to by a British squadron, which, despite the protests of the captain, carried fifty-five seamen on board the British flagship, in order that the British commander might select the best. Five of the seamen were impressed into the English service, and after seizing three vessels of the American convoy, the British commander continued his cruise. Captain Phillips was dismissed from the service because of his tame submission to the outrage.

In July, 1800, the French man-of-war *Flambeau* mistook the American 12-gun schooner *Enterprise* for a merchantman and attacked her. The Frenchman found out his mistake when, after severe loss, at the end of forty minutes, he was compelled to surrender.

Awake to the necessity of increasing the strength of her navy, Congress in 1799 added several new vessels. The *Constellation*, Commodore Truxtun, captured the French frigate *L'Insurgente* (*lan serjänt*) of 44 guns and 409 men. This brilliant victory, which was gained in the West Indies in February, 1799, compelled the praise of England as well as Truxtun's own country. The merchants

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

The
 Alien and
 Sedition
 Laws

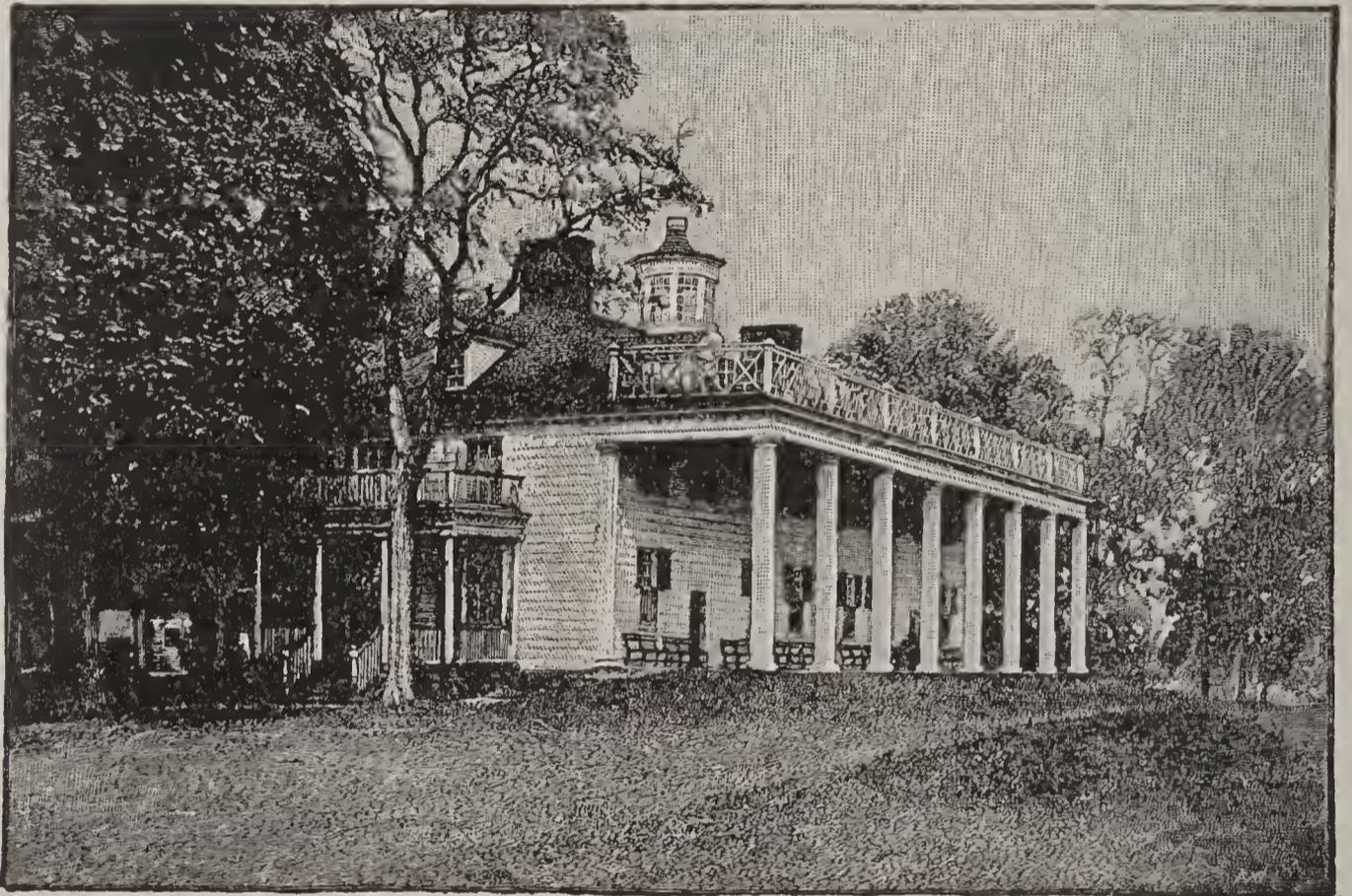
Increase
 of the
 American
 Navy

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Fighting
 on the
 Ocean

of London presented him with a superb service of silver plate. In the following year, Truxtun defeated the French frigate *La Vengeance*, of 54 guns and 500 men, off Guadaloupe, for which exploit Congress presented the gallant commodore with a gold medal.

In October of the same year the United States 36-gun frigate *Boston*, after a two days' pursuit and fight with the French corvette *Berceau* (*ber-so'*) forced her to surrender. Indeed, the Frenchmen were no match for the Americans. When France by its policy of folly was on the verge of ruin, Napoleon Bonaparte came to the throne and speedily offered a treaty of peace, which was ratified by



MOUNT VERNON

the Senate, February 3, 1801. During these difficulties, the Americans had few privateers, most of the captures being made by government cruisers.

Death of
 Wash-
 ington

On the 13th of December, 1799, Washington rashly exposed himself to a severe storm of sleet and rain. He awoke in the night with a distressing attack of membranous croup. In these days his illness would probably have been called pneumonia, though the name was hardly ever heard a hundred years ago, lung fever being the term. His condition became alarming, and at daylight Dr. Craik, the family physician, was sent for. Two other doctors arrived in the

course of the day, and nothing that could be done to relieve the sufferer was neglected.

Mr. Lear, Washington's secretary, afterwards wrote of the dying hero whom the nation loved and loves :

"About ten minutes before he expired, his breathing became easier. (It was between ten and eleven o'clock at night.) He lay quietly; he withdrew his hand from mine and felt his own pulse. I saw his countenance change. I spoke to Dr. Craik, who sat by the fire. He came to the bedside. The General's hand fell from his wrist. I took it in mine and pressed it to my bosom. Dr. Craik put his hand over his eyes, and he (Washington) expired without a struggle or a sigh. While we were fixed in silent grief, Mrs. Washington, who was sitting at the foot of the bed, asked with a firm and collected voice, 'Is he gone?' I could not speak, but held up my hand as a signal that he was no more. 'Tis well,' she said, in the same voice; 'all's now over; I shall soon follow him; I have no more trials to pass through.' "

The body was buried December 18th, having been kept three days, as requested by Washington. A schooner lying off Alexandria fired minute-guns while the funeral procession was moving from the house to the vault. The way was led by the troops, horse and foot, followed by four clergymen; then came Washington's horse, with saddle, holsters, and pistols, led by two grooms in black; then the hearse, borne by the Masonic order of which he was a member and one of its officers, the family and friends, and finally the corporation of Alexandria. Rev. Mr. Davis read the service at the tomb and spoke a few words, after which the body was placed in the vault with Masonic ceremonies. Washington died in his sixty-seventh year. In 1837, the remains were removed to their present resting-place at Mount Vernon.

The grief over the death of Washington was universal. There was not a town or village in which memorial services were not held. Congress, to whom the news had been borne by special messenger, went in funeral procession to the German Lutheran church. The speaker's chair was draped in black, and the members wore mourning for the remainder of the session. The resolutions offered in the House enshrine those words, repeated so often since: "First in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen." General Henry Lee, the intimate friend of Washington from boy-

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

The
 Last
 Scene

Funeral
 Ceremonies

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

A Grand
 Character

hood (and the father of Gen. R. E. Lee, leader of the Confederate armies), was the author of the words, though owing to his being called away, they were spoken by John Marshall.*

It has already been said that Napoleon Bonaparte was among those abroad who offered their tribute to the grandest and most heroic figure in history. February 9, 1800, he issued the following order to his army:

“Washington is dead! This great man fought against tyranny; he established the liberties of his country. His memory will always be dear to the French people, as it will be to all free men of the two worlds; and especially to the French soldiers, who, like him and the American soldiers, have combated for liberty and equality.”

It was at Torbay that the British fleet half-masted its flags on receipt of the news. Byron expressed the sentiments of all when he declared of Washington that among warriors, statesmen, and patriots, he was—

“The first, the last, the best,
 The Cincinnatus of the West.”

* The Gregorian calendar, which moved the estimate of time forward eleven days, took effect in Great Britain and her colonies in 1752, but it was customary for nearly a half century afterwards to continue without change the celebration of birthdays occurring previous to the official change. The stone placed at Washington's birthplace in 1815, contained the words: “Here, on the 11th of February, 1732, George Washington was born,” and there was no reference to the difference between Old Style and New Style. The first recorded celebration of Washington's birthday was probably at Richmond, Feb. 11, 1782, shortly after the great victory at Yorktown. The following year it was commemorated in Maryland, and the year after in New York. It is said that the change from the 11th to the 22d of February was made in 1793, in New York. The celebrations at first were informal, becoming more marked when he was President, though frowned upon by some of his opponents, as savoring of monarchical customs. The day was more widely honored after his death, until statutes have made the observance universal in the country.





CHAPTER XLII

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION,—FIRST TERM, 1801—1805

[*Authorities* : On the now rising tide of Democracy, Jefferson, a man of great ability and much experience of the world, was borne to power and exercised, during two *régimes*, a very considerable influence on the political and administrative annals of the young nation. Conscious of his own strength, he was rather careless in the choice of men who were associated with him, though he was, at first, conciliatory in his attitude towards those of the now discredited Federalist party whom he had beaten in the elections. In his financial policy, he was helpfully aided by his Swiss Secretary of the Treasury, Gallatin ; while the purchase of Louisiana was a tactical measure which, offsetting his schemes of retrenchment, proved gratifying to the country. His administration was further signalized by the success of the war with the Barbary States, which gave the country another thrill of pride in American naval prowess, and by the pleasing results of Western exploration in the vast regions beyond the Mississippi. The Burr-Hamilton duel marks the intensity of the political passions of the era. The special authorities for the chapter are : Jefferson's Works, including his Memoirs and Correspondence ; Morse's monograph on Jefferson ; Adams's " History of the United States during Jefferson's Administration ;" Stevens's " Albert Gallatin " ; Parton's " Aaron Burr ; " McMaster's " History of the People of the United States " (vol. iii.) ; and Maclay's " History of the United States Navy from 1775 to 1894. "]



THE Presidential election of 1800 was bitterly contested. The Federalists supported John Adams and Charles Cotesworth Pinckney respectively for President and Vice-President, while the Republicans nominated Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr. The Alien and Sedition laws drove from Adams' support the twelve electoral votes of New

York. He gained in some States, but not enough to overcome the falling away of the " Empire State," as New York was after-

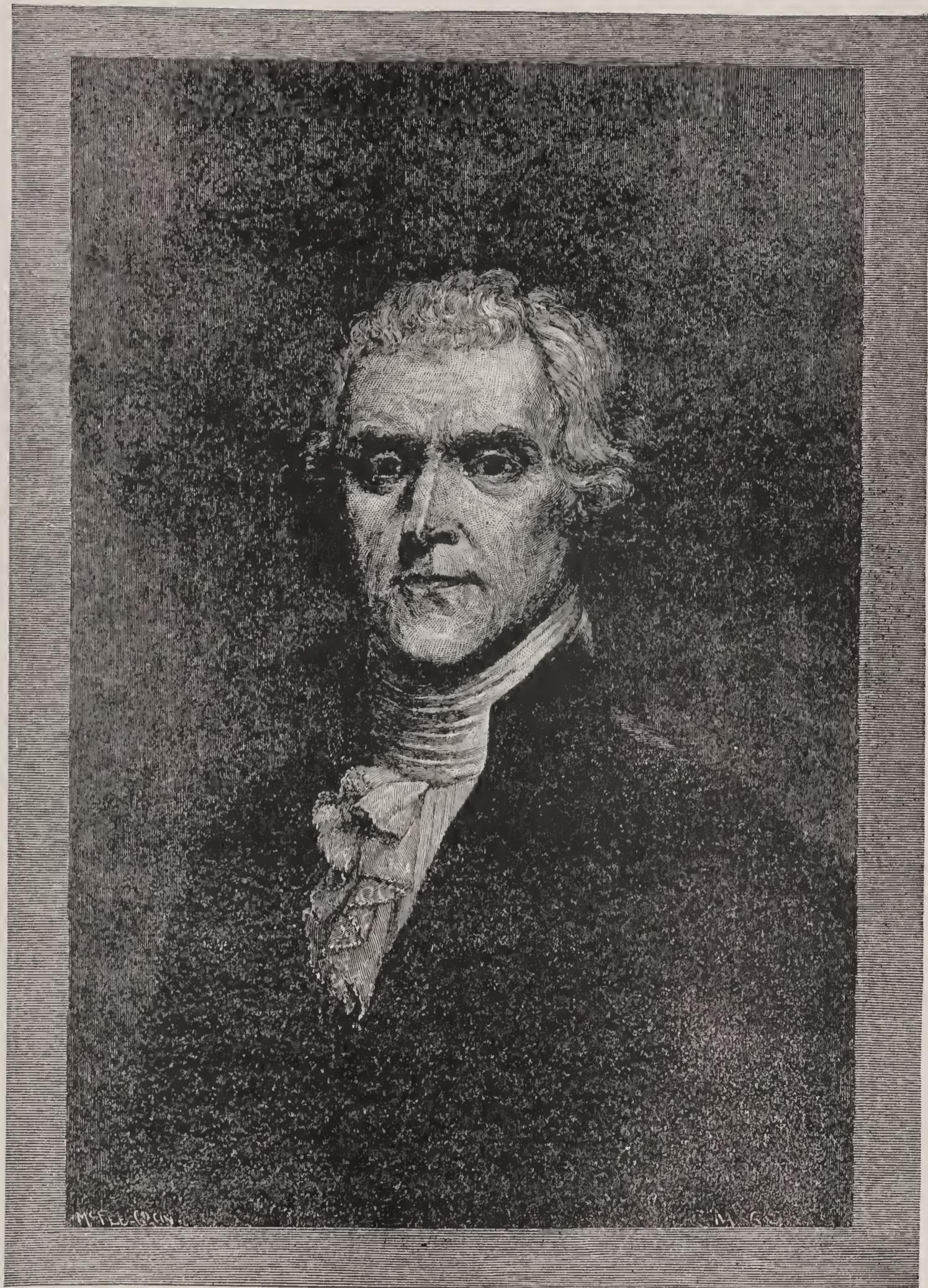
PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Election
 of Jefferson

The Inauguration

wards called, because of her decisive course in the election of 1800. The count, February 11, 1801, as announced in the Senate Chamber, in the presence of the House of Representatives, was: Jefferson, 73; Burr, 73; Pinckney, 64; Jay, 1. There being a tie between Jefferson and Burr, the election devolved upon the House of Representatives. The House accordingly met with closed doors and began to ballot by States. On the first ballot, Jefferson received the votes of eight States, Burr six, while two were divided, which made no election. The second ballot was taken amid great excitement and with a similar result. Eight ballots in all were cast, and then a recess followed. This continued for a week, when, on the thirty-sixth ballot, Jefferson received a majority of all the votes and was declared elected President. Burr, having received the next highest number, became Vice-President.

The prolonged contest was a dangerous strain on the country, and the relief was general that it had ended without bloodshed, so much so, indeed, that cannon were fired when the issue was known in Baltimore, Philadelphia, New York, and other large cities. On the last day of February, Jefferson took leave of the Senate in a few words, to prepare for his inauguration in the following week. Aaron Burr arrived the next day from Baltimore, where he had received much public attention. March 4, 1801, was the first inauguration day in the city of Washington. The present magnificent capital was then but a hamlet. The inns and other places for the accommodation of visitors were at that period so few that for a number of years the inauguration crowds had to be divided among Washington, Baltimore, Alexandria, and Georgetown. Nothing was more distasteful to Jefferson than pomp and ceremony, and, consequently, little of it marked his induction into office. About ten o'clock, the Washington artillery and a company of Alexandria riflemen paraded in front of his lodgings. The artillery fired a salute, the riflemen presented arms, and Jefferson, bowing his acknowledgments, started for the capital, accompanied by a few friends. He was dressed in plain clothing, and it is said that he rode to the Capitol and tied his own horse, but there is no record of any such incident in the newspapers of the time. The story probably arose from the fact that he left the Capitol on horseback, on the day his successor was inaugurated, and rode alone down Pennsylvania Avenue. There was another artillery salute when the President-elect



THOMAS JEFFERSON

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

entered the Capitol. The members of the two houses rose to their feet as he came into the Senate Chamber, while Burr stepped down from the presiding officer's chair, which was taken by Jefferson. The inaugural address was then delivered, after which the oath of office was administered by the Chief Justice. Jefferson afterwards returned to his lodgings, accompanied by Burr and the Chief Justice, and there held a public reception. Neither ex-President Adams nor Speaker Sedgwick, of the House of Representatives, was present at the ceremonies. Adams felt his defeat so keenly that he showed his successor no courtesies whatever. He was childish enough to declare that he was not willing "to act the rôle of captive-chief in the triumphant procession of the victor to the Capitol," and, as has been stated, he left the city early in the morning of the inauguration, and went to his home in Massachusetts. The day closed with illuminations, cannon firing, and general festivity.

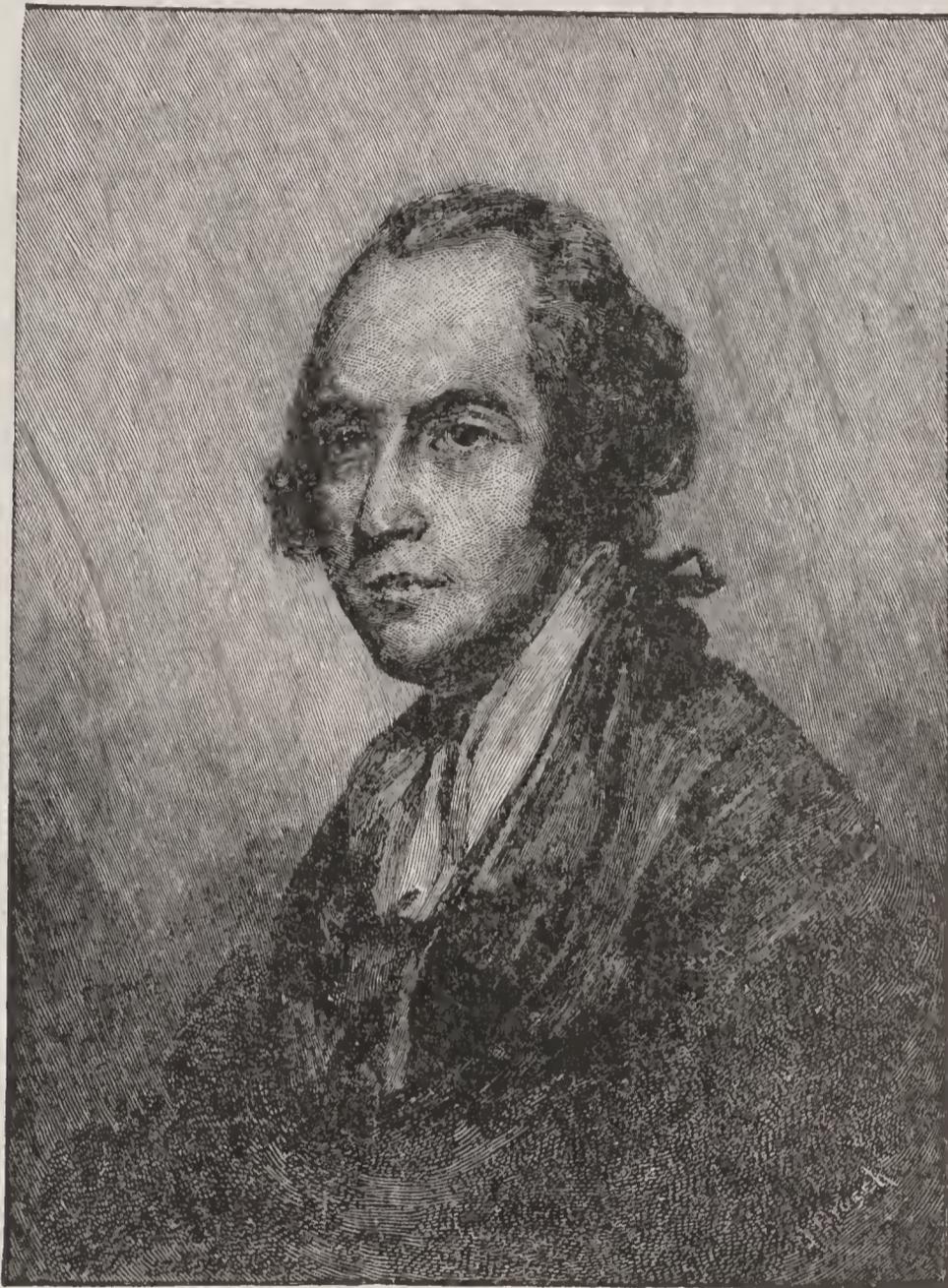
The
 Third
 President

Thomas Jefferson, the third President, was among the most learned men who have ever filled that office. He was a fine linguist, being master of Latin, Greek, French, Spanish, and Italian, and was besides an excellent musician, a good mathematician, and, though not an orator, was a brilliant writer. He was born at Shadwell, Virginia, April 2, 1743. His father was a wealthy planter, who died when the son was fourteen years old and left him a large plantation. Jefferson was fond of athletic sports, but never wasted his time upon them. When a student at Williamsburg College, he often studied twelve hours out of the twenty-four, his rugged frame enabling him to stand this strain without harm. He was graduated during the stirring times just before the Revolution. After this, he married a wealthy lady and built a fine mansion, which he called Monticello (mŏn te-chel'lo). He was one of the most ardent of patriots and was a member of the Virginia legislature while but a young man. A little later he was elected to Congress. It will not be forgotten that he was the author of the Declaration of Independence. Among the many excellent things he did was to secure the repeal of the law which enacted that the land owned in a family should descend to the oldest son, as it does in England. This is known as the law of entail. In several of the States religion was established by law. So far as this applied to Virginia, he had the law abolished, and no one there was taxed to support any form of religion. During a part of the Revolution, Jefferson was governor of Virginia. He suffered

much domestic affliction, four of his six children dying in infancy, while his wife passed away at the close of the Revolution. Jefferson succeeded Franklin as minister to France, remaining abroad five years. He served as Washington's Secretary of State, resigning on the last day of July, 1793, and returning to Monticello.

Jefferson was the founder of the Democratic party of to-day.

PERIOD IV
THE REPUBLIC AND
THE CONSTITUTION
1783
TO
1829



AARON BURR

Although a rich man, he favored simplicity and economy. He discontinued the social receptions, because he thought them imitations of royalty. He would not tell his birthday, through fear that it would be celebrated. He discarded the fashionable silver buckles on his shoes, and used common leather strings. He preferred that every kind of title should be omitted when he was addressed. He

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Jefferson's
 Cabinet

ranks among the greatest of all our Presidents, and his administrations were among the most important in the history of our country.

Jefferson enjoyed a comparatively tranquil time with his advisers. He selected James Madison, of Virginia, for his Secretary of State. Samuel Dexter, of Massachusetts, became Secretary of the Treasury; General Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, Secretary of War; Benjamin Stoddert, of Maryland, Secretary of the Navy; Joseph Habersham, of Georgia, Postmaster-General; and Levi Lincoln, of Massachusetts, Attorney-General. He paid these gentlemen the compliment of saying, at the end of his two terms, that had he to choose again, he would select the same advisers. Nevertheless, some friction occurred. In those days, the administration was believed to end at midnight, March 3d, instead of twelve hours later, as is now the case. Jefferson ordered Lincoln, his Attorney-General, to take possession of the office of Secretary of State at midnight, March 3d, so as to stop the issuing of any more commissions by Adams' men. Dexter, a relic of the Adams administration, was requested to resign, but refused. He was removed, and Albert Gallatin, of Pennsylvania, became Secretary of the Treasury. He held that office from May 14, 1801 to February 9, 1804, during which he gained the reputation of being one of the foremost financiers of the age. John Breckinridge, of Kentucky, succeeded Lincoln as Attorney-General, holding that office from 1805 to 1807, when he died of typhus fever.

Measures of
 the Administration

President Jefferson resolved to administer every department of the government with the strictest economy. He cut down the diplomatic corps, submitted to Congress a bill for lessening the number of the judiciary, and proposed to remit the taxes. He went further than was wise, as was afterwards proved when he reduced the navy, which was already weak and should have been stronger. He insisted that he could manage affairs better by having his friends rather than the enemies of his administration in public office, so he filled nearly all of them with Republicans, or perhaps, as we should say, with Democrats. Thus he was the first President to adopt the principle that "to the victors belong the spoils." Congress removed the tax on distilled spirits and certain other manufactures, and Jefferson dismissed a large number of collectors of internal revenue, whose support had taken a great deal of money from the taxpayers. The unpopular Sedition law was repealed and the Alien law greatly changed. Then a systematic effort was made to reduce the public debt.

It may be said that Jefferson and his supporters introduced a new era into American life. They laughed at the stiff, formal fashions of the Federalists. They ceased wearing wigs and queues, being satisfied with the hair that nature placed on their heads, which they cut short, as it is now worn. Jefferson himself always dressed with great plainness, and sometimes indeed was slovenly in his attire. The Democrats, as we shall call them from this time forward, insisted that every man should be allowed to vote, no matter whether he was wealthy or owned not a dollar's worth of property. Outside of New England, Democratic ideas controlled the country, though the manner of government has never been really changed since it was organized.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

General prosperity continued to increase. American commerce expanded to a wonderful degree. The leading nations of Europe being at war, our vessels secured most of the carrying trade of the world. Money came in so fast that by and by the greater part of the public debt was paid. The most important work of Jefferson's administration, however, was the gain of an enormous area of territory, more, in fact, than all we owned up to that time.

General
 Prosperity

We have already spoken of the immense country designated as Louisiana. It then included all the territory west of the Mississippi to the Rocky Mountains, from British America to the Gulf of Mexico. The area of the United States, when Jefferson became President, was 827,844 square miles. The extent of Louisiana alone was 1,171,931 square miles.

In 1802 France made peace with Great Britain, Spain, and Holland, and Bonaparte turned his attention to America. Spain had secretly ceded Louisiana back to France, and Bonaparte thought that he might establish a colonial empire there. Had he done so, he would have gained command of the Mississippi and the Gulf of Mexico. England was anxious to have him do this, for, as she thought, it would be a check upon American expansion; but Jefferson saw the danger, and wrote to Robert Livingston, our envoy at Paris, to urge upon the French Government the imprudence of retaining so large an area, three thousand miles from home. Bonaparte saw that Louisiana was more likely to prove a source of weakness than of strength to France, while the stronger we grew the worse would it fare with his old enemy, England. The French Government was badly in need of money, and Bonaparte proposed to sell the ter-

Purchase
 of Louisiana

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Extent
 of Louisiana

ritory to us. The price was readily agreed upon, and the bargain was made April 30, 1803, the sum paid being \$15,000,000. From this new territory have since been formed the States of Louisiana, Arkansas, Missouri, Iowa, Kansas, Nebraska, North and South Dakota, Montana, Oklahoma, the Indian Territory, and most of the States of Minnesota, Colorado, and Wyoming. The government of the new territory was offered to Lafayette, but he declined it. Twelve thousand acres of the new possession, however, was presented to him. Peaceable possession was taken on the 20th of the following December. Perhaps it was natural that, while the West was delighted over the purchase, the East was uneasy lest its advantages should draw most of its population and wealth from the older portions of the country, a fear which proved unfounded.

We have referred to the insolence of the Barbary States, in northern Africa. These were Morocco, Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli. The inhabitants were Mussulmans, and looked upon all Christian countries as heathen, who deserved to be plundered and slain. They sent out piratical expeditions, which captured the vessels of the most powerful nations, who agreed to pay them a tribute each year on condition that they would let their commerce alone. The Barbary States were so far off, that it was then thought cheaper to pay their demands, and even submit to their outrages, than to send men-of-war to chastise them. Sometimes it happened that our Government was a little tardy in delivering the tribute, in which case the barbarian ruler would add a heavy penalty, which we had humbly to pay. He insisted also in placing his own valuation on the goods, which was about one-half or a third of what they cost us. It will be seen, therefore, that those insolent Mohammedans had a very fine thing of it.

An Humiliating
 Duty

Captain William Bainbridge took the tribute to Algiers in 1800, in the frigate *George Washington*. He could hardly repress his disgust at having to perform this humiliating duty; but, as an officer, he was obliged to obey orders. The Dey of Algiers commanded him to carry the tribute of the Dey to the Sultan of Constantinople, and to haul down his own flag and run up that of Algiers. Bainbridge angrily refused. "You are my slaves, for you pay me tribute," said the Dey; "you must do as I tell you." And Bainbridge did, for the castle guns in the harbor held him at their mercy. The Sultan, who had never heard of the United States, saw the Stars and

Stripes in the Bosphorus for the first time. Bainbridge, on his return, wrote to the Secretary of the Navy, saying that "I hope I shall

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829



HUMILIATION OF CAPTAIN BAINBRIDGE

never again be sent to Algiers with tribute, unless I am authorized to deliver it from the mouth of our cannon."

The news of this incident naturally excited indignation in the

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

United States. The economy of the government had reduced the navy to thirteen frigates; but it was believed that these few ships, manned by our gallant tars, were sufficient to protect our commerce in the Mediterranean. In the spring of 1801, President Jefferson ordered Commodore Dale to cruise off the North African coasts, with a squadron consisting of the frigates *President*, *Philadelphia*, *Essex*,



STEPHEN DECATUR

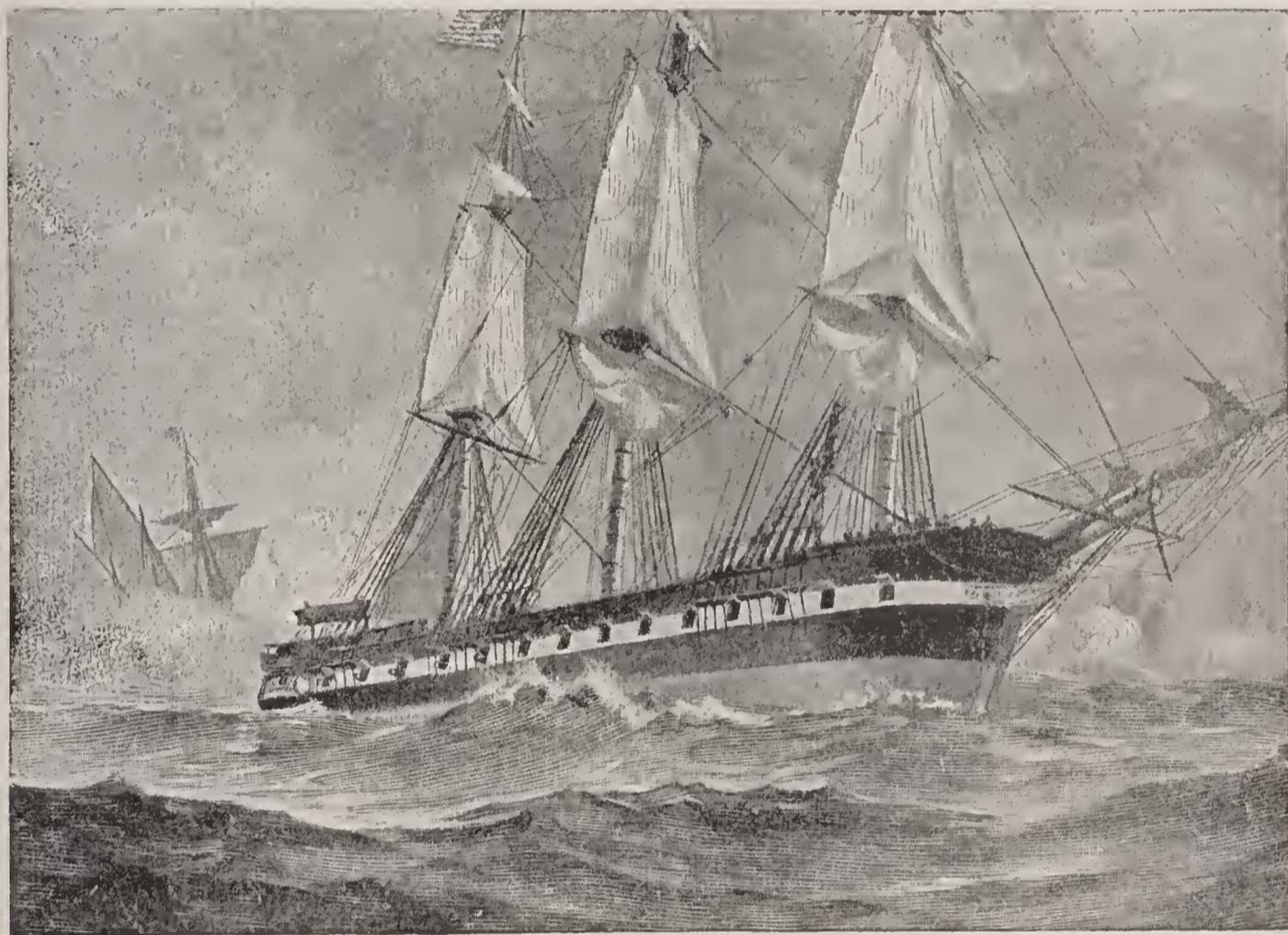
War De-
 clared by
 Tripoli

and *Enterprise*. Reaching Gibraltar in July, Dale learned that Tripoli had declared war against the United States, which reciprocated the compliment June 10, 1801. Probably the ruler thought we were not quite as meek as we should be, or were too slow in paying over our tribute. His pirates were already hunting for American vessels, but they became guarded when the men-of-war appeared. The following year the frigates *Chesapeake*, *Constitution*, *New York*,

John Adams, *Adams*, and *Enterprise* were sent to the same waters, under the command of Commodore Richard V. Morris. The harbor of Tripoli was blockaded, and the *Chesapeake* had a hot fight with some Tripolitan gunboats, which were defeated. In 1803, the whole squadron appeared off the Barbary coast, and for the time American commerce was not disturbed. There was so much dissatisfaction with Morris, who had accomplished little, that the President dismissed him from the service without bringing him to trial.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

The *Philadelphia* captured a Moorish cruiser, which had authority



CAPTURE OF THE PHILADELPHIA

from the governor of Tangier to destroy American commerce. Commodore Preble demanded an explanation from the emperor, and he disavowed the act of the governor. Shortly after this, the *Philadelphia*, while pursuing a blockade runner, ran upon a reef in the harbor of Tripoli. She was helpless, and was quickly surrounded by gunboats, who captured Bainbridge and his men and quickly made slaves of them. The vessel was floated off by the enemy when the tide rose, but one night in February, 1804, a vessel drifted close up to the *Philadelphia*. When hailed, she replied that she was a merchantman, that had lost her anchor and therefore was unable to control

Loss of
 the Phil-
 adelphia

PERIOD IV

THE REPUB-
LIC AND
THE CONSTI-
TUTION1783
TO
1829

her movements. By this stratagem she approached nigh enough to make fast to the frigate. At the moment she did so, Lieutenant Stephen Decatur and a number of volunteers leaped up and climbed upon the deck of the *Philadelphia*. The terrified Tripolitans were driven from the decks, and the frigate was fired in several places. Then the daring wrecking-party withdrew and reached the fleet in safety. The *Philadelphia* was burned to the water's edge.

Bom-
bardment
of Tripoli

Commodore Preble entered the harbor of Tripoli some time after this and bombarded the town from his mortar-boats, his frigates and schooners meanwhile engaging the batteries. One of the gunboats, under Lieutenant James Decatur, a younger brother of Stephen, compelled a Tripolitan gunboat to strike her colors. As the lieutenant stepped on the deck to take possession, the treacherous captain shot him dead, and the boats swung apart. Stephen Decatur had just captured another gunboat, and when he learned of the murder of his brother, he made chase after the escaping enemy and led the charge over her side. The Algerine captain was a man of giant stature, dressed in gaudy uniform, and he rushed forward to meet the American, confident of readily overcoming him, for the "heathen" was but a stripling in size compared with himself. Amid fierce fighting around them the combatants speedily came face to face. The Moor lunged at Decatur with a pike, while Decatur parried so dexterously that the giant swung half-way round on his feet, but bounded back with agility, at the moment Decatur made a sweeping blow with his sword, which would have hewed off the head of his foe had it landed, but it struck the pike and the blade snapped in two near the hilt. The pike was coming again and Decatur partly parried it with the broken weapon, but the point inflicted a wound on his breast. Seizing the pike, he wrenched it from his enemy's grasp, flung it aside, and leaped at his foe, neither of them having weapon in hand.

Daring
Exploit
of
Lieuten-
ant
Stephen
Decatur

Decatur was noted from boyhood for his skill in wrestling, but the herculean Moor brought him to the deck flat on his back, with his enemy on top. The Tripolitan reached down to draw his yataghan (a dagger about eight inches long, curved like a scimeter, and with an ivory handle) which was in front of him, in the sash around his waist. Reading his purpose, Decatur flung his legs over the back of his foe, and, with his left arm around his neck, held him so close that the Moor could not force his hand between their two bodies. Decatur's pistol was on his right hip and he readily drew it.



THE "WASP" AND THE "FROLIC"

Reaching up over the back of his foe, Decatur turned the muzzle downwards towards himself and pressed the trigger. The chances were that the bullet would pass through both bodies, but fortunately it did not. A bone checked its course, and the Moor rolled over on the deck dead. Decatur saved his life by a desperate act, which was characteristic of him.* During this struggle, Decatur was attacked by another barbarian, who would have slain him but for Reuben James, a sailor, who, his arms being disabled, thrust his head forward and received the blow on his skull. A frightful wound was the result, and it seemed impossible that James should survive for an hour, but he lived nearly forty years afterwards and did gallant service in the War of 1812.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

A Desperate Exploit

Tripoli was bombarded repeatedly, but the bomb-shells were of inferior quality and little harm was done. Then the *Intrepid*, in which Decatur captured the *Philadelphia*, was fitted out as a bomb-ketch. A hundred barrels of powder, with shot, shell, and scraps of iron, were stowed in the hold and spread over the deck. The purpose was to send this terrific torpedo among the Tripolitan fleet and explode it. The *Intrepid* was placed in charge of Captain Richard Somers, Lieutenant Henry Wadsworth (an uncle of Longfellow the poet, who was named for him), and eleven men, who were to sail stealthily to a given point, light a slow match, and then row away in small boats. The *Intrepid* was convoyed to the western entrance to the harbor by several small vessels, under charge of Master-Commandant Charles Stewart, who there bade good-by to Somers. Somers declared that if he found himself in danger of capture, he would blow up the bomb-ketch while still aboard of her.

The Bomb-Ketch

The night was clear overhead, the stars shining, but a haze rested on the water.

"We watched the *Intrepid*," said Admiral Stewart more than sixty years after the event, "as it slowly disappeared in the gloom. I held my night-glass levelled, but it was soon lost to sight. Then came the anxious minutes of suspense. I was still looking, when I saw a point of light move rapidly to one side, slightly rising and falling, as it would do, if a man held a lantern in his hand while run-

* This is the exact story as Admiral Charles Stewart told it to the writer, and he received it from Decatur, within two hours after the fight. Decatur brought away the yataghan of his enemy and presented it to Stewart, his intimate friend from boyhood.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

ning. Then the light dropped from sight, as if the one carrying it had leaped down a hatchway. I knew what it meant. Somers had been discovered and was about to blow up the *Intrepid*. Suddenly a vast column of fire shot upwards, and the sea rocked. The air was filled with flaming bombs, sails, missiles and fragments which continued splashing into the water, as it seemed to me, for several minutes, when all became dark and silent as before. It can never be known whether the explosion was intentional or not, but I have no doubt that Somers deliberately blew up the ketch, when he found that it was a choice between that and being taken prisoner."

A Land
 Move-
 ment

Commodore Samuel Barron arrived in November, 1804, with the *President* and the *Constellation*, and superseded Commodore Preble. The squadron now consisted of ten vessels, carrying two hundred and sixty-four guns. During the blockade of Tripoli, a land movement was undertaken against the province, under the management of William Eaton, our consul at Tunis. Yusef, the bashaw of Tripoli, had gained his throne by murdering his father and displacing his brother Hamet Caramalli, who fled to Egypt. Nursing his resentment against his usurping brother, Hamet readily agreed to Eaton's designs to restore him to power. In March, 1805, Eaton and Hamet left Egypt, with a strong force of Egyptian soldiers and seventy American seamen. They marched a thousand miles across the borders of the Libyan desert, and, in the latter part of April, with the help of three American vessels, captured the Tripolitan city of Derne, on the Mediterranean coast. They were about to march against the capital, when news came that Tobias Lear, the American consul-general, had made a treaty of peace with the bashaw, who was well-nigh frightened out of his senses. The treaty was made June 3, 1805. By its terms, sixty thousand dollars were paid for the captives in the hands of the Tripolitans, an exchange of prisoners was made, and the paying of tribute was henceforth ended. Poor Hamet was now in a bad plight. He had come a long way across the desert, buoyed up by the promise of the United States to restore his throne to him, but the terms of the treaty forbade anything of the kind. He had to leave his wife and children with his brother as hostages for his peaceful conduct. He visited the United States, and Congress finally granted him a beggarly twenty-four hundred dollars, with which he had to be content.

The
 Terms of
 Peace



BLOWING UP OF THE KETCH

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY W. P. SNYDER

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Upon the recommendation of President Jefferson, Congress made an appropriation for an exploring expedition across the continent from the Mississippi. A company, numbering thirty men, left the Mississippi, May 14, 1804, under the command of Captains Meriwether Lewis and William Clarke. They ascended the Missouri in a flotilla for twenty-six hundred miles, giving names to the Jeffer-



DUEL BETWEEN BURR AND HAMILTON

The
 Lewis
 and
 Clarke
 Expedition

son, Gallatin, and Madison streams, which unite to form the Missouri. A detachment was then left in charge of the boats, and the remainder, mounted on horses, rode across the mountains, discovering two rivers which were named for Lewis and Clarke, and traced to the Columbia, which was subsequently followed to the Pacific. These were the first white men to cross the American continent north of Mexico. They were gone two years, and brought back much valuable information. Captain Clarke became governor of Missouri Territory, and later Superintendent of Indian Affairs, dying

in St. Louis in 1838. Captain Lewis was governor of Missouri Territory from 1806 to 1809, when he unfortunately committed suicide.

In the summer of 1804, the whole country was shocked by a deplorable event. Although Aaron Burr was a brilliant man, with unusual gifts, Alexander Hamilton believed him an unfit person to hold office, and strongly opposed him at all times. It was he who prevented Burr from becoming President. Burr finally challenged him to a duel, and it was fought at Weehawken, on the Hudson, opposite New York, where a son of Hamilton had been killed some time before, in accordance with the barbarous so-called "code of honor." Hamilton fired his pistol in the air, but Burr took deliberate aim and Hamilton fell, mortally wounded, dying the next day. Burr presided in the Senate after this murder, but his friends fell away from him, and he was not renominated with Jefferson in the autumn following. The ambitious but vicious man formed a scheme for founding an empire in the south. The truth is not fully known, but many believed that he meant to intrigue for the possession of Mexico, while others thought that he had designs upon Louisiana. Harman Blennerhassett, who had a charming home on Blennerhassett's Island, in the Ohio, near Marietta, received a visit from Burr and readily fell in with his plans and agreed to give him all the help he could. Burr continued down the river to New Orleans, where he held several secret conferences with General James Wilkinson, commander of the American army in that section, and also governor of Louisiana. Burr insisted that Wilkinson pledged himself to support his scheme, but Wilkinson denied it, though his course on other occasions makes it probable that Burr told the truth about him. Burr was finally arrested on the charge of treason, and brought to trial in Richmond, Virginia, in 1807, but was acquitted.

Ohio was admitted into the Union, November 29, 1802. It was a part of the Northwest Territory, being the first State formed under the Ordinance of 1787. The pioneer settlement was made at Marietta, in 1788. Cincinnati, first called Losantiville, was founded in the same year. The settlers suffered greatly from Indians, until the latter were subdued by Wayne in 1794. Emigration then became rapid, and the State speedily advanced in prosperity, until it grew to be one of the leading members of the Union. Its name means: "The beautiful river."

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Duel
 Between
 Burr and
 Hamilton

Admission of
 Ohio

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

In the presidential election of 1804, the Federalist candidates were C. C. Pinckney, of South Carolina, and Rufus King, of New York. George Clinton, of New York, took the place of Aaron Burr with Jefferson on the Democratic ticket. Out of the one hundred and seventy-six electoral votes the Federalists received only fourteen.*

* Charles Cotesworth Pinckney had been attorney-general of his colony, South Carolina, and member of its Provincial Congress in 1775. He was a major in the war, and surrendered at Charleston in 1780. He was a member of the Federal Convention in 1787, and the leader in his State in securing the ratification of the Constitution in 1788. As we have learned, he accepted the mission to France in 1796, but the Directory refused to recognize him. His answer to the French proposals to bribe the American envoys was the famous phrase: "Millions for defence, but not one cent for tribute!" Rufus King had been a member of the Massachusetts legislature, and a delegate to the Continental Congress, where, in 1785, he moved the provision against slavery in the Northwest Territory. He was a member of the Constitutional Convention of 1787, and zealously urged its ratification by Massachusetts. Removing to New York, he was a Federalist United States Senator in 1789-1796. He served as minister to London 1796-1803, and again in the Senate 1813-1825. His last service to the Court of London was 1825-1826. George Clinton was a soldier in the French and Indian War and a member of the New York Assembly. For some time after the opening of the Revolution he was a member of the Continental Congress, but soon entered the military field. He was brigadier-general in 1777, when he made an unsuccessful defence of the Highland forts. He was the first governor of the State of New York, serving from 1777 to 1795, and opposed with might and main the ratification of the Federal Constitution. He was again governor 1801-1804, and, being elected Vice-President in the latter year, acted as such under Jefferson and Madison until 1812. He gave the casting vote in 1811 against the United States Bank.





CHAPTER XLIII

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION—SECOND TERM, 1805—1809

[*Authorities:* Jefferson's second period of office brought his administration into diplomatic embroilment with the two great powers of Europe, which were hurling against each other "Orders in Council" answered by "Milan" and "Berlin Decrees," in the effort to cripple one another's commerce, while their respective fleets had but lately met in a death embrace at Trafalgar. It was a trying time for a neutral nation like the young Republic, irritated at Napoleon's adoption of a "Continental System" and the seizure of American merchandise, and stung to the quick at Britain's arrogant assumption of "the right of search" and the impressment of seamen. Diplomatic overtures and the resort to an "embargo" were alike failures; while non-intercourse did not help matters much, for it was but a temporary expedient, which postponed war only by acquiescence in a present humiliating necessity. What the results were to be, we shall see hereafter. Interest in the naval engagements of the period is divided by the appearance of the first steamboat as an auxiliary of commerce. The authorities are the same as those cited at the head of the previous chapter.]

The
First
Ocean
Steamer



It will be recalled that, previous to the general election of 1804, the electoral method provided that the electors should ballot for two candidates for the Presidency. The one receiving the highest number of votes became President, and the one receiving the next highest became Vice-President. Thus when the two officers belonged to different parties the administration would be changed if the President died. The prolonged contest over the first election of Jefferson and the danger thus brought to the Republic led Congress to amend the Constitution so that Jefferson was voted for as President, and George Clinton as Vice-President.

Elect-
oral
Method
Previous
to 1804

PERIOD IV

THE REPUBLIC AND
THE CONSTITUTION1783
TO
1829Jefferson's
Second
Inauguration

Jefferson's second inauguration was a quiet event. He took the oath in the Senate Chamber and delivered his inaugural address to the distinguished audience there assembled. A procession was formed at the Navy Yard, consisting of the mechanics employed there, and, with the insignia of the ship-building art, they escorted Jefferson to the White House. Jefferson declined to have soldiers about him, and the local troops who took part did so in a subordinate capacity. The streets were crowded with people, who cheered him at every step of the way. He had lost none of his popularity, for he was a great man, and, above all, a true American who proved his patriotism in every test to which it was subjected.

One of the most noteworthy events of Jefferson's second term was the first voyage of a steamboat on the Hudson River. The boat was the *Katherine of Clermont*, and was constructed by Robert Fulton, a native of Lancaster County, Pennsylvania. While Fulton was working patiently at the boat, he was ridiculed by nearly every one who knew of its construction. The boat was called "Fulton's Folly," and all were sure that the attempt to navigate the river with it would be a failure. The *Clermont*, as she is generally called, was nearly twenty feet wide, and more than a hundred feet long, with side-paddle wheels, and a sheet-iron boiler that had been brought from England. There were expressions of wonder, followed by cheering from the crowds on the wharf, when they saw the boat making slow headway against the current. It required thirty-two hours for it to reach Albany, one hundred and fifty miles distant. The voyage marked an era in river navigation and was a great boon to the West, for now the people could navigate the numerous rivers without regard to wind or tide. The first Western steamboat was built at Pittsburg in 1811, and within a few years steamboats were on all the leading rivers. The first seagoing steamship was the *Savannah*, which crossed the Atlantic in twenty-six days, but ocean navigation did not fairly set in until more than twenty years afterwards.

First
Steam-
boat
Navigation

It must not be thought that steam had never been employed as a motor or moving force until applied to Fulton's *Clermont*. The steam-engine invented by Watts had been in use for forty years. It is claimed that as far back as 1543 Blasco de Garay propelled a boat by means of steam applied to paddle-wheels, and in 1707 Papin ran a boat on a river in Germany, while in 1763 William Henry experimented with his steamboat on the Conestoga River, in Pennsylvania.

Still other experiments were made between the years 1774 and 1786. It has been shown that John Fitch had a crudely constructed steamboat on the Delaware in the latter year, besides which similar experiments were made later on in the same river and also in England, but Fulton's *Clermont* is considered the first practical steamboat.*

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Bearing upon the question of the first American steamboat, is the



ROBERT FULTON

following extract from an article by James Weir, Jr., in *The Engineering Magazine*:

“To Robert Fulton is generally given the credit of having discovered the first method of propelling vessels through the agency of

* It is interesting to know that a small child who made this first voyage on the *Clermont* lived until 1895. She was Mrs. Margaret Cook, of Columbus, Ohio.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Credit
 to
 Whom
 Credit is
 Due

Achievements of
 James
 Rumsey

steam; yet it can be clearly shown that two men antedated him, even here in America, in this discovery. One preceded him by almost twenty years, the other by eighteen or nineteen years.

“The man who, in America, first discovered a method of successfully propelling a vessel against wind and tide, with steam as the motive power, was James Rumsey. The Government of the United States has recognized this to be an established fact, for in 1839 Congress ordered a medal to be struck in his honor, commemorative of this brilliant achievement. James Rumsey was born of Scotch parents in 1754. Maryland was his native State, but he removed to Shepherdstown, Va., when about twenty years of age. He had all the native shrewdness and astuteness generally ascribed to the Scotchman. He was a man of fine presence, tall and powerfully built. While, strictly speaking, not an educated man, he was an omnivorous reader and well versed in matters pertaining to his profession—civil engineering. He was a good talker, but a better listener, and his neighbors regarded him with respect and looked upon him as a man of undoubted genius. He early turned his attention to invention, and the writer had until a short time ago a pistol made by him, which shows his inventive ability.

“When Rumsey removed from Maryland to Shepherdstown, he entered the service of the Potomac Company as superintendent. While in the service of this company he suggested many novel views in mechanics, and invented and put into operation numerous improvements in milling, especially in the application of hydraulics as the motive power. The steam engine was then in its infancy. Watt was just beginning to perfect his wonderful invention. Machinists were rude and unskilled in their profession, and Rumsey was forced to plan, model, and make his own machinery. He even did his most important casting himself—making the moulds and running off the metal with his own hands. Testimony adduced before the House of Representatives in 1839 shows that Rumsey had conceived the idea of steam navigation as early as August, 1783 (*Congressional Record*). Laboring under very adverse circumstances, he succeeded in the autumn of 1784 in making a test of some of the principles of his engine and propelling apparatus. In October, 1784, the Virginia Legislature passed an act “guaranteeing to him the exclusive use of his invention in navigating the waters of Virginia” (Stat. Virg., 1784). About this time he wrote to General Washington, com-

municating to him the principles of his invention. General Washington wrote of Rumsey's invention to Governor Johnson of Maryland. This letter is dated November, 1787, and was produced before a committee of the House in 1839, at which time the following resolution was offered and passed:

“Resolved, by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America, in Congress assembled: That the President be, and is hereby, requested to present to James Rumsey, Jr., the son and only surviving child of James Rumsey, deceased, a suitable gold medal, commemorative of his father's services and high agency in giving to the world the benefits of the steamboat.”

In January, 1785, Rumsey obtained a patent from the General Assembly of Maryland for navigating the waters of that State (Acts Gen. Ass. Maryland, 1785). During the whole of this year he was busy in the construction of a steamboat. In 1786 he successfully navigated this boat on the Potomac at Shepherdstown in the presence of hundreds of spectators.

It was at this time that Napoleon Bonaparte fairly entered upon his career as the greatest military genius of his age. All Europe was in turmoil, and he overturned kingdoms and dynasties as a child topples over toys. The only nation that seemed able to offer any real check to his aggressions was England. The two countries were long at war with each other, and the other nations of Europe could not help but suffer in the embroilment. France had the most effective army and Great Britain the most powerful navy. Each tried to make the other nations act as its friends. In 1806, Great Britain proclaimed a blockade of all that part of Europe which had taken sides with France, and forbade vessels to enter its harbors. Napoleon promptly answered this with the *Berlin Decree*, which forbade the British harbors to all vessels of other nations. In 1807, by an Order in Council, Great Britain forbade American vessels to enter any harbors in Europe except her own and those of Sweden, which was friendly to England. Napoleon retorted with the *Milan Decree*, which ordered the capture and sale of any American vessel that should sail into a British port.

This was a fatal blow to American commerce. If one of our vessels tried to trade with Europe, without first entering a British harbor and paying “tribute,” she was liable to capture by English cruisers, just as was formerly the case with the Barbary States. If

PERIOD IV
THE REPUBLIC AND
THE CONSTITUTION
1783
TO
1829

Action
of Congress

A Fatal
Blow to
American Navigation

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

The
 British
 "Right
 of
 Search"

she complied with British law, then the French cruisers would seize her, should the chance offer. This was in itself bad enough, but England's claim to the right of impressment was tenfold more irritating. She would stop a vessel belonging to any other nation, and forcibly take away sailors who had been born within the kingdom. Her excuse was that no such person could free himself from British allegiance by becoming a citizen of another country. "Once an English subject always an English subject," was her dictum.

Great Britain, as has been said, was engaged in a gigantic war with France and had need of every sailor. Many of them deserted, and some found refuge in our own service. She required them all, and for that reason determined to have them. This was the British view, but the true doctrine of nations is that the deck of every vessel is as sacred as the soil of the country whose flag floats at her mast-head. England, therefore, had no more right to stop and search an American vessel than she had to land a body of soldiers and rifle the houses in any city of this country.

In the spring of 1806, the British ship *Leander* was cruising off New York and making a vigorous hunt for runaway seamen. Suspecting a coasting vessel near Sandy Hook, she fired into her and killed one of her crew. President Jefferson, on the 3d of May, issued a proclamation, forbidding the *Leander* and the two ships in her company to enter the waters of the United States, calling upon all military and civil officers to apprehend Henry Whitby, the captain of the *Leander*, on a charge of murder, and prohibiting any communication between the shore and the offending ships. Special envoys were sent to England to arrange the trouble, but nothing was accomplished, and very soon the most aggravating outrage of all occurred.

The
 Chesapeake
 and the
 Leopard

On the 22d of June, the *Chesapeake*, of thirty-six guns, under the command of Captain James Barron, was off the coast of Virginia, on her way to the Mediterranean, when she was hailed by the fifty-gun ship *Leopard*, Captain Humphreys in command, who said that he wished to send despatches to England. Such courtesies were common, and a boat was lowered and sent aboard the *Chesapeake*. The lieutenant was conducted to the cabin, where he handed Captain Barron an order, signed by Vice-Admiral Berkeley, directing all commanders in his squadron to board the *Chesapeake*, wherever found on the high seas, and make search for deserters. Captain Barron returned a note, refusing to comply with the demand, and ordered his

vessel to be cleared for action. The *Chesapeake* was in no condition for a fight. Tumbled upon the decks were cabin furniture, provisions, chicken-coops, and personal effects; even the rammers, wads, matches, gunlocks, and powder-horns could not be produced. Captain Humphreys fired a shot ahead of the *Chesapeake's* bow, and, as she did not heave to, the *Leopard* followed with a broadside which wounded several men, including the captain. Other broadsides were fired, while the *Chesapeake* could not return a single shot, owing to the confusion on her decks. Out of her crew of three hundred and seventy-five men, three were killed and eighteen wounded. She was then boarded by several officers, who mustered her crew and picked out four men who were deserters, but all claimed to be American citizens. One of them was hanged at the yard-arm, while the other three, who were negroes, saved their lives by re-entering the British service.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

This outrage caused intense anger in the United States. Captain Barron was tried by court-martial and suspended from the service for five years without pay. Years afterwards he and Decatur fought a duel, because of criticisms made by the latter upon the affair, and Decatur was killed. These alarming outrages taught the United States the need of a strong navy with which to protect her commerce, whose sails now whitened every sea. In December Congress authorized the construction of one hundred and eighty-eight additional gunboats, making a total of two hundred and fifty-seven of that class. An embargo was declared on foreign commerce, and all the war vessels were recalled from the Mediterranean. In January, 1809, the President was empowered to put in commission the frigates *United States*, *President*, and *Essex*, and the corvette *John Adams*, and to increase the naval equipment of men from fourteen hundred and twenty-five to five thousand and twenty-five men and boys. The utmost care was exercised in training the men at the guns and in working the ships, so as to be ready for instant action.*

Action
 of Con-
 gress

The President then issued a proclamation closing all American harbors and waters against the English navy, prohibited intercourse with such vessels, and sent a special minister to England to secure satisfaction. A hundred thousand men in the various States were ordered to hold themselves in readiness, and Congress was convened on the 25th of October, by which time it was expected that a reply

The
 Presi-
 dent's
 Procla-
 mation

* Maclay's "History of the United States Navy."

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

from the British ministers would be received. The action of Captain Humphreys was disavowed and reparation offered, and Admiral Berkeley was recalled. The reparation was never made, and the right of search would not be given up, but the English officers were instructed to use no needless violence in enforcing it.

We had no navy worthy of the name, and the partial concession of Great Britain averted war for the time. On the 21st of December, Congress passed the Embargo Act, which forbade all American



CHESAPEAKE AND LEOPARD

The Em-
 bargo
 Act

vessels to leave the ports of the United States. The belief was that this suspension of commercial intercourse with Great Britain and France would force those nations to recognize American neutrality. The real sufferers, however, were ourselves. The commerce of New England and New York was ruined, and the people became bitterly dissatisfied. The enemies of the measure reversed the spelling of the name and called it the "O-grab-me" act. The Embargo Act was a failure. Finally the people in New England became so desperate over the annihilation of the country's commerce that they began to talk of separating from the Union. Other parts of the country also suffered, for crops were of little value when there were no means

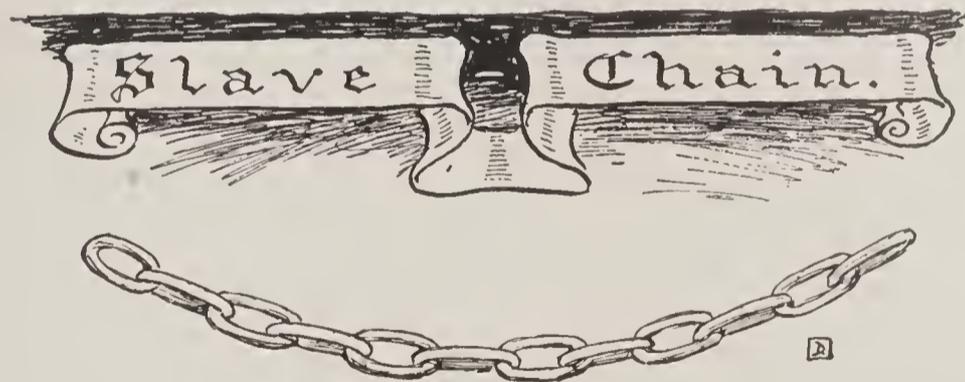
of taking them to foreign countries to sell. Great Britain was of course pleased, for she thus gained about all the trade that was left.

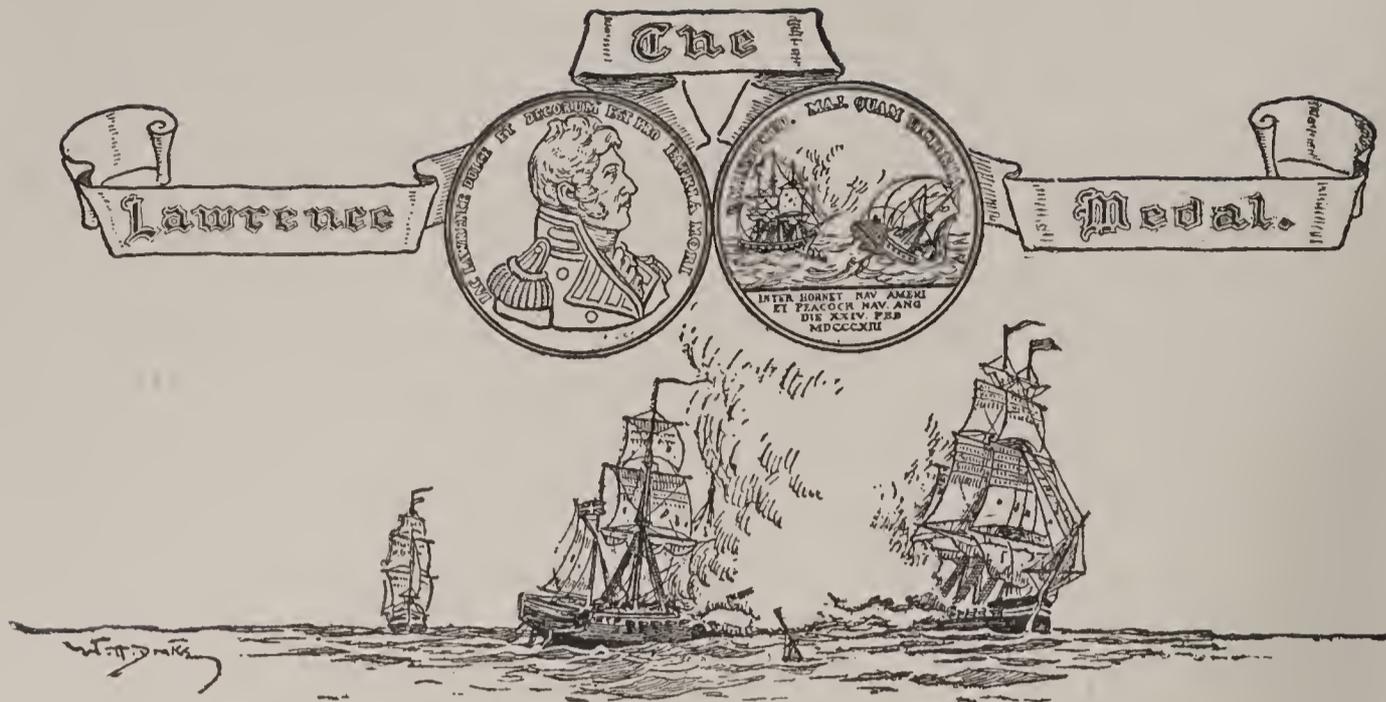
During these troublous times, the presidential election of 1808 took place. The Federalist candidates were again Pinckney and King, who received forty-seven of the one hundred and seventy-six electoral votes, the majority of votes going to James Madison and George Clinton, the latter of whom was already Vice-President. Jefferson could have been renominated, had he wished it, but he declined.

In the year 1807 Congress passed an act which made it unlawful for any person to bring slaves into the United States. Slavery existed at first in all the colonies, having been introduced into Virginia by the Dutch in 1619. It entered Massachusetts in 1638, South Carolina in 1671, and Georgia in 1751. The first American slave-ship was built in 1636, at Marblehead, Mass., and was named *The Desire*.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Slavery





CHAPTER XLIV

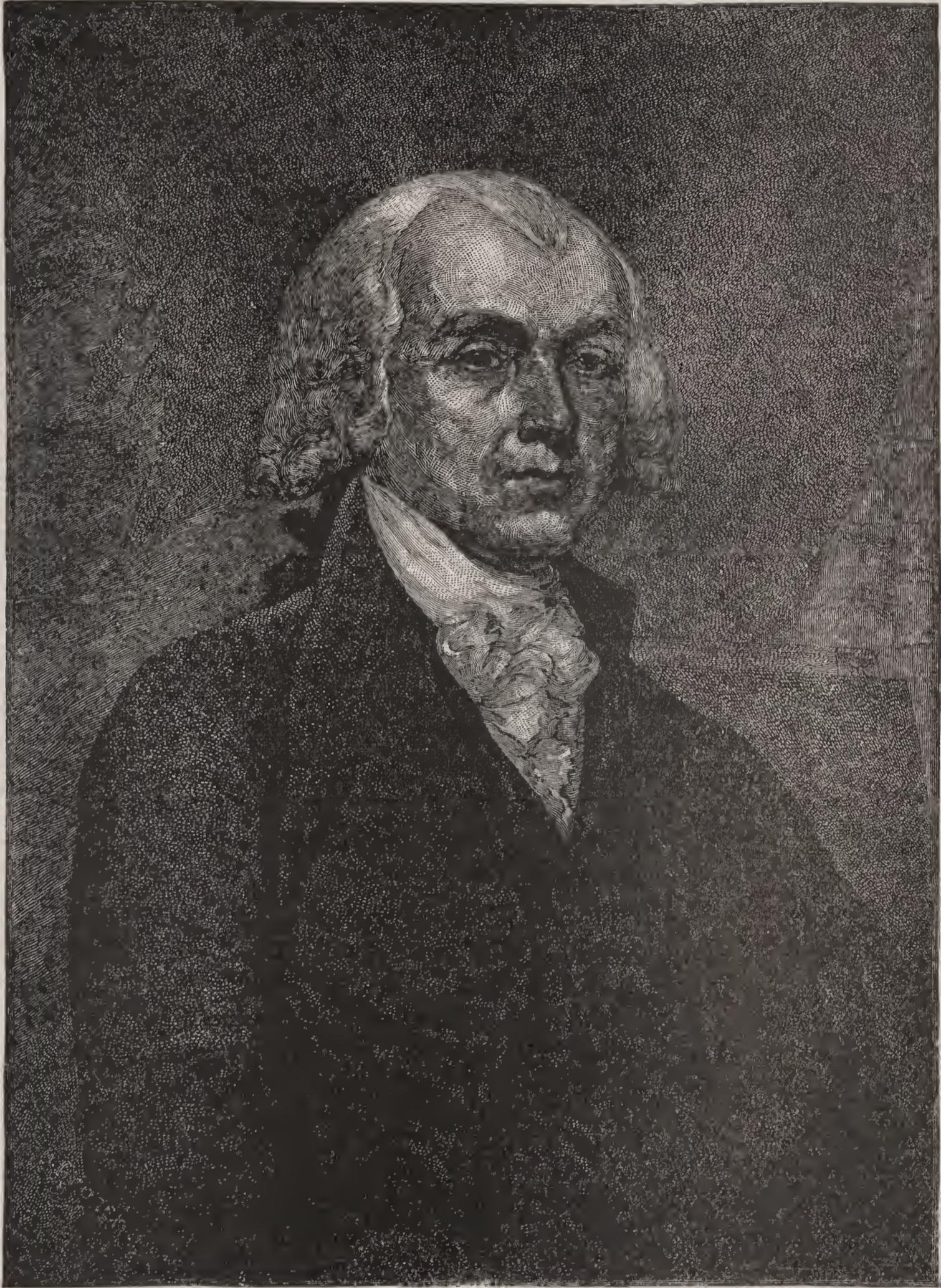
MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION—FIRST TERM, 1809-1813

[*Authorities:* When Madison assumed the Presidency, with the troubles that beset the office at the period, we begin to trace the influence of the West and South in national politics. This is distinctly seen in the attitude of Congress in relation to the then pending war with England, an attitude which neutralized the hitherto potent influences of the Middle States and those of the East. This was, in part, the result of the natural expansion westward, and, in part, the influence of Clay, who had become speaker of Congress, aided by Calhoun, the future champion of the slave power—both of whom were eager for war. But before the war came Western settlement had its sequel in another Indian rising, this time under "The Prophet," brother of Tecumseh, against whom General Harrison ("Old Tippecanoe"), was despatched to do battle. The result was such as the tribes had experience of when they, or their kin, at an earlier period, were proceeded against successively by Clarke, Harmar, St. Clair, and Wayne. The laurels won by the Kentucky militia, in conflict with the hostiles on their northern border, made the South more hot for war with England and the invasion of her sparsely settled Canadian colony. How far from united was the country in support of the "War-Hawk Party," as Clay's following was called, we shall learn from the text, as we shall learn also, in two subsequent chapters, what were the issues of the struggle. The special authorities for the period are: McMaster's "History of the People of the United States," vols. iii. and iv.; Gay's "Madison"; Schurz's "Henry Clay"; Cooley's "Michigan"; and the lives of General (President) Harrison and Tecumseh.]

The
Fourth
Presi-
dent



JAMES MADISON, the fourth President of the United States, was born in Prince George County, Virginia, March 16, 1751. He received fine educational advantages and was graduated from Princeton College at the age of twenty. He was so close a student that he permanently injured his health by his devotion to his studies. At the breaking out of the Revolution he was elected to the Virginia



JAMES MADISON

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUB-
 LIC AND
 THE CONSTI-
 TUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Legislature, and upon the return of Jefferson was offered the mission to France, but declined it. He also refused the post of Secretary of State, offered him by Washington, when it was vacated by Jefferson, his fear being that by accepting it he might bring discord into the Cabinet. He was at first a Federalist, but in time became an ardent Democrat. He served as Jefferson's Secretary of State throughout both terms. Jefferson held him in high esteem, since he was not only an able statesman, but a man of spotless character. He died June 28, 1836.

Madison's In-
 auguration

Madison's inauguration was attended by an immense assemblage. The day was ushered in by the booming of cannon, the militia companies gathering at an early hour and parading through the streets to the beating of drums. The President-elect was escorted from his house a little before noon by the troops of cavalry of Washington and Georgetown. He entered Representative Hall (now Statuary Hall) in the Capitol, attended by the Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of the Navy, the Attorney-General, and the private secretary of Jefferson, and was introduced to the two houses there assembled by a joint committee of Congress. President Jefferson had arrived without escort a few minutes before. Mr. Milledge, *pro tem.* president of the Senate, vacated the chair to Madison, who delivered his inaugural address. The oath was then administered by Chief Justice Marshall. The customary salute was fired, and, passing outside, the President reviewed the companies of District militia, drawn up between the Capitol and the East Park, after which he entered his carriage and was escorted home, where he held a reception. He did not go to the White House until later, Jefferson meanwhile holding a farewell reception. The inauguration ball, at Lang's Hotel, was, we read, the most brilliant affair of the kind ever held in Washington.

Madison's
 Cabinet

Madison's first Secretary of War was John Armstrong, who was censured so severely for the lack of success by our armies in the operations in Canada, and especially for the capture and sacking of Washington, in August, 1814, that he bowed his head before the storm and resigned in the following September. During his two administrations, Madison had in all eighteen members in his Cabinet. They were: Secretaries of State—Robert Smith, of Maryland; James Monroe of Virginia. Secretaries of the Treasury—Albert Gallatin, of Pennsylvania; George W. Campbell, of Tennessee;

Alexander J. Dallas, of Pennsylvania; William H. Crawford, of Georgia. Secretaries of War—William Eustis, of Massachusetts; John Armstrong, of New York; James Monroe, of Virginia; William H. Crawford, of Georgia. Secretaries of the Navy—Paul Hamilton, of South Carolina; William Jones, of Pennsylvania; B. W. Crowninshield, of Massachusetts. Postmasters-General—Gideon Granger, of Connecticut; Return J. Meigs, Jr., of Ohio. Attorneys-General—Cæsar A. Rodney, of Delaware; William Pinkney, of Maryland; Richard Rush, of Maryland.

PERIOD IV
THE REPUBLIC AND
THE CONSTITUTION
1783
TO
1829

Three days before the close of Jefferson's term Congress repealed the Embargo Act. This, however, afforded only partial relief, since the bulk of our trade was with Great Britain and France. The Non-Intercourse Act was passed in 1809, which allowed American merchantmen to go abroad, but forbade them to trade with the two great European nations. The law continued in force until 1810, when Congress declared that if either France or Great Britain would revoke her offensive decrees, the Non-Intercourse Act would be revived and enforced against the other. Napoleon promptly declared that his decrees were revoked; but this was a falsehood on his part, for they had not been annulled, and he had no intention of doing so. On the contrary, he enforced his decrees as severely as ever. His purpose was to array the United States against Great Britain, and he succeeded, for the Non-Intercourse Act was revived against her and she became more intolerable in her conduct than ever. Her war vessels hovered along the Atlantic coast and captured our merchantmen, often wantonly and without offering any reason for their action.

The
Non-
Inter-
course
Act

In May, 1811, the British sloop *Little Belt* was busy stopping merchant vessels off Virginia, when she hailed the American frigate *President*, under Commodore Rodgers. Rodgers's answer did not suit the Englishman, who fired a shot into the *President*. Then the American made a still more unsatisfactory reply, in the shape of a terrific broadside, followed by others, which killed eleven and wounded twenty-one of the crew of the *Little Belt*. This affair took place at night, and the name of the British vessel was not learned until the following morning. The occurrence added to the excitement in both countries. Each government approved the action of its officer and the war spirit was in consequence intensified. An incident related by Maclay will show the feeling among our sailors.

The *Little Belt*
and the
President

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Some weeks after this encounter, the frigate *United States* was cruising off the harbor of New York, under Captain Stephen Decatur, when it fell in with the British warships *Eurydice* and *Atalanta*. While the commanders were exchanging hails, a gunner aboard the *United States* handling the lanyard of his lock discharged his gun. He declared that it was an accident, but Decatur believed that it was done purposely to bring on an action. A fierce engagement would doubtless have followed had not the commanders been cool enough to await explanations. Decatur apologized for the carelessness of his gunner, who was probably as much disappointed as were his comrades that all for the time ended peaceably.

The
 Census
 of 1810

While the two nations were rapidly drifting towards war, there were events of importance occurring in other parts of the country. The population of the seventeen States, as shown by the census of 1810, was about seven and a quarter millions. Emigration poured westward in a steady stream. Sturdy settlers were clearing off the ground, building cabins, and planting crops in the fertile soil, and there were signs of the growth and prosperity which were soon to build up the new States that would speedily knock at the door of the Union.

Threat-
 ened In-
 dian
 Troubles

The Indians, however, continued sullen. They had plenty of land to the westward, but they were angered at the prospect of being driven from their homes. The British agents excited them to hostilities, and Tecumseh, the most gifted of American Indians, notified General Harrison, governor of the Northwest Territory, that he and his people would never consent to their land being occupied by the white men until such consent was given by all the tribes, instead of by the few claiming to own the lands. Had this rule been agreed to by our country, we never would have acquired any land from the Indians, from whom, it must be admitted, we have gained a great deal by dishonest means. Tecumseh* organized many of the tribes

* "The tribe from which Tecumseh sprang," observed Wm. C. Mair, in his drama, *Tecumthé*, "was a branch of the widespread Lenni Lenapé, or Delaware race, which had long settled in the South, and which for this reason received the name of Shawanoes, or 'Southerners.' Having become involved in disputes with the Creeks, Yamasees, and other powerful tribes in Georgia and Florida, the Shawanoes removed in the first half of the last century from the South to the valley of the Ohio, and spread themselves along the banks of the Scioto River and the Great Miami. The immense region west of the Alleghanies was then an unbroken wilderness, with the exception of the villages of the red men, and it was in one of these that Tecumseh (said to mean a 'shooting star') was born in 1768. His father was killed at the battle of Kanawha, where, in October, 1774,

into a league to resist invasion by the settlers. Before long the Indians in the Wabash valley began killing the white people. To give them protection, General Harrison ascended the river to Terre Haute (terr' hôte) where he built a fort. He then pushed on to the town of the Prophet, the brother of Tecumseh, who was a famous medicine man among his people. When near the town, which stood at the mouth of the Tippecanoe, a delegation of Indians met Harrison and asked for a "talk," to be held the next day. Harrison consented, though he distrusted the savages. That night his men slept on their arms.

It was not yet light on the morning of November 7, 1811, when the Indians burst into the camp and with great fury attacked the soldiers. Had the latter not been on the alert and prepared for hostilities they must have been massacred. They quickly extinguished their dimly burning camp-fires and kept their assailants at bay until daylight, when they charged upon the savages and scattered them with great loss. Of the Americans, sixty were killed and a hundred wounded. Harrison marched to the Prophet's town, which he burned and then returned to Vincennes, the capital of the Territory. Tecumseh was absent in the south at this time. The attack upon the Americans was contrary to his plans, and, when he came back and found what his brother had done, he seized him by his long hair and shook him until his teeth rattled, declaring that he had destroyed all his schemes, and that he ought to be killed. In his wrath, Tecumseh went to Canada and joined the British.

The twelfth Congress of the United States was convened November 4, 1811. The new members were "war men," most of the "submission candidates" having been defeated. The country had by this time lost its patience. The President was not so ardent a war man as some wished, and one member declared that he could

PERIOD IV
—
THE REPUBLIC AND
THE CONSTITUTION
1783
TO
1829
—

The Battle of Tippecanoe

The Twelfth Congress

Lord Dunmore defeated Chief Cornstalk. His mother was a Cherokee woman, and is said to have been delivered of Tecumseh, his celebrated brother, the Prophet, and a third brother at the same time." Like Pontiac, Tecumseh attempted to organize all the Western Indians in a confederacy against the white settlers of the region, and later on he became, with his band of Shawanoes, a redoubtable ally of the British, who gave him the rank of brigadier-general. He was with the British general, Sir Isaac Brock, at the surrender of Detroit, and with General Proctor at Fort Malden and at Fort Meigs, where he intervened to prevent the American prisoners from being massacred. At the battle of Moravian Towns, on the banks of the Thames (in the Ontario peninsula) Tecumseh commanded a portion of Proctor's army, and there, as will be seen, on the fifth of October (1813), the warrior chief met his death.



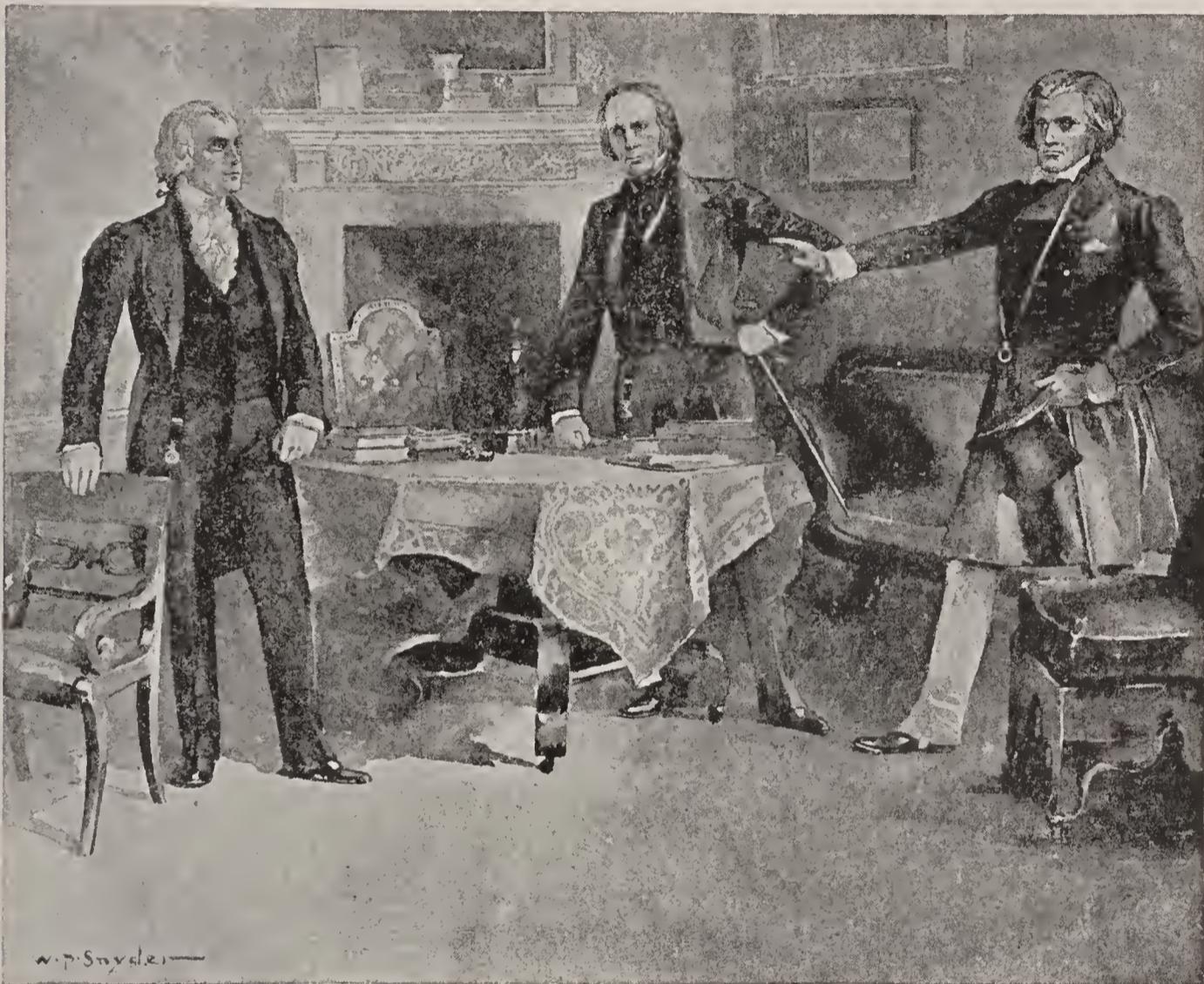
BATTLE OF TIPPECANOE

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY W. P. SNYDER

not be kicked into a fight. Henry Clay and John C. Calhoun impressed upon Madison that longer hesitation meant his overwhelming defeat at the polls and humiliation before his countrymen. Finally, on the 19th of June, 1812, war was declared with Great Britain.

It must not be supposed that the War of 1812, as it is called, was favored in every part of the country. It was strongly supported in some sections, and warmly opposed in others. New York, Philadel-

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829
 Declaration of
 War
 with
 England



STRENGTHENING THE PRESIDENT

phia, and Baltimore passed resolutions approving the declaration of war. A paper in Baltimore which opposed it was mobbed. In the rioting several people were killed, and General Richard Henry Lee, who commanded the military that suppressed the disorder, was so badly injured that he never fully recovered. The strongest opposition to the war was manifested in New England. The legislatures of Massachusetts, Connecticut, and New Jersey protested against it, and the shipping in Boston hung their flags at half-mast, but the enthusiasm elsewhere swept away all opposition. It was ordered that

Opposi-
 tion to
 the War

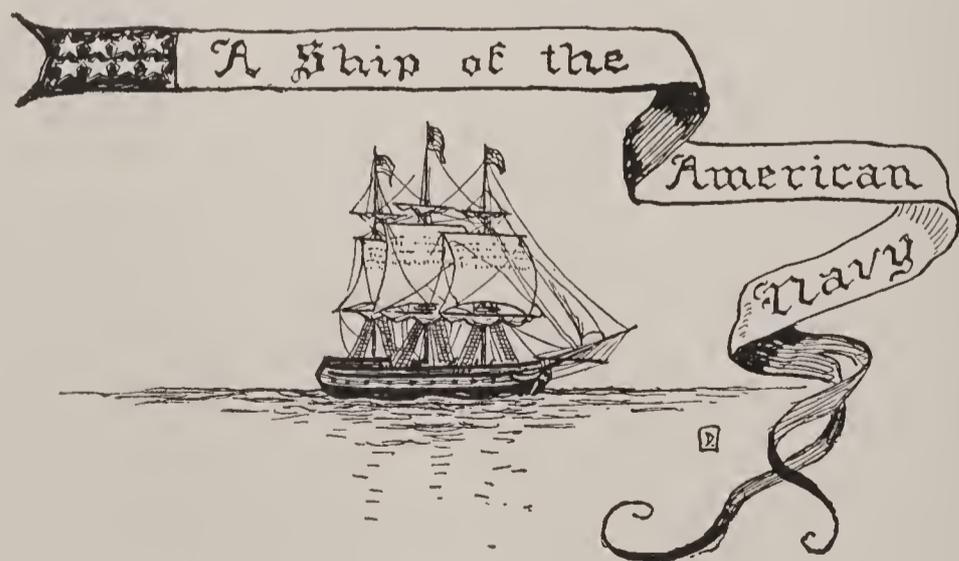
PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

War
 Measures

Weakness of
 Our
 Country

the regular army of six thousand men should be increased to twenty-five thousand, to which were added a call for fifty thousand volunteers. The States were asked to provide one hundred thousand militia for the defence of the coasts and harbors. Congress meanwhile authorized a national loan of \$11,000,000, and Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, was appointed major-general and commander of the army. He had been a member of Arnold's expedition to Quebec in 1775, and had assisted in the capture of Burgoyne. Thomas Pinckney was made also a major-general. The leading brigadiers were James Wilkinson, Joseph Bloomfield, William Hull, and Wade Hampton.

It cannot be said that we were in a very effective condition to measure strength with Great Britain, for our navy consisted of only seventeen men-of-war, of over fifteen thousand aggregate tonnage, with four hundred and forty-two guns, the officers and men numbering about five thousand. On the other hand, the stupendous navy of Great Britain included one thousand and forty-eight men-of-war of an aggregate tonnage of eight hundred and seventy thousand tons, with close upon twenty-eight thousand guns, manned by over one hundred and fifty thousand officers and men. The Government regarded the situation on the ocean as so hopeless that it decided to keep its few cruisers in the harbors to act only on the defensive, believing the risk too great to let them venture upon the high seas. Captains William Bainbridge and Charles Stewart finally prevailed upon the authorities to allow our officers the free run of the seas, but the navy department thought it necessary for the vessels to sail in squadrons so as to protect one another.





CHAPTER XLIV

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION—FIRST TERM (Continued) *THE WAR OF 1812*

[*Authorities*: The American patriot of to-day can hardly look back with pride on the chief event of the Madison administrations—the second war with England—into which the country had been forced by the violence of party, in spite of the better sense of the nation. To play into the hands of Napoleon, who showed himself no friend of the United States, by declaring war against the one power in the Old World that was holding the great oppressor of nations at bay, was not the act of the highest wisdom, however galling were the outrages, on the part of both European combatants, that provoked it. But political passions were then in the ascendant, and in their presence and action it was not difficult, as events proved, to stifle the voice of reason. The authorities for the period are McMaster's "History of the People of the United States;" Goldwin Smith's "Political History of the United States;" Kingsford's "History of Canada;" together with Lossing's "Field-Book of the War of 1812;" Roosevelt's "Naval History of the War of 1812;" and Coffin's "War of 1812" (Montreal, 1860).]



Indian Settlement.

WILLIAM HULL, who had served creditably as a colonel in the Revolution, was governor of the Territory of Michigan. The government, forgetful of the disastrous invasion of Canada in 1775, believed that the people on the other side of the lakes and the St. Lawrence would flock to our standard when it was raised among them, and so another invasion was planned. Canada at that time was divided into Upper and Lower Canada, the former extending westward from Montreal along the St. Lawrence and Lake Ontario to Lake Huron and the Detroit River. This region contained about a hundred thousand inhabitants, made up chiefly of the families of Tories, who, having been driven from their own country, were not likely to feel very friendly towards it. General Sir Isaac Brock

An Invasion of Canada Planned

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

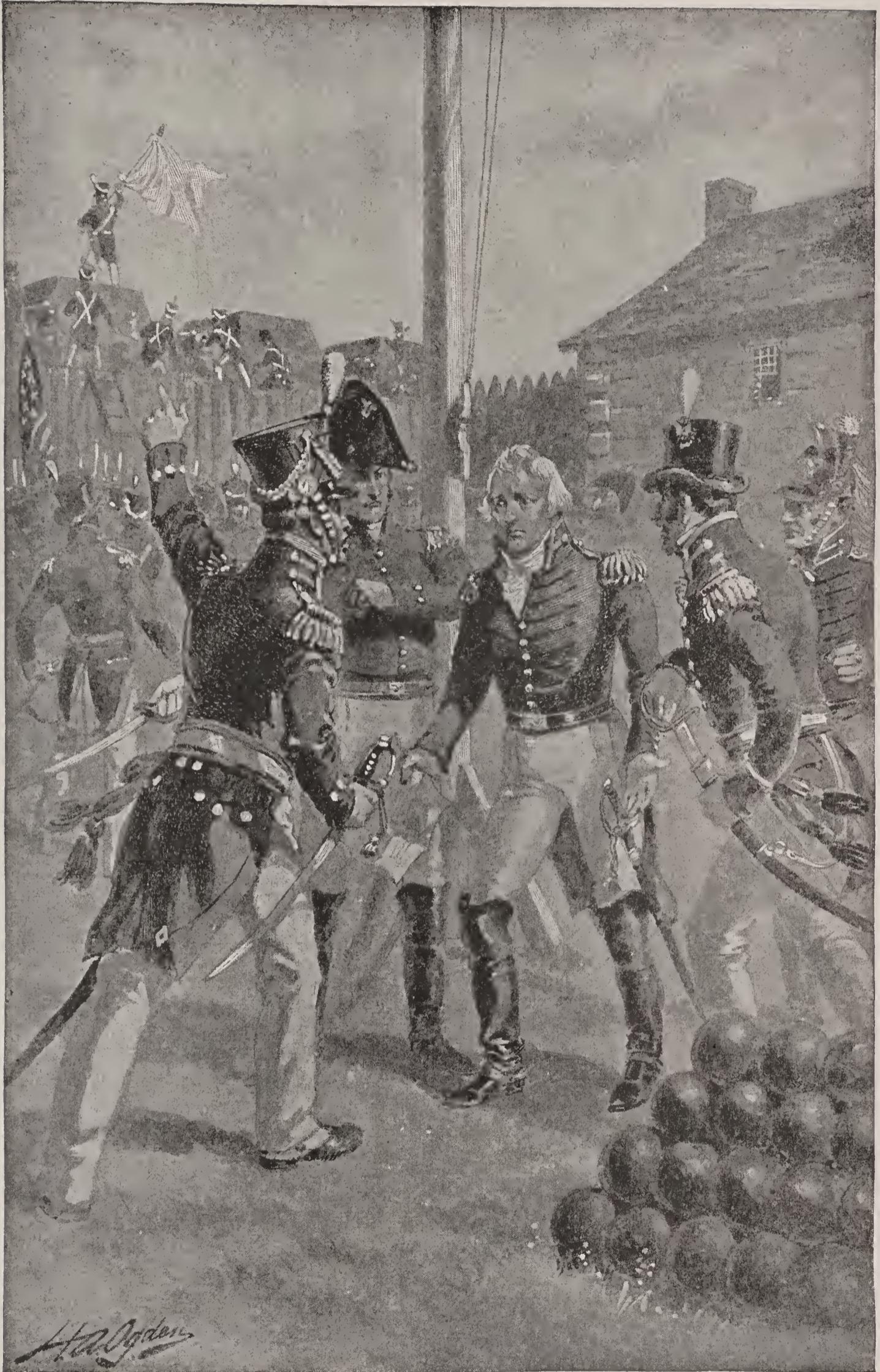
Hull's
 Invasion

was the acting lieutenant-governor and commander-in-chief of the military forces of both provinces. He was a man of much ability and military ardor.

General Hull, having been directed to use his discretion, made preparations to invade Upper Canada. At the head of two thousand troops, with which he was marching against the Indians, he crossed the Canadian border, July 12th, to Sandwich, with the purpose of capturing Malden, which could have been readily done had he moved promptly, but he was timid and hesitated until the place was strongly reinforced. Fort Mackinaw, one of the principal posts in the northwest, on an island near the Straits of Mackinaw, was surprised and captured by a force of British and Indians. Learning that Major Brush, despatched by Governor Meigs, of Ohio, was approaching with reinforcements and supplies, Hull sent Major Van Horne with a detachment to conduct him to Detroit. Van Horne was drawn into ambush near Brownstown by the Indian chief Tecumseh, and badly defeated. General Brock, in the mean time, had strongly reinforced Malden. Hull sent Lieutenant-Colonel Miller to reopen communication with the base of supplies at Raisin River. The Indians lay in wait for him, but were routed and driven to their boats. Frightened at learning that Brock was at Malden, Hull recrossed the river to Detroit on the 7th of August. Brock followed with seven hundred troops and six hundred Indians and demanded the instant surrender of the place, managing at the same time to convey an unofficial hint that if surrender was refused, the garrison would be turned over to the mercies of his Indian allies.

A Disgraceful
 Surrender

Detroit was not only well garrisoned, and with men eager to fight, but Colonels Cass and McArthur, with four hundred troops, were on their way to Detroit and near enough to attack the enemy in the rear; but Hull was old and timid. His daughter was among the refugees at Detroit, who included many old men, women, and children, and, instead of giving the order to his gunners to fire, as they stood ready with lighted matches, he waited until the enemy was within a fourth of a mile, when he ran up the white flag in token of surrender. After a short parley, the disgraceful submission was made. Detroit was given up, and every soldier under Hull's command in the Michigan Territory was surrendered to the enemy. Some of the American officers were so enraged that they denounced their leader, broke their swords, and tore off and trampled upon their



SURRENDER OF DETROIT

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY H. A. OGDEN

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

epaulets. The troops under Captain Brush, on the River Raisin, thirty-six miles below Detroit, refused to be bound by the capitulation agreement, and marched into Ohio. The country was exasperated by the weak act of Hull. A certain number of prisoners were given in exchange for him, and he was tried by court-martial for treason, cowardice, and conduct unworthy of an officer. He was found guilty of the last two charges and the death sentence was passed upon him, but President Madison pardoned him on account of his services during the War for Independence. He lived until 1825, suffering the scorn of his countrymen, who could pity but would not forgive him for what he did.

Massacre at
 Fort Dearborn

A visitor to the now great Western metropolis of Chicago finds it hard to realize that when the War of 1812 broke out there was no sign of a city there. A portion of the site was occupied by Fort Dearborn, which was then held by Captain Nathan Heald and fifty regulars, who received orders from Hull to evacuate the post and join him at Detroit. Captain Heald was warned by several scouts and friendly Indians that the large body of savages gathered round the post intended to massacre him and the men and women with him. He felt some misgivings at the intelligence, but not to the degree that others who understood the Indian character did. During the night he destroyed the liquor, gunpowder, and firearms which he had promised the savages, and then set out for Detroit. While on the way, the Indians attacked him and those under his charge. Among the bravest fighters were the women, but a dreadful massacre followed. One-half of the regulars were killed, all of the militia, and a number of the women and children. The following day Fort Dearborn was laid in ashes.

The Army of
 the Northwest

The Americans are not often discouraged by misfortune, and ten thousand volunteers now offered themselves for the invasion of Canada. They advanced towards Michigan, under General William Henry Harrison, commanding the army of the Northwest; but there was little discipline among the men, and after several skirmishes with the Indians they went into winter quarters. The troops on the Niagara frontier at this time consisted of the New York militia, and some regulars and recruits from other States, under the command of Stephen Van Rensselaer, who resolved to capture the Queenstown Heights, overlooking the lower Niagara River. On the morning of October 13th, he sent two columns across the river, under charge of

his cousin, Colonel Solomon Van Rensselaer. Hardly had they landed when they were fired upon, and the colonel was wounded. Captains Wood and Ogilvie led on the troops, and by a brilliant dash captured the fortress. General Brock with reinforcements attacked the Americans, but he was mortally wounded and his men were driven back.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

The Americans proceeded now to intrench themselves. The second division, consisting of twelve hundred men on the other side of the river, was sent for, and, had they moved promptly, a decisive victory must have followed; but the uproar of battle filled them with terror. They declared that they had enlisted to fight for the defence of the State, but refused to go out of it. Lieutenant-Colonel Winfield Scott had crossed the Niagara River and taken command of the brigade, which was twice attacked by the British and Indians, who were repulsed. More reinforcements, however, arrived for the enemy, and Scott was driven back to the river. There were no boats to take the troops across, and, being surrounded, they were compelled to surrender. All this time, the force of over a thousand New York militia stood idly looking on. General Van Rensselaer was so exasperated that he threw up his command and was succeeded by General Alexander Smyth, of Virginia. This officer was a conceited numskull, who soon made himself the laughing-stock of the army. He issued several bombastic proclamations, and, on the 28th of November, sent a company across from Black Rock, near Buffalo. Instead of supporting them, he stupidly withdrew the troops to the American shore. Some days later, he attempted another crossing, but soon ordered the troops to return and go into winter quarters. The militia were on the point of rebelling, when Smyth was deprived of his command. This ended the disgraceful land operations in the year 1812.

Battle of
 Queens-
 town
 Heights

In the autumn of this year, the Democratic candidates offered themselves for re-election. Madison received one hundred and twenty-eight electoral votes against eighty-nine cast for De Witt Clinton. Elbridge Gerry, at the same time, defeated Jared Ingersoll for the Vice-Presidency. The second inauguration of Madison took place under sad and discouraging circumstances. We were not only in the midst of a troublesome war, but the air was full of reports of disaster. Chief Justice Marshall administered the oath to the President in the presence of the two houses of

Re-election of
 Madison

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Congress. The day was bright with sunshine, but all felt the solemnity of the hour. The display of the militia was the feature of the occasion.

The patriot heart may well feel elated in turning from the dismal failures on the land to the work of our gallant little navy on the ocean. Some of the naval exploits of the time were almost incredible, and added a glory to the name of the Yankee tars which will last forever.

Brilliant
 Work by
 Our
 Navy

Hardly was war declared, when a courier from Washington rode with all haste to New York with the news. While the flanks of the steed were still heaving, Captain John Rodgers in the forty-four-gun frigate *President*, Captain Stephen Decatur in the forty-four-gun frigate *United States*, Captain John Smith in the thirty-six-gun frigate *Congress*, Master-Commandant James Lawrence in the eighteen-gun sloop-of-war *Hornet*, and Lieutenant Arthur Sinclair in the eighteen-gun brig *Argus*, hoisted sail and stood down the Narrows. Their purpose was to intercept a fleet of one hundred Jamaica merchantmen, which was expected to pass near our coast about that time.

Exploits
 of the
 Essex

On the morning of June 23d, the British frigate *Belvidera* was sighted and Captain Rodgers fired the first gun of the war at her. On the fourth round, one of the *President's* guns burst, killing and wounding sixteen men, Captain Rodgers being among those injured. The enemy's frigate succeeded in escaping and the merchantmen were not discovered. Captain David Porter, father of Admiral David Dixon Porter, who rendered such conspicuous service in the War for the Union, was captain of the *Essex* and sailed from New York, about two weeks after the departure of the squadron already named. On the 11th of July, after a brisk engagement, he captured the *Minerva*, convoying a fleet of merchantmen, and on the 13th of August, in a battle of scarcely ten minutes, he compelled the *Alert* to surrender. When the prisoners were removed to the *Essex*, they outnumbered the American crew by more than two to one. Among them were many desperate men, who soon formed a plot to recapture the ship and run it into Halifax.

Captain Porter was one of the best officers in the navy and a strict disciplinarian. He frequently drilled his men in "fighting fire," the most dreaded enemy on the sea. Frequently in the middle of the night the startling cry brought the crew stumbling from their

quarters, and occasionally he started a fire in the hatches to make the alarm as near real as possible.

Among the midshipmen sailing with Captain Porter was a plucky lad only eleven years old. He was lying in his hammock near midnight, when the leader in the plot, pistol in hand, tip-toed to his side and peered over to see whether the boy was asleep. The little fellow kept his eyes closed and deceived the ruffian into the belief that he was slumbering soundly, but hardly was the man's back turned, when the midshipman slipped noiselessly out of his hammock and stole into the cabin, where he told Captain Porter what was going on. On the instant that officer roared "Fire!" and rushed into the berth-deck. The well-trained crew instantly responded to the call and, fully armed, gathered at the main hatch. In a few minutes the plotters were secured and all danger was past. The name of the young midshipman who thus saved the *Essex* was David Glasgow Farragut.* In a two months' cruise the *Essex* took nine prizes and recaptured five American privateers and merchantmen.

Sailors are proverbially superstitious, and it was not long before the belief was as general as it was unshakable that the grand old frigate *Constitution* was the luckiest ship in the American navy. A history of the noble vessel seems almost to justify this belief. It will be remembered that she carried forty-four guns. She was finished in 1798, and the French soon gained a taste of her prowess. Some of her escapes approached the marvellous, but one secret of her good fortune was that she was always commanded by the most consummate seamen in the navy. She left Annapolis, on the 12th of July, 1812, under command of Captain Isaac Hull, nephew of the disgraced commander at Detroit. A few days later she sighted the British squadron under Captain Broke, who was eagerly hunting for game. The only hope of Hull was to keep out of reach of this overwhelming force, but escape seemed impossible, since there was not a breath of air stirring. Hull lowered his boats, filled with sturdy seamen, who took such position that while at work the hull of the *Constitution* shut off the view of the enemy. The latter were dumfounded at the sight of the American frigate moving away from them, when the sails were flapping idly against their own masts and his ships were motionless. It was a long time before the explana-

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Bravery
 of Mid-
 shipman
 Farragut

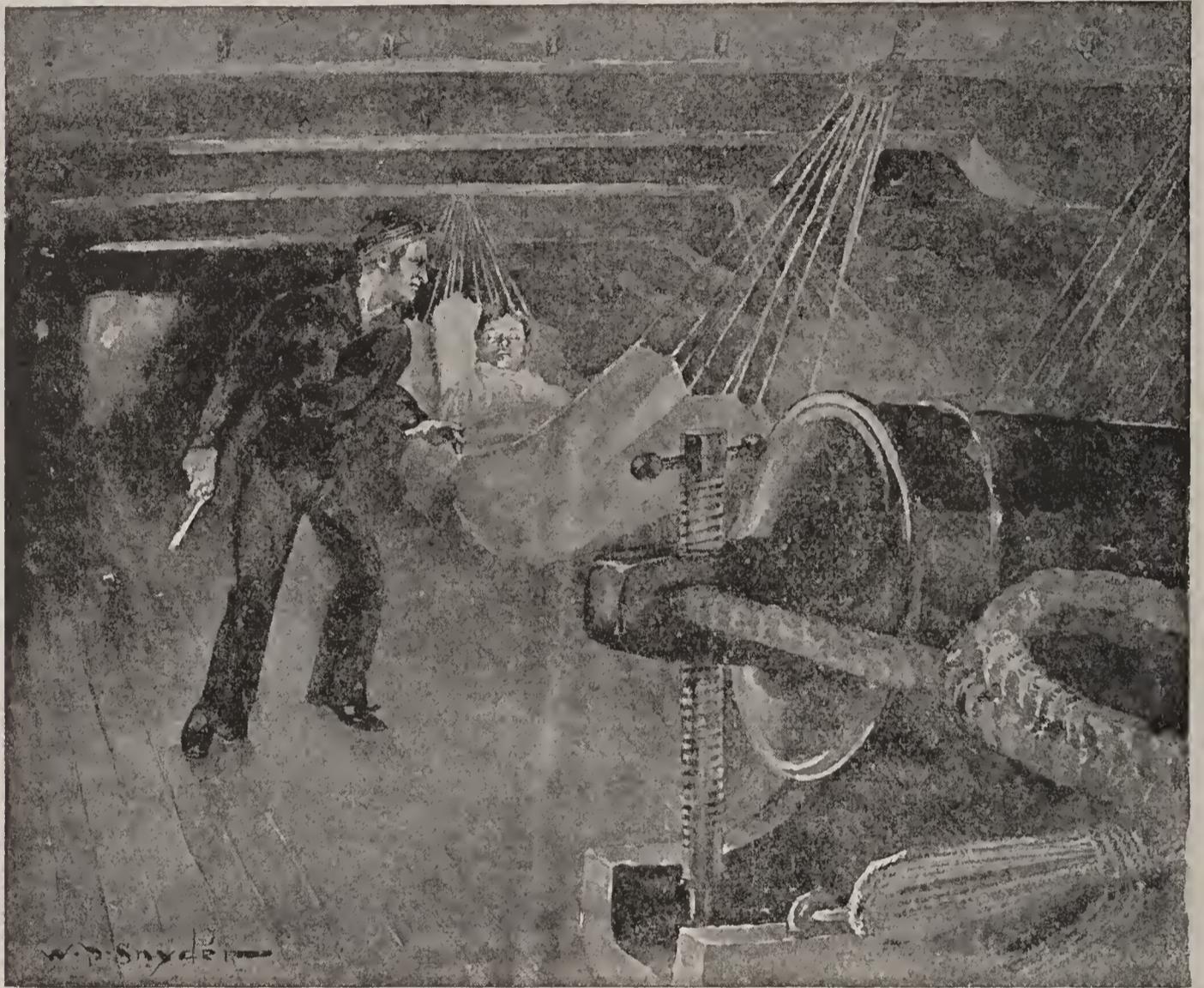
The
 Grand
 Old Con-
 stitution

* Maclay.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

tion of the mystery dawned upon the British, but as soon as they fathomed it they resorted to the same means.

This remarkable pursuit continued all day and night, with the enemy slowly but surely gaining. When daylight dawned, the five ships of the British squadron were seen to be closer than before, and were straining every nerve to overhaul the *Constitution*, which was



"THE LITTLE FELLOW KEPT HIS EYES CLOSED"

A Fortu-
 nate Es-
 cape

toiling desperately to keep beyond reach. By the middle of the afternoon, only three or four miles separated pursuer and pursued, and, despite their utmost exertions, the Americans could not prevent the steady lessening of the distance. But the elements now came to the relief of the imperilled *Constitution*. The wind rose, and such a violent storm broke that she shook the foam from her bows and scudded away at the rate of eleven knots an hour. When daylight came again, the intervening space had so increased that the enemy gave up the chase, which had continued for sixty-four hours, and was the most remarkable occurrence of the war.

Captain Hull's ambition above everything else was to meet the *Guerrière* (*gāre-c-āre'*), commanded by Captain James R. Dacres. These two officers had become quite intimate friends, when England and the United States were at peace, though each was devotedly attached to his own country. As signs of approaching war increased, the two held warm arguments over the prowess of their respective countrymen. Finally, in one of these discussions, Dacres offered to wager Hull a new hat that if they ever had an encounter, the American would strike his flag. Hull eagerly accepted the challenge, and the two were now looking for each other to decide the wager.

On the afternoon of August 19th, the frigates met not far from Cape Race. The *Guerrière* was the first to fire, but Hull paid no attention, crowding all sail to place himself alongside the enemy, who was not unwilling to have a fair yard-arm to yard-arm fight. As the space decreased, Dacres kept firing at the *Constitution* and inflicted considerable damage. The American officers grew impatient and Lieutenant Morris, second in command, several times asked permission to return the fire, but Hull shook his head. "Not yet," he replied, keenly watching the progress of the pursuit, nor would he consent until the two vessels were quite close, when he thundered the order and a broadside was delivered from the guns doubly charged with round and grape shot.*

The effect was appalling. The air over the British frigate was darkened with splinters, some of which were hurled as high as the mizzen-top, while the cheers of the enemy were changed to shrieks of agony. The frigates were now fighting at pistol-shot. After fifteen minutes, the mizzen-mast of the *Guerrière* had been shot away, her main-yard was in slings, and her hull, sails, spars, and rigging were torn to pieces. Hull manœvered with wonderful skill, but the rough sea would not permit either to board. In each of the *Constitution's* main-tops were six marines, loading muskets as fast as they could and passing them to a seventh, the best marksman of the group, who took careful aim and fired wherever he saw a head, and he saw them constantly. One of the sharpshooters shot Dacres in

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

The
 Guerrière and
 the Constitution

A Splendid
 Fight

* Lossing relates that, before the engagement, Hull with much difficulty encased the lower part of his portly figure in a pair of white duck trousers, evidently intended to fit a man half his size. When he gave the order to fire, he accompanied it with a gesture so emphatic that the bifurcated garments were separated into two equal parts—a fact of which the gallant officer remained unconscious until after the battle, when, like the *Constitution* itself, he awoke to the necessity of repairing damages.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Winning
 a Wager

the back and another bullet wounded him in the knee, while his mate fell badly injured. Finally the *Constitution* shook off the *Guerrière* and forged ahead. Just then the main mast of the *Guerrière* fell overboard and she became a helpless wreck, wallowing in the trough of the sea. Seeing that his enemy could make no more resistance, Hull prudently drew off and hastily repaired damages, for there was danger that a British squadron would bear down at any time upon the antagonists. Then, later in the day, the *Constitution* overtook the *Guerrière* and a lieutenant was sent on board to take possession. Dacres was so humiliated that he dallied, refusing to surrender, until the American was about to return and reopen the battle. Then he submitted, and was rowed back to the *Constitution*. As he painfully came up the side, he extended his sword to Hull, who refused to take it and reached out his hand.

“I don’t want your sword, Dacres, but I’ll trouble you for that hat,” he remarked heartily, and it is safe to assume that the wager was paid.

The *Constitution* carried the news of her own success to Boston, which was her native city. The country was thrilled and Hull was the hero of the hour. Congress awarded him a gold medal and appropriated \$50,000, to be divided as prize money among the officers and crew of the *Constitution*. This was the most brilliant naval victory of the war. It lasted only thirty minutes, during which the enemy had seventy-nine killed and wounded, while the American loss was but seven killed and the same number wounded.

Dismay
 in Eng-
 land

A feeling akin to consternation took possession of England when the news reached that country. The London *Times* said: “It is not merely that one English frigate has been taken, but that it has been taken by a new enemy, an enemy unaccustomed to such triumphs and likely to be rendered insolent and confident by them.” And why should not the Americans be confident when the superb victory was quickly followed by others? The American sloop-of-war *Wasp* captured the British brig *Frolic*, off the coast of North Carolina, in less than an hour. It was a horrible battle, in which the enemy had ninety killed and wounded, but three officers and one man remaining unhurt, while only ten were killed and wounded on the *Wasp*. Although Captain Jones of the *Wasp* was captured by a seventy-four-gun ship, together with his prize, Congress awarded him a medal and distributed \$25,000 among his crew.

The *United States*, one of the forty-four-gun frigates built in 1798, when near the island of Madeira, October 25, 1812, engaged the British frigate *Macedonian*, also of forty-four guns. Captain Stephen Decatur, the American commander, opened the battle at long range and inflicted great damage. After losing thirty-six killed and sixty-eight wounded out of a crew of three hundred, the enemy surrendered. It was another striking proof of the superior marksmanship of the Americans that in this engagement they had but five killed and six wounded. Captain Decatur received his medal and his crew their prize money which had been so well earned.

PERIOD IV
THE REPUBLIC AND
THE CONSTITUTION
1783
TO
1829

Captain Hull now generously turned over the command of the *Constitution* to Captain William Bainbridge that he might win glory with her. On December 29th, in the West Indies, he encountered the *Java* of thirty-eight guns. The battle lasted two hours when Bainbridge hauled off for repairs, which were completed in an hour. Then he prepared to attack again, when the *Java* surrendered. She had lost about one hundred killed and two hundred wounded, among the killed being her commander, while the total loss of the *Constitution* was but thirty-four. It was this battle which gave the name of "Old Ironsides" to the *Constitution*. The *Java* was so shattered that it was impossible to take her into port, and she was blown up.

Career of
the Con-
stitution

Thus, within the space of five months, four decisive victories were won by the American navy. Bainbridge received the freedom of the city from New York and from Albany, each complimentary document being presented in a gold box. Philadelphia gave to the gallant officer a service of plate, and Congress distributed \$50,000 among him and his crew.

The following extract from the London *Times* of March 20, 1813, will show what a severe blow the loss of the *Java* was to the pride of England. The great journal thus exclaims:

Extract
from the
London
Times

"The public will learn with sentiments which we shall not presume to anticipate that a third British frigate has struck to an American. . . . This is an occurrence that calls for serious reflection; this, and the facts stated in our paper of yesterday, that Lloyd's list contains notices of upward of five hundred British vessels captured in seven months by the Americans: five hundred merchantmen and three frigates! Can these statements be true? And can the English people hear them unmoved? Any one who had predicted such a result of an American war this time last year would

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

have been treated as a madman or a traitor. He would have been told, if his opponents had condescended to argue with him, that long ere seven months had elapsed the American flag would have been swept from the seas, the contemptible navy of the United States annihilated, and their marine arsenals rendered a heap of ruins. Yet down to this moment not a single American frigate has struck her flag."

Cause of
 Our
 Land
 Failures

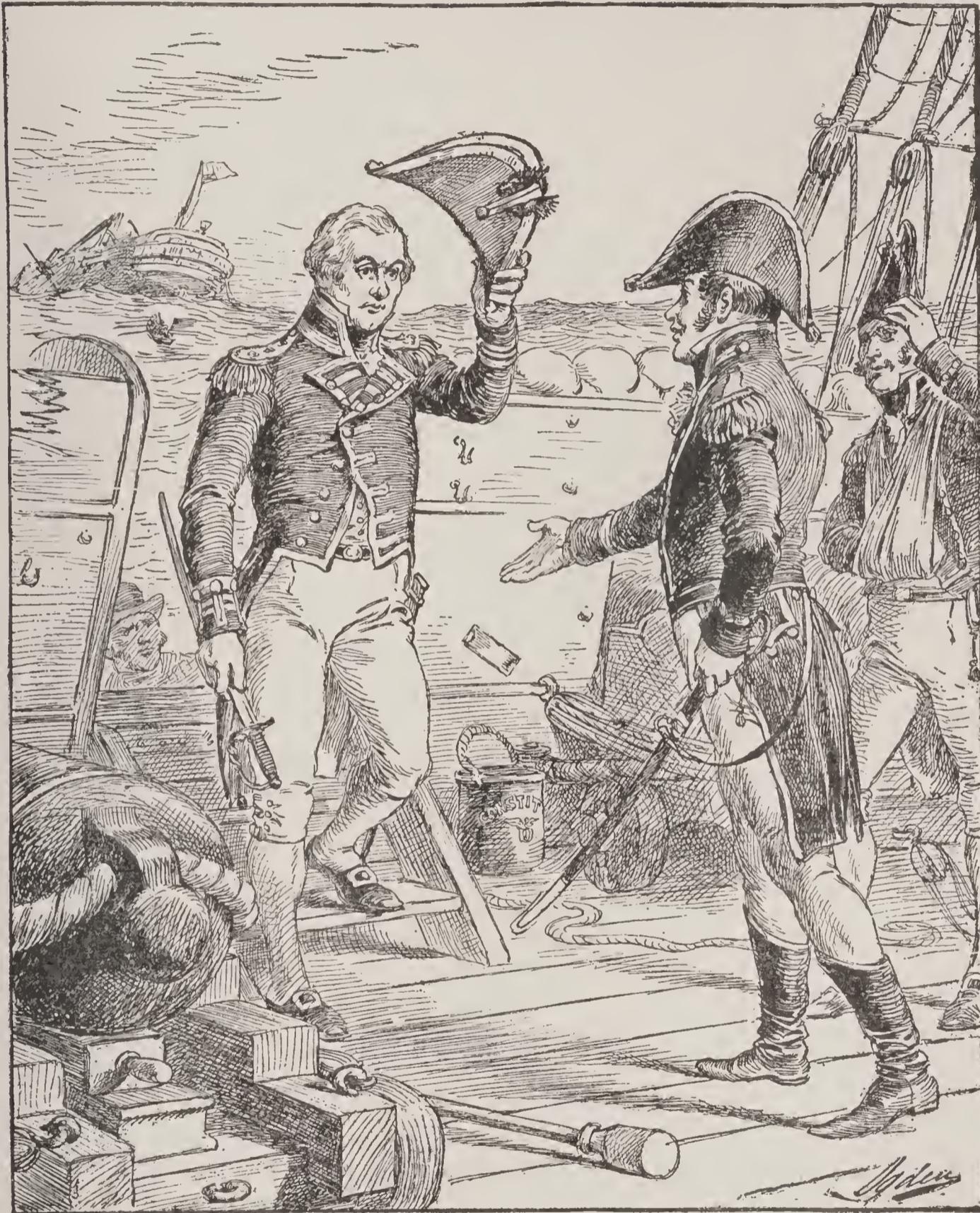
Now it is proper here to answer several questions, which must have presented themselves to the reader. The first is, Why were the operations of the Americans on land so unsuccessful during the early part of the war? The answer is that, while the soldiers were as brave and competent as any troops in the world, the majority of their leaders were wholly unfitted to command them. More than thirty years had passed since the close of the Revolution. The best officers who helped to win our independence were either dead or so old (General Hull to wit) as to become incapacitated for duty. Most of their successors were men appointed by political influence, and not fit to be entrusted with command. They moreover quarrelled over the questions of rank, blundered in their campaigns, interfered with each other, and failed to rise to the pitch of patriotism which inspired the soldiers themselves. The Secretary of War was himself incompetent, and mismanaged affairs so badly that he was forced to resign, as has been stated, when the crowning disgrace of all, the capture of Washington, was inflicted. Matters improved after a time, for the incompetents were at length weeded out, and men like Scott, Ripley, Brown, and other distinguished and able officers were brought forward.

Cause of
 Our Success on
 the
 Ocean

The reverse of all this prevailed in the navy. Not only were the officers brave, patriotic, and skilful, but their crews were made up of the sturdiest specimens of American manhood, who were disciplined to the highest possible point. They practised in gunnery until their skill became almost marvellous. They were at the same time skilled in seamanship, and their victories at the beginning of the war gave them a confidence and nerve which carried them through every test in triumph. Then, too, the incentive of the reward in the shape of prize money had its natural result. In short, everything that could add to the *morale* as well as the success of the navy was brought into play. That it should attain the highest point of effectiveness was as certain as that effect must follow cause.

But when all this has been said, another question may be asked: To what was due the repeated defeats of the British frigates? Great Britain was still "mistress of the seas," and her officers and sailors

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829



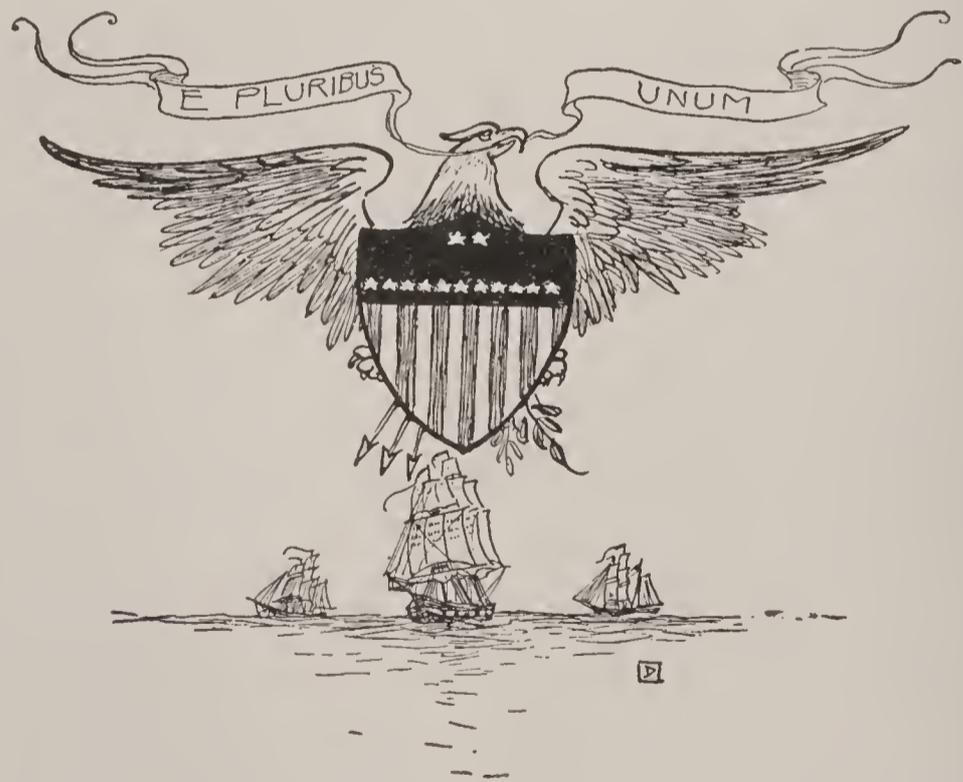
THE SURRENDER OF CAPTAIN DACRES

were as brave as any who sailed the ocean. She claimed to be invincible on the deep, and had good reason for the boast. Why then did she suffer so many disastrous defeats at the hands of the Americans?

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Why
 England
 Failed
 on the
 Ocean

It would require many pages to answer this question fully, which has been ably done by Mr. Maclay, in his "History of the United States Navy." He gives as a reason for the many British failures the overweening confidence of the English officers. For twenty years they had been waging an easy naval warfare against France, where all discipline was destroyed by the Revolution, so that the saying was common—and we have already given it—that when France launched a new warship, she was simply adding another to the British navy. England, too, had been fighting with the Spaniards, who had so degenerated since the days of their gallant ancestors, that many of their sailors would stand still and be shot down by their own officers during an engagement, rather than climb into the rigging or perform the simplest duty. In short, the English sailor had been gaining so many easy victories that he was spoiled, and, when he came to face the plucky American, eager for a fight, he had a most exaggerated idea of his own prowess. This was a bitter truth which he had to learn, but learn it he did, through disaster, defeat, and humiliation.





CHAPTER XLV

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION—SECOND TERM, 1813-1817—WAR OF 1812 (Continued)—EVENTS OF 1813

[*Authorities:* With Madison's second administration the war in Canada was pressed, though, so far, with indifferent results, for the West was in possession of the British, under Proctor and his ally Tecumseh, and Winchester had surrendered at Frenchtown only to meet the horrors of Indian massacre. The year 1813, however, proved more fortunate to American arms; for, besides the gallant defence of Fort Meigs and Fort Stephenson, York (Toronto) was twice captured and looted [though with the loss of Brigadier-General Pike, the discoverer of Pike's Peak], while with Perry's success in the naval engagement on Lake Erie, and Harrison's victory at the battle of the Thames, the Ontario peninsula was overrun and the British driven eastward. As an offset to the British repulse at Sackett's Harbor, the failure of the movement against Montreal, under Wilkinson and Hampton, has, however, to be chronicled, with the results of British naval operations in the Chesapeake, and the victory for the *Shannon*. The year closed to the credit of neither combatants. The authorities for the period are those enumerated in the war section of the previous chapter.]



At the beginning of 1813 the American army was organized into three divisions: 1, the Army of the North, under General Wade Hampton, which was to act in the country around Lake Champlain; 2, the Army of the Centre, under Commander-in-Chief General Henry Dearborn, which was to push operations on the Niagara frontier and Lake Ontario; and 3, the Army of the West, whose commander, General Winchester, was soon superseded by General Harrison. The President was authorized to recruit twenty additional regiments of infantry at an increase of bounty

Organi-
zation of
the
Ameri-
can
Army

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

American
 Defeat at
 Frenchtown

and pay, to issue treasury notes, and to borrow money, while steps were taken to build four ships-of-the-line, six frigates, and whatever vessels of war were needed for the defence of, and for any aggressive operations on, the Great Lakes.

General Harrison set out to recover Michigan, which had been surrendered by the pusillanimous Hull. General Winchester was despatched to Frenchtown, on the river Raisin, twenty-five miles south of Detroit. He reached the Maumee Rapids, January 10th, with eight hundred volunteers, most of whom were Kentuckians. On the 13th, he sent Colonels Allen and Lewis, with a detachment, to engage the British and Indians at Frenchtown. They attacked the enemy on the 18th, Winchester arriving with reinforcements two days late. The British Colonel, Henry Proctor, was at Malden, eighteen miles distant, with fifteen hundred English and Indians; and advancing rapidly to Frenchtown, he surprised and defeated the Americans on the 22d. Winchester himself was captured, and was so frightened at the threats of massacre by the red men that he sent orders to Colonel Madison, his successor, to surrender. This was done under a pledge of protection.

Immediately after the surrender Proctor left for Malden, on the pretext that he feared the advance of General Harrison from Lower Sandusky. The Indians attacked the wounded prisoners left behind, massacring a number and torturing many to death. The survivors were taken to Detroit, where, after a time, they were ransomed. "Remember the River Raisin!" afterwards became the war-cry of the Kentuckians.

General Harrison withdrew from the Maumee Rapids upon learning of this disaster, but moved forward again with twelve hundred men and built Fort Meigs on the river, near the present town of Perrysburg. It was well located for receiving reinforcements and supplies from Ohio and Kentucky, for defending the borders of Lake Erie, and for aiding in the recapture of Detroit.

Fort
 Meigs
 Besieged

On the 26th of April, Proctor, with two thousand regulars, militia, and Indians, laid siege to the post, threatening to turn over the prisoners to the Indians in case of resistance. Harrison returned a defiant answer to the demand, and General Green Clay Smith hastened to his relief with over a thousand Kentuckians. The besiegers were assailed with great gallantry, the garrison assisting, but a blunder by Colonel Dudley led to his being cut off and captured with his detach-

ment. Proctor, however, was so crippled that he withdrew. Many of the Indians now deserted, despite the pleading of the Shawnee chief Tecumseh. General Harrison turned over the command to General Smith and returned to Kentucky for reinforcements. On the 21st of July, Proctor and Tecumseh with five thousand British

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829



COMMODORE PERRY

and Indians again besieged Fort Meigs. Failing to accomplish anything, Proctor drew off with about half the force, leaving Tecumseh, who was his superior in generalship, to see what he could do. With his depleted division, Proctor advanced upon Fort Stephenson, where Fremont now stands. This post was commanded by a gallant young American officer named Croghan.

Failure
 of the
 Siege

Major George Croghan, of the regular army, was barely twenty-one years old and had under him a garrison of one hundred and sixty

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Gallant
 Defence
 of Fort
 Stevenson

men. Proctor ordered him to surrender, accompanying the demand with the like threat he had used before, namely, that if he refused he and his men would be massacred by his Indian allies. Croghan spiritedly replied that the contingency was impossible, since, should the fort surrender, there would not be left any men to massacre.

This sounded very much like a refusal, and Proctor opened a bombardment. Croghan had only one small cannon, which was crammed with slugs and scraps of iron. It was pointed so as to rake the ditch, which was soon swarming with assailants. The weapon, which was masked, was discharged among them at the right moment and spread death and destruction all around. The weapon was again loaded and a second column received a similar warm reception. At the same time, a hot fire of musketry was kept up, and Colonel Proctor, fearing the approach of General Harrison, gave up the siege and withdrew. The British lost, in killed and wounded, one hundred and twenty men, while only one man of the garrison was killed and several wounded. The brilliant exploit of Major Croghan shone like a star of hope amid the gloom and discouragement of disaster. For his heroism he was presented with a handsome sword by the ladies of Chillicothe, Ohio, and Congress voted him the thanks of the nation. A score of years later he was awarded a gold medal for his skill and bravery. The defeat of the British filled Tecumseh with disgust, and the enemy gave up the hope of capturing these western posts until they should secure the mastery of Lake Erie.

The
 Squadron on
 Lake
 Ontario

It was now decided to fit out a squadron on Lake Ontario to resist the British vessels, and also to carry American troops to any point that might need defence. The chief American port on the lakes was Sackett's Harbor. This was made a naval depot, and, during the closing months of 1812 and the beginning of 1813, Commodore Chauncey bent every energy to construct and launch a squadron to operate on Lake Ontario. Towards the close of April, General Dearborn crossed the lake with seventeen hundred men, with the intention of attacking York (now Toronto), the capital of Upper Canada, and the chief depôt of the British posts in the West. A landing was made before York on the 27th of the month under a hot fire, but the Americans pushed on under the lead of Brigadier-General Zebulon Pike, and the enemy were driven from their works. The Americans were still pressing towards the main works when the magazine of the fort blew up. Two hundred Americans were killed or wounded,

among the mortally hurt being Brigadier-General Pike, who was carried on board the commodore's vessel. There the flag which had floated above the fort of York was folded under his head, and he thus died the death of a hero. General Dearborn was an invalid, and remained with the fleet during the action. He now went ashore, and, after the surrender of York, assumed the command. The majority of the British troops fled so hastily that they left their baggage behind. After landing some troops at Niagara, the fleet returned to Sackett's Harbor. Just before this Dearborn and his men landed near the mouth of the Niagara River, where they waited until Commodore Chauncey joined them with reinforcements, when Fort George, the British post at Niagara, was captured.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Capture
 of York
 (Toronto)

It will be seen that these operations at the western end of the lake left Sackett's Harbor almost unprotected, whereupon Sir James Yeo, the British admiral, and General Prevost advanced against it. Colonel Electus Backus, the commandant, appealed to General Jacob Brown, a militia officer in the neighborhood, who hurriedly gathered a small force which was added to the garrison. A body of Indians was landed at night so as to attack the Americans in the rear, and the main assault was made on the 29th of May. The militia broke, but the regulars and volunteers held their ground until driven into the log barracks. General Brown (whose bravery and skill finally placed him in supreme command of the American army) succeeded in rallying some of the militia and made a feint to seize the enemy's boats. Afraid of having his retreat cut off, General Prevost fled precipitately, leaving three hundred dead or wounded on the field. The Americans also suffered severely. The killed and wounded numbered one hundred and thirty, Colonel Mills and Backus being among the slain.

Defeat of
 General
 Prevost

The Americans, under Generals Chandler and Winder, pursued some of the enemy who fled to Burlington Heights (now Hamilton) at the western end of Lake Ontario. In a spirited engagement forty miles west of Fort George, both the American generals were captured. Sir James Yeo soon appearing with the British fleet, the Americans fell back upon the main army. Several minor conflicts followed, unfavorable to the American arms, at Stony Creek and at Beaver Dams, where General Boerstler was repulsed, the Canadians being advised of the intended attack by a woman. A second

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

descent upon York by the American fleet was a good set-off for these losses.

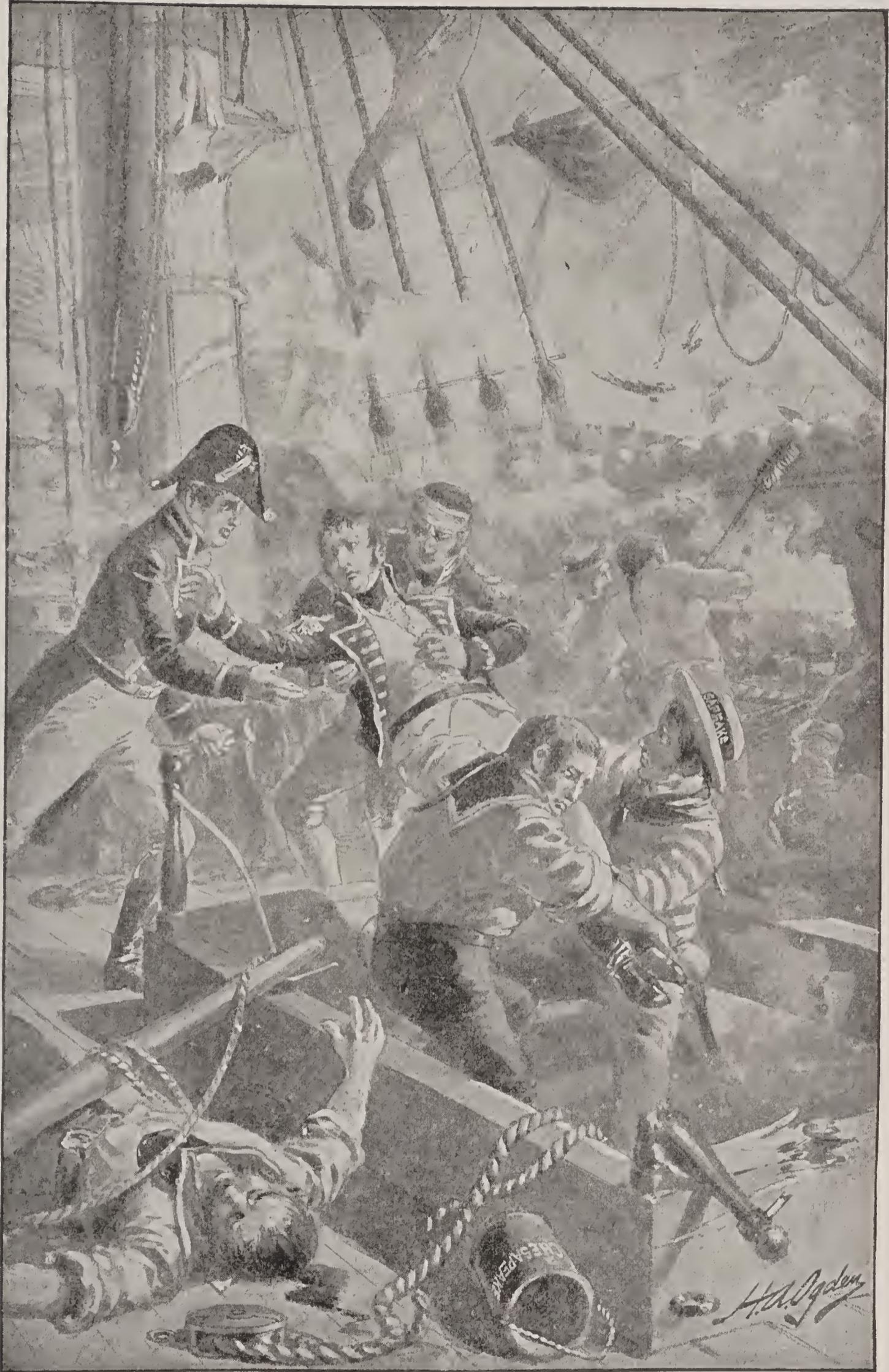
Fighting
 in
 Canada

General Dearborn, at the head of the army, had never led them in person, and lost a good chance of capturing Montreal. His inefficiency caused his supersedure in June by General Wilkinson, who reached Sackett's Harbor on the 1st of August, and arranged to reinvade Canada and attack Montreal with eight thousand men. Three months were consumed in preparation, during which time the enemy fortified every important point on the St. Lawrence and were fully ready when, on the 5th of November, the flotilla of five hundred barges set sail. Meeting with determined resistance, General Brown landed with a body of soldiers, who marched in advance of the boats and gallantly attempted to drive the enemy from his positions along the river. At Williamsburg, on the 10th, a large British force was defeated and the stream opened for the passage of the flotilla. An obstinate battle, known as that of Chrysler's Field, was fought the next day, each side losing heavily and each claiming a victory. An equally obstinate engagement also took place at Chateauguay, in Lower Canada, in which General Hampton's division was defeated by a body of Canadian Voltiguers. At St. Regis, General Wilkinson expected Hampton to co-operate with him. But Hampton was sick, and his troops, lacking supplies, had fallen back upon Plattsburg, in the hope that he could keep open his communications with the St. Lawrence. This retreat caused Wilkinson to withdraw also, and the movement was abandoned for the time. The chief occupation of Hampton, Wilkinson, and Armstrong for some weeks in the ensuing winter was quarrelling among themselves.

Out-
 rages by
 the
 Invaders

The war increased in fierceness. A British squadron, under Admiral Cockburn, sailed up Delaware Bay and burned every merchant vessel within reach. Lewiston was bombarded because the people would not sell food to the enemy. Cockburn plundered even the private houses along the Chesapeake and sacked Frenchtown, Havre-de-Grace, Fredericktown, Georgetown, and other places. New England received more consideration, for it was known that she was opposed to the war from the beginning.

The great successes, as heretofore, were confined to the high seas. On the 24th of February, Captain James Lawrence, of the sloop-of-war *Hornet*, fought such a vicious battle with the British brig-of-war *Peacock* that at the end of fifteen minutes the latter sank so



"DON'T GIVE UP THE SHIP"

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY H. A. OGDEN

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUB-
 LIC AND
 THE CONSTI-
 TUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

The
 Shannon
 and the
 Chesapeake

suddenly that she carried down several of the *Hornet's* crew that had gone on board in answer to her signals of distress. Captain Lawrence treated his prisoners with so much kindness that they sent him a letter of thanks, while Congress gave him the command of the frigate *Chesapeake*.

The British frigate *Shannon*, Captain Philip Bowes Vere Broke, was cruising off the New England coast, and challenged Lawrence to come out and fight him. Lawrence committed the fatal mistake of accepting the challenge. The *Chesapeake* was undergoing repairs, her crew consisting mainly of new men, undisciplined and in a mutinous state, because they had not received their share of prize money due them. Still further, many of them were under the influence of liquor, when the *Chesapeake* sailed gallantly down the harbor to meet a frigate of fine trim, her crew in a high state of discipline, and her commander and officers among the best in the British service.

There were thousands of people with glasses, crowding the hills, while hundreds of others followed in pleasure-craft to see the proud Briton lower his colors. It was late in the afternoon of the soft, beautiful first day of summer, and the cheers of the multitude were wafted across the heaving waters and inspired the Americans, who had not a doubt of victory.

Lawrence promptly began the attack, and the battle was fought at close quarters. In the space of a few minutes, nearly all the American officers were killed or wounded and the sails of the *Chesapeake's* rigging became entangled. In manœuvring for position, she backed against the *Shannon* and her boarders swarmed over the sides of the American, just as Lawrence fell mortally wounded and was carried below.

The pain from the surgeon's knife could not equal the hero's agony of anxiety over the issue of the battle. "Keep the guns going!" he shouted; "fight till she strikes! Don't give up the ship!"

"Don't
 Give up
 the
 Ship!"

Captain Broke led his boarders, and, in the furious struggle was frightfully wounded by a blow from a cutlass that laid his brain open. The battle was over in fifteen minutes. The *Chesapeake* lost forty-eight killed and ninety-eight wounded, while the enemy had but twenty-three killed and fifty-six wounded. Lawrence lived for four days, and often in his delirium repeated his cry, "*Don't give up the ship!*" The stirring words became the motto of the American navy. His body was buried at Halifax with the honors of war, some

of the British officers acting as pall-bearers, for all acknowledged the worth and chivalrous bravery of the young hero.

On the same day of the capture of the *Chesapeake*, Captain Decatur in command of the *United States*, the *Macedonian*, and the *Hornet*, was forced to take refuge in New London to escape a superior British squadron, and was kept there till the close of the war. He made many attempts to get out, and declared that every time he did so traitors on shore warned the enemy by displaying blue lights. This statement naturally caused widespread indignation. The Federalists were called "Blue Lights," and Connecticut has been reproached many times for her unpatriotic course in the war of 1812.

Captain Allen having done some creditable work in the English Channel, with the brig *Argus*, issued a burlesque proclamation declaring the coast of Great Britain in a state of blockade, but the smile left his face when one of the enemy's ships on the 14th of August made him a captive. A short time afterwards, the brig *Enterprise* captured the British *Boxer* off the coast of Maine. This fight was of so fierce a character that both commanders were killed and buried side by side at Portland.

Oliver Hazard Perry,* a native of Rhode Island, entered the navy as midshipman in 1799, when fourteen years old, and did good service in the Tripolitan war. In 1813, he was appointed to the command

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

"Blue Lights"

Other
 Naval
 Exploits

* Commodore Oliver Hazard Perry (1785-1819), though best known as victor over the British fleet on Lake Erie, at the early age of twenty-eight, had a varied and successful career on the high seas as well as on American inland waters. The son of a naval officer, he was born at Kingston, R. I., and before he had reached his sixteenth year had seen service with his father in the West Indies. Four years later he took part in the war with Tripoli, and after he had become lieutenant and taken part in building a fleet of small gunboats he was appointed commander of *The Revenge*, which for a time cruised about on the Atlantic coast. In 1811 Perry was so unfortunate as to lose his ship by wrecking, and thereafter he sought service on the lakes under Commodore Chauncey, and took part in the attack on Fort George, at the mouth of the Niagara River. After this he was engaged in fitting out a squadron on Lake Erie, designed to try the fortunes of war with Barclay's British fleet, near Put-in Bay, Ohio. For his success he received a vote of Congress, together with a medal, and the rank of captain. Barclay's defeat led to the disastrous battle of the Thames, and the withdrawal of the British from the Ontario peninsula. In the following year, Perry took part in the defence of Baltimore, and in 1815 he commanded the *Java* in the Mediterranean under Decatur. Four years afterwards, he was despatched in command of a squadron to the Caribbean Sea, and while off the Orinoco River he caught yellow fever and died at Trinidad, in August, 1819. Perry's remains were brought home by order of Congress, and were interred at Newport, R. I. Commemorative statues of the gallant hero have been erected at Newport and at Cleveland, Ohio.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Perry's
 Great
 Victory
 on
 Lake
 Erie

on Lake Erie. He chafed at sight of the British fleet cruising complacently around the lake, and by extraordinary exertions he built a fleet and drilled his men to a high state of efficiency. As soon as he could complete his preparations, he sailed from Put-in Bay, in command of a squadron of nine vessels, of which the *Lawrence* was the flagship. This squadron carried fifty-five guns, and began a search for Commodore Barclay, who had six vessels and sixty-three guns. They met on the 10th of September at the western end of Lake Erie. The eyes of the sailors kindled, when Perry, while forming his line of battle, ran up a flag displaying the thrilling words of the dead Lawrence,—“*Don't give up the ship!*”

The enemy concentrated such a destructive fire upon Perry's flagship that at the end of two hours she was in a sinking condition. Leaving her in charge of a lieutenant, Perry sprang into an open boat and ordered the sailors to row him to the *Niagara*, which showed no effects from the battle. The young commander was so fired with the spirit of battle that he stood erect, in full uniform, in the stern of the small boat, as it passed within pistol-shot of the enemy. Inevitably he drew their aim, and the shot whistled so close that some of the sailors declared they would cease rowing unless the commander sat down. His escape was a close one, but he was unharmed, and, boarding the *Niagara*, his flag was immediately hoisted.

While the British squadron was arranging a new line of battle, Perry drove the *Niagara* in among them, delivering broadsides right and left. The other ships hurried to his aid, and the fire became so destructive that at the end of fifteen minutes the foe surrendered. The superiority of the American gunnery was on this, as on other occasions, strikingly shown, for, while the British lost two hundred killed and wounded, the American had but twenty-six killed and ninety-six wounded. Six hundred of the enemy were made prisoners. Commodore Barclay went into the battle with one arm and came out with none. This was the first time that a whole British squadron ever surrendered to an enemy. Perry's despatch to General Harrison announcing the victory was almost as famous as the dying words of Lawrence. It read: “We have met the enemy, and they are ours. Two ships, two brigs, one schooner, and one sloop.”

The victory produced a marked effect on the war. The British general, Proctor, and the American general, Harrison, were anxiously awaiting the news. If Perry had been defeated, Proctor intended to

invade Ohio; if he won, Harrison was to invade Canada. Accordingly the latter embarked at Sandusky Bay, September 27, and went ashore near Malden. The British retreated to Sandwich, closely followed by the Americans. Proctor fell back to the Thames, where, at the Moravian Town, he halted and prepared for battle. On the 5th of October he was attacked by Generals Harrison and Shelby, the latter the hero of King's Mountain, and then governor of Kentucky. The British regulars fought well, but Proctor himself

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829



DEATH OF TECUMSEH

fled in terror and his men were routed. The Indians, under Tecumseh, displayed remarkable steadiness, but when their leader fell they scattered in a panic. The victory was overwhelming and decisive. Ohio was no longer in peril; the Indian confederacy was destroyed, and all that Hull betrayed was recovered.*

Defeat of
 the
 British

* Tecumseh, one of three brothers (triplets) was born about the year 1768. One brother never achieved greatness, but the other, The Prophet, became famous. Tecumseh would have been a great man in any age or nation. His eloquence was a notable gift, his courage was unsurpassable, while his military skill was of the highest order. He was made a brigadier-general in the British army, and there were few his

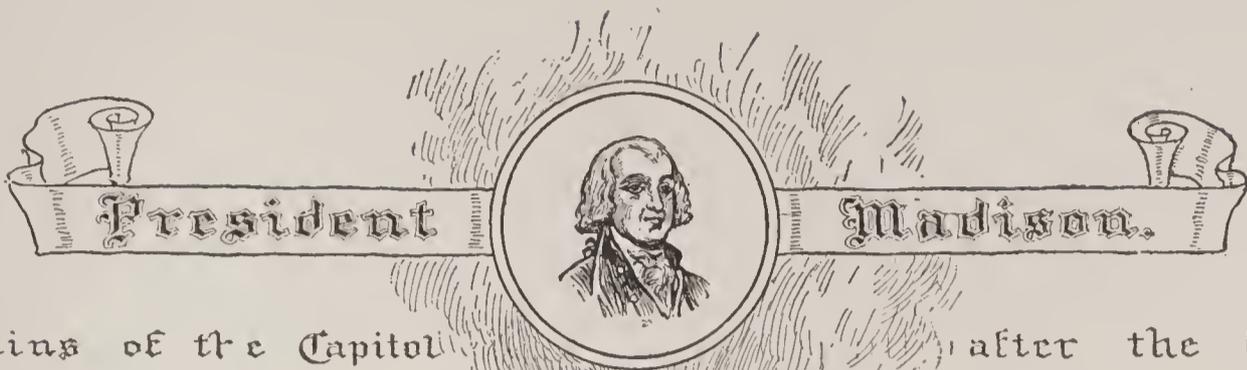
PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Mas-
 sacre at
 Fort
 Mimms

Tecumseh had visited the Indians of the South, with whom he desired to form a league against the Americans. The Creeks attacked the settlements, and the militia of the Southwest were summoned to their defence. A large number of settlers took refuge in a stockade, designated Fort Mimms, on Lake Tensas, Alabama. One hundred and seventy-five volunteers were sent by Governor Claiborne to defend it. They neglected, however, to use proper precaution, and on the last day of August, when a thousand Creeks swooped down on the place, they found the outer gates open, the arms stacked, and no sentinels in sight. The defenders fought bravely, but hope was gone. All the women and children, and every one of the garrison except twelve men, were massacred.

superior in ability. He had all the virtues and none of the weaknesses of his race. He never tortured a prisoner or permitted it to be done in his presence. He once dashed his horse on a dead run among a party of his warriors who were maltreating some American prisoners, hurled them right and left, and then turning to General Proctor demanded why he allowed such things. "I cannot restrain your warriors," replied the British officer. Pointing the finger of scorn at him, Tecumseh thundered: "You are not fit to command; go home and put on petticoats!" The plans and drawings which this remarkable Indian drew on a piece of bark, to show the features of the country, were pronounced by English engineers the equal of their own best efforts. He compelled Proctor to fight the battle of the Thames, and, had that officer followed his counsel, the fortunes of the day might have turned out differently. He expressed contempt for Proctor's lack of character, and would have severed all relations with him but for the pleadings of some of his warriors, whom Tecumseh was too honorable to desert. When he entered upon the battle at Moravian Town, he had a pathetic premonition that he would never come out of the engagement alive, and he consequently made disposition of the few effects he possessed, though he fought with his usual intrepidity, until shot down, no one ever knew by whom, though Colonel Richard M. Johnson was credited with the act. The estimation in which Tecumseh's memory is held is shown by the number of places in this country named in his honor. It will be remembered, too, that it formed part of the given name of General Sherman.





Ruins of the Capitol after the fire



CHAPTER XLVI

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION—SECOND TERM, 1813–1817 (Continued)—EVENTS OF 1814–15

[*Authorities:* In addition to the renewed invasion of Canada, Madison's second term was marked by Jackson's successful expedition against the Creeks, to repress Indian atrocities in the South incited by Tecumseh. The horrors of this expedition will be found chronicled in the present chapter, together with the results of the operations during 1814, in Canada. The latter include the failure of the British attack on Chippewa, and the American successes at Plattsburg and on Lake Champlain, with the incidents of the hotly contested, six hours' battle of Lundy's Lane, which brought the war in Canada practically to a close. On the sea, many daring naval engagements brought honor to the Stars and Stripes, in addition to the glory won over British intrepidity at New Orleans. The successes of the year have, however, to be discounted by the humiliating capture of the city of Washington, with its attendant British vandalism. On December 14, 1814, the Treaty of Ghent terminated the protracted struggle, in a peace which was as inglorious as the war itself; for nothing was settled by it; nor, on either side, was there anything surrendered. Comparatively more gratifying, in Decatur's humbling of the Barbary States, were the issues of the war with Algiers, which carried the whole country with it. That, at least, had something to show for it, in putting an end to the tributes extorted by pirates, and in securing, with the release of American captives, a money payment. The authorities for the period, besides the standard histories and the monographs already mentioned, are: J. Q. Adams's *Memoirs*; John Randolph's *Letters*; and C. J. Ingersoll's "Historical Sketch of the Second War."]

Tecumseh



TENNESSEE voted three hundred thousand dollars and gave General Andrew Jackson five thousand men with which to punish the Creeks. Among the volunteers who served under "Old Hickory," as he was familiarly called, were Sam Houston, who was afterwards famous in the Texan war for independence, and Colonel Davy Crockett, the eccentric member of Congress from Tennessee, who perished at the Alamo in 1836. Jackson determined to show

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Crushing
 Defeat of
 the
 Indians

no mercy to those that had shown none to the defenceless white people. He hunted down the Indians and finally brought them to bay at Talluschatches, now Jacksonville, Ala., where the fight was to the death and wholly without quarter on either side. Every one of the warriors, numbering about two hundred, was killed, while eighty-four women and children were made prisoners. Jackson still pressed the savages to the wall, and they made their final stand at the Great Horseshoe Bend of the Tallapoosa River (Tohopeka), in the present State of Alabama. There close upon a thousand warriors were surrounded on the 27th of March, 1814. In the terrific battle that ensued, six hundred were killed and the remainder put to flight.

Jackson was anxious to kill or capture Wethersford, the half-breed who led the Creeks at the massacre of Fort Mimms. He had not been either shot or taken prisoner. While Jackson was in his tent, a few hours after the battle, a chief boldly stalked in and stood before him.

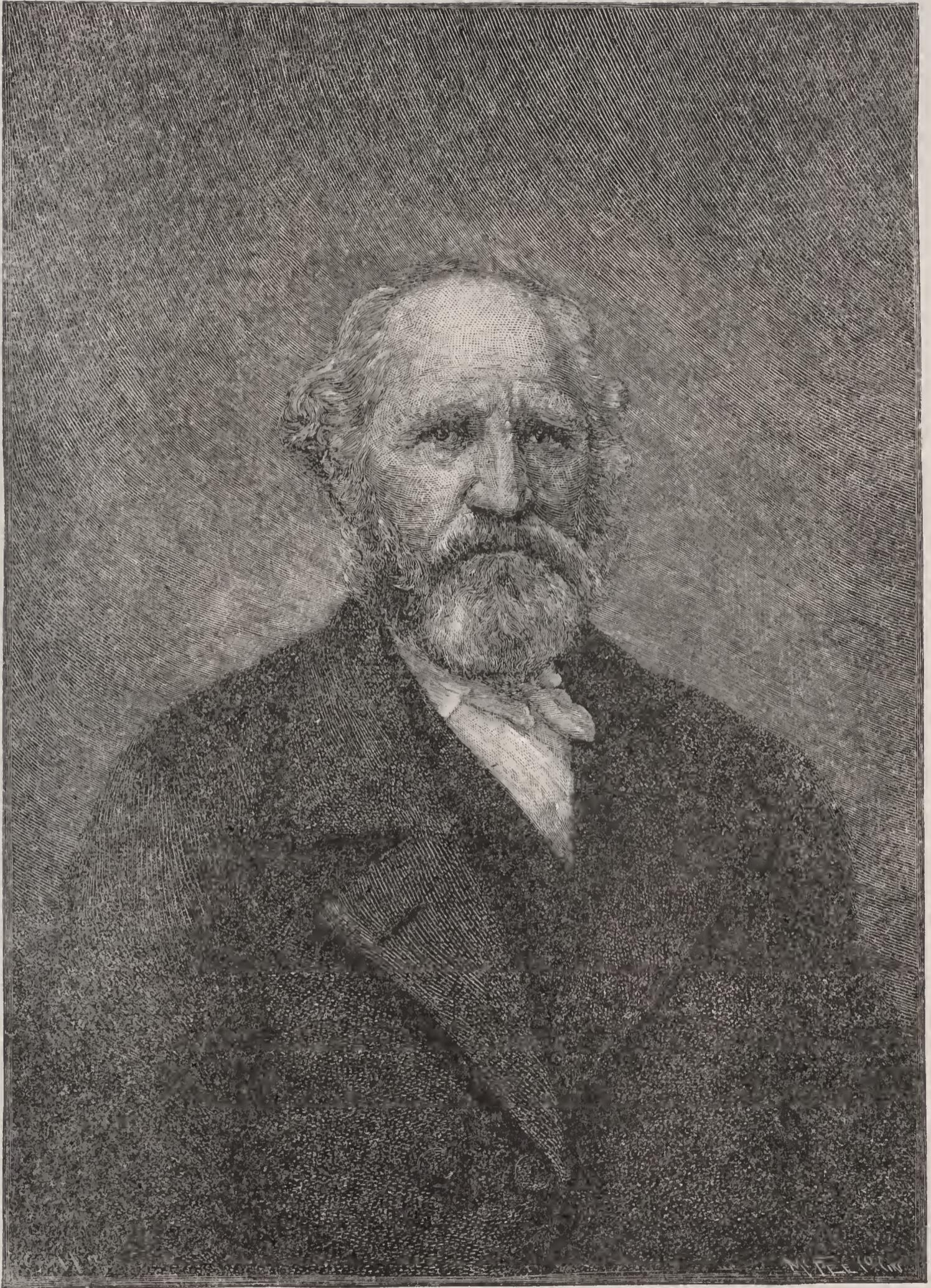
"I am Wethersford," said he; "I am in your power; do as you please with me; I have done the white people all the harm I could, but I can do no more; my voice cannot animate the dead; when they lived I never asked for peace, but they are gone, and I ask it now for my people and myself."

Although the half-breed was a vicious miscreant with none of the redeeming qualities of Tecumseh, his conqueror could not refuse to accept his surrender. Peace was made on the terms of the whites.

War
 Measures of
 the
 Government

The year 1814 opened with foreboding to the Americans. Napoleon, who had threatened to "disturb the equilibrium of the universe" by his amazing conquests, was crushed at last, and soon England, it was thought, would be ready to launch her battle-scarred veterans against us. The struggle promised to assume huge proportions, but, though New England was still disaffected, the general government addressed itself to the task before it with an unshakable faith in the patriotism as well as in the prowess of her people. The President was empowered to borrow twenty-five million dollars and to issue treasury notes to the extent of five millions. It was ordered, moreover, that the regular army should be increased to sixty-six thousand men, while a bounty was offered for each recruit, and the pay, rations, and clothing of the troops were arranged on a liberal scale.

Armstrong, the Secretary of War, was quick-tempered and obsti-



SAM HOUSTON

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Invasion
 of
 Canada

nate, and still clung to his favorite scheme of invading Canada. This made the Niagara frontier the principal scene of land operations. General Wilkinson, however, was so slow that nearly half the year passed before he was ready to take the offensive. On the 3d of July, Generals Scott, Ripley, and Brown, with three thousand men, crossed the Niagara River from Black Rock to Fort Erie. These three men were each excellent officers. Brown, by merit alone, had won the place of major-general, and, as has been stated, he became commander of the United States army, holding the office until 1828, winning a gold medal and the thanks of Congress, and the honor of having Brownsville, New York, named for him. The garrison of two hundred British at Fort Erie surrendered on the approach of Brown's division without offering battle. Brown turned and pursued a British corps of observation down the river and came near capturing it. He then withdrew across Street's Creek, where he was speedily joined by the remainder of the troops. Shortly after, in the dusk of the evening, the British made an attack and a severe engagement followed. The enemy were routed with the loss of more than five hundred men, while the Americans lost about two-thirds of that number. The Indian allies of the British were so frightened by their rough handling that they deserted in a body. Brown now prepared to attack Kingston and asked Commodore Chauncey to co-operate with his fleet, but Chauncey refused, and since nothing could be done without his aid, Brown was forced to withdraw.

Battle
 of
 Lundy's
 Lane

General Scott, who commanded the American right, was ordered forward, and late on the afternoon of July 25th reached an open space to the south of Lundy's Lane, whose course lay at right angles to the river. There he was confronted by the British army under General Riall, holding a fortified position and within sight of Niagara Falls. Had any one of the "political generals" been in Scott's place, he would have scrambled back again as fast as he could, but the grim soldier was made of different stuff. He determined to hold his ground until the main army arrived. He not only did that, but in the fight which began almost immediately he manœuvred and fought with consummate skill. He took General Riall and his staff prisoners, though they managed to escape in the confusion. General Brown heard the firing and hurried forward, arriving within an hour. He noticed at once a battery of seven guns doing destructive work

from a hill near the enemy's centre. Victory was impossible until that was captured or silenced. Calling Colonel James Miller to his side, he pointed to the hill and said in his brisk, military fashion :

“Colonel, take your regiment and capture that battery!”

“I'll try,” was the response, and the colonel hurried away to execute the difficult order. By this time it was so dark that Miller and his three hundred men were able to steal close to the battery, screened by a fence, without being detected. Peering through the fence the gunners were seen with lighted matches in hand. The Americans silently thrust their guns between the rails, fired, and every gunner fell. Then leaping the fence, the battery was captured in a twinkling. Three desperate attempts to retake it were repulsed, General Drummond being wounded in the last charge. Victory hinged now upon the possession of this battery. The British, failing to regain it, withdrew from the field, with a loss in killed and wounded of eight hundred and seventy-eight men. The Americans suffered in killed and wounded and missing a loss of eight hundred. The engagement lasted far into the night.

Lundy's Lane was the severest battle of the war. One-fifth of the men engaged were either killed or wounded. General Scott was hurt so seriously that he did not recover until after the war closed. Brown was also wounded, though not dangerously. General Ripley assumed command, and fell back upon Fort Erie, abandoning the battery captured by Colonel Miller. His course was so unsatisfactory that he was superseded by General E. P. Gaines.

Having received reinforcements General Drummond invested Fort Erie. He attacked it on the night of August 14th, but was defeated with severe loss. A cannonade was maintained by each force for several days, during which General Gaines was severely wounded. Brown had not yet recovered from his hurts, but he resumed command. A sortie was made September 17th, and the advance works of the enemy were captured. News of reinforcements approaching for the Americans so frightened the British that they fell back to Fort George at the mouth of the Niagara River. Fort Erie was thereupon evacuated by the Americans, November 5th, and, destroying the works, the American force crossed the Niagara and went into winter quarters at Ontario and Black Rock. No further military operations took place between Lakes Erie and Ontario.

The Army of the North remained through the winter of 1813-14

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Gallant
 Exploit
 of Col.
 Miller

Other
 Engagements

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

at French Mills, which afterwards received the name of Fort Covington. General Wilkinson invaded Canada from Plattsburg in March. In an attack upon a British force on the River La Colle, he was driven back with severe loss. He had done so little previous to this that he was now superseded by General Izard. It was Izard who marched to the help of General Brown at Fort Erie, a movement which uncovered Plattsburg. The British prepared to attack it by land, and to capture or destroy the American flotilla on Lake Champlain.

British
 Invasion
 of the
 United
 States

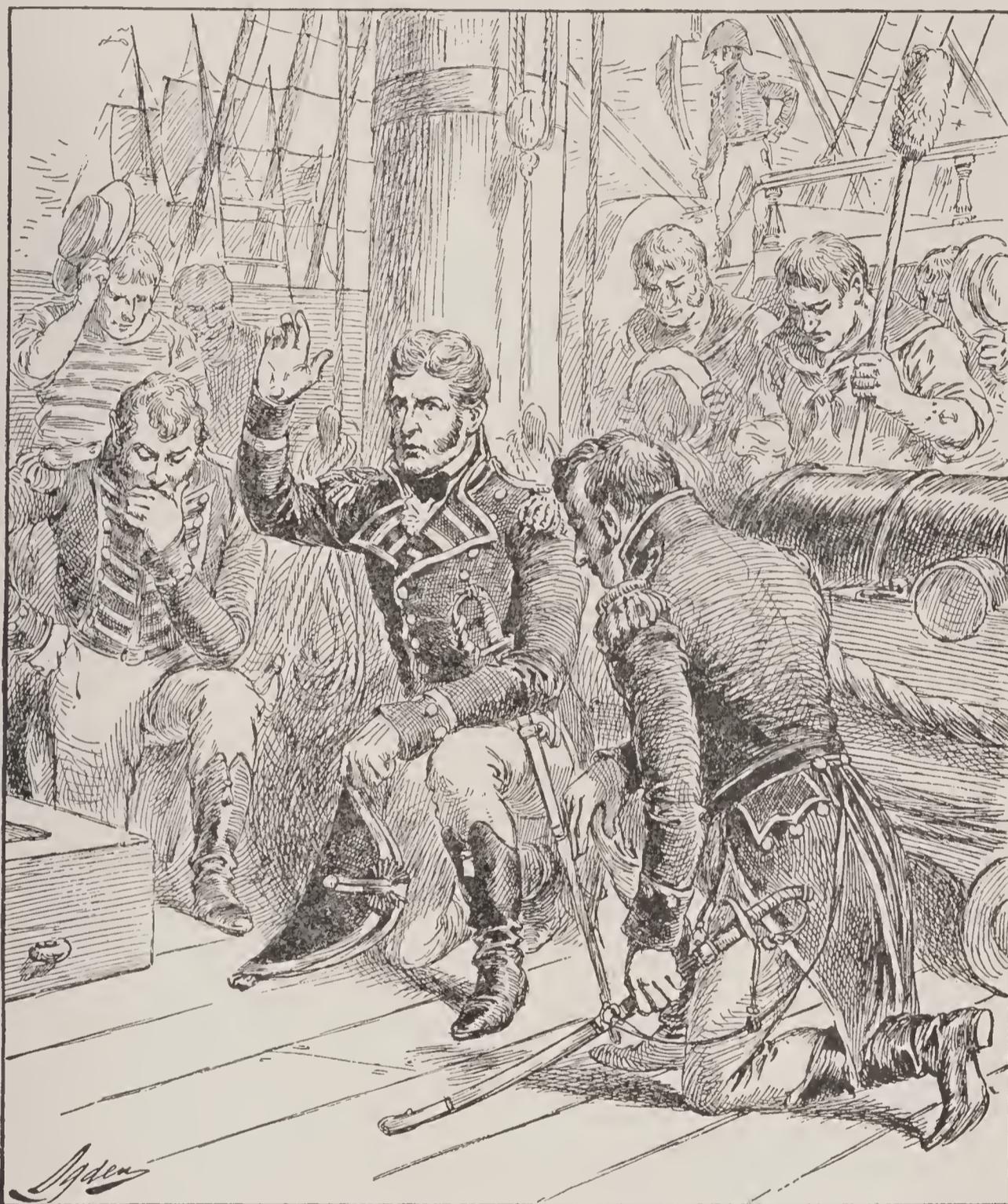
Sir George Prevost (*prē-vō'*), with fourteen thousand veterans, invaded the United States on the 3d of September. On the 6th this strong force was at Plattsburg, on the northern bank of the Saranac River, near Lake Champlain. The New York and Vermont militia, under General Macomb, crossed to the south side of the Saranac and prepared to contest the passage of the river. The troops, however, lacked the discipline of their foes, but were fully as brave and resolute. Tearing up the planks of the bridges, they built a series of breastworks, from behind which they repeatedly repelled the advance of the enemy.

Battle
 of Lake
 Cham-
 plain

The British fleet, under Commodore Downie, appeared off the harbor of Plattsburg, September 11th. The American squadron, under Commodore Macdonough, had eighty-six guns and eight hundred and twenty men, while the enemy had ninety-five guns and more than a thousand men. When Macdonough had cleared for action, he knelt upon the deck of the *Saratoga*, and, with his chief officers grouped around him, humbly asked God to aid him in the battle that was about to open. The engagement had hardly begun, when a shot from the enemy knocked a hen-coop on the *Saratoga* to splinters, releasing a young gamecock which was the pet of the sailors. The bird flew upon a gun-slide, where he flapped his wings and crowed lustily. Sailors are superstitious, and they accepted this as an omen of victory. The battle lasted for more than two hours and was a sanguinary affair. The British Commodore Downie was killed and all his ships were either sunk or captured. When the firing ceased, there was not a mast uninjured in either squadron. Prevost was so alarmed at this crushing disaster that he retreated during the night, leaving behind his camp equipage, provisions, intrenching tools, together with his sick and wounded. The British attempt to invade the United States was no more successful than our efforts to invade Canada.

Previous to this inspiring victory, the crowning humiliation had come to the American arms. The Government learned in April of Napoleon's abdication and that thousands of the released English veterans would be sent to this country. Admiral Cockburn reappeared in Lynn Haven Bay early in March, with a strong naval force

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLICAN AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829



BEFORE THE BATTLE

to carry out the instructions of Admiral Cochrane, to devastate and ravage the seaport towns, but no steps were taken to put the national capital in a state of defence. Fort Washington, on the Maryland side of the Potomac, a few miles below the city, could offer some resistance to the passage of ships, but there was almost an unob-

Outrages
 by the
 Enemy

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

The
 Defences
 of Wash-
 ington

structed route through Maryland from the Chesapeake. The President received word on the 1st of July that a fleet of transports with a large force was about to leave Bermuda, bound to some port of the United States, probably on the Potomac. The District of Columbia formed a part of the fourth military district, in which the effective troops, under General Winder, numbered about two thousand, scattered over widely separated points, some as far away as Norfolk. A company of the marines was at the barracks in Washington and a company of artillery in Fort Washington. General Winder warned the Government that imminent peril threatened and asked for troops with which to meet it, but it seemed impossible to convince the authorities that he was right or that any circumstances could arise that would place the capital in peril. The time quickly came, however, when the danger appeared at the very doors. Then the frightened Secretary of War put General Winder at the head of fifteen thousand militia and directed him to do whatever he thought best to save the city. Winder did little. The militia were scattered here and there, and when it became known that a large land and naval force had appeared in Chesapeake Bay, only a small body of men were at command to checkmate the movement, and General Winder had slight confidence in them.

Bravery
 of
 the Blue
 Jackets

Commodore Barney, with an armed schooner and thirteen barges, had been driven out of Chesapeake Bay and blockaded. He ran up the Patuxent, where he could not be followed, but the enemy landed five thousand regulars, marines, and negroes to capture or destroy his vessels. Winder found himself with five hundred regulars and two thousand undisciplined militia, with which he took up a strong position at Bladensburg and awaited the enemy's advance. The British came on without opposition, boasting that they would dine in Washington on the morrow. When they had reached Marlborough, Commodore Barney burned his fleet and hurried to Washington. The approach to Bladensburg was by a bridge, which was defended by artillery taken from Barney's fleet and handled by him and his sailors. There were six hundred of them, and no men ever fought with greater bravery. The militia fled, but the sailors stood their ground and drove back the enemy again and again, until flanked and overwhelmed, they were forced to surrender. General Ross so admired the bravery of the "blue-jackets" that he paroled Barney on the spot.

The defeated Americans, obeying orders, gathered on the heights near Washington, and there a body of Virginia militia joined them. Winder knew that these men would not stand fire, and he retreated with them to Georgetown. Meanwhile, the President, the heads of the departments, and many of the citizens had left the city, which was entered by General Ross, just as night was closing in, with his advance guard of eight hundred men. He offered to spare the capital for a ransom, but there was no one to pay it, and the torch was applied. The Capitol, the President's house, the Treasury buildings, the Arsenal and barracks were fired—indeed, the only one of the public buildings saved was the Patent Office. Several private houses were plundered and others burned. To prevent the public vessels and other government property at the Navy Yard from falling into the hands of the enemy, they were set on fire by Commodore Kinzey. The total value of the property destroyed either by our own people or by the invaders has been estimated at two million dollars, besides which many things thus lost were beyond value, and could not be replaced. It was an act of vandalism on the part of the British, for which they were condemned by their more right-minded countrymen. Their leading journal said: "Willingly would we throw a veil of oblivion over our transactions at Washington. The Cossacks spared Paris, but we spared not the capital of America."

The British remained in the neighborhood of the city until the following night, when they withdrew and re-embarked on the 30th at St. Benedict. General Ross was much elated at his success and announced that he would spend the winter in Baltimore. He landed, with some eight thousand troops, on the 12th of September at North Point, within fourteen miles of Baltimore, and a part of the fleet ascended the Patapsco to bombard Fort McHenry. But Baltimore was wiser than Washington and did not wait the arrival of the enemy before making preparations for the city's defence. Ross was riding at the head of his men, with Admiral Cockburn, the two chatting gayly, when the bullet of a sharpshooter mortally wounded him, and he died a few minutes later in the arms of an aide-de-camp. Colonel Brooke assumed command and repelled the advance of the Americans. The British bivouacked on the field that night and resumed their approach to the city on the morrow.

Fort Covington and Fort McHenry, which commanded the passage from the Patapsco into the harbor of Baltimore, received the bom-

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Capture
 of
 Wash-
 ington

With-
 drawal
 of the
 British

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Unsuccessful
 movement
 against
 Baltimore

bardment of sixteen ships a little more than two miles from the forts, just far enough indeed to be beyond their effective range. On the night of the 13th the enemy attempted to storm the works, but were repulsed. The squadron saw that it had undertaken an impossible task, and so withdrew down the river. Colonel Brooke could do nothing without the help of the fleet, and he also retreated. Francis Scott Key had gone on board one of the British ships, under a flag of truce, to procure the exchange of a friend, Dr. Beans, of Upper Marlborough. They were very anxious about the fate of the forts, fearing that they would be obliged to surrender. At break of day, Key cast his eyes longingly towards the fort and with a thrill of delight saw the flag still waving above the ramparts. The sight so inspired him that he wrote our national song, *The Star Spangled Banner*, which doubtless will be sung by patriots through the centuries.

The
 Hartford
 Convention

We have referred to the unpopularity of the war in New England, which suffered greatly because of the destruction of her commerce. Twenty-six delegates from the legislatures of Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island, New Hampshire, and Vermont met in Hartford, December 15th. They held their meetings in secret, George Cabot, of Boston, acting as president. They sat for three weeks, during which some headstrong members expressed themselves in favor of withdrawing from the Union. No definite action was, however, taken in that direction, though an address was drawn up, charging the national Government with giving effect to measures injurious to New England. Amendments were proposed to the Constitution, and a committee was appointed to visit Washington to demand the applying of the revenues of New England to her own defence. An adjournment took place until June, but the war came to an end before that date, and the convention did not again assemble.

Two expeditions were sent against the British and the Indians of the Northwest in the summer of 1814. Two hundred men went up the Mississippi from St. Louis and posted themselves at Prairie du Chien (*p. ā-rè du-sheen'*), above the mouth of the Wisconsin, hoping thus to keep the hostile Winnebagoes and Chippewas in subjection. While building a fort, a force of six hundred Canadians and Indians invested it and compelled the Americans to surrender. Colonel Croghan, the hero of Fort Stephenson, led six hundred men north-

ward from Detroit against the British post and depôt of stores at Mackinaw. Several vessels of Perry's fleet acted as a convoy for the land forces, but the movement was so tardy a one that when Mackinaw was reached, August 4th, the British were fully prepared. An assault was repelled, and the expedition returned after destroying some shipping and supplies in Georgian Bay.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

After the chastisement which General Jackson gave the Creek Indians, they surrendered much of their lands, but were increasingly resentful. When the British squadron entered the Gulf of Mexico and occupied the forts at Pensacola, with the permission of the Spanish authorities, the Indians saw a chance of revenging themselves upon the Americans. The British attacked Mobile Point, September 15th, but were repulsed. Two hundred Creeks took part in the land attack, thus proving their treacherous nature. Major-General Jackson was in command of the southwestern military district and was incensed at the action of the Spanish authorities, which was a gross violation of neutrality. Unable to obtain satisfaction from the Spanish governor of Florida for his breach of faith, Jackson, with two thousand Tennessee militia and a body of Choctaw warriors, captured Pensacola, November 7th, drove the British to the harbor, and then out of that, and compelled the Spanish governor to surrender the town. When Jackson returned to Mobile, he learned that New Orleans was in imminent danger of capture by the enemy, and he was besought to go to its relief. The British had received large reinforcements from England and were in the Gulf making ready to invade Louisiana.

**Vigorous
 Measures
 of
 General
 Jackson**

The veterans that had arrived from England were under the command of General Sir Edward Pakenham, a brother-in-law of the Duke of Wellington, and a brilliant officer who had fought in many battles against Bonaparte. Pakenham was so confident of capturing New Orleans that he brought with him printing-presses, custom house and civil officers, and everything that would be required in the permanent occupation of the city. He tried to hire Lafitte, a noted freebooter, to help him, but he refused and offered his services to Jackson, who accepted them. Jackson reached New Orleans on the 2d of December. With his usual vigor, he enlisted almost every man who could carry a gun, including the militia, convicts, and negroes. His sternness caused considerable dissatisfaction, which he met by declaring martial law—which means that the government of the city is taken

**Prepara-
 tions to
 Attack
 New
 Orleans**

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Defences
 of the
 City

out of the hands of the civil authorities and placed in the hands of the military. This step made Jackson as much of an autocrat for the time being as is the Czar of Russia to-day. He, however, strained every nerve to put the city in the most efficient condition to repel attack. New works were added to Fort St. Philip, guarding the passage of the Mississippi at Détour la Plaquemine (*plak-meen'*) and an extensive line of fortifications was erected on the left bank of the river four miles below the city. The line reached from the Mississippi to an impassable cypress swamp on the east. A ditch between the river and the swamp was utilized by throwing up intrenchments and piling cotton bales to a height that protected the troops in its rear. At many available places cannon were mounted. The other bank of the river was held by General Morgan and his militia and by Commodore Patterson with a part of his squadron. Gunboats were waiting to contest the passage of the river between Lakes Pontchartrain and Borgne (*born*), while the pass of Bayou St. John above the city was guarded by a strong force.

The British fleet appeared at the mouth of the channel between Pontchartrain and Borgne on the 14th of December. The American flotilla, under the command of Lieutenant Thomas Ap Catesby Jones, fiercely attacked it and inflicted considerable injury, but it was no match for the British fleet, which soon destroyed it, Lieutenant Jones being dangerously wounded. Then, on the 22d, a body of troops in flat-bottomed boats was taken to the extremity of the lake and landed in a reedy swamp. Jackson attacked them on the night of the 23d and killed a number, but could not drive out the remainder. He withdrew towards the town, and five days later the British were only a half-mile from the American lines. They attacked it with shells and rockets, but met with indifferent success.

General
 Jackson's
 Forces

Jackson's three thousand men were mostly militia, but among them were many backwoodsmen and riflemen from Kentucky and Tennessee, the finest marksmen in the world. They had full confidence in their leader, and were eager to measure strength with the brightly uniformed veterans of Europe. They occupied a line of intrenchments a mile long, and situated nearly four miles from the city. A canal in front and the batteries on the other side of the river protected this line, in addition to eight batteries mounted in position. The enemy worked their way forward with great care, and by the 31st of December were within about five hundred yards of the works. They

threw up breastworks of sugar and molasses, which were no more effective than those of ice which Montgomery erected in front of Quebec in 1775. The cannon balls of the Americans sent both the liquid and the granulated sweetness flying in all directions. Three desperate assaults were made upon the works by the enemy, but each time they were repulsed with heavy loss.

Pakenham saw that he had a hard task before him. He dug a canal to connect the creek emptying into Lake Borgne with the main channel of the Mississippi, with the view of sending artillery into the river and silencing the batteries on the western shore. The work was a laborious one, but was of little avail. About this time Jackson received three thousand Kentucky militia; all of them as fine marksmen as were the Tennesseans.

On the morning of January 8, 1815, the English forces moved against the American intrenchments. They numbered more than eight thousand men and were the flower of the English army. They advanced in two columns, each with a regiment in front with scaling ladders and fascines, and with a thousand Highlanders between, prepared to support an attack on each wing of the American force, while a powerful reserve was in rear. They formed an imposing mass and roused a murmur of admiration among the Americans, who, with rifles cocked and fingers upon the triggers, glanced along the barrels, taking sight, and awaited the order to fire. The patriots had in addition a thirty-two pounder, loaded to the muzzle with rifle-balls. At the command "Fire!" the cannon and thousands of rifles were discharged. The Americans were in two rows, those behind loading for the ones in front, so that the discharge was almost continuous. The British recoiled under the fearful discharge, but quickly rallied, their men dropping by the score before the storm of death. It was a brave advance. The left column pushed along the embankment skirting the river, and the right entering the swamp, tried to turn Jackson's left, but the effort failed. The canal dug by Pakenham had partly fallen in, and was useless to the enemy.

Pakenham would not be daunted, and, running to the head of the regiment carrying the scaling ladders, he shouted to his troops to follow him. A few of his men penetrated the lines, where they were shot down. Pakenham himself was mortally wounded; Gibbs, his successor, survived but a short time; Keane, the third in command, was grievously injured, and Colonel Dale, at the head of the

PERIOD IV
THE REPUBLIC AND
THE CONSTITUTION
1783
TO
1829

Battle of
New
Orleans

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

A
 Great
 Victory

Highland regiment, was killed. The assault was hopeless, and the enemy retreated. The battle was over, and "Old Hickory's" glorious victory of New Orleans was won.

The engagement began and ended in less than half an hour, during which the British suffered a loss of twenty-six hundred in killed, wounded, and prisoners, about eight hundred being killed, while of the Americans only seven were killed and six wounded. Jackson granted a truce for the burial of the dead, after which General Lambert, commander of the reserves, withdrew his detachment from the west bank of the river and retired with his crippled army to Lake Borgne. At Fort Bower he learned that a treaty of peace had been signed between his country and the United States. This was the most brilliant victory of the war, and is still celebrated in many parts of the country.

In August, 1814, the United States commissioners, John Quincy Adams, James A. Bayard, Henry Clay, Jonathan Russell, and Albert Gallatin, met in Ghent the British representatives Lord Gambier, Henry Gouloburn, and William Adams. Several months were spent in negotiations, and on the 24th of December a treaty was agreed upon, signed and sent to London, where it was ratified on the 28th by the Prince Regent. The treaty arrived in New York, February 11, 1815, on the *Favorite*. It was ratified by the Senate of the United States on February 17th, and promulgated the next day by proclamation of the President. As it made its way slowly over the land, it was received with the deepest satisfaction by the people. Had there been a submarine telegraph in those days, or had the Atlantic been then crossed by the "ocean greyhounds" which now make the passage in less than a week, the battle of New Orleans with its many casualties and several of the naval engagements need not have taken place.

Treaty
 of
 Ghent

The treaty of Ghent which closed the struggle was absurd in most of its features, for the real cause of the trouble between the countries was not touched. The right of search claimed by Great Britain was passed over in silence, and nothing was done concerning the injuries to our commerce or of the rights of neutral nations. Each side agreed to restore all places or possessions taken during the war, and, after the signing of the treaty, to stop Indian hostilities, and to do all it could to break up the slave trade. Provisions were made for adjusting the international boundaries between Canada and the



"THROUGH THE LONG SEPTEMBER NIGHT"

United States and for settling other boundary disputes which had existed since 1783.

The chief naval operations have been related, and we must now refer to the engagements on the ocean. In the spring of 1813 Captain Porter, in the *Essex*, doubled Cape Horn and entered the Pacific Ocean, the first American frigate to appear in that mighty expanse of water. His work was so vigorous that he soon broke up the British whaling trade in the Pacific. He armed a number of his prizes, paid his men out of the money captured, and found himself at the head of quite a fleet. All the countries in that part of the world were friendly to Great Britain, so he seized the Marquesas Islands when it was necessary to refit his ships, after which he continued his cruise. Early in 1814 the *Essex* entered the neutral harbor of Valparaiso, where she was blockaded by the *Phæbe* and the *Cherub*, which were searching for her. While crippled from an accident, and in violation of the laws of nations, the *Essex* was attacked by both vessels, which poured shot into her from a distance and prevented her closing with them. The *Essex* fought with the greatest heroism, and did not surrender until she had fifty-eight men killed, sixty-five wounded, and thirty-one drowned, out of a total crew of two hundred and fifty-five. The *Essex* had forty-six guns and the enemy seventy-three, but only six of Porter's guns could be used against the thirty-two long guns in the British ships. In his official report, the British commander said that the *Essex* did not surrender "until the loss was so great, and her shattered condition so bad, as to render further resistance unavailing." Midshipman D. G. Farragut, then only thirteen years old, conducted himself with conspicuous gallantry during this terrible affair.

In May, Captain Johnston Blakely crossed the Atlantic with the *Wasp*, and on the 28th of June captured the British sloop *Reindeer* in the English Channel. The *Reindeer* was so riddled that Blakely burned her. On a dark night, early in September, the *Wasp* forced the *Avon* to surrender, but three consorts of the *Avon* coming up, Blakely was compelled to relinquish his prize. He, however, captured several other prizes, but later in the autumn the *Wasp* was lost at sea with all on board. The sloop-of-war *Peacock*, Captain Warrington in command, sailed from New York in March, and on the 29th of April captured the *Epervier* after a severe fight of forty minutes. The prize was valuable, for the vessel itself was sold for \$55,000 and she had

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Exploits
 of the
 Essex

Career
 of the
 Wasp

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUB-
 LIC AND
 THE CONSTI-
 TUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

The
 Consti-
 tution

more than \$100,000 in specie on board. Before returning to New York in October, the *Peacock*, in another cruise, took fourteen vessels.

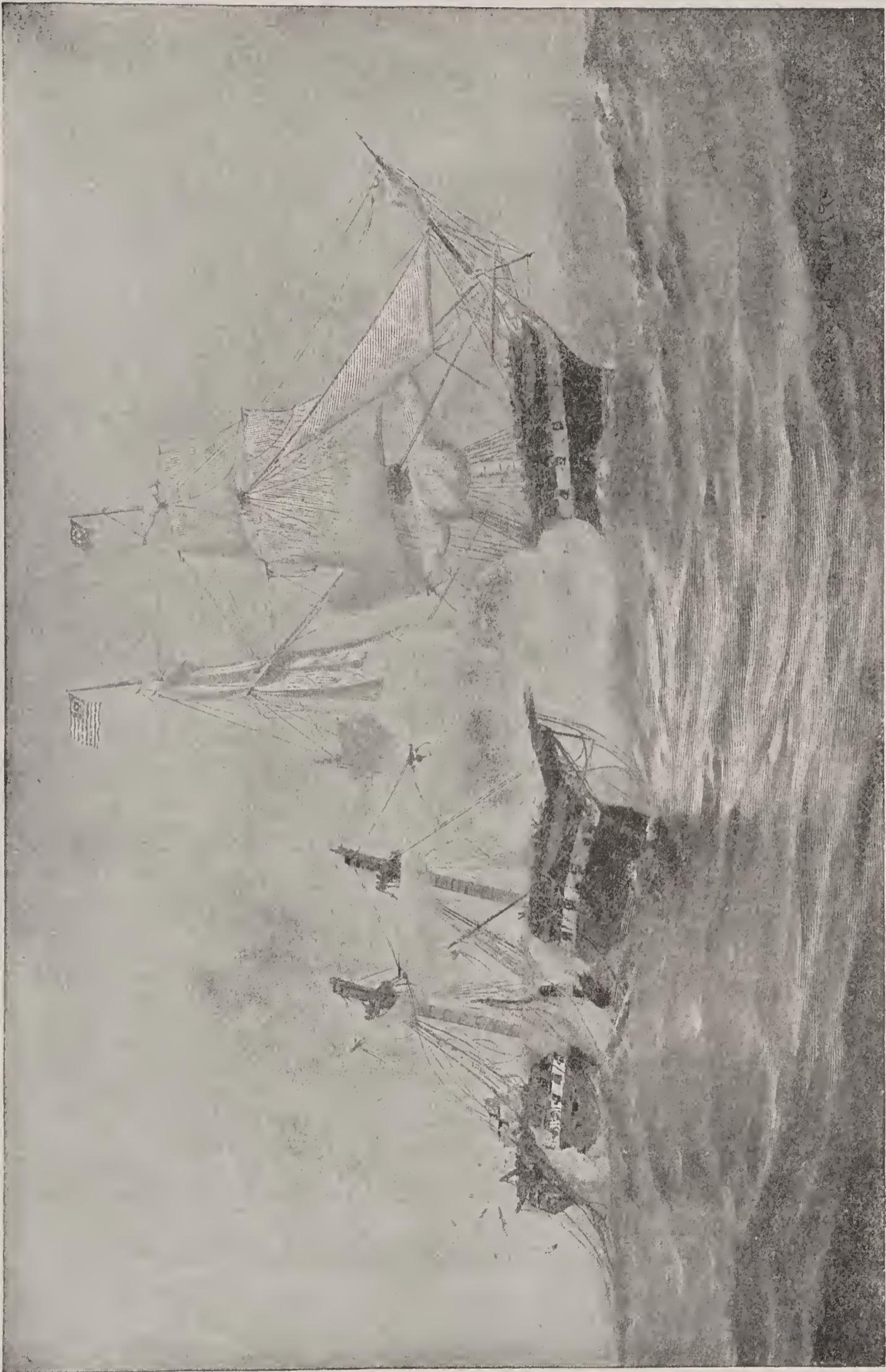
After Bainbridge had won his brilliant victory in the favorite frigate of the navy, the *Constitution*, she was thoroughly refitted and proceeded to sea, in charge of Captain Charles Stewart. On February 14, 1814, she captured the *Pictou* off the coast of Surinam. On her return to New England, she was chased into Marblehead by two heavily armed British frigates. Reaching Boston, the *Constitution* remained until the close of the year, when she again put to sea. Crossing the Atlantic to the Bay of Biscay, she cruised off the harbor of Lisbon. While sailing towards St. Vincent, two strange sails were sighted, February 20, 1815. Stewart at once gave chase, when they displayed the British colors. They proved to be the *Cyane*, of 34 guns, and the *Levant*, of 21 guns. Stewart attacked both ships, and the battle, which was a brief one, was fought by moonlight. Stewart displayed consummate seamanship in this remarkable engagement. He kept his two opponents each at the corner of a triangle, while he held the third, firing, with great rapidity and accuracy, his forward guns into one and his rear guns into the other. He not only defeated every attempt made by them to secure a raking position, but repeatedly raked both and finally compelled them to surrender. The *Constitution* received hardly any injury, and the next morning resumed her cruise for another fight. Her loss was four killed and ten wounded against thirty-five English killed and forty-two wounded.

A
 Gener-
 ous Offer

When the respective captains of the *Cyane* and the *Levant* met on board the *Constitution* as prisoners, they began blaming each other for the mistakes made. Each insisted that if his ally had done as he should, they would have defeated the American. "You are mistaken," remarked Stewart; "no matter what you might have done, I would have had you both. If you don't believe it, I will put each of you and your crews back on your respective ships and we'll fight it over again."* They decided that they had had enough of fighting, and that it was best to leave matters as they were.

At Porto Rico, Stewart heard of the treaty of peace. He arrived in New York in May, bringing news of the capture of the *Cyane* and the *Levant*. Like all his gallant predecessors in command of the

* Richard Watson Gilder.



THE UNITED STATES AND MACEDONIAN

FROM THE ORIGINAL PAINTING BY WARREN SHEPPARD

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

superb frigate, he was deservedly honored by his government and fellow-citizens. Congress awarded him a vote of thanks, a sword, and a gold medal; he also received the freedom of the city of New York from its Common Council, while the State of Pennsylvania presented him with a gold-hilted sword. Stewart died in 1869, in his ninety-second year. He lived for a long time near Bordentown, New Jersey, and retained his activity of mind and body to the last. He was known as "Old Ironsides," and the *Constitution*, which is still preserved, bears the same expressive name.

Decatur's
 Misfortune

It will be recalled that Commodore Decatur was chafing near New London, where he was closely blockaded by a vigilant British fleet. In the summer of 1814, he was transferred to the command of the *President*, forming one of a small squadron consisting of the *Peacock*, the *Hornet*, and the *Tom Bowline*. This squadron was intended for the East Indies. The *President* eluded the blockaders off Sandy Hook and put to sea. She had not gone far, when she was pursued by four British ships-of-war, two of which steadily gained upon her. Decatur tried to draw them away from each other, so as to fight them singly, but failed, and, after a long running fight, was compelled to strike his colors. The remainder of the squadron sailed, late in January, ignorant of the fate of their flag-ship. They headed for an island in the South Atlantic, which Decatur had named as the rendezvous. The *Peacock* and *Tom Bowline* arrived there in March, but a storm drove them out to sea. When the *Hornet* was about to anchor there, on the 23d of March, the British sloop *Penguin* was sighted and captured after a furious engagement lasting twenty minutes. Captain Biddle was in command of the *Hornet*, and this action of his was one of the most interesting of the war. Biddle received a gold medal from Congress, and the citizens of Philadelphia presented a service of silver plate to him. A British battle-ship of the line afterwards chased the *Hornet*, but, by fine seamanship, she eluded her pursuer in June and reached New York.*

An Inter-
 esting
 Engagement

* In no naval engagement of the war were the contestants so evenly matched as in this one. The *Hornet* carried twenty guns, having two hundred and seventy-nine pounds of metal to the broadside, while the *Penguin* mounted nineteen guns, with two hundred and seventy-four pounds of metal to the the broadside. The latter had one hundred and twenty-eight and the former one hundred and thirty-two men. The action was fought off Tristan d'Acunha and lasted only twenty-two minutes. The British had thirty-eight killed and wounded, while the American loss was one killed and eleven wounded. When the flag of the *Penguin* was lowered, Captain Biddle stepped to the taffrail of the

Captain Warrington, in command of the *Peacock*, captured the *Nautilus* in the Straits of Sunda on the 30th of June, 1815. The next day he learned of the ratification of peace; so he gave up the *Nautilus* and sailed for the United States. He, like many others, was also honored by Congress with the nation's thanks and a gold medal. Warrington, when he reached home, found that every cruiser, both public and private, had returned to port some time before, and that to him, therefore, belonged the distinction of having fired the last shot in the War of 1812.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

In setting forth this narrative of the engagements on the ocean, we have confined ourselves mainly to the doings of the American navy itself, but it must not be forgotten that many of the most brilliant exploits were performed by the privateers, who in the space of three years "took, burned, and destroyed sixteen hundred British merchantmen of all classes," inflicting a damage upon the enemy almost beyond estimate. The record of the doings of these daring cruisers would fill many volumes. While we cannot attempt to give even a portion of them, there is one that must be told, for no American can read of it without feeling his pulses beat quicker and his heart swell with pride at the thought of the valiant deeds performed by his own countrymen.

Achievements
 of the
 Privateers

The privateers put out from almost every seaport. Baltimore furnished the largest number, but New York, Philadelphia, Boston, and Salem sent out some score or more. From Charleston, Bristol, and Plymouth sailed some of the most famous, varying in size from mere pilot boats, with twenty or thirty men on each, to the largest frigates, the peer of the finest ships in the British navy. The majority of the privateers were schooners, medium-sized, swift and powerfully armed, but a number were brigs and brigantines, crowded with men, so as to furnish crews to bring in the prizes, which they were confident of capturing. Sometimes a half-dozen of these prizes would so deplete

The
 Ports
 whence
 they
 Sailed

Hornet and asked his enemy if he had surrendered. Two British seamen fired at him. One shot struck him on the chin, inflicting a painful wound. Almost at the same instant, the two seamen were shot dead by the American marines. The officers of the *Penguin* said that every one of their midshipmen lost a limb. Captain Biddle reported of the *Penguin* that she was completely riddled with shot, and that her foremast and bowsprit were carried away. The *Hornet* did not receive a single round shot in her hull, nor was any material damage done to her spars or rigging. The British commander and boatswain had served under Nelson. After taking a few stores out of the *Penguin* she was scuttled and sunk.

PERIOD IV

THE REPUBLIC AND
THE CONSTITUTION

1783

TO

1829

**The
General
Arm-
strong**

the original crew that hardly enough men were left to man and handle the privateer itself.

The privateer *General Armstrong* was commanded by Captain Samuel C. Reid, of Connecticut. Her armament included nine long guns, the largest of which was a twenty-four-pounder, the others being nine-pounders, or "long nines," as they were called. At the period to which we refer, her entire crew consisted of ninety men, the remainder having been sent home with the prizes previously captured. The *General Armstrong* put into the harbor of Fayal, about the middle of September, 1814. Fayal is one of the most northern of the Azores group, lying due west of Portugal. Its fine harbor made it a favorite stopping-place in those days, as it is still, for sailing vessels bound on long voyages to the north or the south. The privateer's purpose was to provision the ship. The same object led a British squadron, bound for Jamaica, to join Admiral Sir Thomas Cochrane's naval expedition against New Orleans, to halt at Fayal on the 25th of September. The British squadron consisted of three vessels: the flagship *Plantagenet*, of seventy-four guns, commanded by Captain Robert Floyd; the frigate *Rota*, thirty-eight guns, under Captain Philip Somerville, and the brig *Carnation*, eighteen guns, under Captain George Bentham. These vessels were thoroughly equipped for action and were manned by two thousand men.

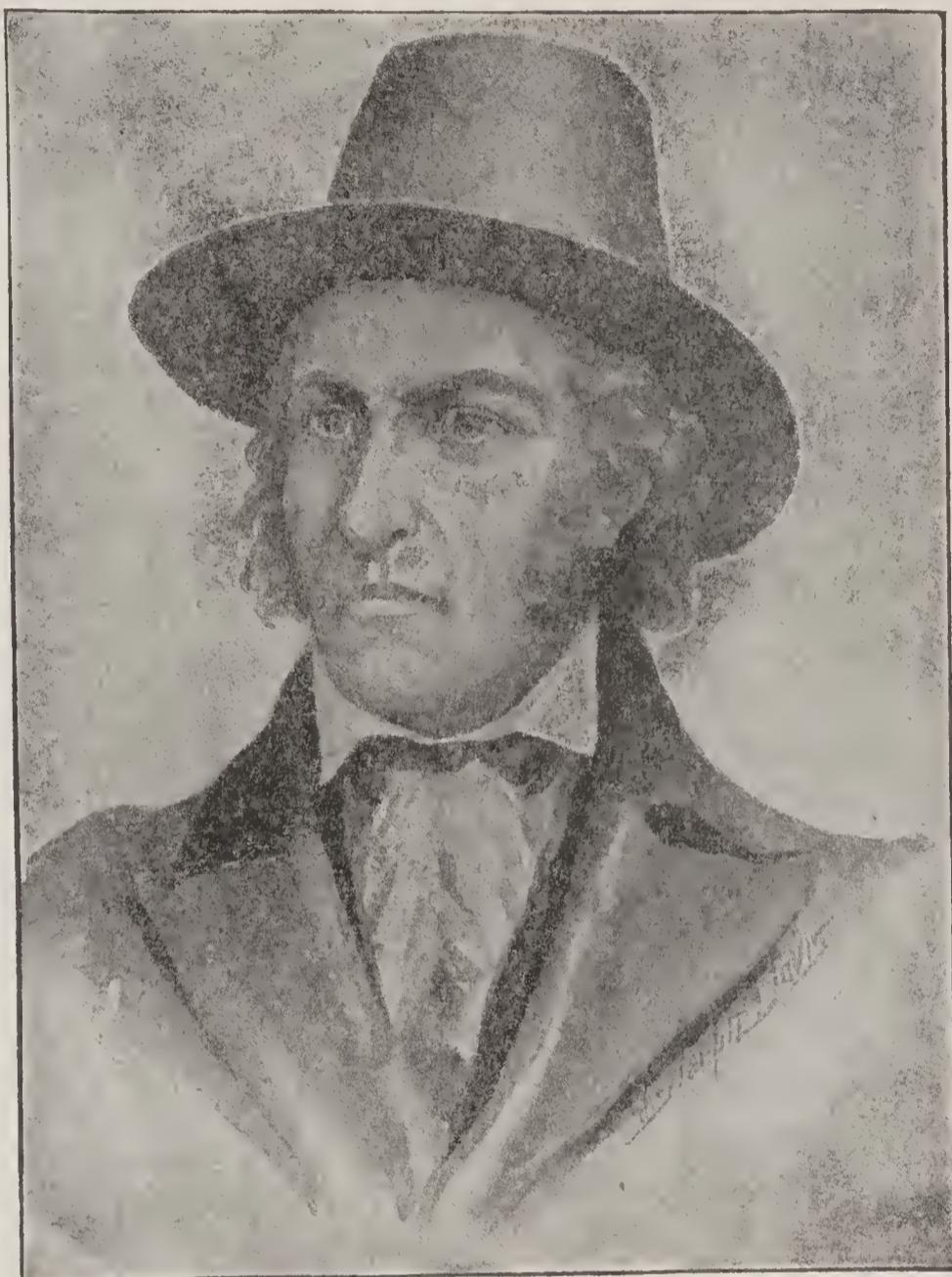
**In Fayal
Harbor**

On entering Fayal harbor, Captain Floyd espied the Yankee privateer and distributed his ships around her so that escape was impossible. Since he was in the waters of a neutral power, Captain Reid did not think the enemy would attack him; but he took no chances, spread his nets, and prepared for action. The next day several boats put out from the British flagship and headed for the privateer. Floyd reported at home that he did not mean to attack the American, and was on a reconnoitering expedition only. Captain Reid did not take that view of the matter. He believed that the enemy intended to board him, that being a favorite method of attack in the naval warfare of the period. He gave the boats several warnings, but they came straight ahead. When they had approached dangerously near he fired and wounded several men, and drove the boats back.

Captain Reid expected a general attack, and put his ship nearer shore, with springs on her cables. At eight o'clock he was not surprised to see a number of boats lowered from the British men-of-war, and filled with armed men. The accounts in regard to the

number of the boats are conflicting. Floyd reported that four boats were lowered from the *Plantagenet* and three from the *Rota*, and that one hundred and eighty men were in them. An English eyewitness of the fight is responsible for the statement that there were fourteen boats, containing about forty men each. At all events, each

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829



CAPTAIN SAMUEL C. REID

boat carried a carronade in her bows, and the expedition was under the command of Lieutenant William Matterface of the *Rota*. They approached some rocks near the privateer, behind which they sheltered themselves for several hours. In the mean time, the *Carnation*, being light of draft, like the *General Armstrong*, made sail and approached within shot of the privateer, to be handy in case she should slip her cables and put to sea.

Over-
 whelm-
 ing
 Force
 of the
 Enemy

At midnight the Americans heard the splash of oars and knew

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

A Desperate
 Engagement

that the attack was at hand. The boats were within plain sight soon, for the moon was shining brightly. At a considerable distance the enemy began firing from their carronades. This was returned by the long nines, but no damage was done on either side. But at close quarters the fight was fierce and bloody. Three of the boats were sunk before they reached the nets and their occupants left struggling in the water. The Americans leaned over the rails and poured a deadly fire from muskets and pistols into the boats. The fire was returned hotly. When the enemy reached the nets they made a valiant attempt to board. They hacked the nets and laid hold of them, pulling themselves within reach of the vessel's side and attempting to clamber upon deck. They attacked on the bows and starboard quarter. Captain Reid defended the starboard quarter. The attack at the bows was met by First Officer Frederick A. Worth. Captain Reid drove off the boarders on his quarter and then hurried forward. He and his men were needed, for the attack was on the point of success. The boarders swarmed up shouting, "No quarter!"

"No quarter!" returned the American tars, shooting them down with pistols held in the enemy's faces and prodding them with long pikes.

The sides of the vessel and the calm sea were stained with blood. Victory was with the Americans. The enemy's boats pulled away with a little handful of men only. Three boats had gone to the bottom. Others, filled with dead, drifted to the shore. Only two returned to the ships.

A Wonderful
 Victory

After the fight the Americans counted the cost. The "Long Tom" on the bows had been knocked off its carriage by a shot from a carronade, but it was replaced easily. Two Americans were killed and seven wounded. Second Officer Alex. O. Williams was among the killed. Mr. Worth and Third Officer Robert Johnson were among the wounded. The British loss was very severe. According to American estimates, two hundred and fifty were killed or wounded. The official report of Captain Floyd was that thirty-four were killed and eighty-six wounded. Among the dead was Lieutenant Matterface who led the expedition.

At daybreak the next morning, the Fayal authorities sent a message to Captain Floyd requesting him to stop further hostilities in the harbor. Captain Floyd replied that he meant to have that privateer if he knocked down the entire town. He accompanied the

reply with the warning that if the authorities of Fayal permitted the Americans to destroy or injure the privateer, he would consider Fayal a hostile port and treat it accordingly. Captain Reid heard of the threat, and ordered that the dead and wounded be taken ashore. He also advised the sailors to send ashore the most valuable of their effects. Then he put the ship in good order and awaited the attack. It came before the close of the day. The brig *Carnation* made sail,

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829



A "LONG TOM"

and, approaching within a short-firing distance, poured broadside after broadside into the privateer. The *General Armstrong's* broadsides were not effective, for the reason of that she had smaller guns, and only half as many of them. "Long Tom" was put into service, and the effect was immediate. One shot took effect in the *Carnation's* hull and started a dangerous leak. Another snapped the foretopmast. Others injured the rigging badly. In a short time the *Carnation* was obliged to turn and escape.

Another
 Victory

The other vessels approached afterward, and it was evident that a

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Scuttling of the
 Armstrong

The Hero
 of the
 Victory

general attack was close at hand. Such an attack could have only one end. The British had three vessels against one smaller than their smallest, one hundred and fifty guns against nine smaller, two thousand men against ninety. Captain Reid determined that they should not capture the *General Armstrong*. Lowering the boats, he scuttled the ship, and pulled for the shore. The British hastened to the privateer, which was beyond hope by the time they reached her, and set her afire and she burned to the water's edge. The British were enraged at their failure to capture the privateer as a prize, and threatened to pursue the Americans. Captain Reid seized a stone fortress ashore, threw himself within it, and dared the British to follow. They did not come. The *Carnation* was damaged so much, and all of the enemy's ships had been depleted of so many men, that the entire squadron had to put back to England to refit, delaying Sir Thomas Cochran's expedition. He arrived at New Orleans four days after Jackson reached there, otherwise the British would have occupied it.

Captain Reid was highly honored on his return to America. He landed at Savannah, and received ovations all the way to New York, where, on April 7, 1815, the State legislature presented him with a sword. He was then made sailing-master in the navy. He figured afterward as the inventor of the signal telegraph which he erected at the Battery and the Narrows. He regulated and numbered the pilot boats of the harbor, and established the lightship off Sandy Hook. He designed the present form of the American flag, proposing to retain the thirteen stripes and add a new star for each new State.

The affair in the harbor of Fayal resulted in a long diplomatic correspondence. The President took steps to compel Portugal to insist upon the inviolability of her neutral ports. He also claimed indemnity and got a satisfactory award, but afterwards Louis Napoleon, to whom the matter was referred as arbiter, reversed the award. Great Britain apologized to Portugal for the act of Captain Floyd in attacking an enemy in a neutral port.

This stirring fight at Fayal inspired James Jeffrey Roche to write a ballad on "The Fight of the *Armstrong* Privateer." The opening lines are:

" Tell the story to your sons
 Of the gallant days of yore,
 When the brig of seven guns
 Fought the fleet of seven score.

From the set of sun till morn, through the long September night—
Ninety men against two thousand, and the ninety won the fight—
In the harbor of Fayal in the Azore.*

The "Long Tom," which bore so prominent a part in this memorable engagement, was afterwards recovered by the Portuguese and mounted in the castle of San Juan (*Juan*) in Fayal. A short time ago, the king of Portugal expressed a willingness to give up the gun to us. When received it was set up in Lafayette Square, Washington, opposite the White House.

But all the fighting was by this time over, and blessed peace had again come to our country, where, if possible, it was more welcome than in England. Few stopped to ask as to the terms of the treaty: the fact that the war was ended was enough. It had cost us eighteen thousand sailors, sixteen hundred and eighty-three vessels, and a debt of a hundred million dollars. Commerce was at a standstill, and the factories of New England were idle. Now all this was to be changed. Men clasped hands and shed tears of joy, while the shipping of New England was decorated with bunting, and within twenty-four hours after the arrival of the news, the "dockyards rang with the sound of hammer and saw."

In 1816, Congress passed a law re-chartering the Bank of the United States, but the President vetoed it. It was amended and passed at the next session. The capital was thirty-five millions: the central banking house was in Philadelphia, with branches in other cities. This action greatly strengthened the country's credit, and gave an immediate impulse to commerce.

We had an account to settle with Algiers. The Dey did not know much about our country, but he knew we were at war with Great Britain, and he thought it a favorable time to renew his attacks upon our commerce, believing that we would be glad to pay him tribute, as we and other nations had done for many years. By way of opening proceedings, the Dey notified Mr. Lear, the American consul, that the only way for him, his family, and his few friends to escape being made slaves, was to pay twenty-seven thousand dollars. This

PERIOD IV
—
THE REPUB-
LIC AND
THE CONSTI-
TUTION
1783
TO
1829
—

Peace

The
Bank
of the
United
States

* The battle sabre of Captain Samuel Chester Reid was lately presented to the Navy Department by his son, Colonel Sam C. Reid. It was gratefully accepted by Secretary Herbert, who ordered it sent to the Naval Academy at Annapolis, Md., "that the name of him whose gallantry made that sword illustrious may be perpetuated, and the story of his brilliant achievement preserved as a glorious inspiration for the youth of this country."

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

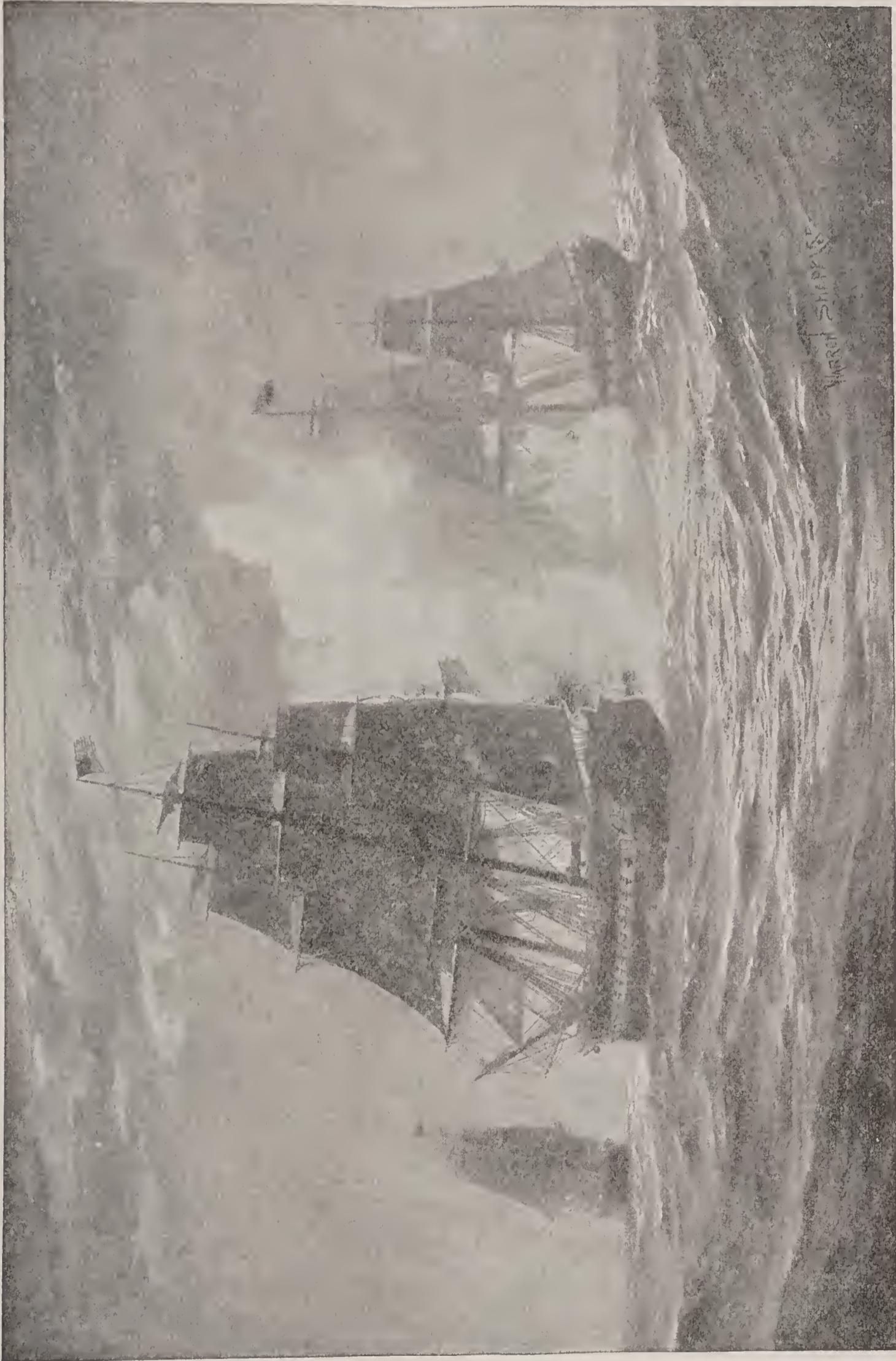
War
 with
 Algiers

was deemed a heavy tribute, but Mr. Lear was forced to pay it or suffer the penalty. To this, however, there was a sequel. Congress, in March, 1815, declared war upon Algiers, and sent Commodores Decatur and Bainbridge to the Mediterranean to teach that country a much-needed lesson. Decatur arrived off Gibraltar in June, and learning that the Algerian forty-six-gun frigate, *Mashouda*, was in the vicinity, he set out to find her. On the 17th of the month she was sighted. Decatur made every effort to approach her unawares, so as to prevent her taking refuge in neutral waters; but she soon discovered the nationality of the American and fled. Decatur's flagship, the *Guerriere*, led in the chase and ere long came within range. The Turk opened fire with musketry and wounded one of our sailors. Decatur reserved his fire until his ship just cleared the enemy's yard-arms, when he delivered a broadside, one shot cutting the Algerian admiral in two, while a number of his men were killed. The Turks fought with unusual bravery and did not surrender until the other members of the American squadron came up. The *Guerriere* had three killed and eleven wounded, while the Algerian had thirty killed and wounded.

Two days later, Decatur captured another frigate, and then made sail for Algiers. He demanded of the Dey the instant surrender of all American prisoners, with payment for whatever property had been destroyed and the abandonment of all claim to future tribute. The terrified Dey prayed that the United States would still pay him tribute, if it were only a small amount of gunpowder. "The only gunpowder you shall receive," replied Decatur, "will be from our cannon, and accompanied by solid shot." The Dey at last yielded the point and signed the treaty on the quarter-deck of the American ship. Decatur next called on the Pasha of Tunis and forced him to pay forty-six thousand dollars for the American vessels he had allowed the English to capture in his harbor during the war. The Bey of Tripoli was compelled to pay twenty-five thousand dollars for a similar breach of faith, and to release ten Christians who were held in slavery. This closed the infamous levy by the Barbary States of tribute for Christian nations. In the space of a few weeks, the American squadron did what all the nations of Europe had not dared to attempt.

Admission of
 Louisiana

In April, 1812, Louisiana was admitted to the Union. It had been named in honor of the French King, Louis XIV., whose ex-



CAPTURE OF THE CYANE AND LEVANT

FROM THE ORIGINAL PAINTING BY WARREN SHEPPARD

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

plorers followed the Mississippi to the sea in 1682. The first settlement was made near its mouth by Iberville, at Biloxi, in 1699, and New Orleans was founded in 1718. The immense territory was ceded to Spain in 1763, at the close of the French and Indian War, but re-ceded in 1800 to France. In 1804, the region was divided into two parts, the territory of Orleans, which included the present State of Louisiana, and the District of Louisiana, composed of the remaining area. Upon the admission of the Orleans District, it was designated Louisiana, while the name of the remainder was changed to Missouri.

Admission of
 Indiana

In December, 1816, Indiana became the nineteenth State of the Union. Its name is derived from the term Indian. When Ohio became a State, in 1802, the remaining territory was called Indiana. Its limits as at present were made in 1809, and it was the second State formed from the Northwest Territory. It grew slowly at first because of Indian troubles, after which its prosperity was rapid.

The
 Colonization
 Society

During the latter part of Madison's administrations, important treaties were made with the Choctaws, Chickasaws, Cherokees, and other Indian tribes, by which we acquired a large extent of territory. The negro had long been a disturbing element in our country. Many good people thought that the true solution of the trouble was to transport the colored people to Africa, their original home. So the Colonization Society of the United States was formed with that purpose in view. Liberia, on the Gulf of Guinea, in tropical Africa, was selected as the "promised land" for the African race. The capital, Monrovia, was named in honor of President Monroe, and a republican form of government established. The republic of Liberia became independent in 1848. Many colored people have gone thither and occasional emigrations are still made, but the object sought was never attained, and it is to be feared never will be.

Presidential
 Election
 of 1816

The War of 1812 gave the death-blow to the Federal Party. Its Presidential candidate in 1816 was Rufus King, of New York, who received only 34 out of 221 electoral votes. James Monroe, of Virginia, and Daniel D. Tompkins, the Democratic war-governor of New York, were respectively chosen President and Vice-President.

1817



CHAPTER XLVII

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION—1817-1825

[*Authorities:* Under Monroe the nation fell upon what was termed "The Era of Good Feeling." It was the lull after the storm of war, in which the country settled down to the vocations of peace, with revived commerce, specie payments, and vast extensions of territory. Maine entered the Union, and Florida was added to it by purchase. Other accessions were made to the area of the nation, which now embraced Illinois, Alabama, Mississippi, and Missouri. These extensions of territory, being mainly southward and westward, brought up the subject of slavery and fixed its geographical lines. Though compromise settled the matter for the time being, it was to become in the future, as we know, the great issue between the North and the South. The other incidents of the Monroe régime are the destructive war against the Seminole Indians; the awakening controversies over the rival economical policies of protection and free trade; and the enunciation of the Monroe doctrine,—national guardianship by the United States over the New World, and of freedom from entangling alliances with the Old World. Interest in these matters will not suffer by the chronicling of the visit of the country's early ally in the cause of freedom—the now aged Lafayette. The special authorities for the period are Gilman's "Monroe;" Schurz's "Henry Clay;" Tucker's "Monroe Doctrine;" and Benton's "Thirty Years' View."]



JAMES MONROE, the fifth President, like all his predecessors except Adams, was a native of Virginia, having been born in Westmoreland County April 28, 1758. He was educated at William and Mary College, and served as a lieutenant in the Continental army at Trenton, Brandywine, and Monmouth. He left the army after the battle of Monmouth, in 1778, but rejoined it when his

State was invaded in 1781. He studied law under Jefferson, and was elected a delegate to the Continental Congress when only twenty-five years old. He became minister plenipotentiary to

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

France, but, having offended the administration, was recalled in 1794. He was governor of Virginia from 1799 to 1802, when he was sent as envoy-extraordinary to France, to aid Edward Livingston, the resident minister, in the negotiations for the purchase of Louisiana. He was re-elected governor of Virginia in 1811, and shortly afterwards was appointed Secretary of State by Madison. He served at the same time as Secretary of War, and, the Treasury being empty, he pledged his personal credit to secure the defence of New Orleans. He died in New York in 1831.

While Monroe possessed no special genius, he was the right man to fill the office of President during the transition period, as it may be called, from war to peace. He was of unblemished integrity, conservative, tactful, and a thorough American in sentiment. He selected a cabinet of marked ability, and thus surrounded himself with the ablest of advisers, when their counsel could not fail to be helpful in the highest degree.

The
 President's
 Cabinet

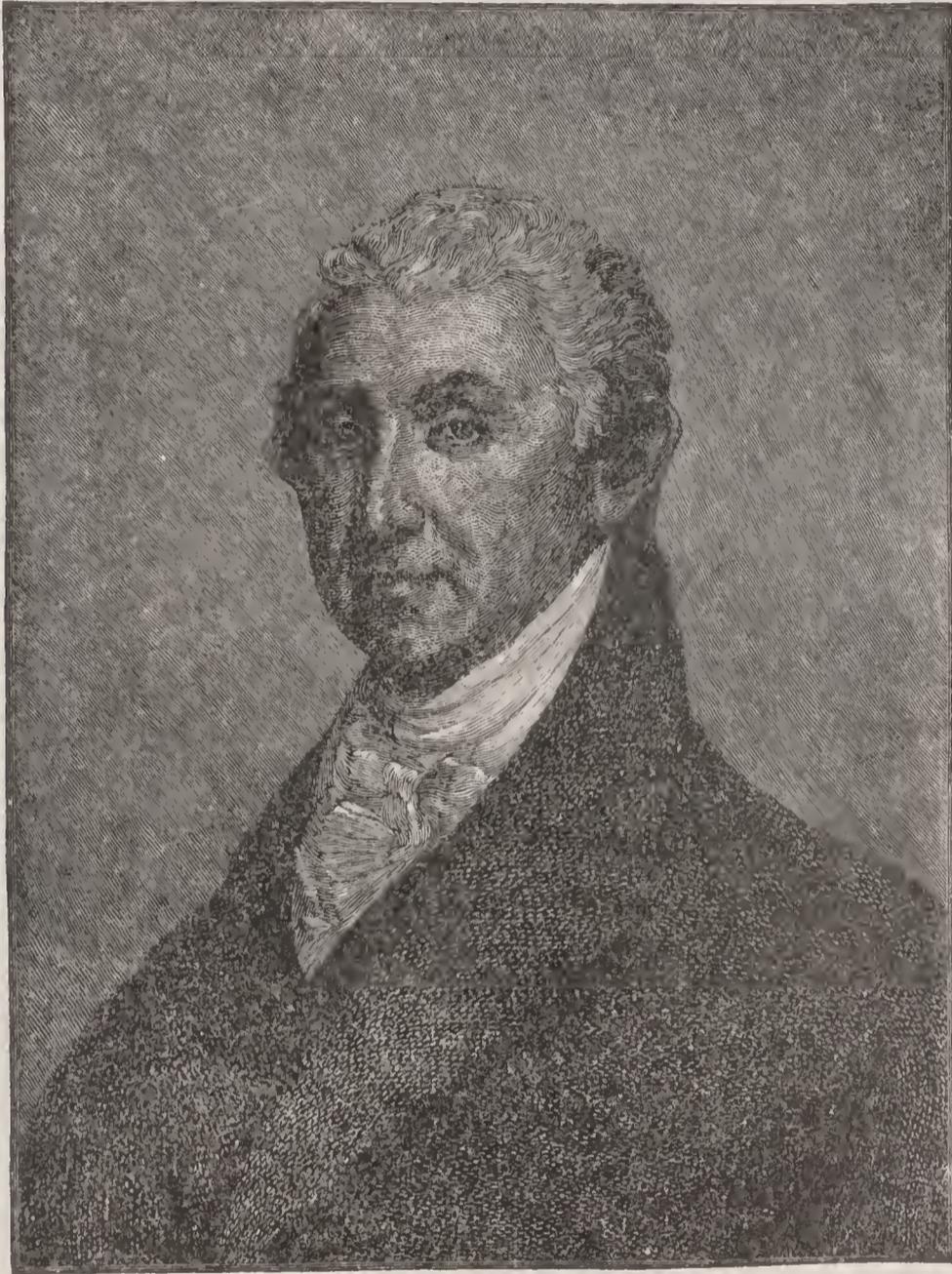
Monroe retained two of his former associates, Crowninshield and Meigs, throughout his eight years of service. John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts, was his Secretary of State; William H. Crawford, of Georgia, his Secretary of the Treasury; Isaac Shelby, of Kentucky, and George Graham, were Secretaries of War for a portion of the first year, when John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, held the office until the close of the second administration. Smith Thomson, of New York, and, after him, Samuel L. Southard, of New Jersey, were Secretaries of the Navy. John McLean, of Ohio, succeeded Meigs as Postmaster-General, in 1823. William Wirt, of Virginia, succeeded Richard Rush, of Pennsylvania, as Attorney-General in 1817, and held that office to the close of the régime.

Admission of
 Mississippi and
 Illinois

Mississippi, the twentieth State, was admitted to the Union, December 1, 1817. Its name in the Indian tongue means "Great Father of Waters." The earliest European known to have traversed the region was De Soto. The first settlement was at St. Peter's, on the Yazoo, in 1703, but every trace of settlement was swept out of the country a quarter of a century later by the Indians. There were many bloody wars with the savages under the early French governors. A part of what is now Mississippi and Alabama was ceded to England in 1763, and became a portion of Georgia. Illinois was admitted to the Union of States in December, 1818. Its name is believed to be derived from its principal river, signifying "River of

men." La Salle made the first settlements in this region. The name of Illinois Territory was given to that which had been the Northwest Territory before Ohio, Indiana, and the Territory of Michigan were erected into States. Illinois then comprised the present States of Illinois, Wisconsin, and a part of Minnesota. The State,

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829



JAMES MONROE

like Indiana and others, suffered greatly during its early days from the turbulent Indians. The massacre at Fort Dearborn, on the present site of Chicago, took place in 1812, but since 1850 the growth of the State has been marvellously rapid.

The
 President's
 Tour

Soon after the inauguration of Monroe, the President made a tour of three months, extending from Detroit to Maine. He was everywhere received with respect and honor, and the numerous acquaint-

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

The
 Seminole
 War

General
 Jackson's
 Campaign

ances which he formed, his courteous manners, and his great interest in the prosperity of the country, resulted in much good not only to himself, by broadening and extending his knowledge, but to the country at large by softening the rivalries and appeasing the jealousies between the different portions of the Union. The chief public event during the early years of Monroe's administrations was the Seminole War. The Seminole Indians were not only warlike but treacherous. Their home was Florida, which, it will be remembered, first belonged to Spain. They found secure refuge in the swamps and everglades of the region, where they were joined by many runaway slaves, who were safe from pursuit. A number of Creeks were also living there, and this mongrel tribe committed many outrages on the frontiers of Georgia and Alabama. General Gaines was sent to put down the rising among the Seminoles and Creeks, and to drive them out of the territory which the Creeks had ceded to the United States. General Gaines not only failed to do this, but became so immersed in trouble that General Jackson had to hasten to his aid. The latter had regulars, and a large force of Tennessee horsemen, with which he speedily overran the country. His orders forbade him to enter Florida, except in pursuit of the enemy. This, however, was only a piece of diplomacy. Jackson knew that his government would deal leniently with him if he invaded the country, and in fact it expected him to do so,—but since Spain was certain to protest, it was well to have the "official" orders to fall back upon. President Monroe, in his message to Congress, said that the United States had the right to pursue the enemy wherever Spain was powerless. Now, since the only towns in Florida amenable to Spain were Pensacola and St. Augustine, trouble was sure to come.

Jackson entered Florida in March, 1818, and in April he occupied the Spanish post of St. Mark's, at the head of Appalachee Bay. It being proved that a couple of Seminole chiefs there had been active in massacreing some American settlers a short time previous to this, Jackson hanged both of them. Leaving a garrison at St. Mark's, he marched hurriedly to the Indian town of Suwanee, hoping to catch "Billy Bowlegs," a Seminole leader, but that chief had been warned, and, despite his odd name, he managed to keep out of the clutches of "Old Hickory."

At Suwanee was Robert C. Ambrister, formerly an officer in the English army, who was under suspension of duty for a year, in con-

sequence of a duel in which he had taken part. Jackson arrested him, and, returning to St. Mark's, had him and a Scotch trader, named Alexander Arbuthnot, tried by court-martial. It was charged that Arbuthnot had warned the Indians at Suwanee of Jackson's march against them: he was, moreover, known to be a friend of the red men. The court-martial pronounced both men guilty, and sentenced Ambrister to be shot and Arbuthnot to be hanged. The former sentence was reconsidered and changed to a penalty of fifty lashes and a year's imprisonment. Jackson, however, set aside the second sentence, and the Englishman was shot. Of course, the Scotch trader was hanged, and it cannot be said even at this late day that the guilt of either was established beyond question. Jackson next marched against Pensacola, the capital of the province, expelled the Spanish authorities, and declared the whole territory under American rule. The governor fled to Fort Barrancas, at the entrance to Pensacola Bay, but that post was captured by Jackson three days later, and the Spanish officers and troops were sent to Havana. In due time a protest came from Spain, and Congress ordered a full investigation. The report censured Jackson in the severest terms. He had certainly violated international law, and the report of the committee made him out so flagrant an offender that no punishment seemed too great for him; but he became more popular than ever, and it can hardly be believed that the report was an honest one.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

**Vigor of
 General
 Jackson**

On the credit side of Jackson's account was the fact that the Spaniards had stirred up the Seminoles to commit outrages, while his severe measures had ended the war. Furthermore, he had secured a fine piece of territory for us; he was popular with the masses, together with the President and his Cabinet, and with the leading men. So, in the end, Congress declared that he was not blamable for his course.

It was necessary that Florida should be officially transferred before it could become a part of the United States. A treaty was framed, in February, 1819, by which Spain ceded East and West Florida, with the adjacent islands, to us. The king, however, refused to ratify the instrument, and sent an envoy to America with a number of complaints, mainly concerning our encroachments on Texas, which at that time was a Mexican province. But finally the treaty was ratified, in October, 1820. Our government assumed, to the extent of five million dollars, the claims of American citizens against Spain.

**Transfer
 of
 Florida
 to the
 United
 States**

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Admission of
 Alabama
 and
 Maine

The Sabine became the dividing line between the territories of the respective governments west of the Mississippi. Jackson was installed as the first governor, and his rule was characterized by the same vigor and stern justice with which he performed every duty.

In 1819, the southern part of Missouri was formed into a territorial government, and Alabama, which at first was a part of Georgia, was admitted to the Union towards the close of the same year. Its name is of Indian origin, meaning "Here we rest." The original settlement on Mobile Bay was made by Bienville (*be-ang-veel'*) in 1702. Mobile was for many years the capital. Alabama was ceded to Great Britain, and then to Spain, from whom, as has just been shown, it came into the possession of the United States. The next State admitted was Maine, which entered the Union March 15, 1820. The early history of the State has been given in that of Massachusetts, of which it formed a part, until, with the consent of the parent State, it became a member of the Union.

Quarrel
 over the
 Admission
 of
 Missouri

In March, 1818, Missouri knocked at the door of the Union. It was so late in the session when she made her demand, that Congress only reported in favor of her admission. The debate over this report caused the most bitter political quarrel that had yet taken place. One party wished it admitted with slavery as a recognized institution and the other without, and neither was willing to yield. Unluckily, the institution was strengthened by a new circumstance. This was the invention, in 1793, of the cotton-gin. But for this, slavery would probably have been doomed in the South, particularly as many of the leading men were opposed to it. The invention made slave labor very profitable, and the institution received new life and flourished. The bill which was introduced in Congress forbidding slavery in Missouri roused so much bitter feeling that open threats of disunion were rife. The admission of Louisiana had already added a large slaveholding area to the Union, and the opponents were resolved to check the growth and extension of the "peculiar institution." On the other hand, the friends of slavery were equally determined that Missouri should be a slave State, if her citizens declared themselves in favor of it. Thoughtful men who listened to the fiery wrangles and fierce threats of the contending factions saw that sooner or later the question of slavery in the Union would have to be settled by war; and when the time came, as one expressed it, it would then be washed out by "rivers of blood." The quarrel became so intense that the

only way of ending it was by compromise, which at this juncture was offered by Henry Clay. The agreement, accepted March 3, 1820, was that slavery should be permitted in Missouri, but excluded forever from every other area of the Union north and west of the northern limits of Arkansas, thus shutting it out from every State north of 36° 30', save Missouri. This agreement was the famous "Missouri Compromise." The State was admitted August 10, 1821. The name comes from the principal river, meaning "muddy water." The first settlement was St. Genevieve, founded in 1755. St. Louis was settled in 1764 and incorporated as a town in 1809, when Louisiana Territory was organized in 1805. St. Louis was made the capital.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

The
 Missouri
 Compromise

Two measures passed during Monroe's first term added to his popularity. In 1818, Congress granted pensions to the surviving soldiers and officers of the Revolution. There were at that time a good many of the veterans still alive, and the act absorbed a large sum, but it was so just that everybody was pleased, especially those who received the pensions, which, in many cases, were sorely needed. The provisions of the bill were afterwards extended so as to aid the widows and children of the patriots who had died in the war. The other popular measure was an agreement, made with Great Britain in October, 1818, by which American citizens were given the right to share with British subjects in the fisheries of Newfoundland. A short time afterwards the boundary between the United States and Canada from the Lake of the Woods, just west of Lake Superior, to the Rocky Mountains was defined.

Two
 Popular
 Measures

About this period privateering in the West Indies became an unbearable nuisance. The pirates killed and robbed with no fear of consequences. Some of the islands were mere nests of the freebooters, who preyed upon the shipping of all nations. An American squadron under Commodore Perry, the hero of the naval engagement on Lake Erie was in 1819 sent to extirpate the outlaws, but Perry caught yellow fever and died. Three years later, another squadron went thither and destroyed a score of piratical vessels off the coast of Cuba, while in 1823 Commodore Porter followed and completed the work.

The Presidential candidates in 1820 were Monroe and John Quincy Adams. Of the electoral votes, Monroe received 231, and Adams one, that being cast by Blumer, of New Hampshire, a Mon-

Presi-
 dential
 Election
 of 1820

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

roe elector, in order to prevent, as he announced, Monroe's unanimous election, it being the sentiment of the people that Washington should always stand alone as the recipient of so great an honor. The Vice-Presidential candidates were Daniel D. Tompkins, Richard Stockton, Daniel Rodney, Robert G. Harper, and Richard Rush. Tompkins received 218 votes, and was elected. The 4th of March, 1821, fell on Sunday, so Monroe was the first President to be inaugurated on the 5th of that month.

The
 Monroe
 Doctrine

South America is a land of revolutions. The various countries had long been held by European monarchies, and they now strove to win their independence. The United States naturally felt a deep sympathy for them, and Henry Clay eloquently urged their recognition by our government, a step which was taken by Congress, in March, 1822. In the following year, the President, in a message to Congress, declared that, for the future, the American continent was not to be considered as territory for colonization or aggression by any European power. This was the enunciation of the famous Monroe Doctrine, which consecrates the Western hemisphere to free institutions, and to immunity from interference by Old World powers. It is one of the most cherished and precious policies of our country. The vigorous message setting forth this doctrine was written by John Quincy Adams, the President's Secretary of State.

Congress now undertook an important work facilitating the opening up of the West. This was the building of a national road for the use of emigrants. It was constructed with great care, with hard, smooth surface, easy grades, and strong bridges. It began at Cumberland, in northwestern Maryland, and was gradually extended to Indiana, by which time the introduction of railroads made its further extension useless. Other roads were meanwhile built and improved by the government.

Visit of
 Lafayette

One of the interesting incidents of Monroe's second term was the visit of Lafayette, upon the invitation of the United States. He was now an old man of sixty-eight, but no foreigner was ever held in higher esteem than this gallant Frenchman and trusted friend of Washington, who gave his best efforts to winning our war of independence. He left our country a small, weak, struggling nation, and now found it with a population of ten millions, and a strength and prosperity which were the amazement of the world. The thirteen colonies along the seaboard had in the interval become twenty-four

States, stretching inland for more than a thousand miles from the sea. As Lafayette came up New York Bay, Fort Lafayette saluted him, and, as he passed from State to State, he was received with processions, parades, greetings, and honors, such as would have been given to Washington had he been alive. His visit extended over a year, during which he was truly the guest of the nation. He visited Mount Vernon, and stood with uncovered head and moistened eyes before the tomb of "the Father of his Country." Everywhere, the heart of the illustrious Frenchman was touched by manifestations of the gratitude of the nation. In Boston, on the 17th of June, 1825, (just fifty years after the opening battle of the Revolution), he laid the corner-stone of Bunker Hill Monument. Lafayette returned to France, in the following September, in the American frigate *Brandywine*, which was placed at his disposal and named in honor of the first battle in which he was engaged and where he was wounded nearly a half century before. Congress also presented him with a township of land in Florida and the goodly sum of two hundred thousand dollars.

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

Honors
 to
 Lafayette

After the conclusion of the War of 1812, all kinds of business improved except manufactures. Foreign goods had been shut out from the country, and many Americans built factories. With the coming of peace, England began sending goods to this country, where they were sold much cheaper than Americans could make them. This compelled the owners to close their factories or sell at a loss. Naturally there arose an urgent demand for an increase of duties on imports. An act making such an increase was passed in 1824. It will be seen that by increasing the duties on goods brought from foreign countries their prices were so raised that the American manufacturers could make the same goods at a profit. Such a list of duties or customs imports is called a *Protective Tariff*, since its design is to protect home manufactures. A *Revenue Tariff* is one intended to obtain revenue only for the government, and leaves the manufacturers to look out for themselves. *Free Trade* would remove all duties, the argument being that a country will naturally produce that which it can make the most money out of, and that the productions brought into existence by taxation put a part of the people into unprofitable employment, which would not be advantageous to the workmen of the country, but to only the manufacturers who employ them. The economical struggle between "Free Trade" and "Pro-

Tariff
 and
 Free
 Trade

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

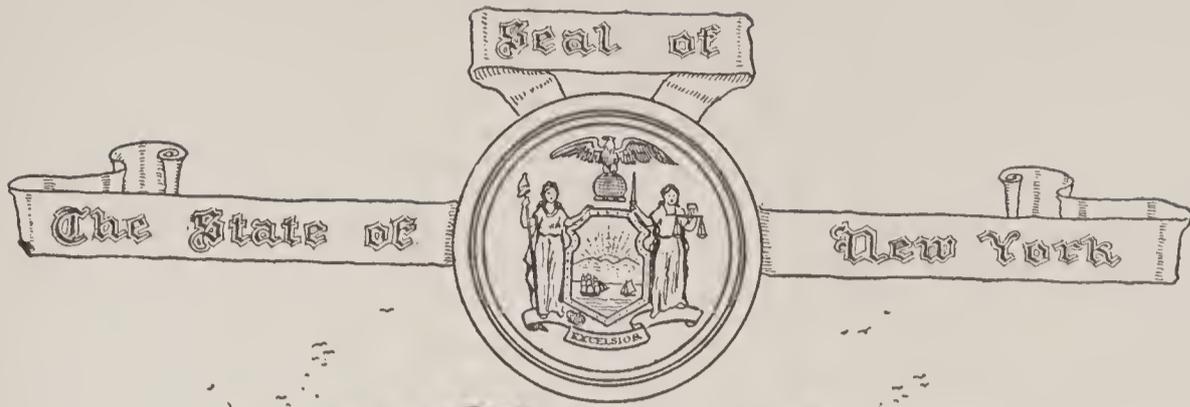
Presidential
 Election
 of 1824

tection" began in 1824, and has, with varying fortunes, continued ever since.

The Presidential election of 1824 was the veriest jumble that had yet taken place. The Presidential candidates were Andrew Jackson, John Quincy Adams, William H. Crawford, and Henry Clay; those for the Vice-Presidency were John C. Calhoun, Nathan Sanford, Nathaniel Macon, Andrew Jackson, Martin Van Buren, and Henry Clay. Every one of these was a Democrat (or Republican, as the name was then known), and so were those who voted for them, there really being but one political party in the country. Jackson received by far the largest popular vote, and of the electoral vote, 99 was declared for him, with 84 for Adams, that for the others being much smaller.

None of the candidates received enough votes to elect him, and the choice therefore fell upon the House of Representatives. There the friends of Clay supported John Q. Adams, who was declared President, with John C. Calhoun as Vice-President.





The Erie Canal.

CHAPTER XLVIII

J. Q. ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION—1825—1829

[*Authorities:* With the accession to office of John Quincy Adams, the "era of good feeling," if it had ever really existed, quickly passed. The influence of the people showed itself not only in the sums voted for war and canal construction, but in the clamor for protection, as well as in the preference for Presidents of a new and popular type. An equally significant sign of the new era was the abuse heaped upon Adams for refusing to use the removing power and permitting his political enemies to remain in office. With Jackson's accession, a change in this respect came with a vengeance. The other incidents of Adams' régime were the troubles with the Cherokees of Georgia over their removal from the State, and the anti-Masonic agitation, referred to in the history of the following administration. The special authorities are the lives of J. Q. Adams by Seward, Morse, and Josiah Quincy; Lodge's "Daniel Webster," and Sumner's "Andrew Jackson."]]



Harvard College in 1836

JOHAN QUINCY ADAMS, who was the son of the second President, was born at Braintree, Massachusetts, July 11, 1767. His brilliant mental powers attracted attention in boyhood, and he received an excellent training at the hands of his parents. He was graduated from Harvard College in 1788. Washington was so impressed by his ability that he made him minister to The Hague, and, later on, minister to Portugal. In 1797, during the Presidency of his father, he was transferred to the Embassy at Berlin. In 1803, the Federalists elected him United States Senator, and six years afterwards he was appointed minister to Russia. He negotiated important treaties with Prussia, Sweden, and Great Britain, and was the leading American commissioner who negotiated the Treaty of Ghent, in 1814. He was Secretary of State through both of Monroe's terms of office, filling the post with marked

PERIOD IV
 THE REPUBLIC AND
 THE CONSTITUTION
 1783
 TO
 1829

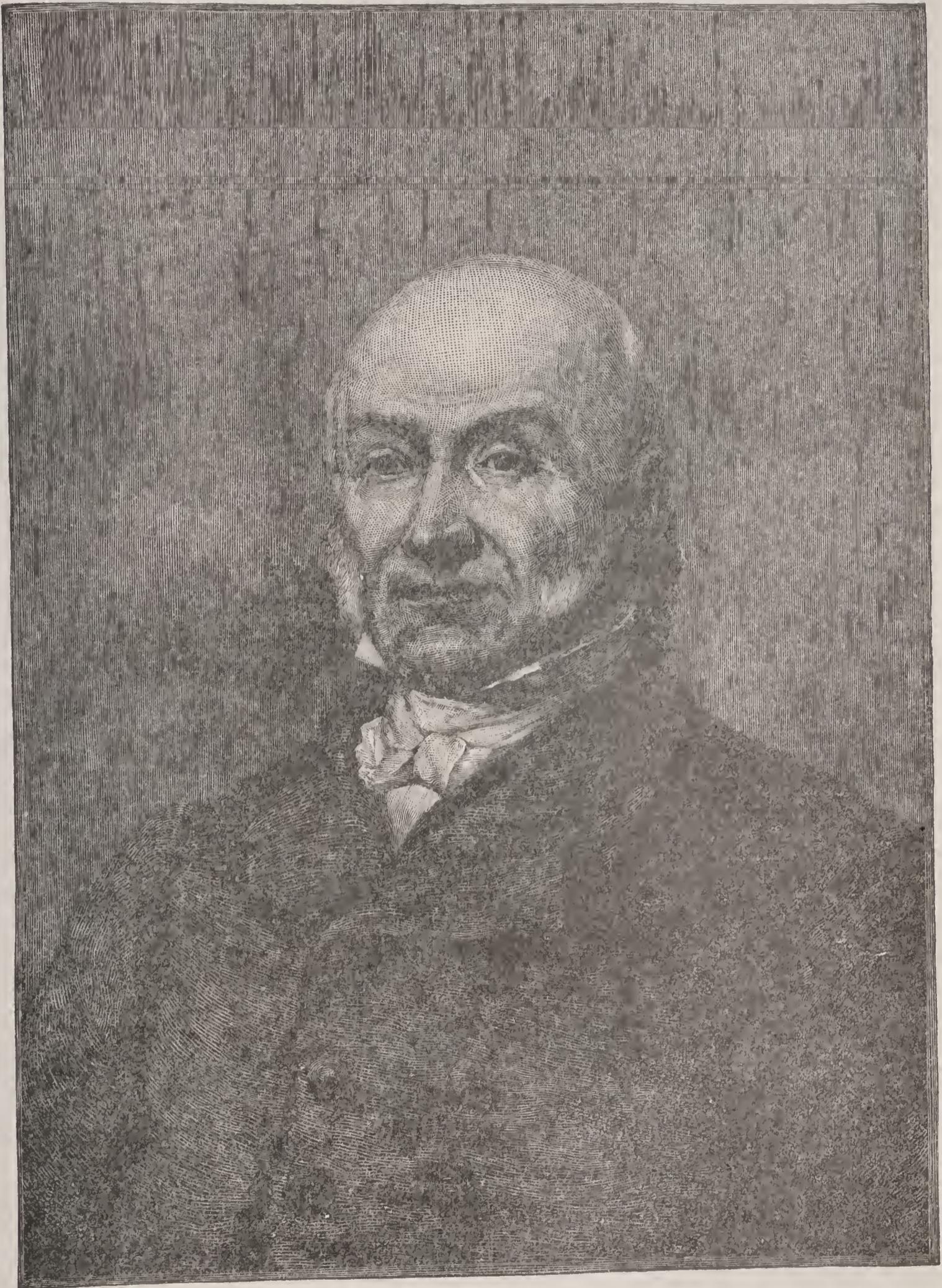
The
 President's
 Cabinet

ability. As has been stated, he was the author of the famous "Monroe Doctrine." Adams appointed Henry Clay his Secretary of State, whereupon the Jackson men declared that in the election a bargain had been made by him and Adams, who thus paid Clay for his support in the "scrub race for the Presidency," to use the phrase of the time. John Randolph of Roanoke spoke of it in his forcible, though sarcastic way, as "a bargain between the Puritan and the blackleg." The charges were vehemently denied, but Randolph's stinging references caused a duel between him and Clay, in which, however, neither was hurt. Wirt, Southard, and McLean, who had been the associates of Adams in Monroe's Cabinet, were retained in the new one, and among all its members substantial harmony prevailed to the close of the administration.

The Cherokees were the most powerful tribe of Indians in Georgia and Alabama, and had reached a high degree of civilization. They had newspapers, schools, and churches, just as we find them to-day among the five civilized tribes of the Indian Territory. It fretted the Georgians to have these representative red men among them, and, though the Indians possessed a clear title to their lands, the State determined to oust them. The governor had a survey made of new territory for them, but the Indians refused to move across the Mississippi. Georgia resolved that they should go. President Adams interfered to protect the Indians in their rights, and the governor, George M. Troup, declared that he would resist the national government by force. In making this threat, he proudly asserted State sovereignty, appealing meanwhile to "the States, from Virginia to Georgia, and from Missouri to Louisiana, to confederate" for the purpose of resisting the unconstitutional measures of the government. A long discussion followed, but, as might have been anticipated, the quarrel was finally settled by removing the obnoxious red men beyond the Mississippi. This, however, was not fully accomplished until 1835, when the Indians parted with their lands by treaty.

Trouble
 with the
 Chero-
 kees

It was during the first year of Adams' administration that the greatest work of internal improvement in this country was completed. For eight years, De Witt Clinton, who for a part of the period was governor of New York, had been bending all his energies to the construction of a canal between Buffalo and Albany, thus securing water communication between the Great Lakes and the Hudson, by



JOHN QUINCY ADAMS

PERIOD IV

THE REPUBLIC AND
THE CONSTITUTION1783
TO
1829Comple-
tion of
the Erie
Canal

means of a navigable stream. There was much opposition to the enterprise, which was often ridiculed as "Clinton's Big Ditch." The canal was finally constructed by the State of New York, at a cost of over seven and a half million dollars, and was in 1825 opened for commerce. When water was let into the canal, the news was signalled from Buffalo to Albany by the discharge of cannon—all captured during the Revolution—stationed ten miles apart. In a little more than an hour after the boom of the first gun at the western extremity of the State, the last one at Albany, three hundred and sixty-three miles distant, responded. An aquatic procession composed of steamers and canal-boats floated from Albany to the sea, led by the *Chancellor Livingston*, with the Governor, De Witt Clinton, and the State officers on board. At New York, it passed down and out the Narrows and anchored near Sandy Hook. There Governor Clinton stepped to the taffrail of his steamer, and, holding aloft a keg of water taken from Lake Erie, poured the contents into the sea, thus completing the marriage of the Atlantic and the Great Lakes. The Erie Canal quickly attained a success far beyond that which its most sanguine friends had looked for. Villages and towns sprang up along its banks, and hundreds of cultivated farms appeared where, until then, all was a desolate wilderness. The receipts for tolls during a period of two or three years were sufficient to pay the whole cost of the construction of the canal. The wonderful result led to the digging of similar inland waterways in many other parts of the country. For years the tolls have been abolished on the Erie Canal, and, despite the building of several lines of competing railways, it still does a vast carrying business from the West, by means of the lakes and the Hudson River, to New York and the Atlantic.

The
"Ameri-
can Sys-
tem"

Henry Clay was the foremost champion of what in economical and trade matters was called the "American System." A new tariff was formed in 1828, which made the duties higher than before. The revenue thus gained was spent in improving roads, constructing canals, and deepening rivers and harbors. This union of internal improvements and a protective tariff was aptly named the "American System." Some time later it formed the foundation of the Whig Party, of which Clay was the chief figurehead and leader. It has to be said for this system, however, that the high protective tariff, while advantageous to the North, was unsatisfactory to the South, because

the North at this period had all the factories. The Southern planters, therefore, had to pay a higher price for goods imported from abroad, in order that the Northern manufacturers might make profits. The friends of the American System replied to this that the cotton-planters received their fair share of the profits, by having better prices and a nearer market for their cotton; but the South was not convinced by this reasoning, nor was she satisfied.

One of the many interesting incidents in our country's annals occurred on the 4th of July, 1826. It will be recalled that Thomas Jefferson wrote the Declaration of Independence, and, as he declared, John Adams secured its adoption by Congress on the 4th of July, 1776, just fifty years before. These two great men quarrelled in 1801, when Adams acted churlishly because of the election of Jefferson, but they were reconciled and remained warm friends throughout the remainder of their lives. On the 4th of July, both men died, at an advanced age, and in the quietness of their own homes. Many people saw a sacred meaning in the sad and impressive event beyond that of a simple coincidence.

The varying views on the questions of free trade and protection now led to the formation of political parties, each with a distinct platform or set of principles. Adams and Clay, the supporters of the American System, called themselves "National Republicans," while their opponents took the name of "Democrats." During the following administration, the National Republicans became the Whig Party, by which familiar English term they were known for more than twenty years.

The candidates of the National Republicans were John Quincy Adams for President, and Richard Rush and William Smith were rivals for the Vice-Presidency. The Democratic candidates were Andrew Jackson for President, and John C. Calhoun for Vice-President. Jackson received 178 electoral votes against 83 for Adams. Jackson was supported by the whole South, which thus expressed its dislike of the American System. Besides this he was very popular, the consequence chiefly of his military services and of what was thought to be the unfair means by which he was deprived of the Presidency four years before, when he received a larger vote than Adams, whose personality was much less pleasing to the people at large than was that of his successful competitor.

PERIOD IV
THE REPUBLIC AND
THE CONSTITUTION
1783
TO
1829

An Impressive
Incident

Presidential
Election
of 1828

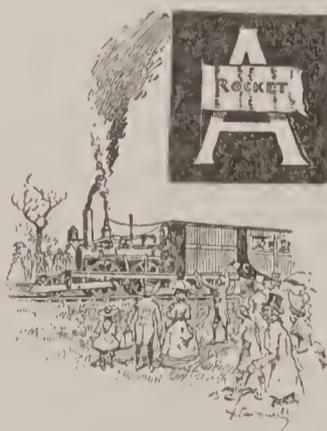


PERIOD V—CONSOLIDATION AND EXPANSION

CHAPTER XLIX

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION—1829—1837

[*Authorities:* The administration of Andrew Jackson furnishes an illustration of the influence that one man can exert in shaping the destinies of a country. Progress, it is true, is by the slow and gradual processes of evolution. When, however, the chief direction of the affairs of state is committed to a man inflexible, courageous, intelligent, progress is hastened, evolution is quickened. To such men is owing the difference between the progress of China and that of Japan. With a weak or vacillating man in Jackson's place during the Nullification period, the story of secession would in all probability have been one of earlier date. With a President less determined, war with France would have been probable; and we should certainly have lacked the sympathy and influence of "perfidious Albion" in settling our difficulty with France. Special references for this period are the lives of Andrew Jackson by Eaton, Cobbett, Headley, Kendall, and many others, but especially to the excellent work of James Parton.]



ANDREW JACKSON will always be a striking figure in American history. He was combative, obstinate to the last degree, an unrelenting hater of his enemies, and an unflinching ally and defender of his friends. He seemed never to know the meaning of fear, and was ready to fight, morning, noon, or night. He figured in numerous duels, and once, when he appeared to be mortally wounded, stood erect until his opponent died, in order that the latter should not have the satisfaction of knowing that he had hurt him. On one occasion, when acting as a presiding judge, the sheriff was afraid to arrest a noted desperado, whereupon Jackson sprang from the bench, seized the ruffian by the throat and

arrested him himself. He faced, defied, and overawed mobs of desperate men. Hardly a more courageous person ever lived. Jackson was too honest to wrong a man of a penny. The slightest taint or suspicion of dishonesty, even in his closest friend, made Jackson his enemy. Added to this, his life was clean and pure, so that altogether there was much to admire in this extraordinary man. That he was impetuous, self-willed, impatient of opposition, and often tyrannical, was inevitable, for with his nature it could not be otherwise. A truthful summing up of his character is the statement that every man who knew Andrew Jackson either loved him warmly or hated him intensely.

Jackson was born in Union County, North Carolina, March 15, 1767. His father was an Irishman, whose ancestors were Scotch. He died when Andrew was but an infant. The widow was very poor, and struggled hard to support and educate her three boys. When only thirteen years old, Andrew took part in the battle of Hanging Rock. The eldest brother was killed and the other died of a wound inflicted by a British officer, because the boy, when a prisoner, refused to do some menial duty for him. Andrew also sturdily refused, and received a painful blow for his defiance. About this time he had an attack of small-pox and was left to die, but his mother obtained his release and nursed him back to health and strength. Mrs. Jackson died some time afterwards, so that, at the close of the Revolution, Andrew was the only living member of the family. The future President studied law, and at the age of twenty-one settled at Nashville. The Indian outrages now sent him into the field as soldier, and his exploits caused the red men to name him "Sharp Knife" and "Pointed Arrow." In 1796, he became a member of the Tennessee House of Representatives, and the following year was elected to the Senate. He resigned his senatorship at the end of a year and went home, having been appointed a judge of the Supreme Court and major-general of militia. His brilliant services in the Creek war, and in that of 1812, are already known to the reader. Jackson died in 1845, of consumption. During the latter years of his life, he became a devout Christian.

It was inevitable that a man with the tempestuous nature of Jackson should have difficulties with his advisers, who, from first to last, were nineteen in number. Jackson made the following appointments: Secretary of State, Martin Van Buren, of New York; Secre-

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861

Presi-
 dent
 Jackson

The
 Presi-
 dent's
 Cabinet

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861
 —

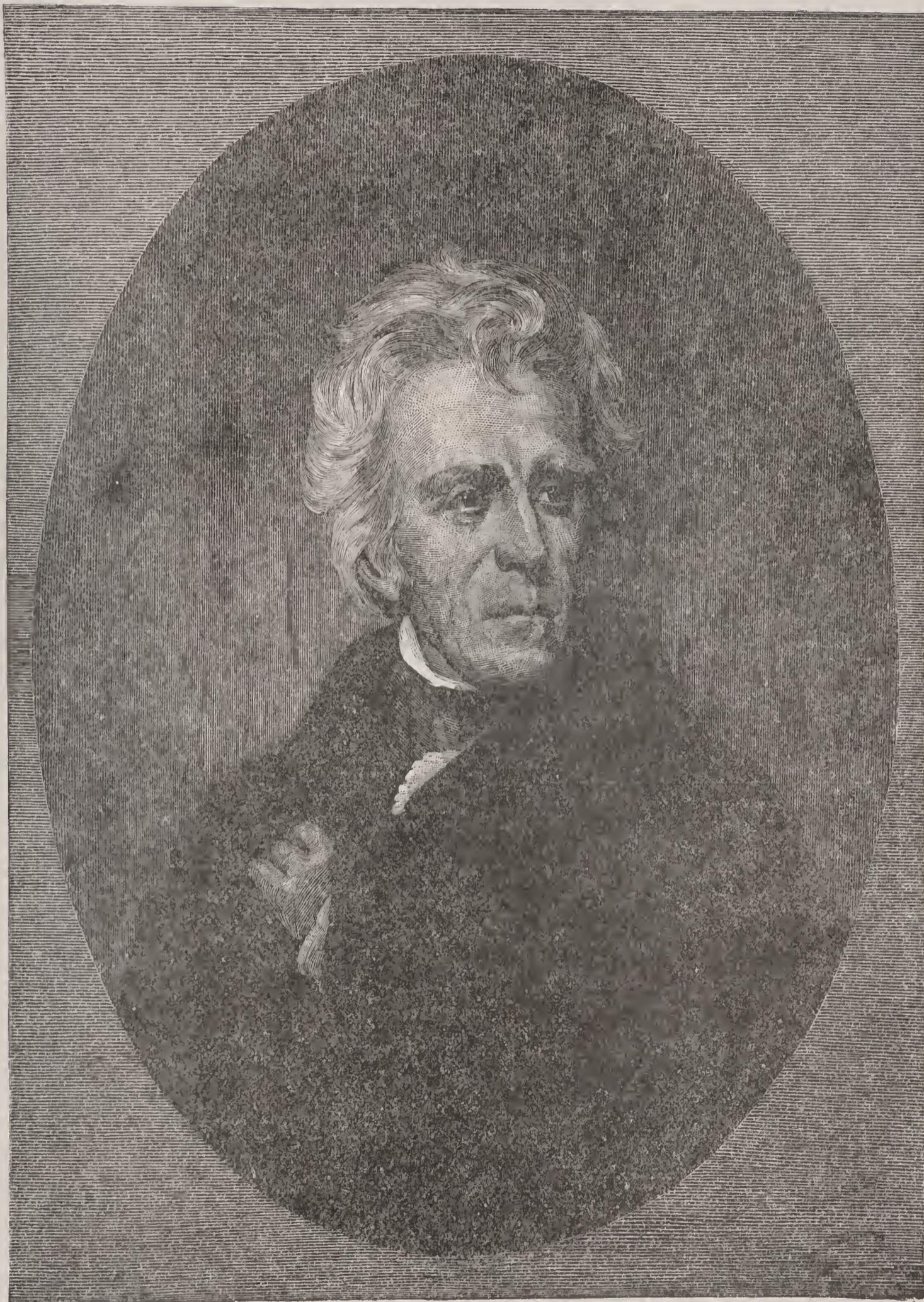
tary of the Treasury, Samuel D. Ingham, of Pennsylvania; Secretary of War, John H. Eaton, of Tennessee; Secretary of the Navy, John Branch, of North Carolina; Postmaster-General, William T. Barry, of Kentucky; Attorney-General, John McP. Berrien, of Georgia. These men in point of ability were much the inferior of their prede-



A YOUNG REBEL

The
 "Kitchen
 Cabinet"

cessors in office. It was Jackson who brought into existence what is known in politics as the "kitchen cabinet." These were confidential advisers, who held no important office. They were Amos Kendall, Duff Green, W. B. Lewis, and Isaac Hill. He looked upon his secretaries as simply clerks, and when in need of counsel went to the gentlemen named. Jackson was bitterly resentful over his former defeat, and began a wholesale removal of office-holders of opposite



ANDREW JACKSON

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861
 —

Differences
 in the
 Cabinet

politics, his doctrine being that "to the victors belong the spoils." William L. Marcy, in a speech in the Senate, in 1831, enunciated the doctrine. During Jackson's first year as President, he made as many as two thousand changes in office, while the whole number made by his predecessors in office was only seventy-four.

Jackson's vigorous course caused differences in his Cabinet, especially between Vice-President Calhoun and Secretary of State Van Buren, both of whom were ambitious for the Presidency. There was dissatisfaction, too, because of the influence of the so-called "kitchen cabinet," but the greatest trouble arose in connection with the wife of Eaton, his Secretary of War. The latter had married a Mrs. Timberlake, formerly "the captivating Peggy O'Neil," concerning whom there was so much gossip that the wives of the other secretaries refused to recognize her, as did Mrs. Calhoun. Jackson, who, despite his overbearing disposition, was one of the most chivalrous of men towards women, took the side of Mrs. Eaton and maintained this partisan attitude with his usual heedless persistency. Nevertheless Mrs. Donaldson, wife of the President's nephew, then acting mistress of the White House, took the same stand as did both the secretaries. Jackson fumed, scolded his secretaries, and sent Mrs. Donaldson home, but without mending matters. Van Buren sided with Jackson, as did the kitchen cabinet. Finally the quarrel became so violent that the Cabinet went to pieces towards the summer of 1831. Van Buren, still the ally of Jackson, resigned and was appointed minister to England, but his confirmation was defeated by Calhoun, who had the casting vote in the Senate because of a tie in the vote of that body. Jackson, in resentment, determined to make Van Buren his successor to the Presidency, and in this he succeeded.

The
 President's
 Reconstructed
 Cabinet

The Cabinet as reconstructed consisted of: Secretary of State, Edward Livingston, of Louisiana; Secretary of the Treasury, Louis McLean, of Delaware; Secretary of War, Lewis Cass, of Ohio; Secretary of the Navy, Levi Woodbury, of New Hampshire; Attorney-General, Roger B. Taney, of Maryland. No change was made in the Post Office Department. Francis Preston Blair, of Kentucky, became the ruling spirit of the administration.

During the United States Bank troubles, of which we shall learn presently, McLean, at the head of the Treasury Department, disagreed with Jackson, and was transferred to the State Department.

William J. Duane, of Pennsylvania, his successor, refused to obey Jackson's order for the removal of the national deposits, whereupon he was removed. Roger B. Taney was now placed at the head of the Treasury Department, and immediately signed the order. The Senate refusing to confirm Taney's appointment, Levi Woodbury succeeded him, and carried out Jackson's policy to the close of the term. John Forsyth, of Georgia, became Secretary of State in 1834; Benjamin F. Butler, of New York, Secretary of War in 1837; Mahlon Dickerson, of New Jersey, Secretary of the Navy in 1834; Amos Kendall, Postmaster-General in 1835, while Benjamin F. Butler was Attorney-General from 1833 to 1837. Under Jackson, it was decided that the Postmaster-General should be a cabinet officer, the first appointee being William T. Barry, as already mentioned.

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861
 —

Jackson could not have assumed office at a more fortunate time. The country was in the highest degree tranquil and prosperous. The revenues of the government in 1830 were twenty-four millions, with expenses of about half that sum. The public debt was fast diminishing, and in 1835 it disappeared altogether. In 1830, a treaty of commerce was made with Great Britain, which nation opened to us the English ports of the West Indies, in South America, the Bahamas and the Bermudas. Another treaty with Turkey gave us the free navigation of the Black Sea and facilitated trade with the Turkish Empire.

Great
 Prosperity

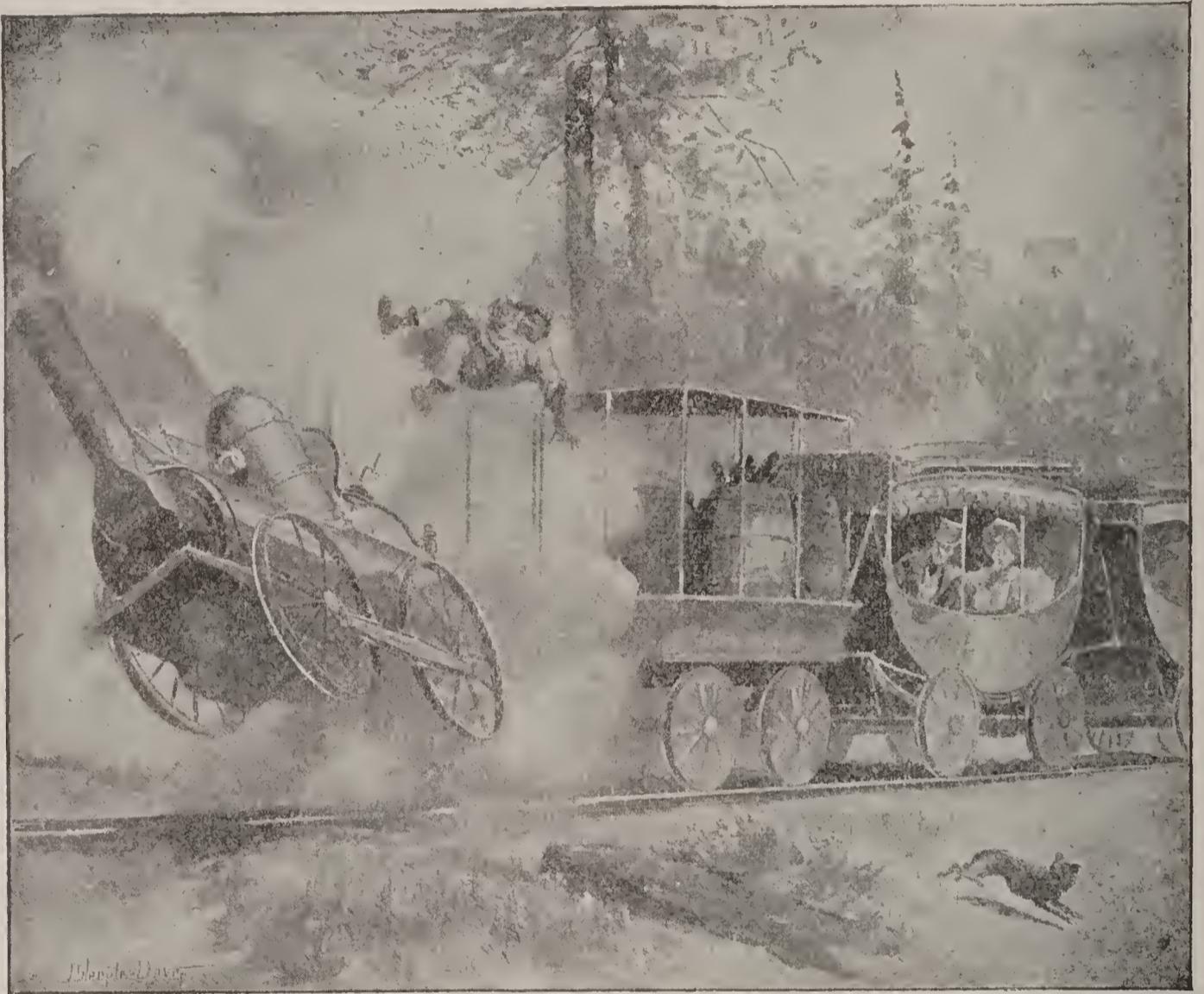
In the preceding chapter, reference was made to the troubles between Georgia and the Cherokee Indians, who had their homes within the borders of the State. The latter part of these troubles occurred during the first term of Jackson. He favored the demand of the white people, who proceeded to take possession of the Cherokee estates which had been assigned to them. It was in 1832 that the Supreme Court decided against the claim of Georgia, and civil war for a time threatened. General Scott, whose mild, persuasive course gained him the name of the "Great Pacificator," secured the removal of the Cherokees, who went to the lands assigned to them, where they to-day, as we have said, form one of the five civilized tribes of the Indian Territory.

Removal
 of the
 Cherokees

A study of Jackson's administration will show that it saw the transition of our people from the "old times" to the new. It was the beginning of modern ways of moving, acting, thinking, and doing. This was due to the radical change which steam brought about

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861

in the introduction of the locomotive and the railway system. The first railway in this country was constructed in 1826, at one of the granite quarries at Quincy, Mass., and connected that town with Milton. It was only two or three miles long, and the cars were drawn by horses. Some months later, a similar road, about nine miles long, was operated from the coal mines of Mauch Chunk, Pa.,



THE FIRST LOCOMOTIVE EXPLOSION

The
 Pioneer
 Locomo-
 tives

to the Lehigh River. At the West Point Foundry, in the city of New York, three locomotives were unloaded in May, 1829. They had come from England, but none of the three was made by George Stephenson, whose locomotive, the *Rocket*, caused so great a sensation in that country some months afterwards. One of them was taken up the Hudson to Rondout, and thence by the new canal to Honesdale, Pa., where it was put together, August 9, 1829, on the track of the canal company's railway between Honesdale and Prompton. This was the first locomotive that ever turned a wheel on a

railway track in America. The engineer was Horatio Allen, who recently died at South Orange, N. J.

The pioneer passenger railway of America was the Baltimore and Ohio. The section between Baltimore and the Point of Rocks was finished in the summer of 1830. There was no thought at that time of using any other than horse power, but Peter Cooper had, in 1829, constructed an engine after plans of his own. He called it the *Tom Thumb*, and persuaded the manager of the Baltimore and Ohio to allow him to give it a trial. The *Tom Thumb* pulled a carload of passengers at the rate of fifteen to eighteen miles an hour. This was the first American locomotive ever built, and that was the first trip ever made by an American locomotive. The first railroad ever built, with the design of using steam as the motor, was the South Carolina Railroad. Its charter was granted in 1827. The length of the road was 136 miles, Charleston and Hamburg being the termini of the line. An engine, the *Best Friend*, was constructed at the West Point foundry, and made its trial trip November 2, 1830. The trip was successful in every respect, and the *Best Friend* was the first locomotive that ran regularly on a railroad in the United States.

Nicholas W. Darrell had charge of the *Best Friend*, and was the earliest practical engineer in the United States. It was about the middle of January, 1831, that his negro fireman, to save himself work, fastened down the safety valve of the locomotive on one of her trips. The inevitable result followed: there was an explosion which killed the negro and badly scalded the engineer. The second locomotive to run over the South Carolina Railroad was the *West Point*, which began its career in March, 1831. Nicholas Darrell was the engineer.

The Mohawk and Hudson Railroad was completed between Albany and Schenectady in July, 1831, and the third American locomotive, the *De Witt Clinton*, made its successful trial trip August 9. This railway company seemed to think that they could obtain better locomotives in England than in this country. The first one which arrived in Albany, in August, 1831, had some defect and gave place to the *De Witt Clinton*. In November of that year, the second English locomotive for that road arrived. It was called the *John Bull*. John Hampson ran it for a few months, when he left the road and afterwards became master mechanic of the Camden and Amboy Railroad,

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861
 —

Early
 Rail-
 roading

The John
 Bull

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861

at Bordentown. The *John Bull* was a remarkable engine in its way, and did excellent service for more than thirty years. The *John Bull* is still carefully preserved as an interesting relic by the Pennsylvania Railway Company. It was exhibited at the Philadelphia Centennial, in 1876, in charge of its first engineer, and it also attracted much attention at the Columbian Exposition at Chicago, in 1893, but it was not the first locomotive used in the United States, nor was it used on the first American railroad.*

Jackson
 and the
 United
 States
 Bank

Reference has been made to the quarrel of Andrew Jackson with the United States Bank. The President heartily disliked the institution, believing that it failed to establish a uniform currency, and that its existence was opposed to the spirit of the Constitution. He so expressed himself in his first message to Congress, in December, 1829. Its charter was to expire in 1836, and, in January, 1832, a petition was laid before the Senate, asking for a renewal of the charter. The committee to whom the matter was referred recommended a renewal for fifteen years. The bill passed both branches of Congress in the following summer, but Jackson vetoed it. To make any

* There were in 1896 more miles of railway track in America than in all the other countries of the world combined. The figures are: America, 226,951 miles; Europe, Asia, Africa, and Australia, 199,514 miles. The number of locomotives in use on American railroads is 36,610, and the number of passenger cars 26,419; the number of baggage and mail cars is 7,891, and the number of freight cars is 1,230,798. As respects mileage, the Atchison, Topeka, and Santa Fé, in the year named, operated 6,435 miles; Southern Pacific, 6,761; Northern Pacific, 4,370; Louisville and Nashville, 4,864; Illinois Central, 4,390, with a number of others whose total mileage exceeds 2,000 miles. As respects the volume of gross receipts, that of the Pennsylvania was \$64,627,178; Southern Pacific, \$50,457,024; New York Central, \$45,144,967; Delaware, Lackawanna, and Western, \$44,201,909; Atchison, Topeka, and Santa Fé, \$13,590,234; and the St. Paul, Northern Pacific, Baltimore and Ohio, Chicago and Northwest, and the Erie, with from \$20,000,000 to \$30,000,000 each. The railroads of the United States carry in a year 600,000,000 passengers, and transport 800,000,000 tons in freight. The disparity between the two branches of transportation is greater here than it is in Europe, for the foreign railroads carry twice as many passengers as do the railroads of the United States, whereas the earnings from freight or "goods" trains, as they are called abroad, just about balance. In this country the earnings from freight business are about three times greater than from passenger business. The railroads of the United States earn, from all sources of revenue, some \$1,200,000,000 in a year, of which two-thirds of this is disbursed in expenses, and the remainder, \$350,000,000, represents the net profit. Two-thirds of this, however, goes to pay interest on bonds or guaranteed stock, leaving about \$100,000,000, or one-twelfth of the whole amount earned, for the payment of dividends and for necessary improvements.

bill a law, in face of the President's veto, requires, as we have learned, a two-third vote of both Houses. This could not be obtained. Jackson freely expressed his doubts of the solvency of the institution when the session of 1832-33 opened, and advised the removal of the deposits of public money. These deposits were subject to the order of the Secretary of the Treasury, who was obliged to give his reason to Congress for such removal. As has been stated, he ordered Secretary Duane to remove the deposits, and, when he refused, Jackson removed him. He was succeeded by Roger B. Taney, afterwards Chief-Justice of the United States, who, it will be remembered, made the transfer to the various banks that had been selected. As usual, Jackson won.

An event in western New York, in 1826, caused a profound sensation throughout the country. In that year, William Morgan, an unprincipled character who had joined the order of Free Masons, published a book in which he professed to expose the secrets of the order. This was a violation of one of the most solemn of oaths, and the indignation against Morgan was intense. He disappeared, and it was never known what became of him. It was claimed by some that he had left the country, and was afterwards seen in South America; but the Masons were accused of murdering him, by placing him in a boat and sending it over Niagara Falls.* In consequence of this, a strong wave of opposition to Free Masonry swept over the country, and in 1832 its enemies nominated William Wirt as their candidate for the Presidency. He received but seven electoral votes and carried only one State. Henry Clay, the nominee of the National Republicans or Whigs, received 49 electoral votes, carrying seven States, while Andrew Jackson had 178 electoral votes and the support of fifteen States. John C. Calhoun had resigned the Vice-Presidency, and Martin Van Buren, an ardent supporter of Jackson in all his political schemes, succeeded to the Vice-Presidency, in accordance with the wishes of his chief.

The Sacs, Foxes, and Winnebago Indians were living at this time in Wisconsin Territory. The Sacs and Foxes, in 1830, ceded their lands in Illinois to the United States, but refused to leave the territory, and Governor Reynolds, of Illinois, called out the military to

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861

The
 Morgan
 Excite-
 ment

Re-elec-
 tion of
 Jackson

* The late Thurlow Weed gave the name of a man who, he stated, confessed to him that he had helped to kill Morgan in the manner mentioned. Weed was a violent enemy of the order, and made adroit use of the incident in his political schemes.

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861
 —

**The
 Black
 Hawk
 War**

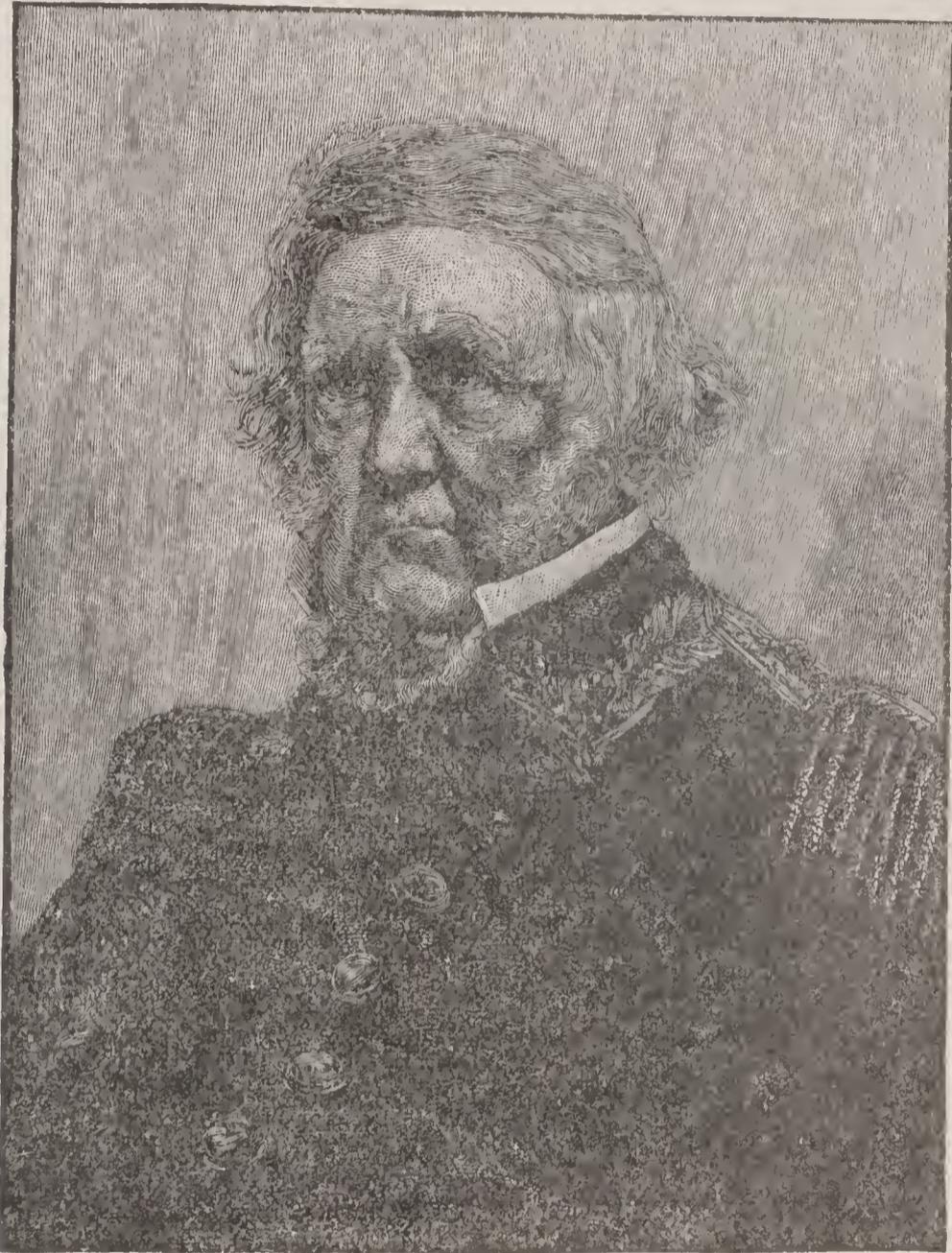
compel them to go to the section set apart for them west of the Mississippi. Black Hawk, the chief of the Sacs, returned the next year with a formidable force of warriors, but was driven off by the troops on Rock Island. He came again, in March, 1832, with a thousand warriors from the three tribes named, and a horrible war began. The peril became so grave that Generals Scott and Atkinson were sent from Buffalo with troops to Rock Island. It was in 1832 that cholera first visited this country. It broke out among the troops on the steamers from Buffalo and many died. Those who landed were so terrified that they took refuge in the woods, where many perished. Scott was powerless to effect anything, but Atkinson pushed on, and in August defeated the Indians and took Black Hawk and his two sons prisoners. They were all sent to Washington, where they had a talk with President Jackson, who persuaded them to sign a treaty, giving up all claim to the lands over which they had fought, and agreeing to move beyond the Mississippi. Black Hawk and a number of chiefs were taken on a tour through the country, that they might be impressed with its power and greatness and see the folly of resisting the white people. They returned to their homes, and that, happily, was the end of the trouble.

**The Nullification
 Excitement**

Congress passed an act in the spring of 1832, imposing additional duties on imported goods, and South Carolina was especially indignant. A convention, held on the 19th of November, and presided over by her governor, declared that the tariff acts were unconstitutional and therefore of no effect. The people asserted that the duties should not be paid, and that any attempt of the government to collect them would be forcibly resisted, followed by the withdrawal of South Carolina from the Union. The local legislature, which met shortly afterwards, commended the action of the convention. Jackson was a believer in State sovereignty, but a still more ardent believer in the Union. He swore, with customary emphasis, that the Union should be preserved, and that he would hang "as high as Haman" any and every one who dared to raise his hand against it. He threatened the arrest of Vice-President Calhoun, who resigned his office and went home to South Carolina, from which he was returned as a United States Senator. The President issued a proclamation on the 10th of December, denying the right of a State to nullify, or declare inoperative, any act of Congress, and warning those concerned in rebellion that the laws would be enforced by the whole

military power, if necessary. He begged the people to cease their opposition, and appealed to citizens everywhere to sustain him in his painful but clear duty. This appeal was thrown away on "Caroline, child of the sun." Her governor was authorized to accept the services of volunteers; new arms were bought; fortifications were re-

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861



GENERAL WINFIELD SCOTT

paired; and the young men were drilled. The ladies were also impressed into service; they made palmetto cockades, and urged fathers, brothers, and friends patriotically to stand by their State; the Star-Spangled Banner was displayed Union down, and a flag was made ready to take its place as soon as secession should be proclaimed.

Jackson was not moved by these preparations and revolutionary incitements. He summoned General Scott to Washington, and it

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861
 —

End of
 the Agi-
 tation

was decided to place a strong garrison in Fort Moultrie, in Castle Pinckney, and in the arsenal at Augusta, Georgia. The sloop-of-war *Natchez* and several revenue cutters were sent to Charleston harbor, on learning which the citizens erected fortifications and placed guns in position, asserting that they would blow the war-vessels out of water.

Than on this occasion never was the tact and good judgment of General Scott displayed to greater advantage. He treated the citizens in the most friendly manner, carefully avoiding everything that could give offence, invited them to visit the forts, and showed such uniform courtesy to all that he became exceedingly popular. The spirit of resistance, however, remained. Before long, South Carolina saw that she was premature in launching, or even fomenting, a war against the Union. The alarm bell of Secession did not toll until nearly thirty years later. There were supporters of the President's proclamation even in the Palmetto State; nullification, as it was termed, was condemned by the legislatures of Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, Delaware, Indiana, Tennessee, and Missouri. A message designed to soothe the angry feelings was sent by special messenger from Virginia. North Carolina and Alabama condemned the tariff as unconstitutional, and expressed the same opinion of nullification. Georgia did likewise, and proposed a convention of delegates from Virginia, North and South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, Tennessee, and Mississippi to agree upon some means of relief. Meanwhile, Clay came forward with a compromise bill, which provided for a gradual reduction of duties until the 30th of June, 1842, when all were to be cut down to a general level of twenty per cent. Calhoun strongly supported the measure, and it was favored in every quarter. It in time became law, and the war cloud drifted by.

Jack-
 son's
 Iron Will

Jackson's iron will asserted itself at all times. France had agreed to pay by instalments some five million dollars, for the spoliation of our commerce under the Berlin and Milan decrees of Napoleon, but she was so lax in making the payments that Jackson, in his message to the Congress of 1834-35, recommended that reprisals should be made on French shipping.* He also directed the American minister in Paris to demand his passports and return home. France, urged

* France was so indignant that she threatened war unless the President apologized, but "Old Hickory" would have died before he thought of doing that.

thereto by Great Britain, paid up, as did Portugal when a like vigorous course was taken towards her.

During the stirring days of Jackson's administrations, or soon thereafter, many important inventions were made in this country. For a long time people on both sides of the Atlantic had been trying to make reaping-machines, but the attempts were failures until McCor-

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861



THE FLINT AND STEEL

mick, in 1834, took out a patent. It required ten or twelve years to perfect the machine, but the result was to make farming much easier and far more profitable than ever before.* Colt's revolving pistol was patented in 1835, though the principle had been used hundreds of years before. In 1806, a boat-load of anthracite coal was shipped to Philadelphia, but no one knew what to do with it. When, after a time, it was learned that the substance would burn and give out

Important Inventions

* William H. Seward said: "Owing to McCormick's invention, the line of civilization moves westward thirty miles each year."

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861
 —

Ocean
 Naviga-
 tion

heat, the wonder was great. Its first successful use on railways and steamboats was in 1836 and 1837. As was then found out, it contained so much fuel in a small space that it added greatly to the effectiveness of those means of travel and carrying of freight. The *Savannah*, as already stated, was the first steamboat to cross the Atlantic. The true beginning of successful ocean navigation by steam was in 1838, when the *Great Western* and the *Sirius* crossed the ocean from England to New York. The screw propeller was introduced in 1836 by the famous Swedish inventor, John Ericsson. The advantage to the navy gained by this invention is that the screw, being placed under water, is out of the reach of the shots of an enemy. The result was that steam war-vessels took the place of sailing vessels, which until then had composed the navies of the world. Since then, and for other good reasons, the use of the screw propeller, instead of paddle-wheels, has become almost universal.

Our forefathers had to use the flint and steel or the sun-glass when they wished to kindle a fire. They were very inconvenient methods, which were done away with by the invention of friction matches.* Their general manufacture became common in 1836, and few who have never tried the old method can appreciate the convenience of this small, but most useful, invention.

The reader has been told how President Jackson compelled foreign nations as well as his own countrymen to respect our flag and our government, and now a little story may here be related illustrating how he pursued the same policy with people who could lay no claim to civilization.

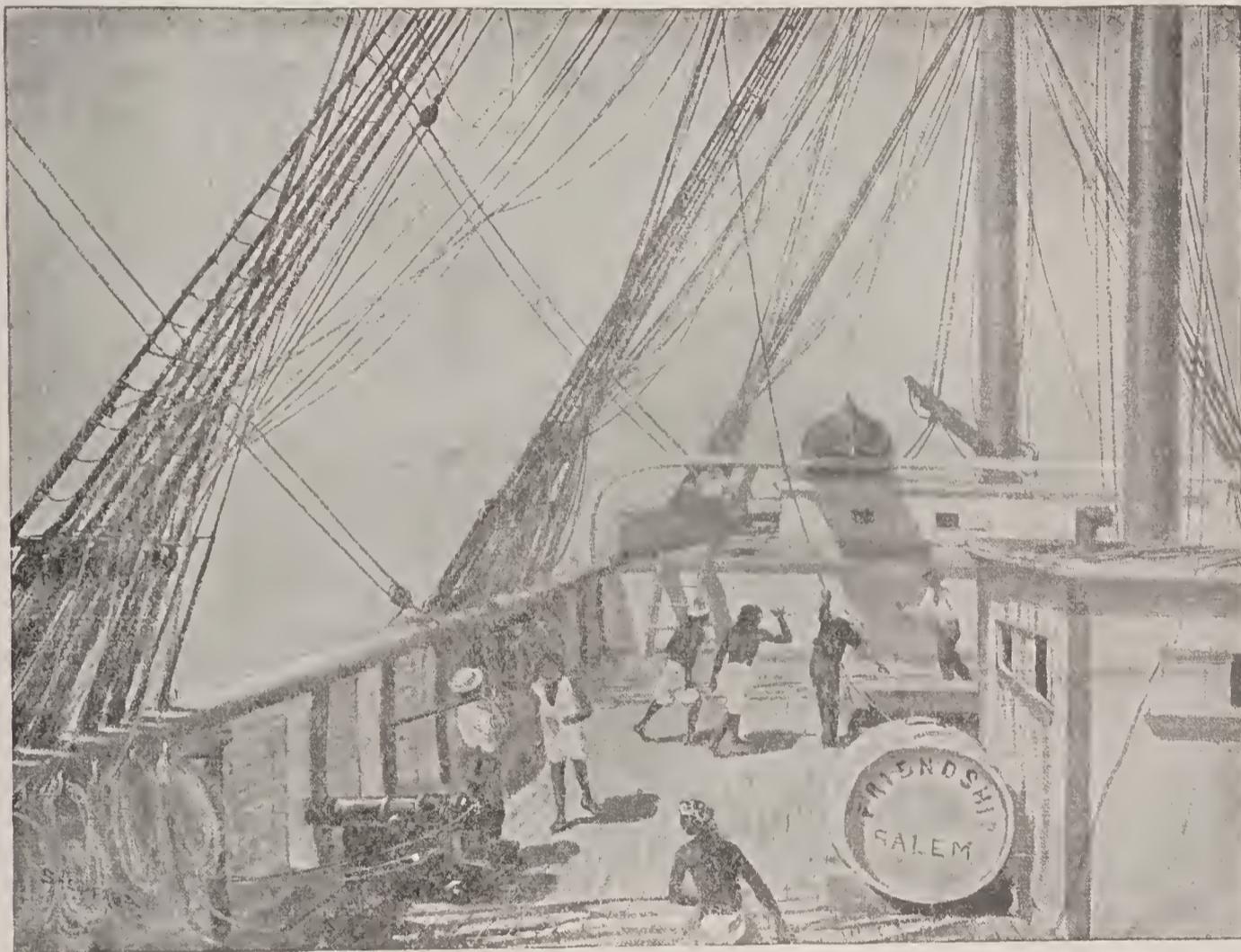
The
 Quallah
 Battoo
 Incident

The trading-ship *Friendship*, of Salem, Massachusetts, was loading with pepper at Quallah Battoo, on February 7, 1831. This Malay town was on the western coast of the large island of Sumatra, in the Dutch East Indies. Several other vessels were there at the time, engaged upon similar business. Captain Endicott, two officers, and four of the crew, had rowed ashore and were weighing pepper. There was no suspicion of anything wrong on the part of the natives. Indeed, everything looked so tranquil that the mate of the *Friend-*

* The first lucifer match was manufactured in 1829, and the first steel pen in 1830. Envelopes for letter correspondence were first used in this country in 1839. Homœopathy was introduced into the United States in 1825. Life insurance had been introduced in Philadelphia in 1812, though forty years before it had been resorted to in London. Marine insurance came into use in this country in 1721, though it was known in England and made use of by commerce as early as the close of the sixteenth century.

ship, broke a rule and permitted the crew of a Malay pepper boat to come on board. At the moment when all was apparently harmonious and there was not the faintest appearance of danger, the natives turned upon and attacked the Americans with the utmost ferocity. The first officer and two sailors were killed, and several others badly wounded; the ship was plundered of specie to the amount of twelve thousand dollars, a dozen chests of opium, the ship's chronometers, nautical instruments, and charts, and the wearing apparel of

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861



THE ATTACK ON THE FRIENDSHIP BY NATIVES

the crew; in short, almost everything that was movable on board was abstracted and taken from the ship.

After this, the Malays made an attempt to run the vessel ashore, but the ship *James Monroe*, of New York, and the brigs *Palmer*, of Boston, and *Endicott*, of Salem, bore down so fast that the dusky marauders had barely time to reach the beach and find safety in flight. Meanwhile, Captain Endicott, from his position on shore, saw that something was wrong on board his vessel. A second glance told him of its probable nature. He and his companions were in

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861

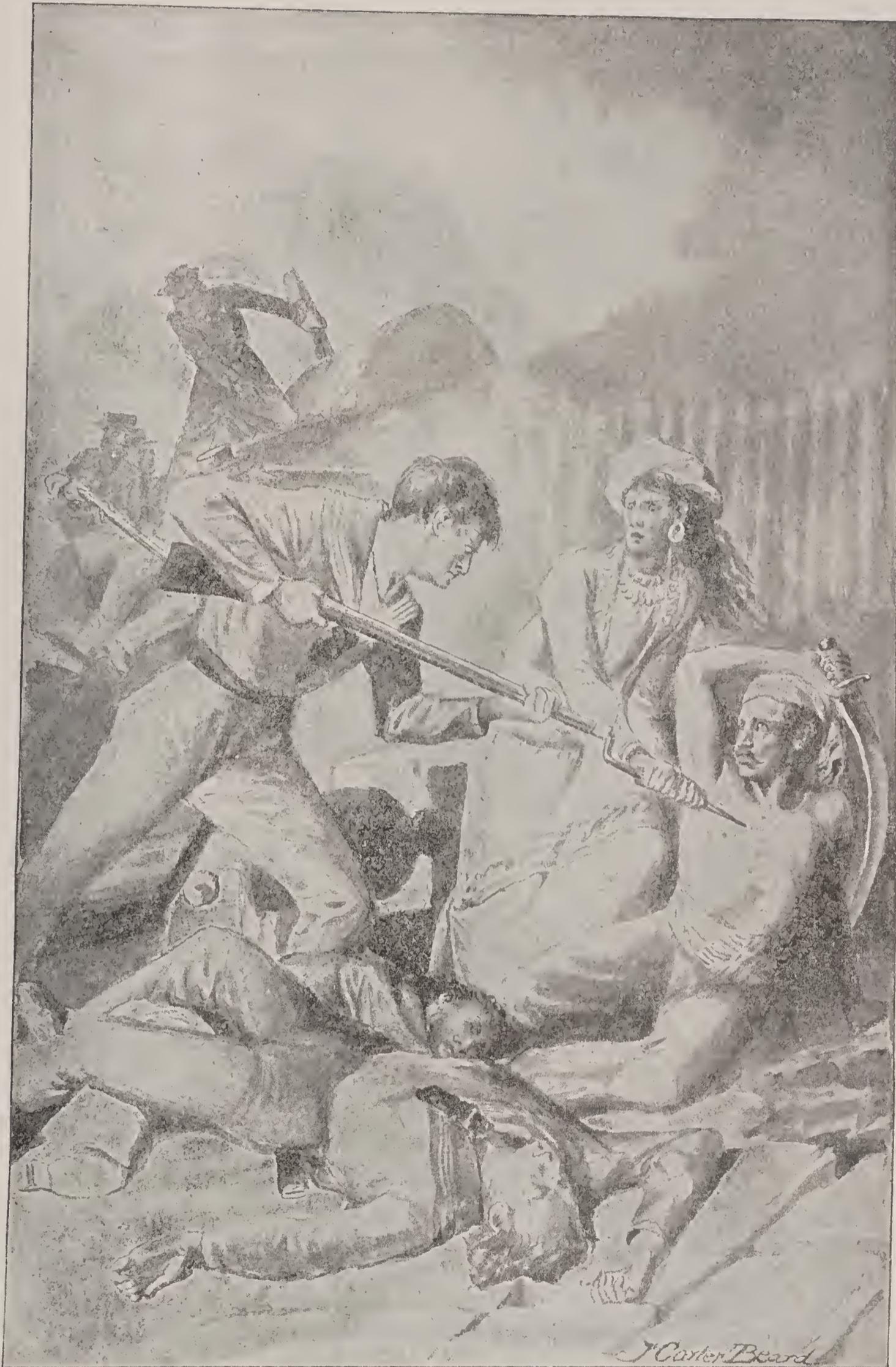
imminent peril, for the plan, which was carefully pre-arranged, included the death of the captain and his entire crew. They displayed a bold front to the threatening natives, and by hard rowing and good fortune placed themselves beyond their reach before they could inflict any harm. This attack upon the trading vessels, as has been stated, was not an impulsive outburst, but a carefully formed plot. One of the acting rajahs, or rulers, was a ringleader, and Chute Dulah, the Achinese rajah, appropriated the opium and specie and refused to give them up.

Stern
 Course of
 President
 Jackson

In 1831, Andrew Jackson was President of the United States, and Levi Woodbury Secretary of the Navy. It took several months to bring intelligence of the outrage to our Government from that far-away corner of the world, but the news arrived at last, and then "something was done." On the 9th of August, Commodore John Downes, of the United States frigate *Potomac*, was ordered to repair without delay to Sumatra, by way of the Cape of Good Hope, halting only at such places as the necessities of his vessel might require. Upon arriving at Quallah Battoo, he was directed to take such steps as would give him the fullest and most accurate information, not only concerning the outrage, but of the character of the government. It was impressed upon Commodore Downes that he was to use the utmost care, tact, and delicacy to prevent any injustice or mistake. From the proper authorities he was to demand the restoration of the stolen property or indemnity therefor, and the prompt punishment of the murderers of the mate and two sailors of the *Friendship*. If these demands were refused, Commodore Downes was instructed to do his utmost to seize the murderers and send them to Washington for trial as pirates; to retake the property of the *Friendship*, wherever found; to destroy the boats and vessels of every kind engaged in the piracy and the forts and dwellings near the scene of the outrage, notifying the inhabitants that, if full restitution was not speedily made and forbearance used, other ships-of-war would be sent thither and severer punishment inflicted.

The
 Arrival
 at
 Quallah
 Battoo

The *Potomac* reached Sumatra on the 5th of February. Commodore Downes anchored about three miles from Quallah Battoo, to prevent the natives from suspecting his errand. At the same time he displayed the Danish colors and disguised the character of his vessel so skilfully that a number of fishermen who boarded her after she anchored did not suspect that she was anything but a merchant



QUALLAH BATTOO

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY J. CARTER BEARD

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861

A
 Gallant
 Attack

vessel. No other ships were near from which the commodore could gather any additional information. He learned, however, that it would be idle to demand restitution, since the specie had been squandered months before, so that if inclined to comply, which was unlikely, the Malays had not the ability to do so. Accordingly, the commander of the *Potomac* actively prepared for their chastisement. A boat which was sent ashore to reconnoitre learned little of the situation of the town and forts, since they were built with strategy and the utmost concealment. The only fort of which accurate knowledge was gained was one near the landing. Waiting until darkness veiled their movements, the *Potomac's* boats were hoisted out and preparations made for going ashore. This was effected by daybreak on the following morning, the force, numbering two hundred and fifty men, under the command of Lieutenant Shubrick. A landing was made about a mile and a half to the north of Quallah Battoo. In the early light, the approach of the Americans was not discovered until they were within a short distance of the northernmost fort. Then Lieutenant Hoff was hurried forward with his division to surround the fort, and with orders to storm it in the event of being fired upon.

A
 Desperate
 Defence

Before reaching the gateway, the lieutenant in charge received a volley, and a fierce engagement began which lasted for two hours. The Malays refused to give quarter, and consequently received none. Nothing could surpass the bravery of the American marines. The palisades surrounding the structure were torn out of the ground and turned into a bridge, over which they dashed into the fort, from which, after a desperate hand-to-hand conflict, the natives were driven out. The Stars and Stripes were hoisted over the defences, and the Malays fled, twelve killed and all their women remaining behind. Leaving Hoff in the fort, Shubrick now hurried on with the remainder of the men, sending two divisions to the left to attack the posts assigned to them in the rear of the town, while Shubrick, with the third division under Lieutenant Ingersoll, and with a six-pounder, marched against the chief fort at the southern end of the town.

Shubrick and his party were discovered when within fifty yards of the fort. A discharge from the six-pounder, loaded with round shot and grape, threw the Malays into confusion, and the assailants dashed forward to the assault. The gate was forced, and, charging into the

arena, the place was captured with little resistance, only two of the Malays being killed. Then the inner gate, communicating with a narrow passage, leading to the stronghold of the defenders, was assailed. The stronghold consisted of a high platform, upon which were mounted several cannon, the whole protected by a strong wall. This being forced, it was found that the ladder leading to the platform had been drawn up. In the attempt to climb the parapet, a seaman was killed, and a quarter-gunner, a midshipman, and a sailor were wounded.

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861

By order of Shubrick, the buildings within the arena were fired and two magazines of powder blown up. The capture of the chief fort was completed. The other two defences were then stormed and captured, and a detachment was left in each, the remainder of the men forming between the fort and the water. From this position they poured a hot fire into the forts, but the Malays displayed such tenacity and bravery that it was not until nearly all of them had been destroyed that the capture was fully effected. This was finally done; the guns were spiked and tumbled from the platform, and the American colors were run up with three hearty cheers. Two men were killed and several seriously wounded in this attack. The loss of the enemy was estimated at one hundred and fifty men, among them being Poolow N. Yamet, the rajah chiefly concerned in the attack upon the *Friendship*. From the Malays were captured a pair of colors, twenty-six stands of arms, and a brass field-piece. A number of proas, or native boats, were burned on the stocks, the cannon were spiked and thrown over the parapets, the powder was destroyed, and the town itself reduced to ashes. The outrage on the trading-vessel *Friendship* was perpetrated on the 7th of February, 1831, and one day short of a year afterwards, the offending town, by way of punishment, was wiped from the face of the earth.

A Severe
 Punishment

In the latter part of 1835, the Seminoles of Florida began a war against the settlers on the frontier. It has been shown that many runaway slaves took refuge in the swamps and fastnesses of that region, where the Indians gave them shelter, and whither it was impossible for their owners to trace and capture them. By the treaty of Payne's Landing, made in 1832, it was agreed that a party of chiefs should visit the land beyond the Mississippi, to which our government wished the Seminoles to remove, and, if they were satisfied, such removal should follow. The Seminole war was caused by the dispute

War
 with the
 Seminoles

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861
 —

Osceola

over the meaning of the pronoun "they." Seven chiefs composed the delegation which made the journey of inspection. The agreement was that "should *they* be satisfied with the character of the country," the removal was to take place within three years after the ratification of the treaty. President Jackson contended that "they" meant the members of the delegation; the contention of the remainder being that it meant the whole tribe. No one except the seven chiefs was satisfied. Osceola, a famous half-breed leader, expressed his opinion of the treaty by driving his hunting-knife through the document and the top of the table on which it rested. The anger against the seven chiefs was so intense that two of them were killed by their own people. Osceola and Micanopy, the head chiefs of the Seminoles, were the leaders of the enraged Indians, and declared that they would die before they would leave their country.

The President sent General Wiley Thompson to Florida in 1834, with orders to remove the Seminoles, by force, if necessary. He notified them that their annuities would be stopped if they did not go, but nothing would induce them to consent. Osceola was so defiant that General Thompson put him in irons. The chief professed penitence and was shortly afterwards released; but he was filled with rage at the indignity he had suffered, and nursed an implacable feeling of revenge. Although he signed the treaty, he and his warriors burst upon the exposed settlements with fury, and spread desolation and death along that portion of the frontier. The danger was so critical that it was feared that General Clinch, stationed at Fort Drane, would be massacred with all his command. Major Dade was sent from Fort Brooke, at the head of Tampa Bay, with about one hundred and forty horsemen, to his relief. When they reached the Big Withlacoochee, they ran into an ambush of Seminoles and negroes, and Major Dade and half his men were instantly killed. The remainder made the best defence they could, but were overwhelmed, all being killed except two, who afterwards died of their wounds. On the day of this massacre, Osceola and several of his warriors were in the woods around Fort King. General Thompson and nine of his friends were dining at a house two hundred yards from the fort. The day was warm and the windows were open. Suddenly Osceola and his warriors poured a volley into the room. General Thompson and four of his guests fell to the floor and were scalped before help could be sent from the fort.

**The
 Dade
 Massa-
 cre**

The war now spread to the villages of Georgia and Alabama. To aid in repressing it, General Scott, in 1836, took command and actively pressed operations, but the Seminoles were not conquered. General Zachary Taylor assumed charge in the following year, and, though he administered a severe defeat at Lake Okechobee, the Indians could not be driven out of the swamps. General Taylor had a number of bloodhounds imported from Cuba, with the view of tracking

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861
 —



OSCEOLA'S INDIGNATION

the hostiles, but the keen-scented animals refused to take the trail of an Indian and the experiment was a failure. Osceola and seventy of his warriors by invitation visited the camp of General Jesup, in October, 1837. They were under the protection of a flag of truce, but were made prisoners and Osceola was sent to Charleston, where he died in Fort Moultrie in 1838. The Seminole War seemed as if it would never end. The courage and persistency of those mongrels excited the wonder as well as the alarm of the whole country. At

Viola-
 tion of
 the Flag
 of Truce

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861

one time, it looked as if the Floridas would be overrun and all the white people driven out. Finally, in 1842, it fell to the fortune of General William J. Worth to terminate the war. That officer destroyed the crops of the Seminoles and pressed them so hard that they surrendered. Those that were left gathered their families together and passed beyond the Mississippi. The war had lasted seven years, and cost in money forty million dollars, besides many valuable lives.

Great
 Fire in
 New
 York
 City

The worst fire in the history of the city of New York occurred on the night of December 16, 1835. It had its origin in Merchant Street, and spread with great rapidity. The night was bitterly cold and the wind very high. Water had to be taken from the river, and as it was pumped into the hose by the volunteer firemen (steam fire-engines were unknown in those days, nor was there a paid fire department), it froze and partly checked the flow. The firemen stamped on the hose to break the ice, but could do nothing to repress the flames. Seventeen blocks, or six hundred and forty-eight buildings, in all covering thirteen acres, were destroyed.

Admission of
 Arkansas

Arkansas was admitted to the Union on June 15, 1836. Its name is derived from an extinct tribe of Indians. Chevalier de Tonti discovered and settled the region in 1685. When Missouri was admitted, Arkansas was organized into a Territory, comprising the present State and a part of Indian Territory. Michigan, the twenty-sixth State, was admitted January 26, 1837. Its name likewise has an Indian origin, meaning "Great Lake." In the latter part of the seventeenth century it was visited by missionaries and fur-traders. Originally a part of the Northwest Territory, it was erected into a separate Territory in 1805. Cardillac founded Detroit in 1701.

Several noted people died during Jackson's administration. Among these was ex-President Monroe, who passed away on the 4th of July, 1831. He was the third President to die on Independence Day. His remains rest in Hollywood Cemetery, Richmond, whither they were removed in 1858. In 1832, Charles Carroll, of Carrollton, Maryland, the last surviving signer of the Declaration of Independence, died at the age of ninety-six years. John Randolph, of Roanoke, whose biting wit made him famous in Congress, died in Philadelphia in 1833, while on his way to visit Europe. Chief-Justice Marshall passed away in 1835, at the age of fourscore, and ex-Presi-

dent Madison died June 28, 1836. Madison was the last survivor of the signers of our country's Constitution.

The country made wonderful strides in prosperity during the eight years of Jackson's administration. In 1835, the whole public debt was discharged and a surplus accumulated in the Treasury. This was divided among the States, none of which, however, needed it, for each, too, was prosperous. Crops were abundant, and the area under cultivation, was rapidly increasing. Money was freely spent in the construction of railways and canals, manufactures multiplied, and banks doubled their capital. It now looked as if every one was to become rich. Better than all this (for the era of seeming material prosperity was unreal, and was soon to be followed by the worst monetary panic the country had ever known) was the growth of the public-school system. The self-evident fact had impressed itself upon the people that the men who were to vote and control the destinies of the country should do so with intelligence. In nearly all the States public schools were established. Massachusetts made further advances by originating a system of normal school education, by which young men and women were to be trained to become teachers.

We were beginning, too, to gain a place in literature. Bryant, Halleck, and Drake were recognized as poets, while still others came forward to win laurels from their grateful countrymen. They were Whittier, Longfellow, Emerson, and Oliver Wendell Holmes, together with Edgar Allan Poe, Hawthorne, a master of classical English, and Bancroft and Prescott, the historians. Fenimore Cooper was admired on both sides the Atlantic for his American novels of the woods and the ocean, and Noah Webster issued the first edition of his English dictionary, upon which he had been engaged for more than a generation. The newspaper quickly felt the impetus of modern thought and activity. The first paper of large circulation and small price was the *New York Sun*, which appeared in 1833, followed two years later by the *New York Herald*. When Jackson became President, there was not a mile of railway in the United States. At the end of his last term, there were three thousand miles in operation. Improved steamboats passed up and down the Mississippi, the Ohio, and other rivers. Cities, towns, and villages began to spring up in the West, while the growth of the East kept pace with the great strides of the era.

PERIOD V
—
CONSOLIDA-
TION AND
EXPANSION
1829
TO
1861
—

**Great
Pros-
perity**

**Attain-
ments in
Litera-
ture**

PERIOD V

CONSOLIDATION AND
EXPANSION
1829
TO
1861
—

Presidential
Election
of 1836

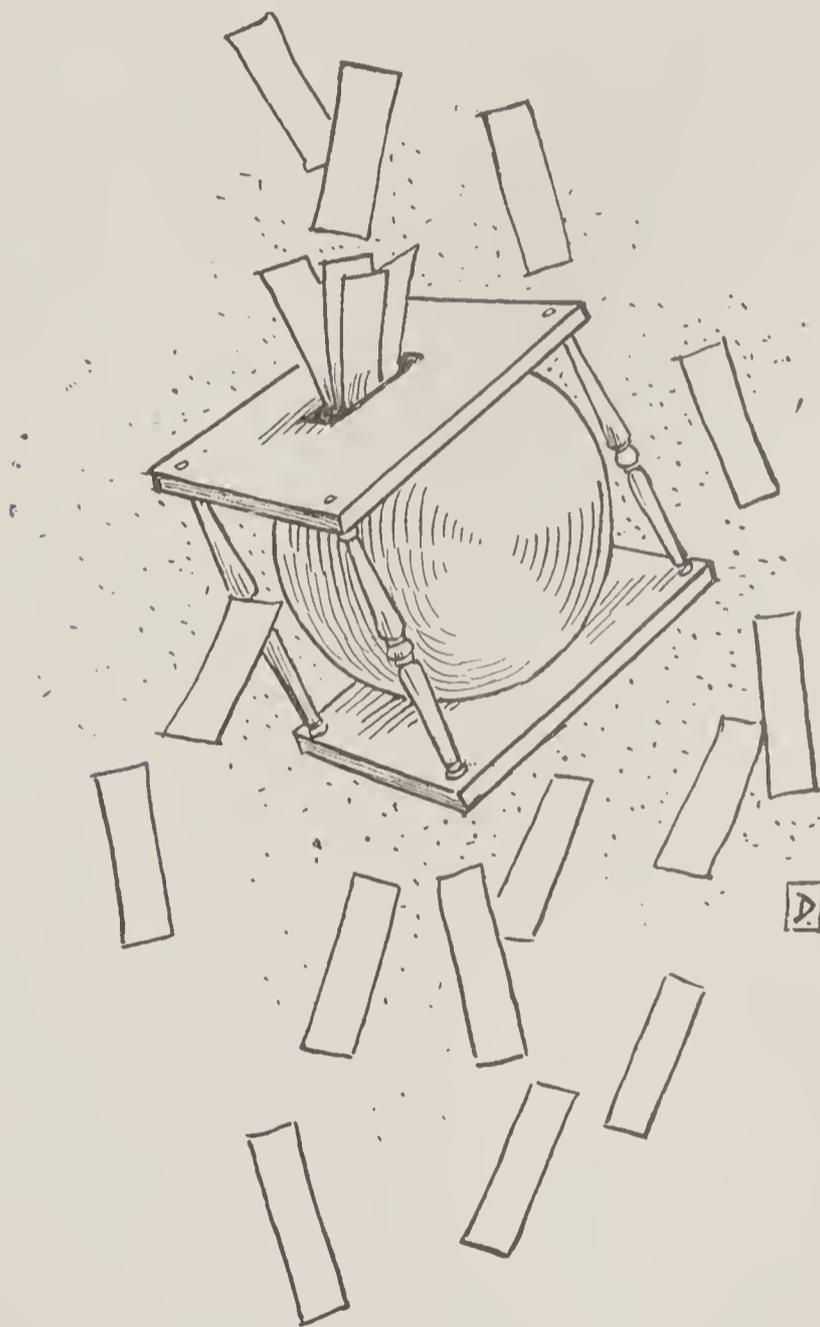
President Jackson's last official act was characteristic.* Speculation in Western land areas had become so great that the Treasury Department, on July 11, 1836, with a view to checking it, sent out a circular which required the collectors of public revenues to accept nothing but gold and silver in payment. This hampered business so much, that Congress, early in 1837, partially repealed the edict, though Jackson kept the bill in his possession until after Congress adjourned, and thus prevented its becoming a law.

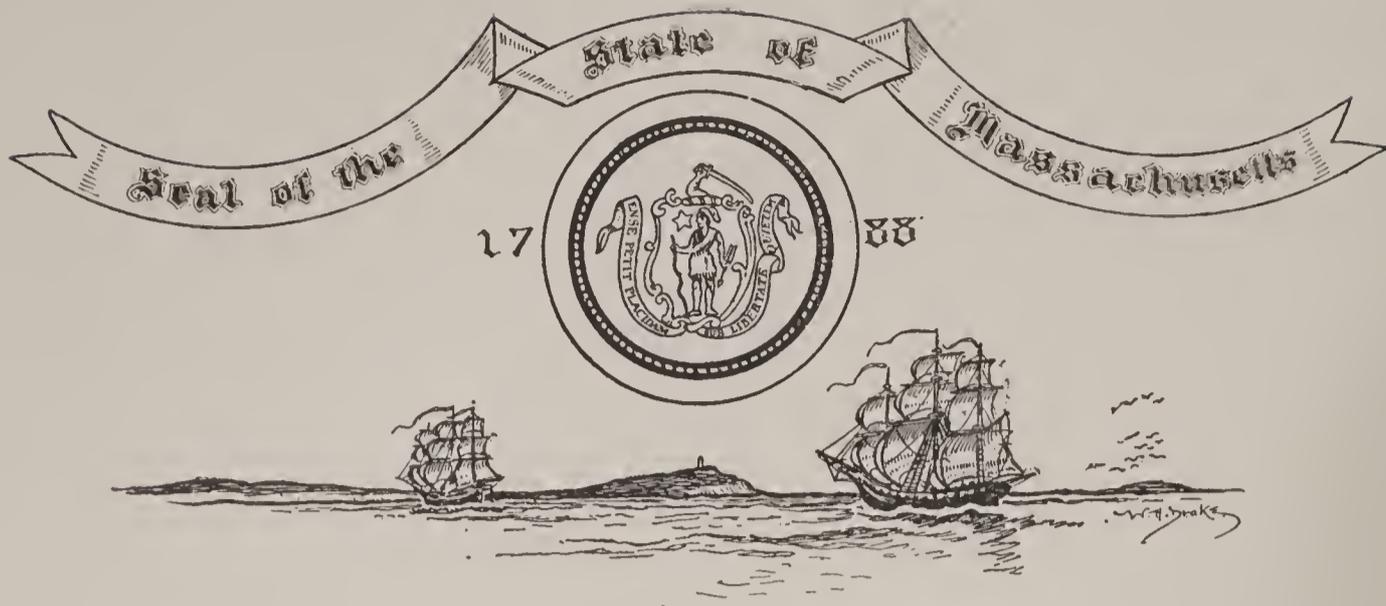
There was no lack of candidates for the Presidency in 1836. Van Buren had been an unwavering supporter of Jackson from the first, and agreed to continue his policy. It was Jackson's wish that he should be his successor, and he therefore received the Democratic nomination. The Whig candidates were General William H. Harrison, Hugh L. White, Daniel Webster, and W. P. Mangum, with Colonel Richard M. Johnson, the Democratic nominee for Vice-President, and Francis Granger, John Tyler, and William Smith the Whig candidates for the latter office.

* President Jackson was the hero of innumerable hairbreadth escapes, but that which he experienced on the 30th of January, 1835, was regarded by many as approaching the supernatural. On the day named he was at the Capitol, at the public funeral of Mr. Warren R. Davis, of South Carolina. During the delivery of the funeral sermon, Richard Lawrence, a painter, living in Washington, entered the hall of the House of Representatives, but, before its close, took his stand on the eastern portico, near one of the columns. The President on his way to his carriage approached within three steps of Lawrence, who, drawing a pistol from beneath his cloak, levelled it at the President and pulled the trigger, but the percussion cap alone exploded, the sharp report leading many to think that the weapon had been discharged. Seeing that it had failed, Lawrence instantly brought a second pistol to a level and pressed the trigger of that, with the muzzle almost against the breast of the President. Strange to say, that also missed fire. Jackson raised his cane and rushed at the assassin, who was knocked down and arrested. It was hard work to prevent the President from taking summary vengeance on the assassin. "Let me go!" he shouted above the din; "I can take care of myself. Let me get at him!" He became calmer in a few minutes, and he was persuaded to go to the Capitol, where he showed the same coolness and self-possession that he had displayed so often on the field of battle. The assailant was thrown into jail. He gave as his excuse that Jackson had killed his father. Investigation proved that there was no truth in the charge, for his father had died a natural death. The trial left no doubt that he was insane. He was sent to an asylum, where he spent the remainder of a long life. The pistols were examined by experts and found to be of perfect mechanism and loaded almost to the muzzle. They were tested again and again with some of the remaining powder, balls, and caps found on the prisoner, and never once missed fire. How both of them came to do so when aimed at the President was more than any one could understand, but was attributed to the marvellous good fortune which seemed to follow Andrew Jackson from his birth to his death at an advanced age.

Van Buren received 170 electoral votes; Harrison 73; White, 26; Webster, 14, and Mangum, 11. Van Buren, was elected, but Johnson, the Vice-Presidential candidate with him, had but 147 votes. This threw the election into the Senate, which chose Johnson by a vote of 33 to 16 against Granger.

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861





CHAPTER L

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION—1837—1841

[*Authorities:* Martin Van Buren was probably an abler statesman than Jackson, his predecessor, whose influence made him President. Unfortunately for Mr. Van Buren, his administration covered the panic of 1837, for which he was in no way responsible. The result was that when, in 1840, he was renominated, he was disastrously beaten at the polls. Such occurrences illustrate the essentially unfair and unreasoning character of men in national masses. There seems to be, too, a periodicity about "panics" that suggests a discouraging truth to those optimistic thinkers who sigh for an acceleration of human progress. The panic of 1837 is followed by that of 1857, and that again by those of 1873 and 1892. It should seem that no lesson to the people at large, however it may be emphasized by suffering, disaster, and even death, has any corrective influence on political movements after the lapse of about twenty years. It is a humiliating fact, but it is none the less a fact. Special reference is made for this period to the authorities quoted at the head of the preceding chapter, with the "National Portrait Gallery of Distinguished Americans."]



MARTIN VAN BUREN was born at Kinderhook, N. Y., December 5, 1782. Since this was a few days after the signing of the preliminary articles of peace between Great Britain and her former colonies, Van Buren was the first President not born a British subject. His education was limited; he studied law, however, and early became a political power. He was a member of the state senate in 1812, and again in 1816. From 1815 to 1819, he was attorney-general of New York, and a United States Senator from 1821 to 1828, when he resigned to accept the governorship of his State. Jackson made him Secretary of State in 1829, and two years later he sent him as minister to England. His nomination for that post, however, was, in the following December,

rejected by the Senate, through the influence of Clay, Calhoun, and Webster, who thought that he showed a timid course toward England in the question relating to trade between her West Indian colonies and the United States. Van Buren, therefore, had to return home, but soon was "vindicated," for he was elected Vice-President and presided over the body that rejected his nomination as minister to England.

Van Buren was an ardent believer in state sovereignty, but opposed universal suffrage. He held that every voter should be a householder. He opposed Jackson when he first ran for the Presidency, but was shrewd enough to foresee the brilliant future of that remarkable man, and became his supporter. To Van Buren, more than to any other person, was due the support which New York gave to Jackson in 1828. Having won the friendship of "Old Hickory," the latter paid him abundantly, not only by political appointments but by making him President. He withdrew from the Democratic Party in 1848, and formed the "Free Democratic or Free Soil Party," which, however, amounted to little. He soon after retired from politics, and died at Kinderhook, in 1862.

Van Buren naturally accepted most of Jackson's Cabinet. Levi Woodbury served as Secretary of the Treasury throughout the President's term, while John Forsyth, performed the duties of Secretary of State. Dickenson became Secretary of the Navy, Kendall Postmaster-General, and Butler Attorney-General. The latter served a part of the term, while Joel R. Poinsett, of South Carolina, succeeded Butler in 1837. Van Buren's administration opened at a most unfavorable period for him. Much of the prosperity of the closing days of Jackson's administration was superficial. His despotic acts bore their inevitable fruit after he left office. Such an era of wild speculation had never been known. The result of Jackson's fight with and final defeat of the United States Bank was the formation of hundreds of new banks in the different States. Most of these had little or no capital to pay the notes which they issued. Their mode of operating was as impudent as it was immoral; they would have a bushel or two of cheap bills printed, with which they would offer higher prices for lands than others could afford to pay in gold or silver. Then these "wild-cat" bankers would sell the lands thus bought, for good money. If their own bills came back for redemption, the managers would "fail," go elsewhere, and start other fraudulent

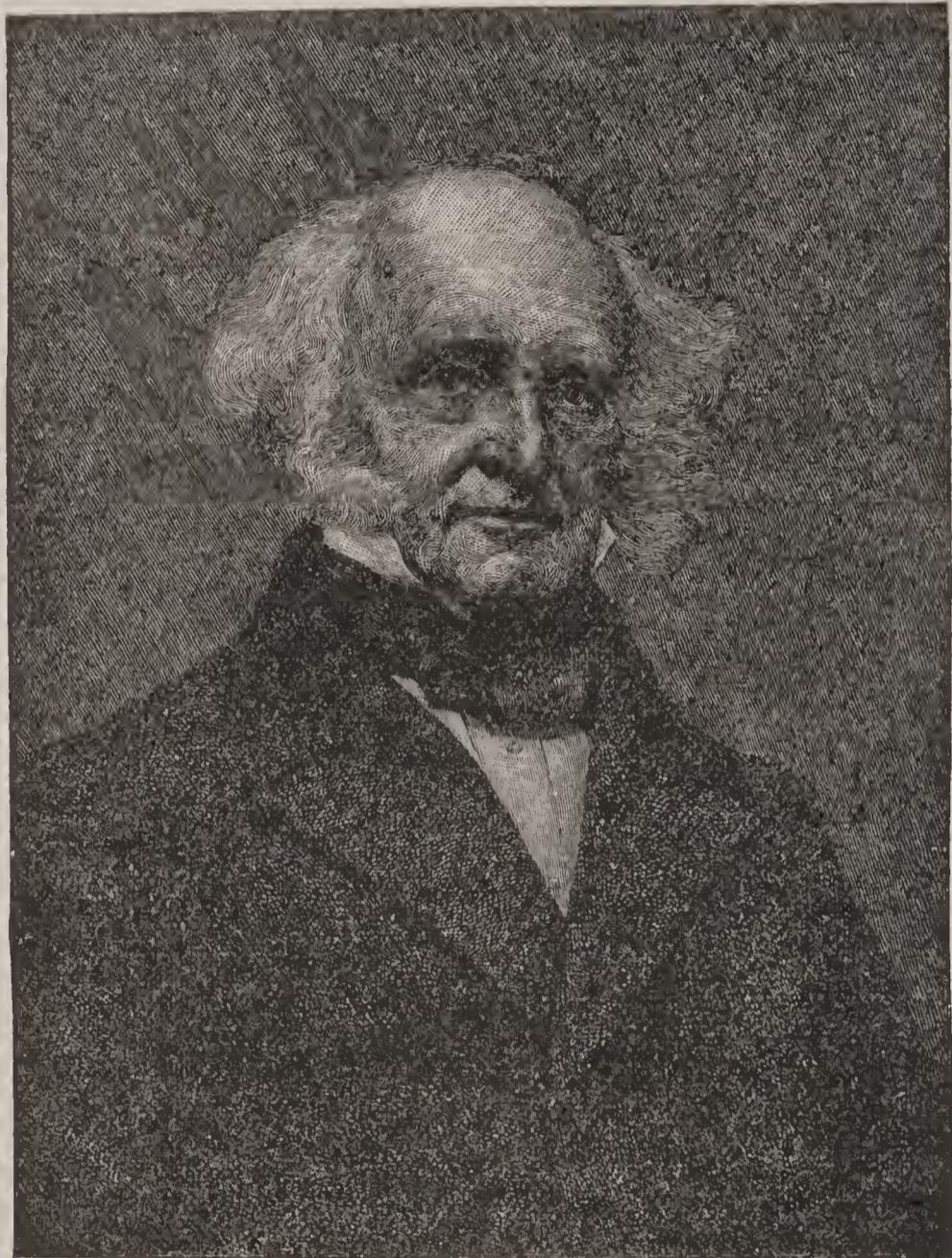
PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861

The
 President's
 Cabinet

Wild
 Speculation

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861

banks. Hundreds of thousands of dollars issued by these "wild-cat" banks were paid to government agents for the public lands. The losses fell upon the people, and the system was an atrocious fraud. The Specie Circular was sent out in 1836. Since the government agents from that time forward could accept nothing but gold and silver



MARTIN VAN BUREN

The
 Crash

in payment for lands, "wild-cat" bank-notes became worthless for such payments. The holders of them hurried to the respective banks to have them redeemed with coin, but the banks were unable to do so. The honest bankers tried to raise the money by selling their property. They had to offer it at a much lower price than had been ruling. Everybody was frightened, and there was a demoralizing scramble to sell, with few seeking to buy. The confusion spread. Men who

had counted themselves wealthy found now that they could not pay their debts, and those who owed them money were unable also to meet their obligations. Banks suspended specie payments or closed their doors; business men began failing, and the "hard times," or great panic of 1837, burst upon the country with paralyzing effect.

The distress was great. A man with his pockets full of bank-notes could not buy a meal; millionaires of one day became beggars the next; mercantile houses toppled and fell; factories and places of business were closed; no work was to be had, and many people were threatened with starvation. During the first two months of the panic (March and April, 1837), the failures in New York and New Orleans amounted to one hundred and fifty million dollars. Only a brief while before, the Government had such an abundance of money that it divided it among the States, but now it had positively no money at all. The deposits had been removed to the state banks, which could not furnish them to the Government. Eight States were bankrupt, and the Government could not pay the interest on its bonds. All this confusion and distress was the result of the fevered speculation and unbusiness-like methods which prevailed during the latter part of Jackson's term. He sowed the wind, and the country now reaped the whirlwind.

The condition became so bad that the President convened Congress on the 4th of September to take counsel together. A law was passed allowing the Treasury to issue its own notes to the amount of ten millions. This was the sub-treasury system, which was unpopular at first. It was passed in 1840, repealed in 1841, but re-enacted in 1846. It has proved to be a good law, and is still in force. These measures brought partial relief. The country was too rich in its resources to be embarrassed for any length of time. Monetary panics seem to be inevitable at certain periods; but, as a rule, they are caused by unsound business methods. People learned wisdom from their dear experiences and avoided the mistakes that had brought them to the verge of ruin. The tide of emigration continued to flow westward; new railways were constructed, and, as the second year passed, the panic gradually subsided until, as may be said, only the scars of its wounds remained.

The "Patriot War" broke out in Canada in 1837. Each province (Lower and Upper Canada) had its governor, an executive council nominated by the crown, a legislative council appointed for life in

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861
 —

"Hard
 Times"

Remedial
 Measures

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861
 —

Discon-
 tent in
 Canada

the same manner, and a representative assembly elected every four years by the people. Matters were badly adjusted, and both provinces became strongly opposed to their governors and councils. Finally the people demanded an elected legislative council and full control of all branches of the government. The British Parliament was ready to make some concessions, but not all that were asked. Americans, and especially those on the New York border, sympathized with the insurgents.

The leaders of the insurrection in Toronto fled to the United States, and one, named Mackenzie, with twenty-five men, including some citizens of Buffalo, whom he persuaded to join him, seized, December 12, 1837, the Canadian Navy Island, in the Niagara River, established a provisional government, and issued paper money. The loyalists of Canada attempted to capture the place, but failed. On the night of December 29, they cut loose and attacked the steamer *Caroline*, killed twelve of the defenders, set the boat on fire, and sent it over the falls. It is said that several persons were carried to destruction with it.

Surrender of the
 Insurgents

The incident caused great excitement both in England and this country, and for a time serious trouble impended. President Van Buren issued a proclamation of neutrality, forbidding all interference in Canada, and General Wool was sent to the northern frontier with a military force strong enough to compel obedience to the proclamation. The insurgents on Navy Island were forced to surrender, the place being abandoned January 13, 1838. This ended the flurry.*

Quiet being restored, the Americans turned their attention to the

* Jacques Cartier, the discoverer of Canada, heard the natives apply the name *Kan-natha* (village) to their settlements, and supposing it referred to the whole country, he so used it. In 1867, Upper and Lower Canada, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick were federally united into one Dominion of Canada, under the crown of the United Kingdom, with a constitution similar to that of the mother-country and with Ottawa for its capital. All the enormous territory which the Hudson Bay Company held under a charter issued by Charles II. was transferred to the imperial Government in December, 1869, and was received into the Dominion the following year. The portion of the territory known as the Red River Settlement was in 1870 erected into the province of Manitoba. The district to the north and east of Manitoba is now known as Keewatin, and the vast region towards the northwest was organized as a territory in 1875, under the name of the Northwest Territory. British Columbia became a member of the Dominion in 1871, and Prince Edward Island in 1873.

There has been a considerable sentiment, both in Canada and the United States, in favor of the annexation of the Dominion to this country; but the majority of the people are strongly loyal to England, whose rule is so liberal and just that the annexation is not probable until it takes place with the full consent of all concerned.

impending presidential election. It must be said of Van Buren's administration that while it was unfortunate and one of the least brilliant in our history, it was such because of the sins of its predecessor. As has been stated, Jackson sowed the wind and Van Buren reaped the whirlwind.

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861

We are often swayed unjustly by impulse and prejudice. A great deal of that which goes awry is laid by the unthinking masses at the door of the political party in power. Absurd as it may sound, there is living, at this writing, a well-known family in one of the principal States, whose members insist that poor fishing invariably follows the success of a certain political party. For more than twenty years the voters of this family have conscientiously cast their ballots against the ticket whose triumph, as they view it, threatens material injury to them.

Unjust
 Prejudices

As we have shown, the country was painfully wrenched during Van Buren's administration by the unprecedented hard times. While many laid the blame where it belonged, it cannot be said that the popularity of "Old Hickory" suffered one jot, though little remained to Van Buren.

The Whigs met in convention at Harrisburg, December 4, 1839, and all were full of enthusiasm. Henry Clay, popularly known as "Harry of the West," was long the idol of an aggressive minority, which included some of the foremost citizens of the land. His repeated failures to attain the Presidency were as bitterly disappointing to his friends as to himself, and the remark was made more than once: "He is too good a man to be President." These friends were determined to make him their standard-bearer in 1840; and they were in high hopes when, on the first ballot, he received 103 votes to 93 cast for General Harrison and 57 for General Scott.

Nomina-
 tion of
 Gen.
 Harrison

Four ballots followed, with Harrison forging steadily ahead. On the fifth ballot the nomination went to him, with John Tyler, of Virginia, the nominee for the vice-presidency. Again the friends of Clay were disappointed; but they took heart in the fact that their idol was still in his prime, and they were determined that the honor should come to him four years later, as proved to be the case.

On the 4th of May, the Democratic convention assembled in Baltimore, which for a long period was the favorite meeting-place of the presidential conventions. Van Buren was the "logical candidate" of his party, and was unanimously renominated. No candi-

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861
 —

Whig
 Enthusiasm

date was selected for the vice-presidency, but later Colonel Richard M. Johnson and James K. Polk, of Tennessee, were named in several of the States for that office.

It is worth noting that on the day the Democratic convention met, the Whigs held a popular gathering in Baltimore. Twenty thousand young men were present, representing all parts of the country. Massachusetts sent more than a thousand. They were an enthusiastic assemblage; and when the hurraing multitude adjourned, it was agreed to meet in Washington on the 4th of March following, to indulge in cheering at the inauguration of General Harrison.

Reference is proper in this place to the action of the "Liberty Party," or Abolitionists. Toward the close of the Revolution, most of the Northern States provided for emancipation, immediate or gradual. The American Colonization Society, as stated elsewhere, was organized in 1816, its object being to promote emancipation and to colonize the freed negroes in Africa. William Lloyd Garrison, however, in 1829, began his labors, and imparted a new character to the work. He demanded the immediate and total abolition of slavery throughout the country, regardless of all laws and the Constitution. His extreme views caused a division among the Abolitionists, Garrison and his partisans refusing all connection with political action under the Constitution, and advocating disunion, in order that the country might purge itself of the sin of slavery.

The Abolitionists

Garrison was a powerful agitator and unceasing in his labors. Abolitionists like him were as unpopular in many sections in the North as south of Mason and Dixon's line. They were mobbed in Philadelphia, Boston, and other prominent cities, Garrison himself narrowly escaping lynching, while in more than one instance bloodshed was the result of the excitement. Abolitionists of the Garrison type were as much disunionists as those who fought under the banner of the Southern Confederacy from 1861-1865.

The other wing of the Abolitionists, under the name of the "Liberty Party," advocated the use of the ballot to bring about the emancipation of slavery. In 1840, they put forward for the first time a presidential candidate in the person of James G. Birney, who was renominated four years later. Birney was a Kentuckian, born in 1792, and died in 1857. He became a lawyer and politician and an enthusiastic Abolitionist, serving for a number of years as editor of

The Philanthropist, and was secretary of the National Anti-Slavery Society.

Richard M. Johnson, the nominee for Democratic Vice-President, has been referred to in the account of the death of the great Indian leader Tecumseh. He was born in Kentucky in 1781, and was a member of the State legislature in 1804, serving as representative from the State in Congress from 1807 to 1819, as United States Senator from 1819 to 1829, and again as representative from 1829 to 1837, when, as will be remembered, he was elected Vice-President under Van Buren. He was a gallant officer, but suffered socially because of his marriage to a woman who had a slight taint of negro blood in her veins. He died in 1850.

Old people whose memory reaches as far back as 1840 will never forget the presidential election of that year. Nothing like it was ever witnessed before, and some of its features have never been repeated. It was hardly under way when the *Baltimore Republican*, a leading Democratic paper, in the course of a slurring article, referring to General Harrison, stated that if some philanthropic person would pension him with a few hundred dollars and give him a barrel of cider, he would sit down in his log-cabin and be content for the remainder of his life.

No one needs to be reminded of the power of a simple expression in a time of political excitement, for a notable example occurred as late as 1884. The sneer at General Harrison was seized upon as the war-cry of his supporters. Log-cabins sprang up like mushrooms in village, city, town, and at country cross-roads. The quantities of hard cider drunk was appalling, and gave a melancholy setback to the temperance cause.

The changes rung upon "Tippecanoe and Tyler too" were endless. There was a snow-storm of campaign song-books, and the skies were crimsoned at night by the glare of thousands of bonfires. Men who never essayed to sing made the days and nights ring with their ardent attempts in that line.

Many characteristic anecdotes and reminiscences have come down to us of those stirring days. It is said that, in General Harrison's own State, an enthusiastic deacon attempted to "adapt" one of Watts' hymns to a campaign song. While no exception could be made to the orthodoxy of the words which he lined out at prayer-meeting, the metre limped, and the impatient brothers and sisters in

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861
 —

Democrat
 ic
 Nominee
 for
 Vice-
 Presi-
 dent

"Tippe-
 canoe
 and
 Tyler
 too"

PERIOD V
 CONSOLIDATION AND
 EXPANSION
 1829
 TO
 1861
 —

Election
 of Gen.
 Harrison

their ardor discarded the stanzas altogether, and awoke the echoes with a genuine campaign song, the deacon himself soon assuming the leadership.

The excitement increased as the day of election drew near. The thoughtful Democrats saw how the tide was setting, and there was some justification for the declaration of one of the disgusted leaders that the whole Whig population of the United States had gone on a colossal spree, from which they were not likely to recover until the next presidential election.

When the result was officially announced in November, it was found that the electoral vote was: Whigs, 234; Democrats, 60; Liberty Party, none. Harrison's popular vote was 1,275,017; Van Buren's, 1,128,702; Birney's, 7,059.





LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 015 900 603 7

